INTRODUCTION TO GENERAL, ORGANIC AND BIOCHEMISTRY



Andy Wells
Chabot College

LibreTexts™

Introduction to General, Organic and Biochemistry

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 03/11/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Chemistry in our Lives

- 1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things
- 1.2: Chemistry - The Central Science
- 1.3: The Scope of Chemistry
- 1.4: A Beginning Chemist - How to Succeed
- 1.5: Physical Quantities- Units and Scientific Notation
- 1.E: Exercises

2: Chemistry and Measurement

- 2.1: Taking Measurements
- 2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers
- 2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
- 2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations
- 2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement
- 2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions
- 2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems
- 2.8: Units Raised to a Power
- 2.9: Density
- 2.E: Measurement and Problem Solving (Exercises)

3: Matter and Energy

- 3.1: What is Matter?
- 3.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas
- 3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
- 3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
- 3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
- 3.6: Energy
- 3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
- 3.8: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations
- 3.9: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms
- 3.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)

4: Atoms

- 4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
- 4.2: The Nuclear Atom
- 4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
- 4.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons
- 4.5: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table
- 4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
- 4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies
- 4.8: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms

5: Nuclear Chemistry

- 5.1: Nuclear Reactions
- 5.2: The Discovery and Nature of Radioactivity
- 5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes
- 5.4: Nuclear Decay
- 5.5: Radioactive Half-Life
- 5.6: Ionizing Radiation
- 5.7: Measuring Radiation

6: Ionic and Molecular Compounds

- 6.1: Ions
- 6.2: Ions and the Octet Rule
- 6.3: Ions of Some Common Elements
- 6.4: Periodic Properties and Ion Formation
- 6.5: Naming Monoatomic Ions
- 6.6: Polyatomic Ions
- 6.7: Ionic Bonds
- 6.8: Formulas of Ionic Compounds
- 6.9: Naming Ionic Compounds
- 6.10: Some Properties of Ionic Compounds
- 6.11: Covalent Bonds
- 6.12: Covalent Bonds and the Periodic Table
- 6.13: Multiple Covalent Bonds
- 6.14: Characteristics of Molecular Compounds
- 6.15: Molecular Formulas and Lewis Structures
- 6.16: Drawing Lewis Structures
- 6.17: The Shapes of Molecules
- 6.18: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity
- 6.19: Polar Molecules
- 6.20: Naming Binary Molecular Compounds
- 6.21: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises)
- 6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises I)
- 6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises II)

7: Chemical Reactions and Quantities

- 7.1: Chemical Equations
- 7.2: Balancing Chemical Equations
- 7.3: Precipitation Reactions and Solubility Guidelines
- 7.4: Acids, Bases, and Neutralization Reactions
- 7.5: Recognizing Redox Reactions
- 7.6: The Mole and Avogadro's Number
- 7.7: Gram-Mole Conversions
- 7.8: Mole Relationships and Chemical Equations
- 7.9: Mass Relationships and Chemical Equations
- 7.10: Limiting Reagent and Percent Yield
- 7.11: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises)
- 7.E: Quantities in Chemical Reactions (Exercises)

8: Gases

- 8.1: States of Matter and Their Changes
- 8.2: Intermolecular Forces
- 8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory
- 8.4: Gas Pressure
- 8.5: Boyle's Law - The Relation between Volume and Pressure
- 8.6: Charles's Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature
- 8.7: Gay-Lussac's Law- The Relationship Between Pressure and Temperature
- 8.8: The Combined Gas Law
- 8.9: Avogadro's Law - The Relation between Volume and Molar Amount
- 8.10: The Ideal Gas Law
- 8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law
- 8.E: Solids, Liquids, and Gases (Exercises)

9: Solutions

- 9.1: Mixtures and Solutions
- 9.2: The Solution Process
- 9.3: Solubility
- 9.4: The Effect of Temperature on Solubility
- 9.5: The Effect of Pressure on Solubility - Henry's Law
- 9.6: Units of Concentration
- 9.7: Dilution
- 9.8: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes
- 9.9: Properties of Solutions
- 9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure
- 9.11: Dialysis
- 9.12: Net Ionic Equations
- 9.E: Solutions (Exercises)

10: Reaction Rates and Equilibrium

- 10.1: Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions
- 10.2: How Do Chemical Reactions Occur? Reaction Rates
- 10.3: Effects of Temperature, Concentration, and Catalysts on Reaction Rates
- 10.4: Reversible Reactions and Chemical Equilibrium
- 10.5: Le Chatelier's Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria

11: Acids and Bases

- 11.1: Acids and Bases Definitions
- 11.2: Acid and Base Strength
- 11.3: Acid Dissociation Constants
- 11.4: Water as Both an Acid and a Base
- 11.5: Measuring Acidity in Aqueous Solutions- The pH Scale
- 11.6: Working with pH
- 11.7: Acid and Base Equivalents
- 11.8: Some Common Acid-Base Reactions
- 11.9: Acidity and Basicity of Salt Solutions
- 11.10: Buffer Solutions
- 11.11: Titration

- 11.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises)

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Chemistry in our Lives

1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things

1.2: Chemistry - The Central Science

1.3: The Scope of Chemistry

1.4: A Beginning Chemist - How to Succeed

1.5: Physical Quantities- Units and Scientific Notation

1.E: Exercises

1: Chemistry in our Lives is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things

Chemistry is the branch of science dealing with the structure, composition, properties, and the reactive characteristics of matter. Matter is anything that has mass and occupies space. Thus, chemistry is the study of literally everything around us—the liquids that we drink, the gases we breathe, the composition of everything from the plastic case on your phone to the earth beneath your feet. Moreover, chemistry is the study of the transformation of matter. Crude oil is transformed into more useful petroleum products, such as gasoline and kerosene, by the process of refining. Some of these products are further transformed into plastics. Crude metal ores are transformed into metals, that can then be fashioned into everything from foil to automobiles. Potential drugs are identified from natural sources, isolated and then prepared in the laboratory. Their structures are systematically modified to produce the pharmaceuticals that have led to vast advances in modern medicine. Chemistry is at the center of all of these processes; chemists are the people that study the nature of matter and learn to design, predict, and control these chemical transformations. Within the branches of chemistry you will find several apparent subdivisions. Inorganic chemistry, historically, focused on minerals and metals found in the earth, while organic chemistry dealt with carbon-containing compounds that were first identified in living things. Biochemistry is an outgrowth of the application of organic chemistry to biology and relates to the chemical basis for living things. In the later chapters of this text we will explore organic and biochemistry in a bit more detail and you will notice examples of organic compounds scattered throughout the text. Today, the lines between the various fields have blurred significantly and a contemporary chemist is expected to have a broad background in all of these areas.

In this chapter, we will discuss some of the properties of matter and how chemists measure those properties. We will introduce some of the vocabulary that is used throughout chemistry and the other physical sciences.

Let's begin with matter. **Matter** is defined as any substance that has mass. It is important to distinguish here between weight and mass. Weight is the result of the pull of gravity on an object. On the Moon, an object will weigh less than the same object on Earth because the pull of gravity is less on the Moon. The mass of an object, however, is an inherent property of that object and does not change, regardless of location, gravitational pull, or anything else. It is a property that is solely dependent on the quantity of matter within the object.

Contemporary theories suggests that matter is composed of **atoms**. Atoms themselves are constructed from neutrons, protons and electrons, along with an ever-increasing array of other subatomic particles. We will focus on the neutron, a particle having no charge; the proton, which carries a positive charge; and the electron, which has a negative charge. Atoms are incredibly small. To give you an idea of the size of an atom, a single copper penny contains approximately 28,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 atoms (that's 28 sextillion). Because atoms and subatomic particles are so small, their mass is not readily measured using pounds, ounces, grams or any other scale that we would use on larger objects. Instead, the mass of atoms and subatomic particles is measured using atomic mass units (abbreviated amu). The atomic mass unit is based on a scale that relates the mass of different types of atoms to each other (using the most common form of the element carbon as a standard). The amu scale gives us a convenient means to describe the masses of individual atoms and to do quantitative measurements concerning atoms and their reactions. Within an atom, the neutron and proton both have a mass of one amu; the electron has a much smaller mass (about 0.0005 amu).



Figure **1.1.1**: Atoms are incredible small. To give you an idea of the size of an atom, a single copper penny contains approximately 28,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 atoms (that's 28 sextillion).

Atomic theory places the neutron and the proton in the center of the atom in the nucleus. In an atom, the nucleus is very small, very dense, carries a positive charge (from the protons) and contains virtually all of the mass of the atom. Electrons are placed in a diffuse cloud surrounding the nucleus. The electron cloud carries a net negative charge (from the charge on the electrons) and in a neutral atom there are always as many electrons in this cloud as there are protons in the nucleus (the positive charges in the nucleus are balanced by the negative charges of the electrons, making the atom neutral).

An atom is characterized by the number of neutrons, protons and electrons that it possesses. Today, we recognize at least 116 different types of atoms, each type having a different number of protons in its nucleus. These different types of atoms are called elements. The neutral element hydrogen (the lightest element) will always have one proton in its nucleus and one electron in the cloud surrounding the nucleus. The element helium will always have two protons in its nucleus. It is the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom that defines the identity of an element. Elements can, however, have differing numbers of neutrons in their nucleus. For example, stable helium nuclei exist that contain one, or two neutrons (but they all have two protons). These different types of helium atoms have different masses (3 or 4 amu) and they are called isotopes. For any given isotope, the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons in the nucleus is called the mass number. All elements exist as a collection of isotopes, and the mass of an element that we use in chemistry, the atomic mass, is the average of the masses of these isotopes. For helium, there is approximately one isotope of Helium-3 for every one million isotopes of Helium-4, hence the average atomic mass is very close to 4 (4.002602).

As different elements were discovered and named, abbreviations of their names were developed to allow for a convenient chemical shorthand. The abbreviation for an element is called its chemical symbol. A chemical symbol consists of one or two letters, and the relationship between the symbol and the name of the element is generally apparent. Thus helium has the chemical symbol He, nitrogen is N, and lithium is Li. Sometimes the symbol is less apparent but is decipherable; magnesium is Mg, strontium is Sr, and manganese is Mn. Symbols for elements that have been known since ancient times, however, are often based on Latin or Greek names and appear somewhat obscure from their modern English names. For example, copper is Cu (from cuprum), silver is Ag (from argentum), gold is Au (from aurum), and iron is Fe (from ferrum). Throughout your study of chemistry, you will routinely use chemical symbols and it is important that you begin the process of learning the names and chemical symbols for the common elements. By the time you complete General Chemistry, you will find that you are adept at naming and identifying virtually all of the 116 known elements. Table **1.1.1** contains a starter list of common elements that you should begin learning now!

Table **1.1.1**: Names and Chemical Symbols for Common Elements

Element	Chemical Symbol	Element	Chemical Symbol
Hydrogen	H	Phosphorus	P
Helium	He	Sulfur	S
Lithium	Li	Chlorine	Cl
Beryllium	Be	Argon	Ar
Boron	B	Potassium	K
Carbon	C	Calcium	Ca
Nitrogen	N	Iron	Fe
Oxygen	O	Copper	Cu
Fluorine	F	Zinc	Zn
Neon	Ne	Bromine	Br
Sodium	Na	Silver	Ag
Magnesium	Mg	Iodine	I
Aluminum	Al	Gold	Au
Silicon	Si	Lead	Pb

The chemical symbol for an element is often combined with information regarding the number of protons and neutrons in a particular isotope of that atom to give the atomic symbol. To write an atomic symbol, begin with the chemical symbol, then write the atomic number for the element (the number of protons in the nucleus) as a subscript, preceding the chemical symbol. Directly above this, as a superscript, write the mass number for the isotope, that is, the total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus.

Thus, for helium, the atomic number is 2 and there are two neutrons in the nucleus for the most common isotope, making the atomic symbol $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$. In the definition of the atomic mass unit, the "most common isotope of carbon", $^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, is defined as having a mass of exactly 12 amu and the atomic masses of the remaining elements are based on their masses relative to this isotope. Chlorine (chemical symbol Cl) consists of two major isotopes, one with 18 neutrons (the most common, comprising 75.77% of natural chlorine atoms) and one with 20 neutrons (the remaining 24.23%). The atomic number of chlorine is 17 (it has 17 protons in its nucleus), therefore the chemical symbols for the two isotopes are $^{35}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$ and $^{37}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$.

When data is available regarding the natural abundance of various isotopes of an element, it is simple to calculate the average atomic mass. In the example above, $^{35}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$ was the most common isotope with an abundance of 75.77% and $^{37}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$ had an abundance of the remaining 24.23%. To calculate the average mass, first convert the percentages into fractions; that is, simply divide them by 100. Now, chlorine-35 represents a fraction of natural chlorine of 0.7577 and has a mass of 35 (the mass number). Multiplying these, we get (0.7577 × 35) = 26.51. To this, we need to add the fraction representing chlorine-37, or (0.2423 × 37) = 8.965; adding, (26.51 + 8.965) = 35.48, which is the weighted average atomic mass for chlorine. Whenever we do mass calculations involving elements or compounds (combinations of elements), we always need to use average atomic masses.

Contributions & Attributions

- Paul R. Young, Professor of Chemistry, University of Illinois at Chicago, Wiki: AskTheNerd; PRY@askthenerd.com - pyoung@uic.edu; ChemistryOnline.com

---

1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **1.2: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.2: Chemistry - The Central Science

Learning Objectives

- Define chemistry in relation to other sciences.
- Use physical and chemical properties, including phase, to describe matter.

Chemistry is the study of matter—what it consists of, what its properties are, and how it changes. Being able to describe the ingredients in a cake and how they change when the cake is baked is called chemistry. Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space—that is, anything that is physically real. Some things are easily identified as matter—this book, for example. Others are not so obvious. Because we move so easily through air, we sometimes forget that it, too, is matter.

Chemistry is one branch of science. Science is the process by which we learn about the natural universe by observing, testing, and then generating models that explain our observations. Because the physical universe is so vast, there are many different branches of science (Figure **1.2.1**). Thus, chemistry is the study of matter, biology is the study of living things, and geology is the study of rocks and the earth. Mathematics is the language of science, and we will use it to communicate some of the ideas of chemistry.

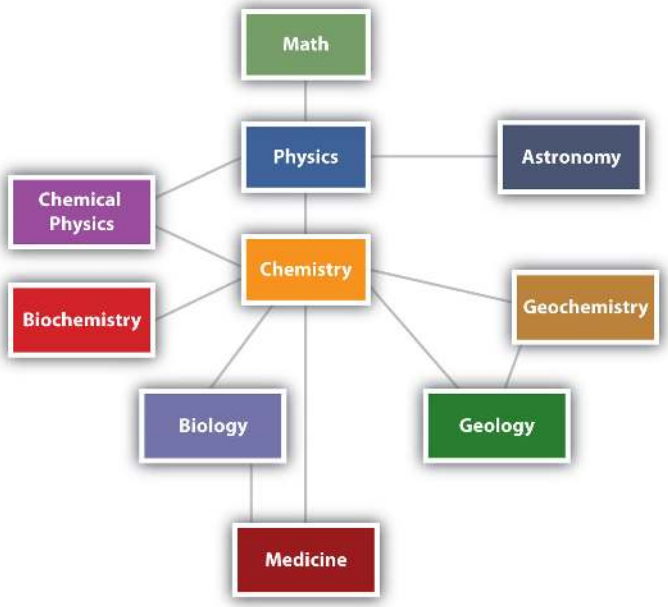


Figure **1.2.1**: The Relationships between Some of the Major Branches of Science. Chemistry lies more or less in the middle, which emphasizes its importance to many branches of science. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Although we divide science into different fields, there is much overlap among them. For example, some biologists and chemists work in both fields so much that their work is called biochemistry. Similarly, geology and chemistry overlap in the field called geochemistry. Figure **1.2.1** shows how many of the individual fields of science are related; there are many other fields of science in addition to the ones listed here.

How do scientists work? Generally, they follow a process called the **scientific method**. The scientific method is an organized procedure for learning answers to questions and making explanations for observations. The steps of the scientific method may not be as clear-cut in real life as described here, but most scientific work follows this general outline.

1. **Propose a hypothesis.** A scientist generates a testable idea, or hypothesis, to try to answer a question or explain an observation about how the natural universe works. Some people use the word *theory* in place of hypothesis, but the word hypothesis is the proper word in science. For scientific applications, the word theory is a general statement that describes a large set of observations and data. A theory represents the highest level of scientific understanding.
2. **Test the hypothesis.** A scientist evaluates the hypothesis by devising and carrying out experiments to test it. If the hypothesis passes the test, it may be a proper answer to the question. If the hypothesis does not pass the test, it may not be a good answer.

3. **Refine the hypothesis if necessary.** Depending on the results of experiments, a scientist may want to modify the hypothesis and then test it again. Sometimes the results show the original hypothesis to be completely wrong, in which case a scientist will have to devise a new hypothesis.

Not all scientific investigations are simple enough to be separated into these three discrete steps. But these steps represent the general method by which scientists learn about our natural universe.

Physical and Chemical Properties and Changes

The properties that chemists use to describe matter fall into two general categories. **Physical properties** are characteristics that describe matter. They include characteristics such as size, shape, color, and mass. These characteristics can be observed or measured without changing the *identity* of the matter in question. **Chemical properties** are characteristics that describe how matter changes its chemical structure or composition. An example of a chemical property is flammability—a material's ability to burn—because burning (also known as combustion) changes the chemical composition of a material. The observation of chemical properties involves a *chemical change* of the matter in question, resulting in matter with a different *identity* and different physical and chemical properties. Part of understanding matter is being able to describe it. One way chemists describe matter is to assign different kinds of properties to different categories.



Figure 1.2.1: (left) Ice Melting is a physical change. When liquid water (H_2O) freezes into a solid state (ice), it appears changed; However, this change is only physical as the the composition of the constituent molecules is the same: 11.19% hydrogen and 88.81% oxygen by mass. (right) Burning of wax to generate water and carbon dioxide is a chemical reaction. (CC SA-BY-3.0; Andrikkos)

We know from our experience with water that substances can change from one phase to another if the conditions are right. Typically, varying the temperature of a substance (and, less commonly, the pressure exerted on it) can cause a physical process in which a substance changes from one phase to another. Examples are summarized in Table 1.2.1.

Table 1.2.1: Physical Changes

Change	Name
solid to liquid	melting, fusion
solid to gas	sublimation
liquid to gas	boiling, evaporation
liquid to solid	solidification, freezing
gas to liquid	condensation
gas to solid	deposition

The difference between a physical reaction and a chemical reaction is **composition**. In a chemical reaction, there is a change in the composition of the substances in question; in a **physical change** there is a difference in the appearance, smell, or simple display of a sample of matter without a change in composition. Although we call them physical "reactions," no reaction is actually occurring.

In order for a reaction to take place, there must be a change in the elemental composition of the substance in question. Thus, we shall simply refer to "physical reactions" as physical changes from now on.

Example 1.2.1

Classify each of the following changes as physical or chemical:

a. condensation of steam
b. burning of gasoline
c. souring of milk
d. dissolving of sugar in water
e. melting of gold

Solution

The best way to determine whether a change is physical or chemical is to determine if the substance identity has changed or not.

a. Steam is water in the gas phase. When it condenses, changes from gas to liquid, it remains water. Therefore, this is a **physical** change.
b. When gasoline burns, it changes into different substances. This is a **chemical** change.
c. When milk becomes sour, several **chemical** changes have occured; proteins denature, sugars break down, and acid is produced. The milk is now made up of different substances.
d. Sugar dissolves easily into water but it still remains sugar. If the water is evaporated, the sugar will recrystalize as a solid again. Dissolving is a **physical** change, the substance does not change identity.
e. Melting solid gold into liquid gold is a **physical** change much like melting solid water (an ice cube) into liquid water is a physical change.

Exercise 1.2.1

Classify each of the following changes as physical or chemical:

a. coal burning
b. ice melting
c. mixing chocolate syrup with milk
d. explosion of a firecracker
e. magnetizing of a screwdriver

Answer a:
chemical

Answer b:
physical

Answer c:
physical

Answer d:
chemical

Answer e:
physical

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is the study of matter and how it behaves.
- The scientific method is the general process by which we learn about the natural universe.
- When a substance changes from one state to another, this is a physical change.

- If a substance undergoes a change into one or more different substances, this is a chemical change.

1.2: Chemistry - The Central Science is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.3: The Scope of Chemistry

Learning Objectives

- To recognize the breadth, depth, and scope of chemistry.
- Define chemistry in relation to other sciences.
- Identify the main disciplines of chemistry.

Chemistry is the study of matter—what it consists of, what its properties are, and how it changes. Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space—that is, anything that is physically real. Some things are easily identified as matter—the screen on which you are reading this book, for example. Others are not so obvious. Because we move so easily through air, we sometimes forget that it, too, is matter. Because of this, chemistry is a science that has its fingers in just about everything. Being able to describe the ingredients in a cake and how they change when the cake is baked, for example, is chemistry!

Chemistry is one branch of science. Science is the process by which we learn about the natural universe by observing, testing, and then generating models that explain our observations. Because the physical universe is so vast, there are many different branches of science (Figure **1.3.1**). Thus, chemistry is the study of matter, biology is the study of living things, and geology is the study of rocks and the earth. Mathematics is the language of science, and we will use it to communicate some of the ideas of chemistry.

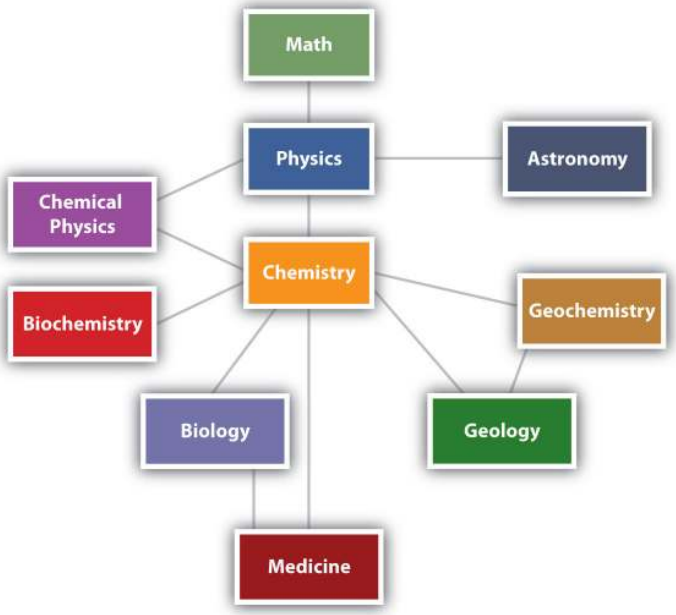


Figure **1.3.1**: The Relationships between Some of the Major Branches of Science. Chemistry lies more or less in the middle, which emphasizes its importance to many branches of science.

Although we divide science into different fields, there is much overlap among them. For example, some biologists and chemists work in both fields so much that their work is called biochemistry. Similarly, geology and chemistry overlap in the field called geochemistry. Figure **1.3.1** shows how many of the individual fields of science are related. At some level, all of these fields depend on matter because they all involve "stuff"; because of this, chemistry has been called the "central science", linking them all together.

> *There are many other fields of science, in addition to the ones (biology, medicine, etc.) listed here.*

Example 1.3.1: Science Fields

Which fields of study are branches of science? Explain.

a. sculpture
b. astronomy

Solution

a. Sculpture is not considered a science because it is not a study of some aspect of the natural universe.
b. Astronomy is the study of stars and planets, which are part of the natural universe. Astronomy is therefore a field of science.

Exercise 1.3.1

Which fields of study are branches of science?

a. physiology (the study of the function of an animal's or a plant's body)
b. geophysics
c. agriculture
d. politics

Answer a:

yes

Answer b:

yes

Answer c:

yes

Answer d:

no

Areas of Chemistry

The study of modern chemistry has many branches, but can generally be broken down into five main disciplines, or areas of study:

- **Physical chemistry:** Physical chemistry is the study of macroscopic properties, atomic properties, and phenomena in chemical systems. A physical chemist may study such things as the rates of chemical reactions, the energy transfers that occur in reactions, or the physical structure of materials at the molecular level.
- **Organic chemistry:** Organic chemistry is the study of chemicals containing carbon. Carbon is one of the most abundant elements on Earth and is capable of forming a tremendously vast number of chemicals (over twenty million so far). Most of the chemicals found in all living organisms are based on carbon.
- **Inorganic chemistry:** Inorganic chemistry is the study of chemicals that, in general, are not primarily based on carbon. Inorganic chemicals are commonly found in rocks and minerals. One current important area of inorganic chemistry deals with the design and properties of materials involved in energy and information technology.
- **Analytical chemistry:** Analytical chemistry is the study of the composition of matter. It focuses on separating, identifying, and quantifying chemicals in samples of matter. An analytical chemist may use complex instruments to analyze an unknown material in order to determine its various components.
- **Biochemistry:** Biochemistry is the study of chemical processes that occur in living things. Research may cover anything from basic cellular processes up to understanding disease states so that better treatments can be developed.



Figure **1.3.2**: (left) Measurement of trace metals using atomic spectroscopy. (right) Measurement of hormone concentrations.

In practice, chemical research is often not limited to just one of the five major disciplines. A particular chemist may use biochemistry to isolate a particular chemical found in the human body such as hemoglobin, the oxygen carrying component of red blood cells. He or she may then proceed to analyze the hemoglobin using methods that would pertain to the areas of physical or analytical chemistry. Many chemists specialize in areas that are combinations of the main disciplines, such as bioinorganic chemistry or physical organic chemistry.

History of Chemistry

The **history** of chemistry is an interesting and challenging one. Very early chemists were often motivated mainly by the achievement of a specific goal or product. Making perfume or soaps did not need a lot of **theory**, just a good recipe and careful attention to detail. There was no standard way of naming materials (and no periodic table that we could all agree on). It is often difficult to figure out exactly what a particular person was using. However, the science developed over the centuries by trial and error.

Major progress was made toward putting chemistry on a solid foundation when Robert Boyle (1637-1691) began his **research** in chemistry (Figure **1.3.3**). He developed the basic ideas about the behavior of gases. He could then describe gases mathematically. Boyle also helped form the idea that small particles could combine to form molecules. Many years later, John Dalton used these ideas to develop the atomic theory.



Figure **1.3.3**: Robert Boyle.

The field of chemistry began to develop rapidly in the 1700's. Joseph Priestley (1733-1804) isolated and characterized several gases: oxygen, carbon monoxide, and nitrous oxide. It was later discovered that nitrous oxide ("laughing gas") worked as an anesthetic. This gas was used for that purpose for the first time in 1844 during a tooth extraction. Other gases discovered during that time were chlorine, by C.W. Scheele (1742-1786) and nitrogen, by Antoine Lavoisier (1743-1794). Lavoisier has been considered by many scholars to be the "father of chemistry". Among other accomplishments, he discovered the role of oxygen in combustion and definitively formulated the law of conservation of matter.

Chemists continued to discover new compounds in the 1800's. The science also began to develop a more theoretical foundation. John Dalton (1766-1844) put forth his atomic theory in 1807. This idea allowed scientists to think about chemistry in a much more systematic way. Amadeo Avogadro (1776-1856) laid the groundwork for a more quantitative approach to chemistry by calculating the number of particles in a given amount of a gas. A lot of effort was put forth in studying chemical reactions. These efforts led to new materials being produced. Following the invention of the battery by Alessandro Volta (1745-1827), the field of electrochemistry (both theoretical and applications) developed through major contributions by Humphry Davy (1778-1829) and Michael Faraday (1791-1867). Other areas of the discipline also progressed rapidly.

It would take a large book to cover developments in chemistry during the twentieth century and up to today. One major area of expansion was in the area of the chemistry of living processes. Research in photosynthesis in plants, the discovery and

characterization of enzymes as biochemical catalysts, elucidation of the structures of biomolecules such as insulin and DNA—these efforts gave rise to an explosion of information in the field of biochemistry.

The practical aspects of chemistry were not ignored. The work of Volta, Davy, and Faraday eventually led to the development of batteries that provided a source of electricity to power a number of devices (Figure **1.3.4**).

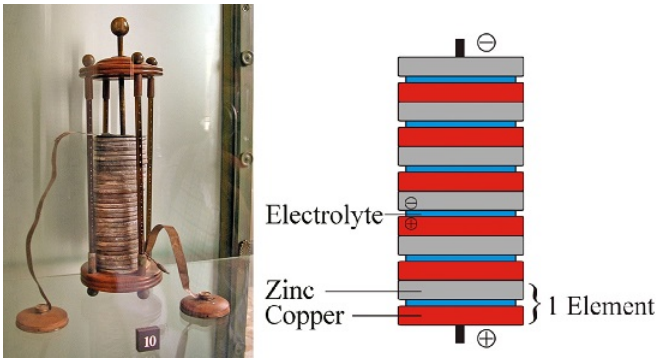


Figure **1.3.4**: Battery developed by Volta. (CC BY-SA 3.0; (left) GuidoB and (right) Kkkdc).

Charles Goodyear (1800-1860) discovered the process of vulcanization, allowing a stable rubber product to be produced for the tires of all the vehicles we have today. Louis Pasteur (1822-1895) pioneered the use of heat sterilization to eliminate unwanted microorganisms in wine and milk. Alfred Nobel (1833-1896) invented dynamite (Figure **1.3.5**). After his death, the fortune he made from this product was used to fund the Nobel Prizes in science and the humanities. J.W. Hyatt (1837-1920) developed the first plastic. Leo Baekeland (1863-1944) developed the first synthetic resin, widely used for inexpensive and sturdy dinnerware.



Figure **1.3.5**: Dynamite explosion in Panama, Central America (1908).

Today, chemistry continues to be essential to the development of new materials and technologies, from semiconductors for electronics to powerful new medicines, and beyond.

Summary

- Chemistry is the study of matter and the changes it undergoes and considers both *macroscopic* and *microscopic* information.
- Matter is anything that has mass and occupies space.
- The five main disciplines of chemistry are physical chemistry, organic chemistry, inorganic chemistry, analytical chemistry and biochemistry.
- Many civilizations contributed to the growth of chemistry. A lot of early chemical research focused on practical uses. Basic chemistry theories were developed during the nineteenth century. New materials and batteries are a few of the products of modern chemistry.

1.3: The Scope of Chemistry is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **1.7: The Scope of Chemistry** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.4: A Beginning Chemist - How to Succeed

Examples of the practical applications of chemistry are everywhere (Figure **1.4.1**). Engineers need to understand the chemical properties of the substances needed to design biologically compatible implants for joint replacements; or to design roads, bridges, buildings, and nuclear reactors that do not collapse because of weakened structural materials such as steel and cement. Archeology and paleontology rely on chemical techniques to date bones and artifacts and identify their origins. Although law is not normally considered a field related to chemistry, forensic scientists use chemical methods to analyze blood, fibers, and other evidence as they investigate crimes. In particular, DNA matching—comparing biological samples of genetic material to see whether they could have come from the same person—has been used to solve many high-profile criminal cases as well as clear innocent people who have been wrongly accused or convicted. Forensics is a rapidly growing area of applied chemistry. In addition, the proliferation of chemical and biochemical innovations in industry is producing rapid growth in the area of patent law. Ultimately, the dispersal of information in all the fields in which chemistry plays a part requires experts who are able to explain complex chemical issues to the public through television, print journalism, the Internet, and popular books.

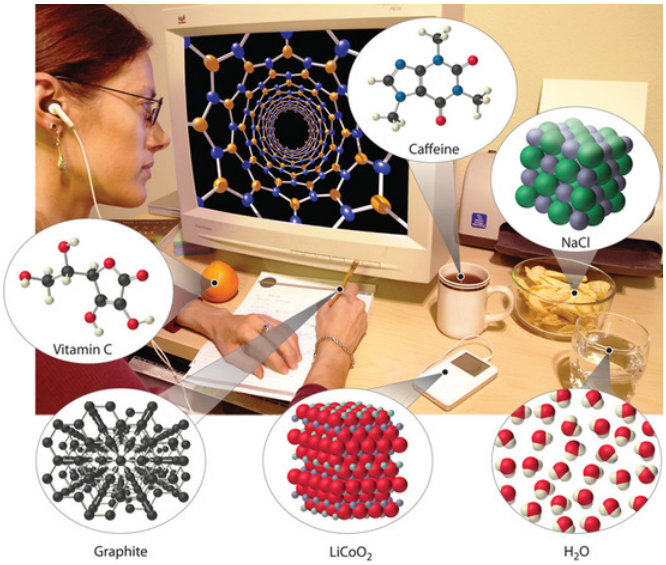


Figure **1.4.1**: Chemistry in Everyday Life. Although most people do not recognize it, chemistry and chemical compounds are crucial ingredients in almost everything we eat, wear, and use.

Chemical compounds in everyday life: Vitamin C, graphite, lithium cobalt oxide, caffeine, sodium chloride, water

Hopefully at this point you are fully convinced of how important and useful the study of chemistry can be. You may, however, still be wondering exactly *what* it is that a chemist does. Chemistry is the study of matter and the changes that matter undergoes. In general, chemists are interested in both characteristics that you can test and observe, like a chemical's smell or color, and characteristics that are far too small to see, like what the oxygen you breathe in or the carbon dioxide you breath out looks like under a microscope 1,000 times more powerful than any existing in the world today.

Wait a minute… how can a chemist *know* what oxygen and carbon dioxide look like under a microscope that doesn't even exist? What happened to the scientific method? What happened to relying on *observations* and *careful measurements*? In fact, because chemists *can't* see the underlying structure of different materials, they have to rely on the scientific method even more! Chemists are a lot like detectives. Suppose a detective is trying to solve a murder case—what do they do? Obviously, the detective starts by visiting the site of the crime and looking for evidence. If the murderer has left enough clues behind, the detective can piece together a theory explaining what happened.

Even though the detective wasn't at the crime scene when the crime was committed and didn't actually see the murderer kill the victim, with the right evidence, the detective can be pretty sure of how the crime took place. It is the same with chemistry. When chemists go into the laboratory, they collect evidence by making measurements. Once chemists have collected enough clues from the properties that they can observe, they use that evidence to piece together a theory explaining the properties that they cannot observe—the properties that are too small to see.

What kinds of properties do chemists actually measure in the laboratory? Well, you can probably guess a few. Imagine that you go to dinner at a friend's house and are served something that you don't recognize, what types of observations might you make to determine exactly *what* you've been given? You might smell the food. You might note the color of the food. You might try to decide whether the food is a liquid or a solid because if it's a liquid, it's probably soup or a drink. The temperature of the food could be useful if you wanted to know whether or not you had been served ice cream! You could also pick up a small amount of food with your fork and try to figure out how much it weighs—a light dessert might be something like an angel cake, while a heavy dessert is probably a pound cake. The quantity of food you have been given might be a clue too. Finally, you might want to know something about the food's texture—is it hard and granular like sugar cubes, or soft and easy to spread, like butter?

Believe it or not, the observations you are likely to make when trying to identify an unknown food are very similar to the observations that a chemist makes when trying to learn about a new material. Chemists rely on smell, color, state (whether it is a solid or liquid or gas), temperature, volume, mass (which is related to weight—as will be discussed in a later section), and texture. There is, however, one property possibly used to learn about a food, but that should *definitely* not be used to learn about a chemical—taste!

In the sections on the Atomic Theory, you will see exactly how measurements of certain properties helped early scientists to develop theories about the chemical structure of matter on a scale much smaller than they could ever hope to see. You will also learn how these theories, in turn, allow us to make predictions about new materials that humankind has not yet created.

The video below gives you some important tips on how to study chemistry in this class. With practice, you too can learn to think like a chemist, and you may even enjoy it!



Video **1.4.1**: How To Study Chemistry.

Contributions & Attributions

1.4: A Beginning Chemist - How to Succeed is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **1.5: A Beginning Chemist - How to Succeed** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.5: Physical Quantities- Units and Scientific Notation

Learning Objectives

- Express quantities properly using a number and a unit.
- Recognize the different measurement systems used in chemistry.
- Describe how prefixes are used in the metric system and identify how the prefixes milli-, centi-, and kilo- compare to the base unit.
- Understand when and how to use scientific notation to represent measurements.

Measurements

A coffee maker's instructions tell you to fill the coffeepot with 4 cups of water and use 3 scoops of coffee. When you follow these instructions, you are measuring. When you visit a doctor's office, a nurse checks your temperature, height, weight, and perhaps blood pressure (Figure **1.5.1**); the nurse is also measuring.



Figure **1.5.1**: Measuring Blood Pressure. A nurse or a doctor measuring a patient's blood pressure is taking a measurement. (GNU Free Documentation License; Pia von Lützau via Wikipedia).

Chemists measure the properties of matter using a variety of devices or measuring tools, many of which are similar to those used in everyday life. Rulers are used to measure length, balances (scales) are used to measure mass (weight), and graduated cylinders or pipettes are used to measure volume. Measurements made using these devices are expressed as quantities. A quantity is an amount of something and consists of a **number** and a **unit**. The number tells us *how many* (or how much), and the unit tells us what the scale of measurement is. For example, when a distance is reported as "5.2 kilometers," we know that the quantity has been expressed in units of kilometers and that the number of kilometers is 5.2.

$$\underbrace{5.2}_{\text{number}}\ \underbrace{\text{kilometers}}_{\text{unit}}$$

If you ask a friend how far he or she walks from home to school, and the friend answers "12" without specifying a unit, you do not know whether your friend walks—for example, 12 miles, 12 kilometers, 12 furlongs, or 12 yards.

Without units, a number can be meaningless, confusing, or possibly life threatening. Suppose a doctor prescribes phenobarbital to control a patient's seizures and states a dosage of "100" without specifying units. Not only will this be confusing to the medical professional giving the dose, but the consequences can be dire: 100 mg given three times per day can be effective as an anticonvulsant, but a single dose of 100 g is more than 10 times the lethal amount.

> *Both a number and a unit must be included to express a quantity properly.*

To understand chemistry, we need a clear understanding of the units chemists work with and the rules they follow for expressing numbers.

Example 1.5.1

Identify the ***number*** and the ***unit*** in each quantity.

a. one dozen eggs
b. 2.54 centimeters
c. a box of pencils
d. 88 meters per second

Answers

a. The number is one, and the unit is dozen.
b. The number is 2.54, and the unit is centimeter.
c. The number 1 is implied because the quantity is only a box. The unit is box of pencils.
d. The number is 88, and the unit is meters per second. Note that in this case the unit is actually a combination of two units: meters and seconds.

Exercise 1.5.2

Identify the ***number*** and the ***unit*** in each quantity.

a. 99 bottles of soda
b. 60 miles per hour
c. 32 fluid ounces
d. 98.6 degrees Fahrenheit

Answer a

The number is 99, and the unit is bottles of soda.

Answer b

The number is 60, and the unit is miles per hour.

Answer c

The number 32, and the unit is fluid ounces

Answer d

The number is 98.6, and the unit is degrees Fahrenheit

The International System of Units

How long is a yard? It depends on whom you ask and when you asked the question. Today we have a standard definition of the yard, which you can see marked on every football field. If you move the ball ten yards, you get a first down and it doesn't matter whether you are playing in Los Angeles, Dallas, or Green Bay. But at one time that yard was arbitrarily defined as the distance from the tip of the king's nose to the end of his outstretched hand. Of course, the problem there is simple: new king, new distance (and then you have to remark all those football fields).

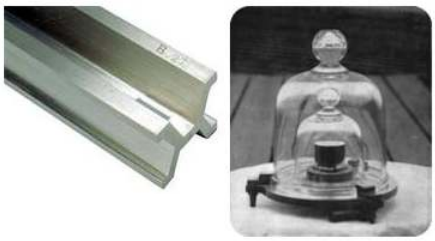


Figure 1.5.2: Meter standard (left) and Kilogram standard (right).

SI Base Units

All measurements depend on the use of units that are well known and understood. The **English system** of measurement units (inches, feet, ounces, etc.) are not used in science because of the difficulty in converting from one unit to another. The **metric system** is used because all metric units are based on multiples of 10, making conversions very simple. The metric system was originally established in France in 1795. **The International System of Units** is a system of measurement based on the metric system. The acronym **SI** is commonly used to refer to this system and stands for the French term, *Le Système International d'Unités*. The SI was adopted by international agreement in 1960 and is composed of seven base units in Table **1.5.1**.

Table **1.5.1**: SI Base Units of Measurement

Quantity	SI Base Unit	Symbol
Length	meter	**m**
Mass	kilogram	**kg**
Temperature	kelvin	**K**
Time	second	**s**
Amount of a Substance	mole	**mol**
Electric Current	ampere	**A**
Luminous Intensity	candela	**cd**

The first units are frequently encountered in chemistry. All other measurement quantities, such as volume, force, and energy, can be derived from these seven base units.

The Metric System is Not Ubiquitously Adopted

The map below shows the adoption of the SI units in countries around the world. The United States has legally adopted the metric system for measurements, but does not use it in everyday practice. Great Britain and much of Canada use a combination of metric and imperial units.

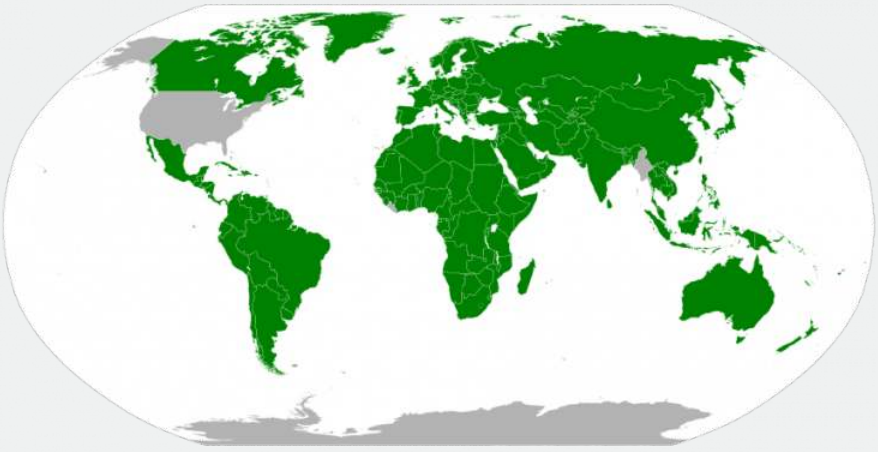


Figure **1.5.2**: Areas of world using metric system (in green). Only a few countries are slow or resistant to adoption including the United States.

Metric Prefixes

Conversions between metric system units are straightforward because the system is based on powers of ten. For example, meters, centimeters, and millimeters are all metric units of length. There are 10 millimeters in 1 centimeter and 100 centimeters in 1 meter. **Metric prefixes** are used to distinguish between units of different size. These prefixes all derive from either Latin or Greek terms.

For example, *mega* comes from the Greek word μεγας, meaning "great". Table **1.5.2** lists the most common metric prefixes and their relationship to the central unit that has no prefix. Length is used as an example to demonstrate the relative size of each prefixed unit.

Table **1.5.2**: SI Prefixes. Commonly used prefixes are bolded.

Prefix	Unit Abbreviation	Meaning	Example
giga	**G**	1,000,000,000	1 gigameter $(\mathbf{Gm}) = 10^9\ \mathbf{m}$
mega	**M**	1,000,000	1 megameter $(\mathbf{Mm}) = 10^6\ \mathbf{m}$
kilo	**k**	**1,000**	**1 kilo**meter $(\mathbf{km}) = 1,000\ \mathbf{m}$
hecto	**h**	100	1 hectometer $(\mathbf{hm}) = 100\ \mathbf{m}$
deka	**da**	10	1 dekameter $(\mathbf{dam}) = 10\ \mathbf{m}$
		1	1 meter $(\mathbf{m})$
deci	**d**	**1/10**	**1 deci**meter $(\mathbf{dm}) = 0.1\ \mathbf{m}$
centi	**c**	**1/100**	**1 centi**meter $(\mathbf{cm}) = 0.01\ \mathbf{m}$
milli	**m**	**1/1,000**	**1 milli**meter $(\mathbf{mm}) = 0.001\ \mathbf{m}$
micro	**μ**	**1/1,000,000**	**1 micro**meter $(\mu\mathbf{m}) = 10^{-6}\ \mathbf{m}$
nano	**n**	1/1,000,000,000	1 nanometer $(\mathbf{nm}) = 10^{-9}\ \mathbf{m}$
pico	**p**	1/1,000,000,000,000	1 picometer $(\mathbf{pm}) = 10^{-12}\ \mathbf{m}$

Just as expressing a quantity without a unit is meaningless, so is using the incorrect format for units and prefixes. As you may have noticed, most metric abbreviations are lowercase. We use "**m**" for meter and not "**M**", which you will see later to represent solution concentration, something very different from length. However, when it comes to volume, the base unit "liter" is abbreviated as "**L**" and not "l". So we would write 3.5 milliliters as $\mathbf{3.5\ mL}$.

As a practical matter, whenever possible you should express the units in a small and manageable number. If you are measuring the weight of a material that weighs $\mathbf{6.5\ kg}$, this is easier than saying it weighs $\mathbf{6500\ g}$ or $\mathbf{0.65\ dag}$. All three are correct, but the **kg** units in this case make for a small and easily managed number. However, if a specific problem needs grams instead of kilograms, go with the grams for consistency.

✔ Example 1.5.2: Unit Abbreviations

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kiloliter
b. microsecond
c. decimeter
d. nanogram

Solutions

Solutions to example explaining unit abbreviations.

	Explanation	Answer
a	The prefix kilo means “1,000 ×,” so 1 kL equals 1,000 L	kL
b	The prefix micro implies 1/1,000,000th of a unit, so 1 µs equals 0.000001 s.	µs
c	The prefix deci means 1/10th, so 1 dm equals 0.1 m.	dm
d	The prefix nano means 1/1000000000, so a nanogram is equal to 0.000000001 g	ng

? Exercise 1.5.2

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kilometer
b. milligram
c. nanosecond
d. centiliter

Answer a

km

Answer b

mg

Answer c

ns

Answer d

cL

Scientific Notation

Chemists often work with numbers that are exceedingly large or small. For example, entering the mass in grams of a hydrogen atom into a calculator would require a display with at least 24 decimal places. A system called **scientific notation** avoids much of the tedium and awkwardness of manipulating numbers with large or small magnitudes. In scientific notation, these numbers are expressed in the form

$$N \times 10^{n} \tag{1.5.1}$$

where N is a number greater than or equal to 1 and less than 10 ($1 \le N < 10$), and n is a positive or negative integer ($10^0 = 1$). The number 10 is called the base because it is this number that is raised to the power n. Although a base number may have values other than 10, the base number in scientific notation is always 10.

A simple way to convert numbers to scientific notation is to move the decimal point as many places to the left or right as needed to give a number from 1 to 10 (N). The magnitude of n is then determined as follows:

- If the decimal point is moved to the left n places, n is positive.
- If the decimal point is moved to the right n places, n is negative.

Another way to remember this is to recognize that as the number N decreases in magnitude, the exponent increases and vice versa. The application of this rule is illustrated in Example 1.5.1.

Example 1.5.1: Expressing Numbers in Scientific Notation

Convert each number to scientific notation.

a. 637.8
b. 0.0479
c. 7.86
d. 12,378
e. 0.00032
f. 61.06700
g. 2002.080
h. 0.01020

Solution

Solutions to example explaining how numbers look in scientific notation.

	Explanation	Answer
a	To convert 637.8 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the left: 637.8 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the left, n = 2.	6.378×10^{2}
b	To convert 0.0479 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the right: 0.0479 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = −2.	4.79×10^{-2}
c	This is usually expressed simply as 7.86. (Recall that $10^{0} = 1$.)	7.86×10^{0}
d	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the left, n = 4.	1.2378×10^{4}
e	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the right, n = −4.	3.2×10^{-4}
f	Because the decimal point was moved one place to the left, n = 1.	6.106700×10^{1}
g	Because the decimal point was moved three places to the left, n = 3.	2.002080×10^{3}
h	Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = -2.	1.020×10^{-2}

Scientific Notation: Addition and Subtraction

Before numbers expressed in scientific notation can be added or subtracted, they must be converted to a form in which all the exponents have the same value. The appropriate operation is then carried out on the values of N. Example **1.5.2** illustrates how to do this.

Example 1.5.2: Expressing Sums and Differences in Scientific Notation

Carry out the appropriate operation and then express the answer in scientific notation.

a. $(1.36 \times 10^{2}) + (4.73 \times 10^{3})$

b. $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4})$

Solution

Solution to example explaining how sums and differences look in scientific notation.

	Explanation	Answer
a	Both exponents must have the same value, so these numbers are converted to either $(1.36 \times 10^2) + (47.3 \times 10^2) = (1.36 + 47.3) \times 10^2 = 48.66 \times 10^2$ or $(0.136 \times 10^3) + (4.73 \times 10^3) = (0.136 + 4.73) \times 10^3) = 4.87 \times 10^3$. Choosing either alternative gives the same answer, reported to two decimal places: In converting 48.66×10^2 to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	4.87×10^3
b	Converting the exponents to the same value gives either $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (0.8756 \times 10^{-3}) = (6.923 - 0.8756) \times 10^{-3}$ or $(69.23 \times 10^{-4}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4}) = (69.23 - 8.756) \times 10^{-4} = 60.474 \times 10^{-4}$. In converting 60.474×10^{-4} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	6.047×10^{-3}

Scientific Notation: Multiplication and Division

When multiplying numbers expressed in scientific notation, we multiply the values of N and add together the values of n. Conversely, when dividing, we divide N in the dividend (the number being divided) by N in the divisor (the number by which we are dividing) and then subtract n in the divisor from n in the dividend. In contrast to addition and subtraction, the exponents do not have to be the same in multiplication and division. Examples of problems involving multiplication and division are shown in Example **1.5.3**.

Example 1.5.3: Expressing Products and Quotients in Scientific Notation

Perform the appropriate operation and express your answer in scientific notation.

a. $[(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2})$

b. $\dfrac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}}$

c. $\dfrac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{8.52 \times 10^{-2}}$

Solution

Solutions to example explaining how products and quotients look in scientific notation.

	Explanation	Answer
a	In multiplication, we add the exponents: $$(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2}) = (6.022)(6.42) \times 10^{[23+(-2)]} = 38.7 \times 10^{21}$$ In converting 38.7×10^{21} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	3.87×10^{22}
b	In division, we subtract the exponents: $$\frac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}} = \frac{1.67}{9.12} \times 10^{[-24-(-28)]} = 0.183 \times 10^{4}$$ In converting 0.183×10^{4} to scientific notation, n has become more negative by 1 because the value of N has increased.	1.83×10^{3}
c	This problem has both multiplication and division: $$\frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{(8.52 \times 10^{-2})} = \frac{39.78}{8.52} \times 10^{[-34+1-(-2)]}$$	4.7×10^{-31}

Key Takeaways

- Identifying a quantity properly requires both a number and a unit.
- Metric prefixes derive from Latin or Greek terms. The prefixes are used to make the units manageable.
- The SI system is based on multiples of ten. There are seven basic units in the SI system. Five of these units are commonly used in chemistry.

1.5: Physical Quantities- Units and Scientific Notation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.E: Exercises

1.1: Soda Pop Fizz

1.2: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things

1.3: All Things Are Made of Atoms and Molecules

1.4: The Scientific Method: How Chemists Think

Use the following paragraph to answer the first two questions. In 1928, Sir Alexander Fleming was studying Staphylococcus bacteria growing in culture dishes. He noticed that a mold called Penicillium was also growing in some of the dishes. In Figure 1.13, Petri dish A represents a dish containing only Staphylococcus bacteria. The red dots in dish B represent Penicillium colonies. Fleming noticed that a clear area existed around the mold because all the bacteria grown in this area had died. In the culture dishes without the mold, no clear areas were present. Fleming suggested that the mold was producing a chemical that killed the bacteria. He decided to isolate this substance and test it to see if it would kill bacteria. Fleming grew some Penicillium mold in a nutrient broth. After the mold grew in the broth, he removed all the mold from the broth and added the broth to a culture of bacteria. All the bacteria died.

1. Which of the following statements is a reasonable expression of Fleming's hypothesis?
    a. Nutrient broth kills bacteria.
    b. There are clear areas around the Penicillium mold where Staphylococcus doesn't grow.
    c. Mold kills bacteria.
    d. Penicillium mold produces a substance that kills Staphylococcus.
    e. Without mold in the culture dish, there were no clear areas in the bacteria.
2. Fleming grew Penicillium in broth, then removed the Penicillium and poured the broth into culture dishes containing bacteria to see if the broth would kill the bacteria. What step in the scientific method does this represent?
    a. Collecting and organizing data
    b. Making a hypothesis
    c. Testing a hypothesis by experiment
    d. Rejecting the old hypothesis and making a new one
    e. None of these

A scientific investigation is NOT valid unless every step in the scientific method is present and carried out in the exact order listed in this chapter.

a. True
b. False

Which of the following words is closest to the same meaning as *hypothesis*?

a. fact
b. law
c. formula
d. suggestion
e. conclusion

Why do scientists sometimes discard theories?

a. the steps in the scientific method were not followed in order
b. public opinion disagrees with the theory
c. the theory is opposed by the church
d. contradictory observations are found
e. congress voted against it

Gary noticed that two plants which his mother planted on the same day, that were the same size when planted, were different in size after three weeks. Since the larger plant was in the full sun all day and the smaller plant was in the shade of a tree most of the day,

Gary believed the sunshine was responsible for the difference in the plant sizes. In order to test this, Gary bought ten small plants of the same size and type. He made sure they had the same size and type of pot. He also made sure they had the same amount and type of soil. Then Gary built a frame to hold a canvas roof over five of the plants while the other five were nearby but out in the sun. Gary was careful to make sure that each plant received exactly the same amount of water and plant food every day.

1. Which of the following is a reasonable statement of Gary's hypothesis?
    a. Different plants have different characteristics.
    b. Plants that get more sunshine grow larger than plants that get less sunshine.
    c. Plants that grow in the shade grow larger.
    d. Plants that don't receive water will die.
    e. Plants that receive the same amount of water and plant food will grow the same amount.
2. What scientific reason might Gary have for insisting that the container size for the all plants be the same?
    a. Gary wanted to determine if the size of the container would affect the plant growth.
    b. Gary wanted to make sure the size of the container did not affect differential plant growth in his experiment.
    c. Gary want to control how much plant food his plants received.
    d. Gary wanted his garden to look organized.
    e. There is no possible scientific reason for having the same size containers.
3. What scientific reason might Gary have for insisting that all plants receive the same amount of water everyday?
    a. Gary wanted to test the effect of shade on plant growth and therefore, he wanted to have no variables other than the amount of sunshine on the plants.
    b. Gary wanted to test the effect of the amount of water on plant growth.
    c. Gary's hypothesis was that water quality was affecting plant growth.
    d. Gary was conserving water.
    e. There is no possible scientific reason for having the same amount of water for each plant every day.
4. What was the variable being tested in Gary's experiment?
    a. the amount of water
    b. the amount of plant food
    c. the amount of soil
    d. the amount of sunshine
    e. the type of soil
5. Which of the following factors may be varying in Gary's experimental setup that he did not control?
    a. individual plant variation
    b. soil temperature due to different colors of containers
    c. water loss due to evaporation from the soil
    d. the effect of insects which may attack one set of plants but not the other
    e. All of the above are possible factors that Gary did not control.

When a mosquito sucks blood from its host, it penetrates the skin with its sharp beak and injects an anti-coagulant so the blood will not clot. It then sucks some blood and removes its beak. If the mosquito carries disease-causing microorganisms, it injects these into its host along with the anti-coagulant. It was assumed for a long time that the virus typhus was injected by the louse when sucking blood in a manner similar to the mosquito. But apparently this is not so. The infection is not in the saliva of the louse, but in the feces. The disease is thought to be spread when the louse feces come in contact with scratches or bite wounds in the host's skin. A test of this was carried out in 1922 when two workers fed infected lice on a monkey, taking great care that no louse feces came into contact with the monkey. After two weeks, the monkey had NOT become ill with typhus. The workers then injected the monkey with typhus and it became ill within a few days. Why did the workers inject the monkey with typhus near the end of the experiment?

a. to prove that the lice carried the typhus virus
b. to prove the monkey was similar to man
c. to prove that the monkey was not immune to typhus

d. to prove that mosquitoes were not carriers of typhus
e. the workers were mean

Eijkman fed a group of chickens exclusively on rice whose seed coat had been removed (polished rice or white rice). The chickens all developed polyneuritis (a disease of chickens) and died. He fed another group of chickens unpolished rice (rice that still had its seed coat). Not a single one of them contracted polyneuritis. He then gathered the polishings from rice (the seed coats that had been removed) and fed the polishings to other chickens that were sick with polyneuritis. In a short time, the birds all recovered. Eijkman had accurately traced the cause of polyneuritis to a faulty diet. For the first time in history, a food deficiency disease had been produced and cured experimentally. Which of the following is a reasonable statement of Eijkman's hypothesis?

a. Polyneuritis is a fatal disease for chickens.
b. White rice carries a virus for the disease polyneuritis.
c. Unpolished rice does not carry the polyneuritis virus.
d. The rice seed coat contains a nutrient that provides protection for chickens against polyneuritis.
e. None of these is a reasonable statement of Eijkman's hypothesis.

The three questions below relate to the following paragraphs.

Scientist A noticed that in a certain forest area, the only animals inhabiting the region were giraffes. He also noticed that the only food available for the animals was on fairly tall trees and as the summer progressed, the animals ate the leaves high and higher on the trees. The scientist suggested that these animals were originally like all other animals but generations of animals stretching their necks to reach higher up the trees for food, caused the species to grow very long necks.

Scientist B conducted experiments and observed that stretching muscles does NOT cause bones to grow longer nor change the DNA of animals so that longer muscles would be passed on to the next generation. Scientist B, therefore, discarded Scientist A's suggested answer as to why all the animals living in the area had long necks. Scientist B suggested instead that originally many different types of animals including giraffes had lived in the region but only the giraffes could survive when the only food was high in the trees, and so all the other species had left the area.

1. Which of the following statements is an interpretation, rather than an observation?
   A. The only animals living in the area were giraffes.
   B. The only available food was on tall trees.
   C. Animals which constantly stretch their necks will grow longer necks.
   D. A, B, and C are all interpretations.
   E. A, B, and C are all observations.
2. Scientist A's hypothesis was that
   A. the only animals living in the area were giraffes.
   B. the only available food was on tall trees.
   C. animals which constantly stretch their necks will grow longer necks.
   D. the animals which possess the best characteristics for living in an area, will be the predominant species.
   E. None of the above are reasonable statements of Scientist A's hypothesis.
3. Scientist A's hypothesis being discarded is
   A. evidence that the scientific method doesn't always work.
   B. a result achieved without use of the scientific method.
   C. an example of what happened before the scientific method was invented.
   D. an example of the normal functioning of the scientific method.
   E. an unusual case.

When a theory has been known for a long time, it becomes a law.

a. True
b. False

During Pasteur's time, anthrax was a widespread and disastrous disease for livestock. Many people whose livelihood was raising livestock lost large portions of their herds to this disease. Around 1876, a horse doctor in eastern France named Louvrier, claimed

to have invented a cure for anthrax. The influential men of the community supported Louvrier's claim to have cured hundreds of cows of anthrax. Pasteur went to Louvrier's hometown to evaluate the cure. The cure was explained to Pasteur as a multi-step process during which: 1) the cow was rubbed vigorously to make her as hot as possible; 2) long gashes were cut into the cows skin and turpentine was poured into the cuts; 3) an inch-thick coating of cow manure mixed with hot vinegar was plastered onto the cow and the cow was completely wrapped in a cloth. Since some cows recover from anthrax with no treatment, performing the cure on a single cow would not be conclusive, so Pasteur proposed an experiment to test Louvrier's cure. Four healthy cows were to be injected with anthrax microbes, and after the cows became ill, Louvrier would pick two of the cows (A and B) and perform his cure on them while the other two cows (C and D) would be left untreated. The experiment was performed and after a few days, one of the untreated cows died and one of them got better. Of the cows treated by Louvrier's cure, one cow died and one got better. In this experiment, what was the purpose of infecting cows C and D?

a. So that Louvrier would have more than two cows to choose from.
b. To make sure the injection actually contained anthrax.
c. To serve as experimental controls (a comparison of treated to untreated cows).
d. To kill as many cows as possible.

A hypothesis is

a. a description of a consistent pattern in observations.
b. an observation that remains constant.
c. a theory that has been proven.
d. a tentative explanation for a phenomenon.

A number of people became ill after eating oysters in a restaurant. Which of the following statements is a hypothesis about this occurrence?

a. Everyone who ate oysters got sick.
b. People got sick whether the oysters they ate were raw or cooked.
c. Symptoms included nausea and dizziness.
d. The cook felt really bad about it.
e. Bacteria in the oysters may have caused the illness.

Which statement best describes the reason for using experimental controls?

a. Experimental controls eliminate the need for large sample sizes.
b. Experimental controls eliminate the need for statistical tests.
c. Experimental controls reduce the number of measurements needed.
d. Experimental controls allow comparison between groups that are different in only one independent variable.

A student decides to set up an experiment to determine the relationship between the growth rate of plants and the presence of detergent in the soil. He sets up 10 seed pots. In five of the seed pots, he mixes a precise amount of detergent with the soil and the other five seed pots have no detergent in the soil. The five seed pots with detergent are placed in the sun and the five seed pots with no detergent are placed in the shade. All 10 seed pots receive the same amount of water and the same number and type of seeds. He grows the plants for two months and charts the growth every two days. What is wrong with his experiment?

a. The student has too few pots.
b. The student has two independent variables.
c. The student has two dependent variables.
d. The student has no experimental control on the soil.

A scientist plants two rows of corn for experimentation. She puts fertilizer on row 1 but does not put fertilizer on row 2. Both rows receive the same amount of sun and water. She checks the growth of the corn over the course of five months. What is acting as the control in this experiment?

a. Corn without fertilizer.
b. Corn with fertilizer.
c. Amount of water.

d. Height of corn plants.

If you have a control group for your experiment, which of the following is true?

a. There can be more than one difference between the control group and the test group, but not more three differences, or else the experiment is invalid.
b. The control group and the test group may have many differences between them.
c. The control group must be identical to the test group except for one variable.
d. None of these are true.

If the hypothesis is rejected by the experiment, then:

a. the experiment may have been a success.
b. the experiment was a failure.
c. the experiment was poorly designed.
d. the experiment didn't follow the scientific method.

A well-substantiated explanation of an aspect of the natural world is a:

a. theory.
b. law.
c. hypothesis.
d. None of these.

1.5: A Beginning Chemist: How to Succeed

1.E: Exercises is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **1.E: Exercises** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Chemistry and Measurement

2.1: Taking Measurements
2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers
2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations
2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement
2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions
2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems
2.8: Units Raised to a Power
2.9: Density
2.E: Measurement and Problem Solving (Exercises)

2: Chemistry and Measurement is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.1: TAKING MEASUREMENTS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Express quantities properly, using a number and a unit.

A coffee maker's instructions tell you to fill the coffee pot with 4 cups of water and to use 3 scoops of coffee. When you follow these instructions, you are measuring. When you visit a doctor's office, a nurse checks your temperature, height, weight, and perhaps blood pressure (Figure **2.1.1**); the nurse is also measuring.



Figure **2.1.1**: Measuring Blood Pressure. A nurse or a doctor measuring a patient's blood pressure is taking a measurement. (GFDL; Pia von Lützau).

Chemists measure the properties of matter and express these measurements as quantities. A quantity is an amount of something and consists of a number and a unit. The number tells us how many (or how much), and the unit tells us what the scale of measurement is. For example, when a distance is reported as "5 kilometers," we know that the quantity has been expressed in units of kilometers and that the number of kilometers is 5. If you ask a friend how far they walk from home to school, and the friend answers "12" without specifying a unit, you do not know whether your friend walks 12 kilometers, 12 miles, 12 furlongs, or 12 yards. *Both a number and a unit must be included to express a quantity properly.*

To understand chemistry, we need a clear understanding of the units chemists work with and the rules they follow for expressing numbers. The next two sections examine the rules for expressing numbers.

EXAMPLE 2.1.1

Identify the number and the unit in each quantity.

a. one dozen eggs
b. 2.54 centimeters
c. a box of pencils
d. 88 meters per second

SOLUTION

a. The number is one, and the unit is a dozen eggs.
b. The number is 2.54, and the unit is centimeter.
c. The number 1 is implied because the quantity is only *a* box. The unit is box of pencils.
d. The number is 88, and the unit is meters per second. Note that in this case the unit is actually a combination of two units: meters and seconds.

KEY TAKE AWAY

- Identify a quantity properly with a number and a unit.

2.1: Taking Measurements is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.1: Taking Measurements** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

Learning Objectives

- Express a large number or a small number in scientific notation.
- Carry out arithmetical operations and express the final answer in scientific notation

Chemists often work with numbers that are exceedingly large or small. For example, entering the mass in grams of a hydrogen atom into a calculator would require a display with at least 24 decimal places. A system called **scientific notation** avoids much of the tedium and awkwardness of manipulating numbers with large or small magnitudes. In scientific notation, these numbers are expressed in the form

$$N \times 10^{n}$$

where N is greater than or equal to 1 and less than 10 ($1 \leq N < 10$), and n is a positive or negative integer ($10^0 = 1$). The number 10 is called the base because it is this number that is raised to the power n. Although a base number may have values other than 10, the base number in scientific notation is always 10.

A simple way to convert numbers to scientific notation is to move the decimal point as many places to the left or right as needed to give a number from 1 to 10 (N). The magnitude of n is then determined as follows:

- If the decimal point is moved to the left n places, n is positive.
- If the decimal point is moved to the right n places, n is negative.

Another way to remember this is to recognize that as the number N decreases in magnitude, the exponent increases and vice versa. The application of this rule is illustrated in Example **2.2.1**.

Example 2.2.1: Expressing Numbers in Scientific Notation

Convert each number to scientific notation.

a. 637.8
b. 0.0479
c. 7.86
d. 12,378
e. 0.00032
f. 61.06700
g. 2002.080
h. 0.01020

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	To convert 637.8 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the left: 637.8 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the left, n = 2.	6.378×10^{2}
b	To convert 0.0479 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the right: 0.0479 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = −2.	4.79×10^{-2}
c	This is usually expressed simply as 7.86. (Recall that $10^{0} = 1$.)	7.86×10^{0}
d	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the left, n = 4.	1.2378×10^{4}
e	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the right, n = −4.	3.2×10^{-4}
f	Because the decimal point was moved one place to the left, n = 1.	6.106700×10^{1}
g	Because the decimal point was moved three places to the left, n = 3.	2.002080×10^{3}
h	Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = -2.	1.020×10^{-2}

Addition and Subtraction

Before numbers expressed in scientific notation can be added or subtracted, they must be converted to a form in which all the exponents have the same value. The appropriate operation is then carried out on the values of N. Example **2.2.2** illustrates how to do this.

Example 2.2.2: Expressing Sums and Differences in Scientific Notation

Carry out the appropriate operation and then express the answer in scientific notation.

a. $(1.36 \times 10^{2}) + (4.73 \times 10^{3})$
b. $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4})$

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.2.

	Explanation	Answer
a	Both exponents must have the same value, so these numbers are converted to either $(1.36 \times 10^2) + (47.3 \times 10^2) = (1.36 + 47.3) \times 10^2 = 48.66 \times 10^2$ or $(0.136 \times 10^3) + (4.73 \times 10^3) = (0.136 + 4.73) \times 10^3) = 4.87 \times 10^3$. Choosing either alternative gives the same answer, reported to two decimal places. In converting 48.66 × 10^2 to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	4.87×10^3
b	Converting the exponents to the same value gives either $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (0.8756 \times 10^{-3}) = (6.923 - 0.8756) \times 10^{-3}$ or $(69.23 \times 10^{-4}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4}) = (69.23 - 8.756) \times 10^{-4} = 60.474 \times 10^{-4}$. In converting 60.474 × 10^{-4} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	6.047×10^{-3}

Multiplication and Division

When multiplying numbers expressed in scientific notation, we multiply the values of N and add together the values of n. Conversely, when dividing, we divide N in the dividend (the number being divided) by N in the divisor (the number by which we are dividing) and then subtract n in the divisor from n in the dividend. In contrast to addition and subtraction, the exponents do not have to be the same in multiplication and division. Examples of problems involving multiplication and division are shown in Example **2.2.3**.

Example 2.2.3: Expressing Products and Quotients in Scientific Notation

Perform the appropriate operation and express your answer in scientific notation.

a. $(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2})$

b. $\dfrac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}}$

c. $\dfrac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{8.52 \times 10^{-2}}$

Solution

Solution to Example 2.2.3

	Explanation	
a	In multiplication, we add the exponents: $(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2}) = (6.022)(6.42) \times 10^{[23+(-2)]} = 38.7 \times 10^{21}$ In converting 38.7×10^{21} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	3.87×10^{22}
b	In division, we subtract the exponents: $\frac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}} = \frac{1.67}{9.12} \times 10^{[-24-(-28)]} = 0.183 \times 10^{4}$ In converting 0.183×10^{4} to scientific notation, n has become more negative by 1 because the value of N has increased.	1.83×10^{3}
c	This problem has both multiplication and division: $\frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{(8.52 \times 10^{-2})} = \frac{39.78}{8.52} \times 10^{[-34+1-(-2)]}$	4.7×10^{-31}

2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

Learning Objectives

- Identify the number of significant figures in a reported value.

The **significant figures** in a measurement consist of all the certain digits in that measurement plus one uncertain or estimated digit. In the ruler illustration below, the bottom ruler gave a length with 2 significant figures, while the top ruler gave a length with 3 significant figures. In a correctly reported measurement, the final digit is significant but not certain. Insignificant digits are not reported. With either ruler, it would not be possible to report the length at $2.553\ \text{cm}$ as there is no possible way that the thousandths digit could be estimated. The 3 is not significant and would not be reported.

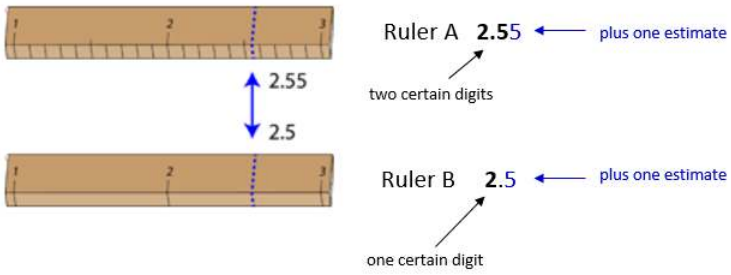


Figure 2.3.1: Measurement with two different rulers. Ruler A's measurement can be rounded to 2.55, with 2 certain digits, while Ruler B's measurement of 2.5 has 1 certain digit

Measurement Uncertainty

Some error or **uncertainty** always exists in any measurement. The amount of uncertainty depends both upon the skill of the measurer and upon the quality of the measuring tool. While some balances are capable of measuring masses only to the nearest $0.1\ \text{g}$, other highly sensitive balances are capable of measuring to the nearest $0.001\ \text{g}$ or even better. Many measuring tools such as rulers and graduated cylinders have small lines which need to be carefully read in order to make a measurement. Figure 2.3.1 shows two rulers making the same measurement of an object (indicated by the blue arrow).

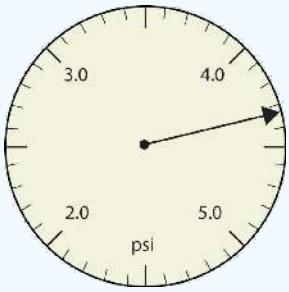
With either ruler, it is clear that the length of the object is between 2 and $3\ \text{cm}$. The bottom ruler contains no millimeter markings. With that ruler, the tenths digit can be estimated and the length may be reported as $2.5\ \text{cm}$. However, another person may judge that the measurement is $2.4\ \text{cm}$ or perhaps $2.6\ \text{cm}$. While the 2 is known for certain, the value of the tenths digit is uncertain.

The top ruler contains marks for tenths of a centimeter (millimeters). Now the same object may be measured as $2.55\ \text{cm}$. The measurer is capable of estimating the hundredths digit because he can be certain that the tenths digit is a 5. Again, another measurer may report the length to be $2.54\ \text{cm}$ or $2.56\ \text{cm}$. In this case, there are two certain digits (the 2 and the 5), with the hundredths digit being uncertain. Clearly, the top ruler is a superior ruler for measuring lengths as precisely as possible.

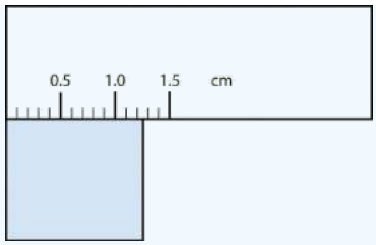
Example 2.3.1: Reporting Measurements to the Proper Number of Significant Figures

Use each diagram to report a measurement to the proper number of significant figures.

a.



b.



Ruler measuring a rectangle in units of centimeters, with the rectangle's edge between 1.2 and 1.3 cm marks

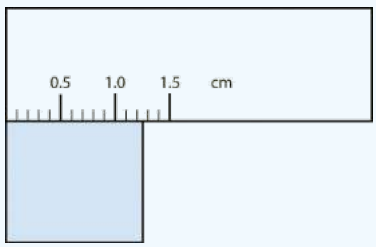
Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.3.1

	Explanation	Answer
a.	The arrow is between 4.0 and 5.0, so the measurement is at least 4.0. The arrow is between the third and fourth small tick marks, so it's at least 0.3. We will have to estimate the last place. It looks like about one-third of the way across the space, so let us estimate the hundredths place as 3. The symbol psi stands for "pounds per square inch" and is a unit of pressure, like air in a tire. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	4.33 psi
b.	The rectangle is at least 1.0 cm wide but certainly not 2.0 cm wide, so the first significant digit is 1. The rectangle's width is past the second tick mark but not the third; if each tick mark represents 0.1, then the rectangle is at least 0.2 in the next significant digit. We have to estimate the next place because there are no markings to guide us. It appears to be about halfway between 0.2 and 0.3, so we will estimate the next place to be a 5. Thus, the measured width of the rectangle is 1.25 cm. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	1.25 cm

? Exercise 2.3.1

What would be the reported width of this rectangle?



Answer

1.25 cm

When you look at a reported measurement, it is necessary to be able to count the number of significant figures. The table below details the rules for determining the number of significant figures in a reported measurement. For the examples in the table, assume that the quantities are correctly reported values of a measured quantity.

Table **2.3.1**: Significant Figure Rules

Rule	Examples
1. All nonzero digits in a measurement are significant.	• 237 has three significant figures. • 1.897 has four significant figures.
2. Zeros that appear between other nonzero digits (middle zeros) are always significant.	• 39,004 has five significant figures. • 5.02 has three significant figures.
3. Zeros that appear in front of all of the nonzero digits are called leading zeros. Leading zeros are never significant.	• 0.008 has one significant figure. • 0.000416 has three significant figures.
4. Zeros that appear after all nonzero digits are called trailing zeros. A number with trailing zeros that lacks a decimal point may or may not be significant. **Use scientific notation to indicate the appropriate number of significant figures.**	• 1400 is ambiguous. ◦ 1.4×10^3 has two significant figures. ◦ 1.40×10^3 three significant figures. ◦ 1.400×10^3 has four significant figures.
5. Trailing zeros in a number with a decimal point are significant. This is true whether the zeros occur before or after the decimal point.	• 620.0 has four significant figures. • 19.000 has five significant figures.

Exact Numbers

Integers obtained either by counting objects or from definitions are exact numbers, which are considered to have infinitely many significant figures. If we have counted four objects, for example, then the number 4 has an infinite number of significant figures (i.e., it represents 4.000…). Similarly, 1 foot (ft) is defined to contain 12 inches (in), so the number 12 in the following equation has infinitely many significant figures:

Example 2.3.2

Give the number of significant figures in each. Identify the rule for each.

a. 5.87
b. 0.031
c. 52.90
d. 00.2001
e. 500
f. 6 atoms

Solution

Solution to Example 2.3.2

	Explanation	Answer
a	All three numbers are significant (rule 1).	5.87, three significant figures
b	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 3 and the 1 are significant (rule 1).	0.031, two significant figures
c	The 5, the 2 and the 9 are significant (rule 1). The trailing zero is also significant (rule 5).	52.90, four significant figures
d	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 2 and the 1 are significant (rule 1) and the middle zeros are also significant (rule 2).	00.2001, four significant figures
e	The number is ambiguous. It could have one, two or three significant figures.	500, ambiguous
f	The 6 is a counting number. A counting number is an exact number.	6, infinite

? Exercise 2.3.2

Give the number of significant figures in each.

a. 36.7 m
b. 0.006606 s
c. 2,002 kg
d. 306,490,000 people
e. 3,800 g

Answer a

three significant figures

Answer b

four significant figures

Answer c

four significant figures

Answer d

infinite (exact number)

Answer e

Ambiguous, could be two, three or four significant figures.

Accuracy and Precision

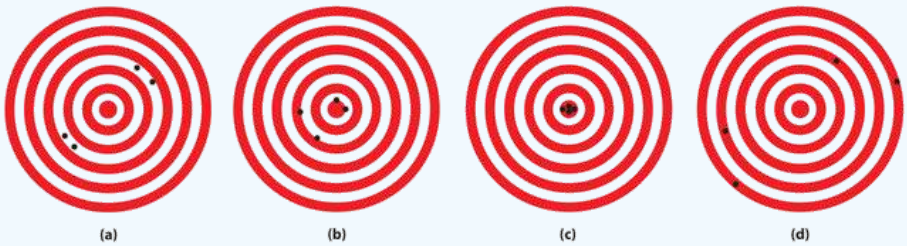
Measurements may be accurate, meaning that the measured value is the same as the true value; they may be precise, meaning that multiple measurements give nearly identical values (i.e., reproducible results); they may be both accurate and precise; or they may be neither accurate nor precise. The goal of scientists is to obtain measured values that are both accurate and precise. The video below demonstrates the concepts of accuracy and precision.



Video 2.3.1: Difference between precision and accuracy.

Example 2.3.3

The following archery targets show marks that represent the results of four sets of measurements.



Which target shows

a. a precise, but inaccurate set of measurements?
b. a set of measurements that is both precise and accurate?
c. a set of measurements that is neither precise nor accurate?

Solution

a. Set **(a)** is precise, but inaccurate.
b. Set **(c)** is both precise and accurate.
c. Set **(d)** is neither precise nor accurate.

Summary

Uncertainty exists in all measurements. The degree of uncertainty is affected in part by the quality of the measuring tool. Significant figures give an indication of the certainty of a measurement. Rules allow decisions to be made about how many digits to use in any given situation.

2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Henry Agnew, Sridhar Budhi, & Sridhar Budhi.

- **2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Sridhar Budhi is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations

Learning Objectives

- Use significant figures correctly in arithmetical operations.

Rounding

Before dealing with the specifics of the rules for determining the significant figures in a calculated result, we need to be able to round numbers correctly. To **round** a number, first decide how many significant figures the number should have. Once you know that, round to that many digits, starting from the left. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is less than 5, it is dropped and the value of the last significant digit remains the same. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is greater than or equal to 5, the last significant digit is increased by 1.

Consider the measurement **207.518 m**. Right now, the measurement contains six significant figures. How would we successively round it to fewer and fewer significant figures? Follow the process as outlined in Table **2.4.1**.

Table **2.4.1**: Rounding examples

Number of Significant Figures	Rounded Value	Reasoning
6	207.518	All digits are significant
5	207.52	8 rounds the 1 up to 2
4	207.5	2 is dropped
3	208	5 rounds the 7 up to 8
2	210	8 is replaced by a 0 and rounds the 0 up to 1
1	200	1 is replaced by a 0

Notice that the more rounding that is done, the less reliable the figure is. An approximate value may be sufficient for some purposes, but scientific work requires a much higher level of detail.

It is important to be aware of significant figures when you are mathematically manipulating numbers. For example, dividing 125 by 307 on a calculator gives 0.4071661238… to an infinite number of digits. But do the digits in this answer have any practical meaning, especially when you are starting with numbers that have only three significant figures each? When performing mathematical operations, there are two rules for limiting the number of significant figures in an answer—one rule is for addition and subtraction, and one rule is for multiplication and division.

> *In operations involving significant figures, the answer is reported in such a way that it reflects the reliability of the **least precise** operation. An answer is no more precise than the least precise number used to get the answer.*

Multiplication and Division

For multiplication or division, the rule is to count the number of significant figures in each number being multiplied or divided and then limit the significant figures in the answer to the lowest count. An example is as follows:

$$\underbrace{38.65}_{\text{4 sig figs}} \times \underbrace{105.93}_{\text{5 sig figs}} = \underbrace{4{,}094.1945}_{\text{reduce to 4 sig figs}}$$

The final answer, limited to four significant figures, is 4,094. The first digit dropped is 1, so we do not round up.

Scientific notation provides a way of communicating significant figures without ambiguity. You simply include all the significant figures in the leading number. For example, the number 450 has two significant figures and would be written in scientific notation as 4.5×10^2, whereas 450.0 has four significant figures and would be written as 4.500×10^2. In scientific notation, all significant figures are listed explicitly.

Example 2.4.1

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 23.096×90.300
b. 125×9.000

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 2,085.5688, but we need to round it to five significant figures. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the tenths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 2,085.6.	$\mathbf{2.0856 \times 10^3}$

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 1,125 as the answer, but we limit it to three significant figures.	$\mathbf{1.13 \times 10^3}$

Addition and Subtraction

How are significant figures handled in calculations? It depends on what type of calculation is being performed. If the calculation is an addition or a subtraction, the rule is as follows: limit the reported answer to the rightmost column that all numbers have significant figures in common. For example, if you were to add 1.2 and 4.71, we note that the first number stops its significant figures in the tenths column, while the second number stops its significant figures in the hundredths column. We therefore limit our answer to the tenths column.

$$\begin{array}{l} 1.2 \\ \underline{4.41} \\ 5.61 \\ \quad \uparrow \text{ limit final answer to the tenths column: } 5.6 \end{array}$$

We drop the last digit—the 1—because it is not significant to the final answer.

The dropping of positions in sums and differences brings up the topic of rounding. Although there are several conventions, in this text we will adopt the following rule: the final answer should be rounded up if the first dropped digit is 5 or greater, and rounded down if the first dropped digit is less than 5.

$$\begin{array}{l} 77.2 \\ \underline{10.46} \\ 87.66 \\ \quad \uparrow \text{ limit final answer to the tenths column and round up: } 87.7 \end{array}$$

Example 2.4.2

a. 13.77 + 908.226
b. 1,027 + 611 + 363.06

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 921.996, but because 13.77 has its farthest-right significant figure in the hundredths place, we need to round the final answer to the hundredths position. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the thousandths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 922.00	$922.00 = 9.2200 \times 10^2$

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 2,001.06 as the answer, but because 611 and 1027 has its farthest-right significant figure in the ones place, the final answer must be limited to the ones position.	$2,001.06 = 2.001 \times 10^3$

Exercise 2.4.2

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 217 ÷ 903
b. 13.77 + 908.226 + 515
c. 255.0 − 99
d. 0.00666 × 321

Answer a:

$0.240 = 2.40 \times 10^{-1}$

Answer b:

$1,437 = 1.437 \times 10^3$

Answer c:

$156 = 1.56 \times 10^2$

Answer d:

$2.14 = 2.14 \times 10^0$

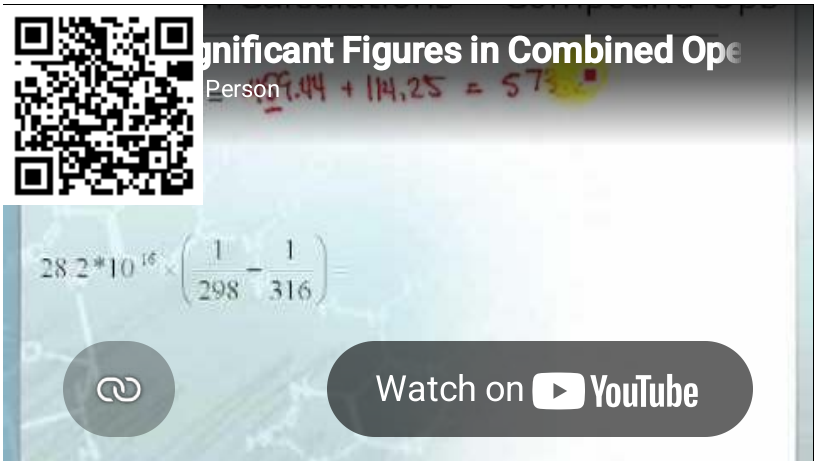
Remember that calculators do not understand significant figures. *You* are the one who must apply the rules of significant figures to a result from your calculator.

Calculations Involving Multiplication/Division and Addition/Subtraction

In practice, chemists generally work with a calculator and carry all digits forward through subsequent calculations. When working on paper, however, we often want to minimize the number of digits we have to write out. Because successive rounding can compound inaccuracies, intermediate rounding needs to be handled correctly. When working on paper, always round an intermediate result so as to retain at least one more digit than can be justified and carry this number into the next step in the calculation. The final answer is then rounded to the correct number of significant figures at the very end.



Video 2.4.1: Significant figures in mixed operations (https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yBntMndXQWA).



Video 2.4.2: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=__csP0NtlGI

In the worked examples in this text, we will often show the results of intermediate steps in a calculation. In doing so, we will show the results to only the correct number of significant figures allowed for that step, in effect treating each step as a separate calculation. This procedure is intended to reinforce the rules for determining the number of significant figures, but in some cases it may give a final answer that differs in the last digit from that obtained using a calculator, where all digits are carried through to the last step.

Example 2.4.3

a. 2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g
b. 137.3 s + 2(35.45 s)
c. $\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g$

Solution

a.

Explanation	Answer
2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g = Perform multiplication first. 2 (1.008 g *4 sig figs*) = **2.016 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 1.008 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures*. **Then, perform the addition.** **2.016 g** *thousandths place* + 15.99 g *hundredths place (least precise)* = 18.006 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the hundredths place since 15.99 has its farthest right significant figure in the hundredths place (least precise).	18.01 g (rounding up)

b.

Explanation	Answer
137.3 s + 2(35.45 s) = **Perform multiplication first.** 2(35.45 s *4 sig figs*) = **70.90 s** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 35.45; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Then, perform the addition.** 137.3 s *tenths place (least precise)* + **70.90 s** *hundredths place* = 208.20 s **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 137.3 s.	208.2 s

c.

Explanation	Answer
$\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g =$ **Perform division first.** $\frac{118.7g}{2}$ *4 sig figs* = **59.35 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 118.7 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Perform subtraction next.** **59.35 g** *hundredths place* − 35.5 g *tenths place (least precise)* = 23.85 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 35.5 g.	23.9 g (rounding up)

? Exercise 2.4.3

Complete the calculations and report your answers using the correct number of significant figures.

a. 5(1.008s) - 10.66 s
b. 99.0 cm+ 2(5.56 cm)

Answer a

-5.62 s

Answer b

110.2 cm

Summary

- Rounding
  - If the number to be dropped is greater than or equal to 5, increase the number to its left by 1 (e.g. 2.9699 rounded to three significant figures is 2.97).
  - If the number to be dropped is less than 5, there is no change (e.g. 4.00443 rounded to four significant figures is 4.004).
- The rule in multiplication and division is that the final answer should have the same number of significant figures as there are in the number with the fewest significant figures.
- The rule in addition and subtraction is that the answer is given the same number of decimal places as the term with the fewest decimal places.

2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement

Learning Objectives

- State the different measurement systems used in chemistry.
- Describe how prefixes are used in the metric system and identify how the prefixes milli-, centi-, and kilo- compare to the base unit.

How long is a yard? It depends on whom you ask and when you asked the question. Today we have a standard definition of the yard, which you can see marked on every football field. If you move the ball ten yards, you get a first down and it does not matter whether you are playing in Los Angeles, Dallas, or Green Bay. But at one time that yard was arbitrarily defined as the distance from the tip of the king's nose to the end of his outstretched hand. Of course, the problem there is simple: new king, new distance (and then you have to re-mark all of those football fields).

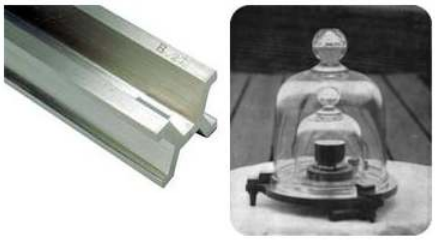


Figure **2.5.1**: Meter standard (left) and Kilogram standard (right).

SI Base Units

All measurements depend on the use of units that are well known and understood. The **English system** of measurement units (inches, feet, ounces, etc.) are not used in science because of the difficulty in converting from one unit to another. The **metric system** is used because all metric units are based on multiples of 10, making conversions very simple. The metric system was originally established in France in 1795. **The International System of Units** is a system of measurement based on the metric system. The acronym **SI** is commonly used to refer to this system and stands for the French term, *Le Système International d'Unités*. The SI was adopted by international agreement in 1960 and is composed of seven base units in Table **2.5.1**.

Table **2.5.1**: SI Base Units of Measurement

Quantity	SI Base Unit	Symbol
Length	meter	**m**
Mass	kilogram	**kg**
Temperature	kelvin	**K**
Time	second	**s**
Amount of a Substance	mole	**mol**
Electric Current	ampere	**A**
Luminous Intensity	candela	**cd**

The first units are frequently encountered in chemistry. All other measurement quantities, such as volume, force, and energy, can be derived from these seven base units.

Unfortunately, the Metric System is Not Ubiquitous

The map below shows the adoption of the SI units in countries around the world. The United States has legally adopted the metric system for measurements, but does not use it in everyday practice. Great Britain and much of Canada use a combination of metric and imperial units.

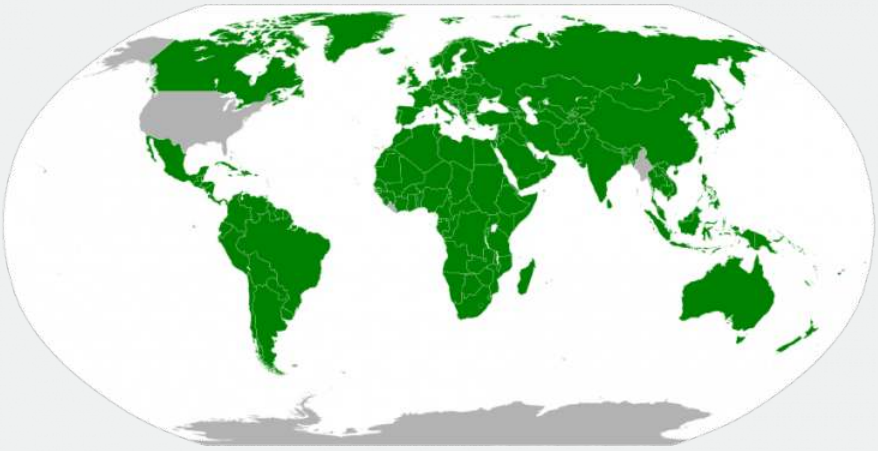


Figure 2.5.1: Areas of world using metric system (in green). Only a few countries are slow or resistant to adoption including the United States.

Prefix Multipliers

Conversions between metric system units are straightforward because the system is based on powers of ten. For example, meters, centimeters, and millimeters are all metric units of length. There are 10 millimeters in 1 centimeter and 100 centimeters in 1 meter. **Metric prefixes** are used to distinguish between units of different size. These prefixes all derive from either Latin or Greek terms. For example, *mega* comes from the Greek word μεγας, meaning "great". Table 2.5.2 lists the most common metric prefixes and their relationship to the central unit that has no prefix. Length is used as an example to demonstrate the relative size of each prefixed unit.

Table 2.5.2: SI Prefixes

Prefix	Unit Abbreviation	Meaning	Example
giga	G	1,000,000,000	1 gigameter $(\mathrm{Gm}) = 10^9\ \mathrm{m}$
mega	M	1,000,000	1 megameter $(\mathrm{Mm}) = 10^6\ \mathrm{m}$
kilo	k	1,000	1 kilometer $(\mathrm{km}) = 1,000\ \mathrm{m}$
hecto	h	100	1 hectometer $(\mathrm{hm}) = 100\ \mathrm{m}$
deka	da	10	1 dekameter $(\mathrm{dam}) = 10\ \mathrm{m}$
		1	1 meter (m)
deci	d	1/10	1 decimeter $(\mathrm{dm}) = 0.1\ \mathrm{m}$
centi	c	1/100	1 centimeter $(\mathrm{cm}) = 0.01\ \mathrm{m}$
milli	m	1/1,000	1 millimeter $(\mathrm{mm}) = 0.001\ \mathrm{m}$
micro	μ	1/1,000,000	1 micrometer $(\mu\mathrm{m}) = 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}$
nano	n	1/1,000,000,000	1 nanometer $(\mathrm{nm}) = 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m}$
pico	p	1/1,000,000,000,000	1 picometer $(\mathrm{pm}) = 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{m}$

There are a couple of odd little practices with the use of metric abbreviations. Most abbreviations are lowercase. We use "**m**" for meter and not "**M**". However, when it comes to volume, the base unit "liter" is abbreviated as "**L**" and not "l". So we would write 3.5 milliliters as **3.5 mL**.

As a practical matter, whenever possible you should express the units in a small and manageable number. If you are measuring the weight of a material that weighs **6.5 kg**, this is easier than saying it weighs **6500 g** or **0.65 dag**. All three are correct, but the **kg** units in this case make for a small and easily managed number. However, if a specific problem needs grams instead of kilograms, go with the grams for consistency.

Example 2.5.1: Unit Abbreviations

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kiloliter
b. microsecond
c. decimeter
d. nanogram

Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.5.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	The prefix kilo means “1,000 ×,” so 1 kL equals 1,000 L.	kL
b	The prefix micro implies 1/1,000,000th of a unit, so 1 µs equals 0.000001 s.	µs
c	The prefix deci means 1/10th, so 1 dm equals 0.1 m.	dm
d	The prefix nano means 1/1000000000, so a nanogram is equal to 0.000000001 g.	ng

Exercise 2.5.1

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kilometer
b. milligram
c. nanosecond
d. centiliter

Answer a:

km

Answer b:

mg

Answer c:

ns

Answer d:

cL

Summary

- Metric prefixes derive from Latin or Greek terms. The prefixes are used to make the units manageable.
- The SI system is based on multiples of ten. There are seven basic units in the SI system. Five of these units are commonly used in chemistry.

2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.6: PROBLEM SOLVING AND UNIT CONVERSIONS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- To convert a value reported in one unit to a corresponding value in a different unit using conversion factors.

During your studies of chemistry (and physics also), you will note that mathematical equations are used in many different applications. Many of these equations have a number of different variables with which you will need to work. You should also note that these equations will often require you to use measurements with their units. Algebra skills become very important here!

CONVERTING BETWEEN UNITS WITH CONVERSION FACTORS

A **conversion factor** is a factor used to convert one unit of measurement into another. A simple conversion factor can convert meters into centimeters, or a more complex one can convert miles per hour into meters per second. Since most calculations require measurements to be in certain units, you will find many uses for conversion factors. Always remember that a conversion factor has to represent a fact; this fact can either be simple or more complex. For instance, you already know that 12 eggs equal 1 dozen. A more complex fact is that the speed of light is 1.86×10^5 miles/sec. Either one of these can be used as a conversion factor depending on what type of calculation you are working with (Table **2.6.1**).

Table **2.6.1**: Conversion Factors from SI units to English Units

English Units	Metric Units	Quantity
1 ounce (oz)	28.35 grams (g)	*mass
1 fluid once (oz)	29.6 mL	volume
2.205 pounds (lb)	1 kilogram (kg)	*mass
1 inch (in)	2.54 centimeters (cm)	length
0.6214 miles (mi)	1 kilometer (km)	length
1 quarter (qt)	0.95 liters (L)	volume

*Pounds and ounces are technically units of force, not mass, but this fact is often ignored by the non-scientific community.

Of course, there are other ratios which are not listed in Table **2.6.1**. They may include:

- Ratios embedded in the text of the problem (using words such as *per* or *in each*, or using symbols such as / or %).
- Conversions in the metric system, as covered earlier in this chapter.
- Common knowledge ratios (such as 60 seconds = 1 minute).

If you learned the SI units and prefixes described, then you know that 1 cm is 1/100th of a meter.

$$1\ \text{cm} = \frac{1}{100}\ \text{m} = 10^{-2}\text{m}$$

or

$$100\ \text{cm} = 1\ \text{m}$$

Suppose we divide both sides of the equation by 1m (both the number *and* the unit):

$$\frac{100\ \text{cm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{m}}$$

As long as we perform the same operation on both sides of the equals sign, the expression remains an equality. Look at the right side of the equation; it now has the same quantity in the numerator (the top) as it has in the denominator (the bottom). Any fraction that has the same quantity in the numerator and the denominator has a value of 1:

$$\frac{100\ \text{cm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1000\ \text{mm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1 \times 10^6 \mu\text{m}}{1\ \text{m}} = 1$$

We know that 100 cm *is* 1 m, so we have the same quantity on the top and the bottom of our fraction, although it is expressed in different units.

PERFORMING DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

Dimensional analysis is amongst the most valuable tools that physical scientists use. Simply put, it is the conversion between an amount in one unit to the corresponding amount in a desired unit using various conversion factors. This is valuable because certain measurements are more accurate or easier to find than others. The use of units in a calculation to ensure that we obtain the final proper units is called *dimensional analysis*.

Here is a simple example. How many centimeters are there in 3.55 m? Perhaps you can determine the answer in your head. If there are 100 cm in every meter, then 3.55 m equals 355 cm. To solve the problem more formally with a conversion factor, we first write the quantity we are given, 3.55 m. Then we multiply this quantity by a conversion factor, which is the same as multiplying it by 1. We can write 1 as $\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$ and multiply:

$$3.55\text{ m} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$$

The 3.55 m can be thought of as a fraction with a 1 in the denominator. Because m, the abbreviation for meters, occurs in both the numerator *and* the denominator of our expression, they cancel out:

$$\frac{3.55\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{1} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\ \cancel{\text{m}}}$$

The final step is to perform the calculation that remains once the units have been canceled:

$$\frac{3.55}{1} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1} = 355\text{ cm}$$

In the final answer, we omit the 1 in the denominator. Thus, by a more formal procedure, we find that 3.55 m equals 355 cm. A generalized description of this process is as follows:

quantity (in old units) × conversion factor = quantity (in new units)

You may be wondering why we use a seemingly complicated procedure for a straightforward conversion. In later studies, the conversion problems you encounter *will not always be so simple*. If you master the technique of applying conversion factors, you will be able to solve a large variety of problems.

In the previous example, we used the fraction $\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$ as a conversion factor. Does the conversion factor $\frac{1\text{ m}}{100\text{ cm}}$ also equal 1? Yes, it does; it has the same quantity in the numerator as in the denominator (except that they are expressed in different units). Why did we not use *that* conversion factor? If we had used the second conversion factor, the original unit would not have canceled, and the result would have been meaningless. Here is what we would have gotten:

$$3.55\text{ m} \times \frac{1\text{ m}}{100\text{ cm}} = 0.0355\frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{cm}}$$

For the answer to be meaningful, we have to *construct the conversion factor in a form that causes the original unit to cancel out*. Figure **2.6.1** shows a concept map for constructing a proper conversion.

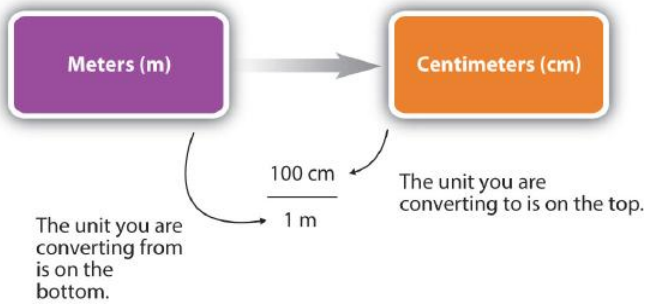


Figure **2.6.1**: A Concept Map for Conversions. This is how you construct a conversion factor to convert from one unit to another. Converting meters to centimeters: the unit you are converting is on the bottom of the fraction, and the unit to convert to is on top

GENERAL STEPS IN PERFORMING DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

1. Identify the "**given**" information in the problem. Look for a number with units to start this problem with.
2. What is the problem asking you to "**find**"? In other words, what unit will your answer have?

3. Use **ratios** and conversion factors to cancel out the units that aren't part of your answer, and leave you with units that are part of your answer.
4. When your units cancel out correctly, you are ready to do the **math**. You are multiplying fractions, so you multiply the top numbers and divide by the bottom numbers in the fractions.

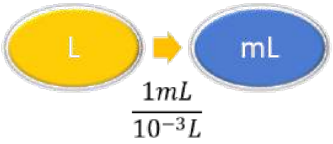
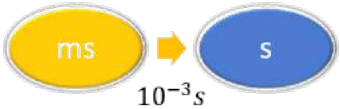
SIGNIFICANT FIGURES IN CONVERSIONS

How do conversion factors affect the determination of significant figures?

- Numbers in conversion factors based on prefix changes, such as kilograms to grams, are *not* considered in the determination of significant figures in a calculation because the numbers in such conversion factors are exact.
- Exact numbers are defined or counted numbers, not measured numbers, and can be considered as having an infinite number of significant figures. (In other words, 1 kg is exactly 1,000 g, by the definition of kilo-.)
- Counted numbers are also exact. If there are 16 students in a classroom, the number 16 is exact.
- In contrast, conversion factors that come from measurements (such as density, as we will see shortly) or that are approximations have a limited number of significant figures and should be considered in determining the significant figures of the final answer.

EXAMPLE 2.6.1

Steps for Problem Solving for Example 2.6.1 and 2.6.2

	Example 2.6.1	**Example 2.6.2**
Steps for Problem Solving	The average volume of blood in an adult male is 4.7 L. What is this volume in milliliters?	A hummingbird can flap its wings once in 18 ms. How many seconds are in 18 ms?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 4.7 L Find: mL	Given: 18 ms Find: s
List other known quantities.	$1\,mL = 10^{-3}L$	$1\,ms = 10^{-3}s$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1mL}{10^{-3}L}$	 $\frac{10^{-3}s}{1ms}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.7\,\cancel{L} \times \frac{1\text{ mL}}{10^{-3}\,\cancel{L}} = 4,700\text{ mL}$ or $4.7\,\cancel{L} \times \frac{1,000\text{ mL}}{1\,\cancel{L}} = 4,700\text{ mL}$ or 4.7 x 10^3 2SF, not ambiguous	$18\,\cancel{ms} \times \frac{10^{-3}\text{ s}}{1\,\cancel{ms}} = 0.018\text{ s}$ or $18\,\cancel{ms} \times \frac{1\text{ s}}{1,000\,\cancel{ms}} = 0.018\text{ s}$
Think about your result.	The amount in mL should be 1000 times larger than the given amount in L.	The amount in s should be 1/1000 the given amount in ms.

EXERCISE 2.6.1

Perform each conversion.

a. 101,000 ns to seconds
b. 32.08 kg to grams
c. 1.53 grams to cg

Answer a:

$1.01000x10^{-4}s$

Answer b:

$3.208x10^{4}g$

Answer c:

$1.53x10^{2}cg$

SUMMARY

- Conversion factors are used to convert one unit of measurement into another.
- Dimensional analysis (unit conversions) involves the use of conversion factors that will cancel unwanted units and produce the appropriate units.

2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

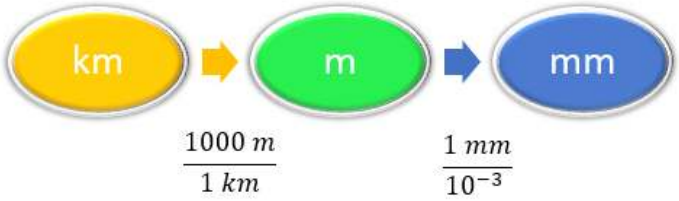
2.7: SOLVING MULTI-STEP CONVERSION PROBLEMS

MULTIPLE CONVERSIONS

Sometimes you will have to perform more than one conversion to obtain the desired unit. For example, suppose you want to convert 54.7 km into millimeters. We will set up a series of conversion factors so that each conversion factor produces the next unit in the sequence. We first convert the given amount in km to the base unit, which is meters. We know that 1,000 m =1 km.

Then we convert meters to mm, remembering that $1\ \text{mm} = 10^{-3}\ \text{m}$.

CONCEPT MAP



Convert kilometers to meters to millimeters: use conversion factors 1000 meters per 1 kilometer and 1 millimeter per 0.001 meter

CALCULATION

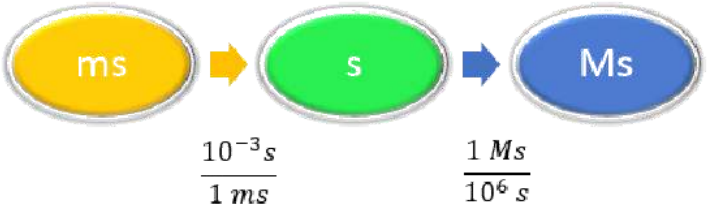
$$54.7\ \cancel{\text{km}} \times \frac{1,000\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{km}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mm}}}{10^{-3}\ \cancel{\text{m}}} = 54,700,000\ \text{mm}$$
$$= 5.47 \times 10^{7}\ \text{mm}$$

> *In each step, the previous unit is canceled and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.*

✔ EXAMPLE 2.7.1: UNIT CONVERSION

Convert 58.2 ms to megaseconds in one multi-step calculation.

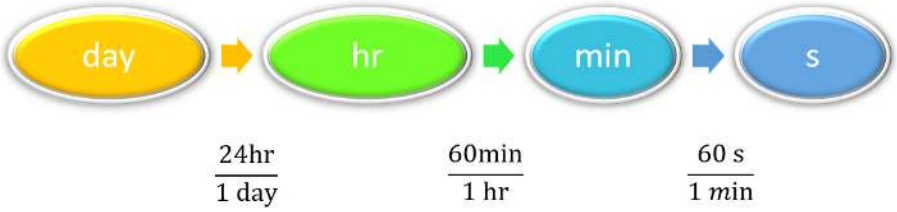
SOLUTION

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 58.2 ms Find: Ms
List other known quantities	$1ms = 10^{-3}s$ $1Ms = 10^{6}s$
Prepare a concept map.	 Convert milliseconds to seconds to microseconds: use conversion factors 0.001 second per millisecond and 1 microsecond per 1 million seconds
Calculate.	$58.2\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \cancel{s}}{1\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} \times \frac{1\ \text{Ms}}{1,000,000\ \cancel{s}} = 0.0000000582\ \text{Ms}$ $= 5.82 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{Ms}$ Neither conversion factor affects the number of significant figures in the final answer.

EXAMPLE 2.7.2: UNIT CONVERSION

How many seconds are in a day?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 1 day Find: s
List other known quantities.	1 day = 24 hours 1 hour = 60 minutes 1 minute = 60 seconds
Prepare a concept map.	 $\frac{24\text{hr}}{1\text{ day}}$ $\frac{60\text{min}}{1\text{ hr}}$ $\frac{60\text{ s}}{1\ min}$ Convert day to hour to minute to second: use conversion factors 24 hours per day, 60 minutes per hour, and 60 seconds per minute
Calculate.	$1\text{ d} \times \frac{24\text{ hr}}{1\text{ d}} \times \frac{60\text{ min}}{1\text{ hr}} \times \frac{60\text{ s}}{1\text{ min}} = 86,400\text{ s}$

EXERCISE 2.7.1

Perform each conversion in one multi-step calculation.

a. 43.007 ng to kg
b. 1005 in to ft
c. 12 mi to km

Answer a

$4.3007 \times 10^{-11} kg$

Answer b

$83.75\ ft$

Answer c

$19\ km$

CAREER FOCUS: PHARMACIST

A pharmacist dispenses drugs that have been prescribed by a doctor. Although that may sound straightforward, pharmacists in the United States must hold a doctorate in pharmacy and be licensed by the state in which they work. Most pharmacy programs require four years of education in a specialty pharmacy school. Pharmacists must know a lot of chemistry and biology so they can understand the effects that drugs (which are chemicals, after all) have on the body. Pharmacists can advise physicians on the selection, dosage, interactions, and side effects of drugs. They can also advise patients on the proper use of their medications, including when and how to take specific drugs properly. Pharmacists can be found in drugstores, hospitals, and other medical facilities. Curiously, an outdated name for pharmacist is *chemist*, which was used when pharmacists formerly did a lot of drug preparation, or *compounding*. In modern times, pharmacists rarely compound their own drugs, but their knowledge of the sciences, including chemistry, helps them provide valuable services in support of everyone's health.



A woman consulting with a pharmacist. (Public Domain; Rhoda Baer via National Cancer Institute, an agency that is part of the National Institutes of Health.)

SUMMARY

In multi-step conversion problems, the previous unit is canceled for each step and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.

2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

2.8: Units Raised to a Power

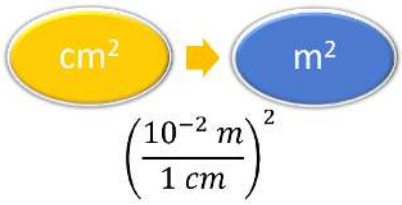
Learning Objectives

- To convert a value reported in one unit raised to a power of 10, to a corresponding value in a different unit raised to the same power of 10, using conversion factors.

Conversion factors for area and volume can also be produced by the dimensional analysis method. Just remember that if a quantity is raised to a power of 10, both the number and the unit must be raised to the same power of 10. For example, to convert $1500\ \mathrm{cm^2}$ to $\mathrm{m^2}$, we need to start with the relationship between centimeter and meter. We know that 1 cm = 10^{-2} m or 100 cm =1 m, but since we are given the quantity in 1500 cm^2, then we have to use the relationship:

$$1\,cm^2 = (10^{-2}\,m)^2 = 10^{-4}\,m^2$$

CONCEPT MAP



To convert centimeters squared to meters squared, use the conversion factor 0.01 meters per 1 centimeter, squared overall

CALCULATION

$$1500\ \cancel{\mathrm{cm}}^{2} \times \left(\frac{10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{cm}}}\right)^{2} = 0.15\ \mathrm{m^2}$$

or

$$1500\ \cancel{\mathrm{cm}}^{2} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{m}}{100\ \cancel{\mathrm{cm}}}\right)^{2} = 0.15\ \mathrm{m^2}$$

or

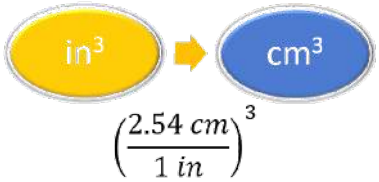
$$1500\ \cancel{\mathrm{cm}}^{2} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{m^2}}{10{,}000\ \cancel{\mathrm{cm^2}}} = 0.15\ \mathrm{m^2}$$

Example 2.8.1: Volume of a Sphere

What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?

Solution

Solution for Example 2.8.1

Steps for Problem Solving	What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: radius = 4.30 in Find: cm^3 (volume)
Determine other known quantities.	Volume of a sphere: V = $\frac{4}{3} \times \pi \times r^3$ = $\frac{4}{3} \times 3.1416 \times (4.30\underline{in})^3$ = $333.04 in^3$
Prepare a concept map.	 $\left(\frac{2.54\ cm}{1\ in}\right)^3$ To convert inches cubed to centimeters cubed, use conversion factor 2.54 centimeters per 1 inch, cubed overall
Calculate.	$333.04\ \cancel{in^3} \left(\frac{2.54 cm}{1\ \cancel{in}}\right)^3 = 5.46 \times 10^3 cm^3$
Think about your result.	A centimeter is a smaller unit than an inch, so the answer in cubic centimeters is larger than the given value in cubic inches.

Exercise 2.8.1

Lake Tahoe has a surface area of 191 square miles. What is the area in square km (km^2)?

Answer

495 km^2

2.8: Units Raised to a Power is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.8: Units Raised to a Power** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.9: Density

Learning Objectives

- Define density.
- Use density as a conversion factor.

Density (ρ) is a physical property found by dividing the mass of an object by its volume. Regardless of the sample size, density is always constant. For example, the density of a pure sample of tungsten is always 19.25 grams per cubic centimeter. This means that whether you have one gram or one kilogram of the sample, the density will never vary. The equation, as we already know, is as follows:

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{Mass}}{\text{Volume}}$$

or just

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{2.9.1}$$

Based on this equation, it's clear that density can, and does, vary from element to element and substance to substance due to differences in the relationship of mass and volume. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25° C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table **2.9.1**. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will "float."

Table **2.9.1**: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Density can be measured for all substances—solids, liquids and gases. For solids and liquids, density is often reported using the units of g/cm^3. Densities of gases, which are significantly lower than the densities of solids and liquids, are often given using units of g/L.

Example 2.9.1: Ethyl Alcohol

Calculate the density of a 30.2 mL sample of ethyl alcohol with a mass of 23.71002 g

Solution

This is a direct application of Equation 2.9.1:

$$\rho = \frac{23.71002\,g}{30.2\,mL} = 0.785\,g/mL$$

? Exercise 2.9.1

a. Find the density (in kg/L) of a sample that has a volume of 36.5 L and a mass of 10.0 kg.
b. If you have a 2.130 mL sample of acetic acid with mass 0.002234 kg, what is the density in kg/L?

Answer a

$0.274\ kg/L$

Answer b

$1.049\ kg/L$

Density as a Conversion Factor

Conversion factors can also be constructed for converting between different kinds of units. For example, density can be used to convert between the mass and the volume of a substance. Consider mercury, which is a liquid at room temperature and has a density of 13.6 g/mL. The density tells us that 13.6 g of mercury have a volume of 1 mL. We can write that relationship as follows:

13.6 g mercury = 1 mL mercury

This relationship can be used to construct two conversion factors:

$$\frac{13.6\ g}{1\ mL} = 1$$

and

$$\frac{1\ mL}{13.6\ g} = 1$$

Which one do we use? It depends, as usual, on the units we need to cancel and introduce. For example, suppose we want to know the mass of 2.0 mL of mercury. We would use the conversion factor that has milliliters on the bottom (so that the milliliter unit cancels) and grams on top, so that our final answer has a unit of mass:

$$2.0\ \cancel{mL} \times \frac{13.6\ g}{1\ \cancel{mL}} = 27.2\ g = 27\ g$$

In the last step, we limit our final answer to two significant figures because the volume quantity has only two significant figures; the 1 in the volume unit is considered an exact number, so it does not affect the number of significant figures. The other conversion factor would be useful if we were given a mass and asked to find volume, as the following example illustrates.

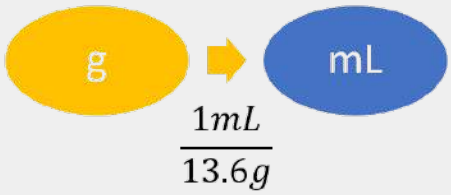
> *Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.*

✓ Example 2.9.2: Mercury Thermometer Steps for Problem Solving

A mercury thermometer for measuring a patient's temperature contains 0.750 g of mercury. What is the volume of this mass of mercury?

Solution

Solution to Example 2.9.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 0.750 g Find: mL
List other known quantities.	13.6 g/mL (density of mercury)
Prepare a concept map.	
Calculate.	$0.750\ \cancel{g} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{13.6\ \cancel{g}} = 0.055147...\ \text{mL} \approx 0.0551\ \text{mL}$ We have limited the final answer to three significant figures.

? Exercise 2.9.2

What is the volume of 100.0 g of air if its density is 1.3 g/L?

Answer

$77\ L$

Summary

- Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume.
- Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.

2.9: Density is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.9: Density** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.E: Measurement and Problem Solving (Exercises)

2.1: Measuring Global Temperatures

2.2: Scientific Notation: Writing Large and Small Numbers

2.3: Significant Figures: Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

1. Define *significant figures*. Why are they important?
2. Define the different types of zeros found in a number and explain whether or not they are significant.
3. How many significant figures are in each number?
    a. 140
    b. 0.009830
    c. 15,050
    d. 221,560,000
    e. 5.67×10^{3}
    f. 2.9600×10^{-5}
4. How many significant figures are in each number?
    a. 1.05
    b. 9,500
    c. 0.0004505
    d. 0.00045050
    e. 7.210×10^{6}
    f. 5.00×10^{-6}
5. Round each number to three significant figures.
    a. 34,705
    b. 34,750
    c. 34,570

2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations

2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement

2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems

2.8: Units Raised to a Power

2.9: Density

2.10: Numerical Problem-Solving Strategies and the Solution Map

2.E: Measurement and Problem Solving (Exercises) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.E: Measurement and Problem Solving (Exercises)** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Matter and Energy

3.1: What is Matter?
3.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas
3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
3.6: Energy
3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
3.8: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations
3.9: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms
3.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)

3: Matter and Energy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.1: What is Matter?

Learning Objectives

- Define matter and explain how it is composed of building blocks known as "atoms".

We are all familiar with matter. The definition of **Matter** is anything that has mass and volume (takes up space). For most common objects that we deal with every day, it is fairly simple to demonstrate that they have mass and take up space. You might be able to imagine, however, the difficulty for people several hundred years ago to demonstrate that air had mass and volume. Air (and all other gases) are invisible to the eye, have very small masses compared to equal amounts of solids and liquids, and are quite easy to compress (change volume). Without sensitive equipment, it would have been difficult to convince people that gases are matter. Today, we can measure the mass of a small balloon when it is deflated and then blow it up, tie it off, and measure its mass again to detect the additional mass due to the air inside. The mass of air, under room conditions, that occupies a one quart jar is approximately 0.0002 pounds. This small amount of mass would have been difficult to measure in times before balances were designed to accurately measure very small masses. Later, scientists were able to compress gases into such a small volume that the gases turned into liquids, which made it clear that gases are matter.



Figure 3.1.1: Everything from an ant, to a truck, to the earth, and even the entire galaxy is composed of matter. Images used with permission from Wikipedia (CC_SA-BY-3.0; credit High Contrast).

Even though the universe consists of "things" as wildly different as ants and galaxies, the matter that makes up all of these "things" is composed of a very limited number of building blocks. These building blocks are known as **atoms**, and so far, scientists have discovered or created a grand total of 118 different types of atoms. Scientists have given a name to each different type of atom. A substance that is composed of only one type of atom is called an element. At this point, what should amaze you is that all forms of matter in our universe are made with only 118 different building blocks. In some ways, it's sort of like cooking a gourmet, five-course meal using only three ingredients! How is it possible? To answer that question, you have to understand the ways in which different elements are put together to form matter.

The most important method that nature uses to organize atoms into matter is the formation of **molecules**. Molecules are groups of two or more atoms that have been bonded together. There are millions of different ways to bond atoms together, which means that

there are millions of different possible molecules. Each of these molecules has its own set of chemical properties, and it's these properties with which chemists are most concerned. You will learn a lot more about atoms and molecules, including how they were discovered, in a later part of the textbook.

Summary

All matter has mass and occupies space. All physical objects are made of matter. Matter itself is composed of tiny building blocks known as "atoms". There are only 118 different types of atoms known to man. Frequently, atoms are bonded together to form "molecules".

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikipedia

3.1: What is Matter? is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.2: What is Matter?** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas

Learning Objectives

- To describe the solid, liquid and gas phases.

Water can take many forms. At low temperatures (below **0°C**), it is a solid. When at "normal" temperatures (between **0°C** and **100°C**), it is a liquid. While at temperatures above **100°C**, water is a gas (steam). The state that water is in depends upon the temperature. Each state has its own unique set of physical properties. Matter typically exists in one of three states: **solid**, **liquid**, or **gas**.

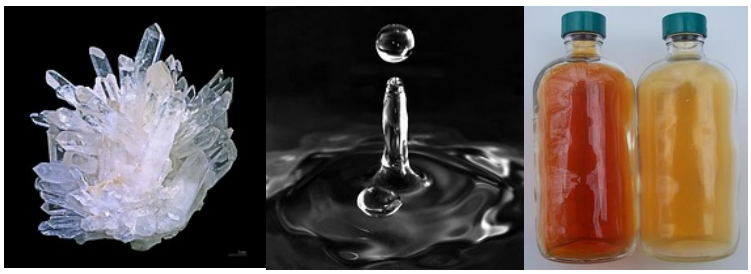


Figure **3.2.1**: Matter is usually classified into three classical states, with plasma sometimes added as a fourth state. From left to right: quartz (solid), water (liquid), nitrogen dioxide (gas).

The state that a given substance exhibits is also a physical property. Some substances exist as gases at room temperature (oxygen and carbon dioxide), while others, like water and mercury metal, exist as liquids. Most metals exist as solids at room temperature. All substances can exist in any of these three states. Figure **3.2.2** shows the differences among solids, liquids, and gases at the molecular level. A solid has definite volume and shape, a liquid has a definite volume but no definite shape, and a gas has neither a definite volume nor shape.

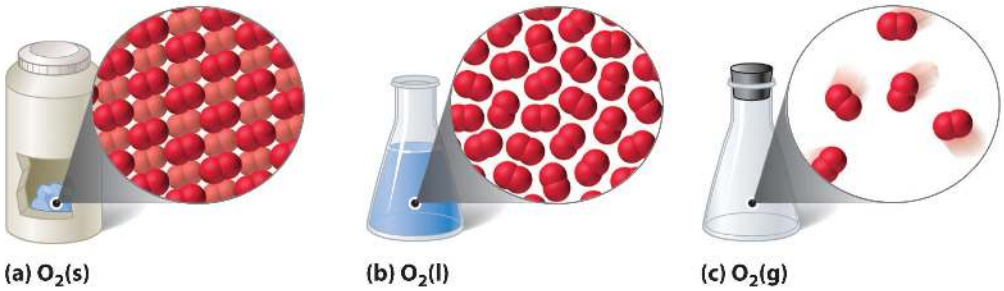


Figure **3.2.2**: A Representation of the Solid, Liquid, and Gas States. (a) Solid O_2 has a fixed volume and shape, and the molecules are packed tightly together. (b) Liquid O_2 conforms to the shape of its container but has a fixed volume; it contains relatively densely packed molecules. (c) Gaseous O_2 fills its container completely—regardless of the container's size or shape—and consists of widely separated molecules.

Plasma: A Fourth State of Matter

Technically speaking, a fourth state of matter called plasma exists, but it does not naturally occur on earth, so we will omit it from our study here.



A plasma globe operating in a darkened room. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Chocolateoak).

Solids

In the solid state, the individual particles of a substance are in fixed positions with respect to each other because there is not enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular interactions between the particles. As a result, solids have a definite shape and volume. Most solids are hard, but some (like waxes) are relatively soft. Many solids composed of ions can also be quite brittle.

Solids are defined by the following characteristics:

- Definite shape (rigid)
- Definite volume
- Particles vibrate around fixed axes

If we were to cool liquid mercury to its freezing point of $-39°C$, and under the right pressure conditions, we would notice all of the liquid particles would go into the solid state. Mercury can be solidified when its temperature is brought to its freezing point. However, when returned to room temperature conditions, mercury does not exist in solid state for long, and returns back to its more common liquid form.

Solids usually have their constituent particles arranged in a regular, three-dimensional array of alternating positive and negative ions called a **crystal**. The effect of this regular arrangement of particles is sometimes visible macroscopically, as shown in Figure **3.2.3**. Some solids, especially those composed of large molecules, cannot easily organize their particles in such regular crystals and exist as amorphous (literally, “without form”) solids. Glass is one example of an amorphous solid.

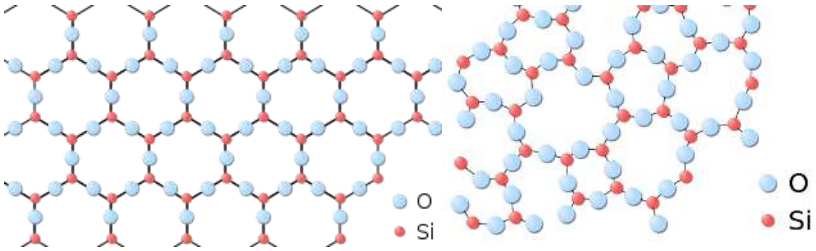


Figure **3.2.3**: (left) The periodic crystalline lattice structure of quartz SiO_2 in two-dimensions. (right) The random network structure of glassy SiO_2 in two-dimensions. Note that, as in the crystal, each Silicon atom is bonded to 4 oxygen atoms, where the fourth oxygen atom is obscured from view in this plane. Images used with permission (public domain).

Liquids

If the particles of a substance have enough energy to partially overcome intermolecular interactions, then the particles can move about each other while remaining in contact. This describes the liquid state. In a liquid, the particles are still in close contact, so liquids have a definite volume. However, because the particles can move about each other rather freely, a liquid has no definite shape and takes a shape dictated by its container.

Liquids have the following characteristics:

- No definite shape (takes the shape of its container).
- Has definite volume.
- Particles are free to move over each other, but are still attracted to each other.

A familiar liquid is mercury metal. Mercury is an anomaly. It is the only metal we know of that is liquid at room temperature. Mercury also has an ability to stick to itself (surface tension)—a property that all liquids exhibit. Mercury has a relatively high surface tension, which makes it very unique. Here you see mercury in its common liquid form.



Video* 3.2.1: Mercury boiling to become a gas.*

If we heat liquid mercury to its boiling point of $357^{\circ}C$ under the right pressure conditions, we would notice all particles in the liquid state go into the gas state.

Gases

If the particles of a substance have enough energy to completely overcome intermolecular interactions, then the particles can separate from each other and move about randomly in space. This describes the gas state, which we will consider in more detail elsewhere. Like liquids, gases have no definite shape, but unlike solids and liquids, gases have no definite volume either. The change from solid to liquid usually does not significantly change the volume of a substance. However, the change from a liquid to a gas significantly increases the volume of a substance, by a factor of 1,000 or more. Gases have the following characteristics:

- No definite shape (takes the shape of its container)
- No definite volume
- Particles move in random motion with little or no attraction to each other
- Highly compressible

Table **3.2.1**: Characteristics of the Three States of Matter

Characteristics	Solids	Liquids	Gases
shape	definite	indefinite	indefinite
volume	definite	definite	indefinite
relative intermolecular interaction strength	strong	moderate	weak
relative particle positions	in contact and fixed in place	in contact but not fixed	not in contact, random positions

Example 3.2.1

What state or states of matter does each statement, describe?

a. This state has a definite volume, but no definite shape.
b. This state has no definite volume.
c. This state allows the individual particles to move about while remaining in contact.

Solution

a. This statement describes the liquid state.
b. This statement describes the gas state.
c. This statement describes the liquid state.

Exercise 3.2.1

What state or states of matter does each statement describe?

a. This state has individual particles in a fixed position with regard to each other.
b. This state has individual particles far apart from each other in space.
c. This state has a definite shape.

Answer a:

solid

Answer b:

gas

Answer c:

solid

Summary

- Three states of matter exist—solid, liquid, and gas.
- Solids have a definite shape and volume.
- Liquids have a definite volume, but take the shape of the container.
- Gases have no definite shape or volume.

3.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

Learning Objectives

- Explain the difference between a pure substance and a mixture.
- Explain the difference between an element and a compound.
- Explain the difference between a homogeneous mixture and a heterogeneous mixture.

One useful way of organizing our understanding of matter is to think of a hierarchy that extends down from the most general and complex to the simplest and most fundamental (Figure **3.3.1**). Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A **pure substance** is a form of matter that has a constant composition (meaning that it is the same everywhere) and properties that are constant throughout the sample (meaning that there is only one set of properties such as melting point, color, boiling point, etc. throughout the matter). A material composed of two or more substances is a **mixture**. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. A substance that cannot be broken down into chemically simpler components is an **element**. Aluminum, which is used in soda cans, is an element. A substance that can be broken down into chemically simpler components (because it has more than one element) is a **compound**. For example, water is a compound composed of the elements hydrogen and oxygen. Today, there are about 118 elements in the known universe. In contrast, scientists have identified tens of millions of different compounds to date.

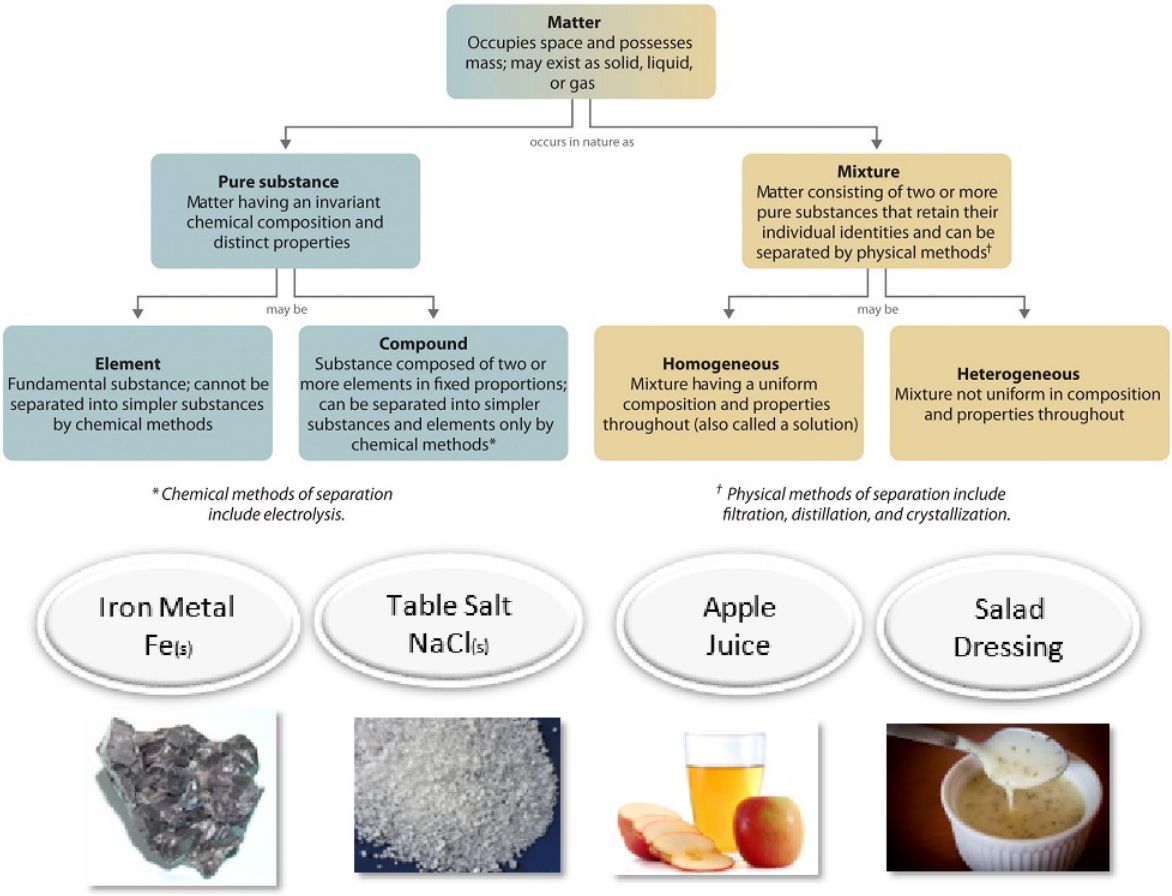


Figure **3.3.1**: Relationships between the Types of Matter and the Methods Used to Separate Mixtures

Ordinary table salt is called sodium chloride. It is considered a **substance** because it has a uniform and definite composition. All samples of sodium chloride are chemically identical. Water is also a pure substance. Salt easily dissolves in water, but salt water cannot be classified as a substance because its composition can vary. You may dissolve a small amount of salt or a large amount into a given amount of water. A mixture is a physical blend of two or more components, each of which retains its own identity and

properties in the **mixture**. Only the form of the salt is changed when it is dissolved into water. It retains its composition and properties.

A **homogeneous** mixture is a mixture in which the composition is uniform throughout the mixture. The salt water described above is homogeneous because the dissolved salt is evenly distributed throughout the entire salt water sample. Often it is easy to confuse a homogeneous mixture with a pure substance because they are both uniform. The difference is that the composition of the substance is always the same. The amount of salt in the salt water can vary from one sample to another. All solutions are considered homogeneous because the dissolved material is present in the same amount throughout the solution.

A **heterogeneous mixture** is a mixture in which the composition is not uniform throughout the mixture. Vegetable soup is a heterogeneous mixture. Any given spoonful of soup will contain varying amounts of the different vegetables and other components of the soup.

Phase

A phase is any part of a sample that has a uniform composition and properties. By definition, a pure substance or a homogeneous mixture consists of a single phase. A heterogeneous mixture consists of two or more phases. When oil and water are combined, they do not mix evenly, but instead form two separate layers. Each of the layers is called a phase.

Example 3.3.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. filtered tea
b. freshly squeezed orange juice
c. a compact disc
d. aluminum oxide, a white powder that contains a 2:3 ratio of aluminum and oxygen atoms
e. selenium

Given: a chemical substance

Asked for: its classification

Strategy:

A. Decide whether a substance is chemically pure. If it is pure, the substance is either an element or a compound. If a substance can be separated into its elements, it is a compound.
B. If a substance is not chemically pure, it is either a heterogeneous mixture or a homogeneous mixture. If its composition is uniform throughout, it is a homogeneous mixture.

Solution

a. **A)** Tea is a solution of compounds in water, so it is not chemically pure. It is usually separated from tea leaves by filtration.
B) Because the composition of the solution is uniform throughout, it is ***a homogeneous mixture***.
b. **A)** Orange juice contains particles of solid (pulp) as well as liquid; it is not chemically pure.
B) Because its composition is not uniform throughout, orange juice is ***a heterogeneous mixture***.
c. **A)** A compact disc is a solid material that contains more than one element, with regions of different compositions visible along its edge. Hence, a compact disc is not chemically pure.
B) The regions of different composition indicate that a compact disc is ***a heterogeneous mixture.***
d. **A)** Aluminum oxide is a single, chemically ***pure compound***.
e. **A)** Selenium is one of the known ***elements***.

Exercise 3.3.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. white wine
b. mercury
c. ranch-style salad dressing
d. table sugar (sucrose)

Answer a:
homogeneous mixture (solution)

Answer b:
element

Answer c:
heterogeneous mixture

Answer d:
compound

Example 3.3.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. saltwater
b. soil
c. water
d. oxygen

Solution

a. Saltwater acts as if it were a single substance even though it contains two substances—salt and water. Saltwater is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution.
b. Soil is composed of small pieces of a variety of materials, so it is a heterogeneous mixture.
c. Water is a substance. More specifically, because water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen, it is a compound.
d. Oxygen, a substance, is an element.

Exercise 3.3.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. coffee
b. hydrogen
c. an egg

Answer a:
a homogeneous mixture (solution), assuming it is filtered coffee

Answer b:
element

Answer c:
heterogeneous mixture

Summary

Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A pure substance is a form of matter that has a constant composition and properties that are constant throughout the sample. Mixtures are physical combinations of two or more

elements and/or compounds. Mixtures can be classified as homogeneous or heterogeneous. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. Compounds are substances that are made up of more than one type of atom. Elements are the simplest substances made up of only one type of atom.

Vocabulary

- Element: a substance that is made up of only one type of atom.
- Compound:a substance that is made up of more than one type of atom bonded together.
- Mixture: a combination of two or more elements or compounds which have not reacted to bond together; each part in the mixture retains its own properties.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Stephen Lower, Professor Emeritus (Simon Fraser U.) Chem1 Virtual Textbook

---

3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.4: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Stephen Lower is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

Learning Objectives

To separate physical from chemical properties.

All matter has physical and chemical properties. Physical properties are characteristics that scientists can measure without changing the composition of the sample under study, such as mass, color, and volume (the amount of space occupied by a sample). Chemical properties describe the characteristic ability of a substance to react to form new substances; they include its flammability and susceptibility to corrosion. All samples of a pure substance have the same chemical and physical properties. For example, pure copper is always a reddish-brown solid (a physical property) and always dissolves in dilute nitric acid to produce a blue solution and a brown gas (a chemical property).

Physical Property

A *physical property* is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Silver is a shiny metal that conducts electricity very well. It can be molded into thin sheets, a property called malleability. Salt is dull and brittle and conducts electricity when it has been dissolved into water, which it does quite easily. Physical properties of matter include color, hardness, malleability, solubility, electrical conductivity, density, melting point, and boiling point.

For the elements, color does not vary much from one element to the next. The vast majority of elements are colorless, silver, or gray. Some elements do have distinctive colors: sulfur and chlorine are yellow, copper is (of course) copper-colored, and elemental bromine is red. However, density can be a very useful parameter for identifying an element. Of the materials that exist as solids at room temperature, iodine has a very low density compared to zinc, chromium, and tin. Gold has a very high density, as does platinum. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25°C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table **3.4.1**. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will "float."

Table **3.4.1**: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Hardness helps determine how an element (especially a metal) might be used. Many elements are fairly soft (silver and gold, for example) while others (such as titanium, tungsten, and chromium) are much harder. Carbon is an interesting example of hardness. In graphite, (the "lead" found in pencils) the carbon is very soft, while the carbon in a diamond is roughly seven times as hard.



Figure **3.4.1**: Pencil (left) and Diamond ring (right). Both are a form of carbon, but exhibit very different physical properties.

Melting and boiling points are somewhat unique identifiers, especially of compounds. In addition to giving some idea as to the identity of the compound, important information can be obtained about the purity of the material.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties of matter describe its potential to undergo some chemical change or reaction by virtue of its composition. The elements, electrons, and bonds that are present give the matter potential for chemical change. It is quite difficult to define a chemical property without using the word "change". Eventually, after studying chemistry for some time, you should be able to look at the formula of a compound and state some chemical property. For example, hydrogen has the potential to ignite and explode given the right conditions—this is a chemical property. Metals in general have the chemical property of reacting with an acid. Zinc reacts with hydrochloric acid to produce hydrogen gas—this is a chemical property.



Figure **3.4.2**: Heavy rust on the links of a chain near the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco; it was continuously exposed to moisture and salt spray, causing surface breakdown, cracking, and flaking of the metal. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Marlith).

A chemical property of iron is its capability of combining with oxygen to form iron oxide, the chemical name of rust (Figure **3.4.2**). The more general term for rusting and other similar processes is corrosion. Other terms that are commonly used in descriptions of chemical changes are burn, rot, explode, decompose, and ferment. Chemical properties are very useful in identifying substances. However, unlike physical properties, chemical properties can only be observed as the substance is in the process of being changed into a different substance.

Table **3.4.2**: Contrasting Physical and Chemical Properties

Physical Properties	Chemical Properties
Gallium metal melts at 30 ^{o}C.	Iron metal rusts.
Mercury is a very dense liquid.	A green banana turns yellow when it ripens.
Gold is shiny.	A dry piece of paper burns.

Example 3.4.1

Which of the following is a chemical property of iron?

a. Iron corrodes in moist air.
b. Density = 7.874 g/cm^3
c. Iron is soft when pure.
d. Iron melts at 1808 K.

Solution

"Iron corrodes in moist air" is the only chemical property of iron from the list.

Exercise 3.4.1A

Which of the following is a physical property of matter?

a. corrosiveness
b. pH (acidity)
c. density
d. flammability

Answer

c

Exercise 3.4.1B

Which of the following is a chemical property?

a. flammability
b. melting point
c. boiling point
d. density

Answer

a

Summary

A physical property is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Physical properties include color, density, hardness, and melting and boiling points. A chemical property describes the ability of a substance to undergo a specific chemical change. To identify a chemical property, we look for a chemical change. A chemical change always produces one or more types of matter that differ from the matter present before the change. The formation of rust is a chemical change because rust is a different kind of matter than the iron, oxygen, and water present before the rust formed.

3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

Learning Objectives

- Label a change as chemical or physical.
- List evidence that can indicate a chemical change occurred.

Change is happening all around us all of the time. Just as chemists have classified elements and compounds, they have also classified types of changes. Changes are classified as either physical or chemical changes. Chemists learn a lot about the nature of matter by studying the changes that matter can undergo. Chemists make a distinction between two different types of changes that they study—physical changes and chemical changes.

Physical Change

Physical changes are changes in which no bonds are broken or formed. This means that the same types of compounds or elements that were there at the beginning of the change are there at the end of the change. Because the ending materials are the same as the beginning materials, the properties (such as color, boiling point, etc.) will also be the same. Physical changes involve moving molecules around, but not changing them. Some types of physical changes include:

- Changes of state (changes from a solid to a liquid or a gas and vice versa).
- Separation of a mixture.
- Physical deformation (cutting, denting, stretching).
- Making solutions (special kinds of mixtures).

As an ice cube melts, its shape changes as it acquires the ability to flow. However, its composition does not change. Melting is an example of a physical change. A physical change is a change to a sample of matter in which some properties of the material change, but the identity of the matter does not. When liquid water is heated, it changes to water vapor. However, even though the physical properties have changed, the molecules are exactly the same as before. We still have each water molecule containing two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom covalently bonded. When you have a jar containing a mixture of pennies and nickels and you sort the mixture so that you have one pile of pennies and another pile of nickels, you have not altered the identity of the pennies or the nickels—you've merely separated them into two groups. This would be an example of a physical change. Similarly, if you have a piece of paper, you don't change it into something other than a piece of paper by ripping it up. What was paper before you started tearing is still paper when you are done. Again, this is an example of a physical change.



Figure **3.5.1**: Ice melting is a physical change. When liquid water (H_2O) freezes into a solid state (ice), it appears changed; however, this change is only physical, as the composition of the constituent molecules is the same: 11.19% hydrogen and 88.81% oxygen by mass. (Public Domain; Moussa).

Physical changes can further be classified as reversible or irreversible. The melted ice cube may be refrozen, so melting is a reversible physical change. Physical changes that involve a change of state are all reversible. Other changes of state include **vaporization** (liquid to gas), **freezing** (liquid to solid), and **condensation** (gas to liquid). Dissolving is also a reversible physical change. When salt is dissolved into water, the salt is said to have entered the aqueous state. The salt may be regained by boiling off the water, leaving the salt behind.

Chemical Change

Chemical changes occur when bonds are broken and/or formed between molecules or atoms. This means that one substance with a certain set of properties (such as melting point, color, taste, etc) is turned into a different substance with different properties. Chemical changes are frequently harder to reverse than physical changes.

One good example of a chemical change is burning a candle. The act of burning paper actually results in the formation of new chemicals (carbon dioxide and water) from the burning of the wax. Another example of a chemical change is what occurs when natural gas is burned in your furnace. This time, on the left there is a molecule of methane, $\mathrm{CH_4}$, and two molecules of oxygen, $\mathrm{O_2}$; on the right are two molecules of water, $\mathrm{H_2O}$, and one molecule of carbon dioxide, $\mathrm{CO_2}$. In this case, not only has the appearance changed, but the structure of the molecules has also changed. The new substances do not have the same chemical properties as the original ones. Therefore, this is a chemical change.



Figure **3.5.2**: Burning of wax to generate water and carbon dioxide is a chemical reaction. (CC-SA-BY-3.0; Andrikkos)

We can't actually see molecules breaking and forming bonds, although that's what defines chemical changes. We have to make other observations to indicate that a chemical change has happened. Some of the evidence for chemical change will involve the energy changes that occur in chemical changes, but some evidence involves the fact that new substances with different properties are formed in a chemical change.

Observations that help to indicate chemical change include:

- Temperature changes (either the temperature increases or decreases).
- Light given off.
- Unexpected color changes (a substance with a different color is made, rather than just mixing the original colors together).
- Bubbles are formed (but the substance is not boiling—you made a substance that is a gas at the temperature of the beginning materials, instead of a liquid).
- Different smell or taste (do not taste your chemistry experiments, though!).
- A solid forms if two clear liquids are mixed (look for *floaties*—technically called a precipitate).

Example 3.5.1

Label each of the following changes as a physical or chemical change. Give evidence to support your answer.

a. Boiling water.
b. A nail rusting.
c. A green solution and colorless solution are mixed. The resulting mixture is a solution with a pale green color.
d. Two colorless solutions are mixed. The resulting mixture has a yellow precipitate.

Solution

a. Physical: boiling and melting are physical changes. When water boils, no bonds are broken or formed. The change could be written: $\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}\,(g)$

b. Chemical: The dark grey nail changes color to form an orange flaky substance (the rust); this must be a chemical change. Color changes indicate chemical change. The following reaction occurs: $Fe + O_2 \rightarrow Fe_2O_3$
c. Physical: because none of the properties changed, this is a physical change. The green mixture is still green and the colorless solution is still colorless. They have just been spread together. No color *change* occurred or other evidence of chemical change.
d. Chemical: the formation of a precipitate and the color change from colorless to yellow indicate a chemical change.

? Exercise 3.5.1

Label each of the following changes as a physical or chemical change.

a. A mirror is broken.
b. An iron nail corroded in moist air
c. Copper metal is melted.
d. A catalytic converter changes nitrogen dioxide to nitrogen gas and oxygen gas.

Answer a:

physical change

Answer b:

chemical change

Answer c:

physical change

Answer d:

chemical change

Separating Mixtures Through Physical Changes

Homogeneous mixtures (solutions) can be separated into their component substances by physical processes that rely on differences in some physical property, such as differences in their boiling points. Two of these separation methods are distillation and crystallization. Distillation makes use of differences in volatility, a measure of how easily a substance is converted to a gas at a given temperature. A simple distillation apparatus for separating a mixture of substances, at least one of which is a liquid. The most volatile component boils first and is condensed back to a liquid in the water-cooled condenser, from which it flows into the receiving flask. If a solution of salt and water is distilled, for example, the more volatile component, pure water, collects in the receiving flask, while the salt remains in the distillation flask.

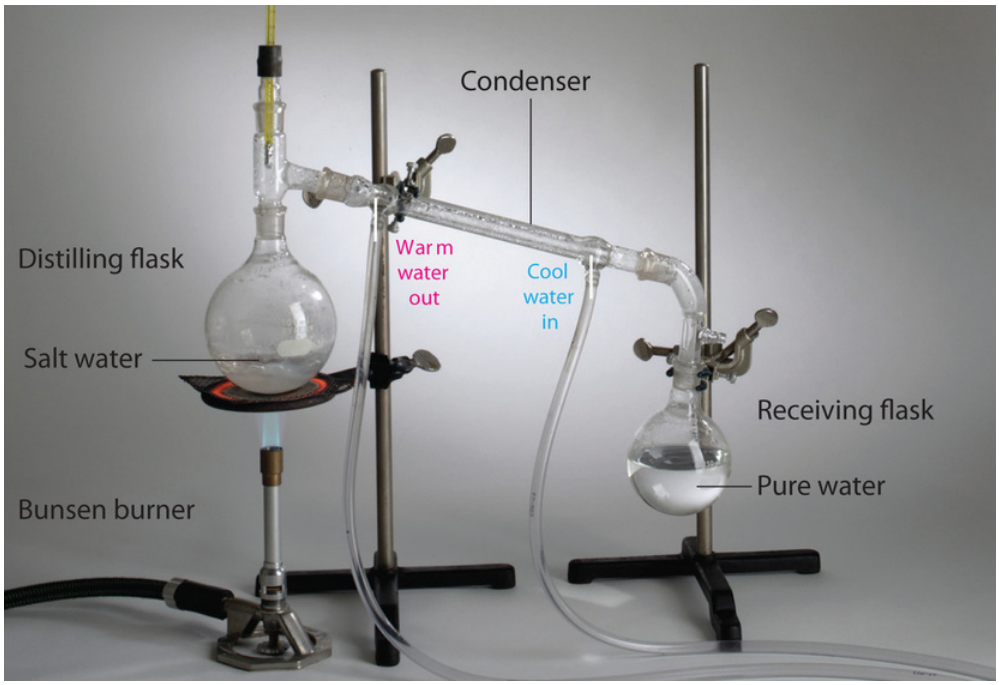


Figure **3.5.3***: The Distillation of a Solution of Table Salt in Water. The solution of salt in water is heated in the distilling flask until it boils. The resulting vapor is enriched in the more volatile component (water), which condenses to a liquid in the cold condenser and is then collected in the receiving flask.*

Parts of a distillation setup: Bunsen burner, salt water in distilling flask, condenser with cool water in and warm water out, pure water in receiving flask

Mixtures of two or more liquids with different boiling points can be separated with a more complex distillation apparatus. One example is the refining of crude petroleum into a range of useful products: aviation fuel, gasoline, kerosene, diesel fuel, and lubricating oil (in the approximate order of decreasing volatility). Another example is the distillation of alcoholic spirits such as brandy or whiskey. This relatively simple procedure caused more than a few headaches for federal authorities in the 1920s during the era of Prohibition, when illegal stills proliferated in remote regions of the United States.

Another example for using physical properties to separate mixtures is filtration (Figure **3.5.4**). Filtration is any mechanical, physical or biological operation that separates solids from fluids (liquids or gases) by adding a medium through which only the fluid can pass. The fluid that passes through is called the filtrate. There are many different methods of filtration; all aim to attain the separation of substances. Separation is achieved by some form of interaction between the substance or objects to be removed and the filter. The substance that is to pass through the filter must be a fluid, i.e. a liquid or gas. Methods of filtration vary depending on the location of the targeted material, i.e. whether it is dissolved in the fluid phase or suspended as a solid.

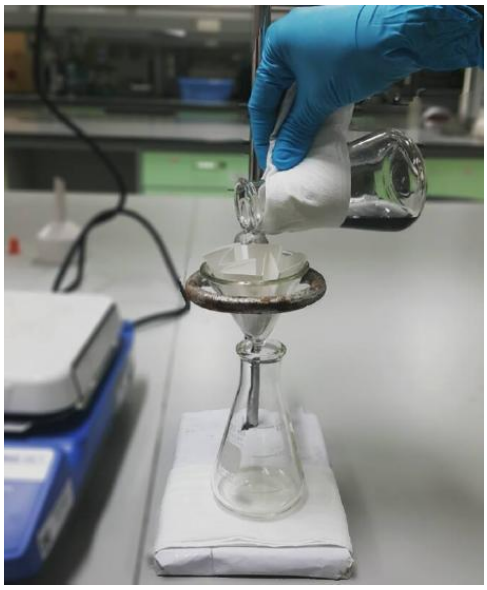


Figure **3.5.4***: Filtration for the separation of solids from a hot solution. (CC BY-SA 4.0; Suman6395).*

Summary

- Chemists make a distinction between two different types of changes that they study—physical changes and chemical changes.
- Physical changes are changes that do not alter the identity of a substance.
- Chemical changes are changes that occur when one substance is turned into another substance.
- Chemical changes are frequently harder to reverse than physical changes. Observations that indicate a chemical change has occurred include color change, temperature change, light given off, formation of bubbles, formation of a precipitate, etc.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Boundless (www.boundless.com)

3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.6: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.6: Energy

Learning Objectives

- Define heat and work.
- Distinguish between kinetic energy and potential energy.
- State the law of conservation of matter and energy.

Just like matter, energy is a term that we are all familiar with and use on a daily basis. Before you go on a long hike, you eat an *energy* bar; every month, the *energy* bill is paid; on TV, politicians argue about the *energy* crisis. But what is energy? If you stop to think about it, energy is very complicated. When you plug a lamp into an electric socket, you see energy in the form of light, but when you plug a heating pad into that same socket, you only feel warmth. Without energy, we couldn't turn on lights, we couldn't brush our teeth, we couldn't make our lunch, and we couldn't travel to school. In fact, without energy, we couldn't even wake up because our bodies require energy to function. We use energy for every single thing that we do, whether we are awake or asleep.

Ability to Do Work or Produce Heat

When we speak of *using* energy, we are really referring to *transferring* energy from one place to another. When you use energy to throw a ball, you transfer energy from your body to the ball, and this causes the ball to fly through the air. When you use energy to warm your house, you transfer energy from the furnace to the air in your home, and this causes the temperature in your house to rise. Although energy is used in many kinds of different situations, all of these uses rely on energy being transferred in one of two ways. Energy can be transferred as *heat* or as *work*.

When scientists speak of ***heat***, they are referring to energy that is transferred from an object with a higher temperature to an object with a lower temperature, as a result of the temperature difference. Heat will "flow" from the hot object to the cold object until both end up at the same temperature. When you cook with a metal pot, you witness energy being transferred in the form of heat. Initially, only the stove element is hot—the pot and the food inside the pot are cold. As a result, heat moves from the hot stove element to the cold pot. After a while, enough heat is transferred from the stove to the pot, raising the temperature of the pot and all of its contents (Figure **3.6.1**).



Figure **3.6.1**: Energy is transferred as heat from the hot stove element to the cooler pot until the pot and its contents become just as hot as the element. The energy that is transferred into the pot as heat is then used to cook the food.

Heat is only one way in which energy can be transferred. Energy can also be transferred as **work**. The scientific definition of work is *force (any push or pull) applied over a distance*. When you push an object and cause it to move, you do work, and you transfer some of *your* energy to the object. At this point, it's important to warn you of a common misconception. Sometimes we think that the amount of work done can be measured by the amount of effort put in. This may be true in everyday life, but it is not true in science. By definition, scientific work requires that force be applied *over a distance*. It does not matter how hard you push or how hard you pull. If you have not moved the object, you haven't done any work.

So far, we've talked about the two ways in which energy can be transferred from one place, or object, to another. Energy can be transferred as heat, and energy can be transferred as work. But the question still remains—*what IS energy*?

Kinetic Energy

Machines use energy, our bodies use energy, energy comes from the sun, energy comes from volcanoes, energy causes forest fires, and energy helps us to grow food. With all of these seemingly different types of energy, it's hard to believe that there are really only two different *forms* of energy: kinetic energy and potential energy. **Kinetic energy** is energy associated with motion. When an object is moving, it has kinetic energy. When the object stops moving, it has no kinetic energy. While all moving objects have kinetic energy, not all moving objects have the same amount of kinetic energy. The amount of kinetic energy possessed by an object is determined by its mass and its speed. The heavier an object is and the faster it is moving, the more kinetic energy it has.

Kinetic energy is very common, and it's easy to spot examples of it in the world around you. Sometimes we even try to capture kinetic energy and use it to power things like our home appliances. If you are from California, you might have driven through the Tehachapi Pass near Mojave or the Montezuma Hills in Solano County and seen the windmills lining the slopes of the mountains (Figure **3.6.2**). These are two of the larger wind farms in North America. As wind rushes along the hills, the kinetic energy of the moving air particles turns the windmills, trapping the wind's kinetic energy so that people can use it in their houses and offices.



Figure **3.6.2**: A wind farm in Solano County harnesses the kinetic energy of the wind. (CC BY-SA 3.0 Unported; BDS2006 at Wikipedia)

Potential Energy

Potential energy is *stored* energy. It is energy that remains available until we choose to use it. Think of a battery in a flashlight. If left on, the flashlight battery will run out of energy within a couple of hours, and the flashlight will die. If, however, you only use the flashlight when you need it, and turn it off when you don't, the battery will last for days or even months. The battery contains a certain amount of energy, and it will power the flashlight for a certain amount of time, but because the battery stores *potential* energy, you can choose to use the energy all at once, or you can save it and only use a small amount at a time.

Any stored energy is potential energy. There are a lot of different ways in which energy can be stored, and this can make potential energy very difficult to recognize. In general, an object has potential energy because of its *position relative to another object*. For example, when a rock is held above the earth, it has potential energy because of its position relative to the ground. This is *potential energy* because the energy is *stored* for as long as the rock is held in the air. Once the rock is dropped, though, the stored energy is released as kinetic energy as the rock falls.

Chemical Energy

There are other common examples of potential energy. A ball at the top of a hill stores potential energy until it is allowed to roll to the bottom. When two magnets are held next to one another, they store potential energy too. For some examples of potential energy, though, it's harder to see how "position" is involved. In chemistry, we are often interested in what is called **chemical potential energy**. Chemical potential energy is energy stored in the atoms, molecules, and chemical bonds that make up matter. How does this depend on position?

As you learned earlier, the world, and all of the chemicals in it are made up of atoms and molecules. These store potential energy that is dependent on their positions relative to one another. Of course, you can't see atoms and molecules. Nevertheless, scientists do know a lot about the ways in which atoms and molecules interact, and this allows them to figure out how much potential energy

is stored in a specific quantity (like a cup or a gallon) of a particular chemical. *Different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy* because they are made up of different atoms, and those atoms have different positions relative to one another.

> Since different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy, scientists will sometimes say that potential energy depends not only on ***position***, but also on ***composition***. Composition affects potential energy because it determines which molecules and atoms end up next to one another. For example, the total potential energy in a cup of pure water is different than the total potential energy in a cup of apple juice, because the cup of water and the cup of apple juice are *composed* of different amounts of different chemicals.

At this point, you may wonder just how useful chemical potential energy is. If you want to release the potential energy stored in an object held above the ground, you just drop it. But how do you get potential energy out of chemicals? It's actually not difficult. Use the fact that different chemicals have *different amounts of potential energy*. If you start with chemicals that have a lot of potential energy and allow them to react and form chemicals with less potential energy, all the extra energy that was in the chemicals at the beginning, but not at the end, is released.

Units of Energy

Energy is measured in one of two common units: the calorie and the joule. The joule $(\mathbf{J})$ is the SI unit of energy. The calorie is familiar because it is commonly used when referring to the amount of energy contained within food. A **calorie** $(\mathbf{cal})$ is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water by $\mathbf{1°C}$. For example, raising the temperature of $\mathbf{100\ g}$ of water from $\mathbf{20°C}$ to $\mathbf{22°C}$ would require $\mathbf{100 \times 2 = 200\ cal}$.

Calories contained within food are actually kilocalories $(\mathbf{kcal})$. In other words, if a certain snack contains 85 food calories, it actually contains $\mathbf{85\ kcal}$ or $\mathbf{85,000\ cal}$. In order to make the distinction, the dietary calorie is written with a capital C.

$$\mathbf{1\ kilocalorie = 1\ Calorie = 1000\ calories}$$

To say that the snack "contains" 85 Calories means that $\mathbf{85\ kcal}$ of energy are released when that snack is processed by your body.

Heat changes in chemical reactions are typically measured in joules rather than calories. The conversion between a joule and a calorie is shown below.

$$\mathbf{1\ J = 0.2390\ cal\ or\ 1\ cal = 4.184\ J}$$

We can calculate the amount of heat released in kilojoules when a 400 Calorie hamburger is digested.

$$\mathbf{400\ Cal = 400\ kcal \times \frac{4.184\ kJ}{1\ kcal} = 1.67 \times 10^3\ kJ}$$

Summary

- Any time we use energy, we transfer energy from one object to another.
- Energy can be transferred in one of two ways: as heat, or as work.
- Heat is the term given to energy that is transferred from a hot object to a cooler object due to the difference in their temperatures.
- Work is the term given to energy that is transferred as a result of a force applied over a distance.
- Energy comes in two fundamentally different forms: kinetic energy and potential energy.
- Kinetic energy is the energy of motion.
- Potential energy is stored energy that depends on the position of an object relative to another object.
- Chemical potential energy is a special type of potential energy that depends on the positions of different atoms and molecules relative to one another.
- Chemical potential energy can also be thought of according to its dependence on chemical composition.
- Energy can be converted from one form to another. The total amount of mass and energy in the universe is conserved.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Wikibooks

3.6: Energy is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.8: Energy** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

Learning Objectives

- Define endothermic and exothermic reactions.
- Describe how heat is transferred in endothermic and exothermic reactions.
- Determine whether a reaction is endothermic or exothermic through observations, temperature changes, or an energy diagram.

So far, we have talked about how energy exists as either *kinetic energy* or *potential energy* and how energy can be transferred as either *heat* or *work*. While it's important to understand the difference between kinetic energy and potential energy and the difference between heat and work, the truth is, energy is constantly changing. Kinetic energy is constantly being turned into potential energy, and potential energy is constantly being turned into kinetic energy. Likewise, energy that is transferred as work might later end up transferred as heat, while energy that is transferred as heat might later end up being used to do work.

Even though energy can change form, it must still follow one fundamental law: *Energy cannot be created or destroyed, it can only be changed from one form to another*. This law is known as the **Law of Conservation of Energy**. In a lot of ways, energy is like money. You can exchange quarters for dollar bills and dollar bills for quarters, but no matter how often you convert between the two, you will not end up with any more or any less money than you started with. Similarly, you can transfer (or spend) money using cash, or transfer money using a credit card; but you still spend the same amount of money, and the store still makes the same amount of money.

A campfire is an example of basic thermochemistry. The reaction is initiated by the application of heat from a match. The reaction converting wood to carbon dioxide and water (among other things) continues, releasing heat energy in the process. This heat energy can then be used to cook food, roast marshmallows, or just keep warm when it's cold outside.



An image of a campfire with colored flames, made by the burning of a garden hose in a copper pipe. (CC SA-BY 3.0; Jared)

Exothermic and Endothermic Processes

When physical or chemical changes occur, they are generally accompanied by a transfer of energy. The **law of conservation of energy** states that in any physical or chemical process, energy is neither created nor destroyed. In other words, the entire energy in the universe is conserved. In order to better understand the energy changes taking place during a reaction, we need to define two parts of the universe: *the system* and *the surroundings*. The **system** is the specific portion of matter in a given space that is being studied during an experiment or an observation. The **surroundings** are everything in the universe that is not part of the system. In practical terms for a laboratory chemist, the system is the particular chemicals being reacted, while the surroundings are the immediate vicinity within the room. During most processes, energy is exchanged between the system and the surroundings. If the system loses a certain amount of energy, that same amount of energy is gained by the surroundings. If the system gains a certain amount of energy, that energy is supplied by the surroundings.

A chemical reaction or physical change is **endothermic** if heat is absorbed by the system from the surroundings. In the course of an endothermic process, the system gains heat from the surroundings and so the temperature of the surroundings decreases. The quantity of heat for a process is represented by the letter q. The sign of q for an endothermic process is positive because the system is gaining heat. A chemical reaction or physical change is **exothermic** if heat is released by the system into the surroundings. Because the surroundings are gaining heat from the system, the temperature of the surroundings increases. The sign of q for an exothermic process is negative because the system is losing heat.

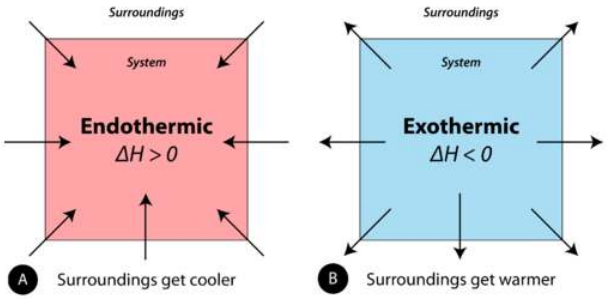


Figure 3.7.1: (A) Endothermic reaction. (B) Exothermic reaction.

Endothermic reaction: surroundings get cooler and delta H is greater than 0, Exothermic reaction: surroundings get warmer and delta H is less than 0

During phase changes, energy changes are usually involved. For example, when solid dry ice vaporizes (physical change), carbon dioxide molecules absorb energy. When liquid water becomes ice, energy is released. Remember that all chemical reactions involve a change in the bonds of the reactants. The bonds in the reactants are broken and the bonds of the products are formed. Chemical bonds have **potential energy** or "stored energy". Because we are changing the bonding, this means we are also changing how much of this "stored energy" there is in a reaction.

Energy changes are frequently shown by drawing an energy diagram. Energy diagrams show the stored/hidden energy of the reactants and products as well as the activation energy. If, on an energy diagram, the products have more stored energy than the reactants started with, the reaction is endothermic. You had to give the reaction energy. If, on the energy diagram, the products have less stored energy than the reactants started with, the reaction is exothermic.

✔ Example 3.7.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water boiling
b. gasoline burning
c. ice forming on a pond

Solution

a. Endothermic—you must put a pan of water on the stove and give it heat in order to get water to boil. Because you are adding heat/energy, the reaction is endothermic.
b. Exothermic—when you burn something, it feels hot to you because it is giving off heat into the surroundings.
c. Exothermic—think of ice forming in your freezer instead. You put water into the freezer, which takes heat out of the water, to get it to freeze. Because heat is being pulled out of the water, it is exothermic. Heat is leaving.

? Exercise 3.7.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water vapor condensing
b. gold melting

Answer (a)

exothermic

Answer (b)

endothermic

Summary

Phase changes involve changes in energy. All chemical reactions involve changes in energy. This may be a change in heat, electricity, light, or other forms of energy. Reactions that absorb energy are endothermic. Reactions that release energy are exothermic.

3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.9: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.8: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

Learning Objectives

- To relate heat transfer to temperature change.

Heat is a familiar manifestation of transferring energy. When we touch a hot object, energy flows from the hot object into our fingers, and we perceive that incoming energy as the object being “hot.” Conversely, when we hold an ice cube in our palms, energy flows from our hand into the ice cube, and we perceive that loss of energy as “cold.” In both cases, the temperature of the object is different from the temperature of our hand, so we can conclude that differences in temperatures are the ultimate cause of heat transfer.

The specific heat of a substance can be used to calculate the temperature change that a given substance will undergo when it is either heated or cooled. The equation that relates heat (q) to specific heat (c_p), mass (m), and temperature change (ΔT) is shown below.

$$q = c_p \times m \times \Delta T$$

The heat that is either absorbed or released is measured in joules. The mass is measured in grams. The change in temperature is given by $\Delta T = T_f - T_i$, where T_f is the final temperature and T_i is the initial temperature.

Every substance has a characteristic specific heat, which is reported in units of cal/g•°C or cal/g•K, depending on the units used to express Δ*T*. The specific heat of a substance is the amount of energy that must be transferred to or from 1 g of that substance to change its temperature by 1°. Table **3.8.1** lists the specific heats for various materials.

Table **3.8.1**: *Specific Heats of Some Common Substances*

Substance	Specific Heat $(J/g^{\circ}C)$
Water (l)	4.18
Water (s)	2.06
Water (g)	1.87
Ammonia (g)	2.09
Ethanol (l)	2.44
Aluminum (s)	0.897
Carbon, graphite (s)	0.709
Copper (s)	0.385
Gold (s)	0.129
Iron (s)	0.449
Lead (s)	0.129
Mercury (l)	0.140
Silver (s)	0.233

The *direction* of heat flow is not shown in heat = *mc*Δ*T*. If energy goes into an object, the total energy of the object increases, and the values of heat Δ*T* are positive. If energy is coming out of an object, the total energy of the object decreases, and the values of heat and Δ*T* are negative.

Example 3.8.1

A 15.0 g piece of cadmium metal absorbs 134 J of heat while rising from 24.0°C to 62.7°C. Calculate the specific heat of cadmium.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Heat $= q = 134\ \text{J}$
- Mass $= m = 15.0\ \text{g}$
- $\Delta T = 62.7^\circ\text{C} - 24.0^\circ\text{C} = 38.7^\circ\text{C}$

Unknown

- c_p of cadmium $= ?\ \text{J/g}^\circ\text{C}$

The specific heat equation can be rearranged to solve for the specific heat.

Step 2: Solve.

$$c_p = \frac{q}{m \times \Delta T} = \frac{134\ \text{J}}{15.0\ \text{g} \times 38.7^\circ\text{C}} = 0.231\ \text{J/g}^\circ\text{C}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The specific heat of cadmium, a metal, is fairly close to the specific heats of other metals. The result has three significant figures.

Since most specific heats are known (Table 3.8.1), they can be used to determine the final temperature attained by a substance when it is either heated or cooled. Suppose that a 60.0 g of water at 23.52°C was cooled by the removal of 813 J of heat. The change in temperature can be calculated using the specific heat equation:

$$\Delta T = \frac{q}{c_p \times m} = \frac{813\ \text{J}}{4.18\ \text{J/g}^\circ\text{C} \times 60.0\ \text{g}} = 3.24^\circ\text{C}$$

Since the water was being cooled, the temperature decreases. The final temperature is:

$$T_f = 23.52^\circ\text{C} - 3.24^\circ\text{C} = 20.28^\circ\text{C}$$

Example 3.8.2

What quantity of heat is transferred when a 150.0 g block of iron metal is heated from 25.0°C to 73.3°C? What is the direction of heat flow?

Solution

We can use heat = $mc\Delta T$ to determine the amount of heat, but first we need to determine ΔT. Because the final temperature of the iron is 73.3°C and the initial temperature is 25.0°C, ΔT is as follows:

$$\Delta T = T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}} = 73.3^\circ\text{C} - 25.0^\circ\text{C} = 48.3^\circ\text{C}$$

The mass is given as 150.0 g, and Table 7.3 gives the specific heat of iron as 0.108 cal/g•°C. Substitute the known values into heat = $mc\Delta T$ and solve for amount of heat:

$$\text{heat} = (150.0\ \text{g})\left(0.108\ \frac{\text{cal}}{\text{g} \cdot {}^\circ\text{C}}\right)(48.3^\circ\text{C}) = 782\ \text{cal}$$

Note how the gram and °C units cancel algebraically, leaving only the calorie unit, which is a unit of heat. Because the temperature of the iron increases, energy (as heat) must be flowing *into* the metal.

? Exercise 3.8.1

What quantity of heat is transferred when a 295.5 g block of aluminum metal is cooled from 128.0°C to 22.5°C? What is the direction of heat flow?

Answer

Heat leaves the aluminum block.

✓ Example 3.8.2

A 10.3 g sample of a reddish-brown metal gave off 71.7 cal of heat as its temperature decreased from 97.5°C to 22.0°C. What is the specific heat of the metal? Can you identify the metal from the data in Table **3.8.1**?

Solution

The question gives us the heat, the final and initial temperatures, and the mass of the sample. The value of ΔT is as follows:

$$\Delta T = T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}} = 22.0°\text{C} - 97.5°\text{C} = -75.5°\text{C}$$

If the sample gives off 71.7 cal, it loses energy (as heat), so the value of heat is written as a negative number, −71.7 cal. Substitute the known values into heat = $mc\Delta T$ and solve for c:

$$-71.7 \text{ cal} = (10.3 \text{ g})(c)(-75.5°\text{C})$$

$$c = \frac{-71.7 \text{ cal}}{(10.3 \text{ g})(-75.5°\text{C})}$$

$$c = 0.0923 \text{ cal/g•°C}$$

This value for specific heat is very close to that given for copper in Table 7.3.

? Exercise 3.8.2

A 10.7 g crystal of sodium chloride (NaCl) has an initial temperature of 37.0°C. What is the final temperature of the crystal if 147 cal of heat were supplied to it?

Answer

Summary

Specific heat calculations are illustrated.

3.8: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.12: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.9: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Identify the different between temperature and heat.
- Recognize the different scales used to measure temperature

The concept of temperature may seem familiar to you, but many people confuse temperature with heat. **Temperature** is a measure of how hot or cold an object is relative to another object (its thermal energy content), whereas **heat** is the flow of thermal energy between objects with different temperatures. Temperature is a measure of the average kinetic energy of the particles in matter. In everyday usage, temperature indicates a measure of how hot or cold an object is. Temperature is an important parameter in chemistry. When a substance changes from solid to liquid, it is because there was in increase in the temperature of the material. Chemical reactions usually proceed faster if the temperature is increased. Many unstable materials (such as enzymes) will be viable longer at lower temperatures.



Figure **3.9.1**: The glowing charcoal on the left represents high kinetic energy, while the snow and ice on the right are of much lower kinetic energy.

Three different scales are commonly used to measure temperature: Fahrenheit (expressed as °F), Celsius (°C), and Kelvin (K). Thermometers measure temperature by using materials that expand or contract when heated or cooled. Mercury or alcohol thermometers, for example, have a reservoir of liquid that expands when heated and contracts when cooled, so the liquid column lengthens or shortens as the temperature of the liquid changes.



Figure **3.9.2**: Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit (left), Anders Celsius (center), and Lord Kelvin (right).

The Fahrenheit Scale

The first thermometers were glass and contained alcohol, which expanded and contracted as the temperature changed. The German scientist, Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit used mercury in the tube, an idea put forth by Ismael Boulliau. The Fahrenheit scale was first developed in 1724 and tinkered with for some time after that. The main problem with this scale is the arbitrary definitions of temperature. The freezing point of water was defined as $32°F$ and the boiling point as $212°F$. The Fahrenheit scale is typically not used for scientific purposes.

The Celsius Scale

The Celsius scale of the metric system is named after Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius (1701-1744). The Celsius scale sets the freezing point and boiling point of water at $0°C$ and $100°C$ respectively. The distance between those two points is divided into 100 equal intervals, each of which is one degree. Another term sometimes used for the Celsius scale is "centigrade" because there are 100 degrees between the freezing and boiling points of water on this scale. However, the preferred term is "Celsius".

The Kelvin Scale

The Kelvin temperature scale is named after Scottish physicist and mathematician Lord Kelvin (1824-1907). It is based on molecular motion, with the temperature of $0\ \mathrm{K}$, also known as absolute zero, being the point where all molecular motion ceases. The freezing point of water on the Kelvin scale is $273.15\ \mathrm{K}$, while the boiling point is $373.15\ \mathrm{K}$. Notice that there is no "degree" used in the temperature designation. Unlike the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales where temperatures are referred to as "degrees F" or "degrees C", we simply designate temperatures in the Kelvin scale as kelvins.

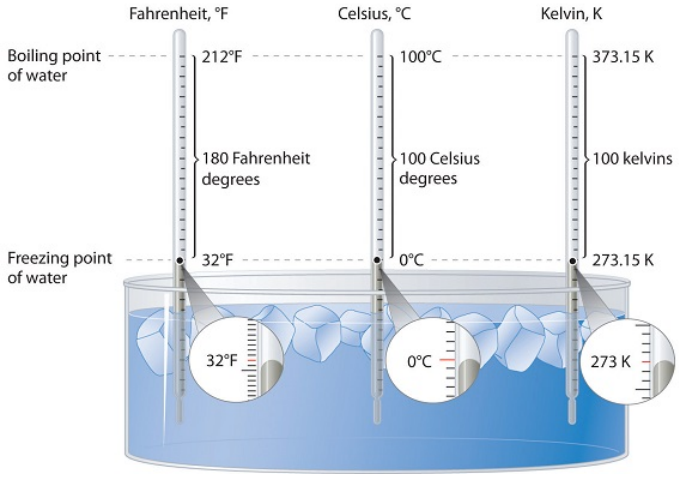


Figure 3.9.1: A Comparison of the Fahrenheit, Celsius, and Kelvin Temperature Scales. Because the difference between the freezing point of water and the boiling point of water is 100° on both the Celsius and Kelvin scales, the size of a degree Celsius (°C) and a kelvin (K) are precisely the same. In contrast, both a degree Celsius and a kelvin are 9/5 the size of a degree Fahrenheit (°F). (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonymous)

Converting Between Scales

The Kelvin is the same size as the Celsius degree, so measurements are easily converted from one to the other. The freezing point of water is 0°C = 273.15 K; the boiling point of water is 100°C = 373.15 K. The Kelvin and Celsius scales are related as follows:

$$T\,(\text{in °C}) + 273.15 = T\,(\text{in K}) \tag{3.10.1}$$

$$T\ \ (\text{in K}) - 273.15 = T\ (\text{in °C}) \tag{3.10.2}$$

Degrees on the Fahrenheit scale, however, are based on an English tradition of using 12 divisions, just as 1 ft = 12 in. The relationship between degrees Fahrenheit and degrees Celsius is as follows: where the coefficient for degrees Fahrenheit is exact. (Some calculators have a function that allows you to convert directly between °F and °C.) There is only one temperature for which the numerical value is the same on both the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales: −40°C = −40°F. The relationship between the scales is as follows:

$$°C = \frac{(°F - 32)}{1.8} \tag{3.10.3}$$

$$°F = 1.8 \times (°C) + 32 \tag{3.10.4}$$

Example 3.9.1: Temperature Conversions

A student is ill with a temperature of 103.5°F. What is her temperature in °C and K?

Solution

Converting from Fahrenheit to Celsius requires the use of Equation 3.10.3:

$$°C = \frac{(103.5°F - 32)}{1.8} \tag{3.9.1}$$

$$= 39.7\,°C \tag{3.9.2}$$

Converting from Celsius to Kelvin requires the use of Equation 3.10.1:

$$K = 39.7\,°C + 273.15 \quad (3.9.3)$$
$$= 312.9\,K \quad (3.9.4)$$

? Exercise 3.9.1

Convert each temperature to °C and °F.

a. the temperature of the surface of the sun (5800 K)
b. the boiling point of gold (3080 K)
c. the boiling point of liquid nitrogen (77.36 K)

Answer (a)

5527 K, 9980 °F

Answer (b)

2807 K, 5084 °F

Answer (c)

-195.79 K, -320.42 °F

Summary

Three different scales are commonly used to measure temperature: Fahrenheit (expressed as °F), Celsius (°C), and Kelvin (K).

Contributions & Attributions

3.9: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.10: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)

3.1: In Your Room

3.2: What Is Matter?

1. What is matter?
2. What does weight mean?
3. In this chapter, we'll learn about atoms, which are the building blocks of all matter in the universe. As of 2011, scientists only know of 118 different types of atoms. How do you think it's possible to generate so many different forms of matter using only 118 types of building blocks?
4. Which do you think has more matter, a cup of water or a cup of mercury? Explain.
5. Decide whether each of the following statements is true or false.
   a. Mass and weight are two words for the same concept.
   b. Molecules are bonded together to form atoms.
   c. Alchemists couldn't make gold out of common metals because gold is an element.
   d. The symbol for Gold in the periodic table is Gd.
6. Would you have more mass on the moon or on Earth?
7. Would you have more weight on the moon or on Earth? The force of gravity is stronger on the Earth than it is on the moon.
8. Match the following terms with their meaning.

Terms	Definitions
(a) Mass	a. a measure of the total quantity of matter in an object
(b) Volume	b. a measure of how strongly gravity pulls on an object
(c) Weight	c. a measure of the space occupied by an object

9. For the following statements, circle all of the options that apply:
   - Mass depends on…

     (a) the total quantity of matter

     (b) the temperature

     (c) the location

     (d) the force of gravity
   - Volume depends on…

     (a) the total quantity of matter

     (b) the temperature

     (c) the object's shape (independent of size)

     (d) the object's size (independent of shape)
   - Weight depends on…

     (a) the total quantity of matter

     (b) the temperature

     (c) the location

     (d) the force of gravity

3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its State: Solid, Liquid, and Gas

3.4 Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

3.5: Differences in Matter: Physical and Chemical Properties

3.6: Changes in Matter: Physical and Chemical Changes

3.7: Conservation of Mass: There is No New Matter

3.8: Energy

1. Classify each of the following as energy primarily transferred as heat, or energy primarily transferred as work:
   a. The energy transferred from your body to a shopping cart as you push the shopping cart down the aisle.
   b. The energy transferred from a wave to your board when you go surfing.
   c. The energy transferred from the flames to your hotdog when you cook your hotdog over a campfire.
2. Decide whether each of the following statements is true or false:
   a. When heat is transferred to an object, the object cools down.
   b. Any time you raise the temperature of an object, you have done work.
   c. Any time you move an object by applying force, you have done work.
   d. Any time you apply force to an object, you have done work.
3. Rank the following scenarios in order of increasing work:
   a. You apply 100 N of force to a boulder and successfully move it by 2 m.
   b. You apply 100 N of force to a boulder and successfully move it by 1 m.
   c. You apply 200 N of force to a boulder and successfully move it by 2 m.
   d. You apply 200 N of force to a boulder but cannot move the boulder.
4. In science, a vacuum is defined as space that contains absolutely no matter (no molecules, no atoms, etc.) Can energy be transferred as heat through a vacuum? Why or why not?
5. Classify each of the following energies as kinetic energy or potential energy:
   a. The energy in a chocolate bar.
   b. The energy of rushing water used to turn a turbine or a water wheel.
   c. The energy of a skater gliding on the ice.
   d. The energy in a stretched rubber band.
6. Decide which of the following objects has more kinetic energy:
   a. A 200 lb. man running at 6 mph or a 200 lb. man running at 3 mph.
   b. A 200 lb. man running at 7 mph or a 150 lb. man running at 7 mph.
   c. A 400 lb. man running at 5 mph or a 150 lb. man running at 3 mph.
7. A car and a truck are traveling along the highway at the same speed.
   a. If the car weighs 1500 kg and the truck weighs 2500 kg, which has more kinetic energy, the car or the truck?
   b. Both the car and the truck convert the potential energy stored in gasoline into the kinetic energy of motion. Which do you think uses more gas to travel the same distance, the car or the truck?
8. You mix two chemicals in a beaker and notice that as the chemicals react, the beaker becomes noticeably colder. Which chemicals have more chemical potential energy, those present at the start of the reaction or those present at the end of the reaction?

3.9: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

3.10: Temperature: Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

3.11: Temperature Changes: Heat Capacity

3.12: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

1. A pot of water is set on a hot burner of a stove. What is the direction of heat flow?
2. Some uncooked macaroni is added to a pot of boiling water. What is the direction of heat flow?

3. How much energy in calories is required to heat 150 g of H_2O from 0°C to 100°C?
4. How much energy in calories is required to heat 125 g of Fe from 25°C to 150°C?
5. If 250 cal of heat were added to 43.8 g of Al at 22.5°C, what is the final temperature of the aluminum?
6. If 195 cal of heat were added to 33.2 g of Hg at 56.2°C, what is the final temperature of the mercury?
7. A sample of copper absorbs 145 cal of energy, and its temperature rises from 37.8°C to 41.7°C. What is the mass of the copper?
8. A large, single crystal of sodium chloride absorbs 98.0 cal of heat. If its temperature rises from 22.0°C to 29.7°C, what is the mass of the NaCl crystal?
9. If 1.00 g of each substance in Table 7.3 were to absorb 100 cal of heat, which substance would experience the largest temperature change?
10. If 1.00 g of each substance in Table 7.3 were to absorb 100 cal of heat, which substance would experience the smallest temperature change?
11. Determine the heat capacity of a substance if 23.6 g of the substance gives off 199 cal of heat when its temperature changes from 37.9°C to 20.9°C.
12. What is the heat capacity of gold if a 250 g sample needs 133 cal of energy to increase its temperature from 23.0°C to 40.1°C?

Answers

1. Heat flows into the pot of water.
3. 15,000 cal
5. 49.0°C
7. 404 g
9. Mercury would experience the largest temperature change.
11. 0.496 cal/g•°C

3.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Atoms

4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
4.2: The Nuclear Atom
4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
4.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons
4.5: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies
4.8: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element’s Atoms

4: Atoms is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

- Give a short history of the concept of the atom.
- Describe the contributions of Democritus and Dalton to atomic theory.
- Summarize Dalton's atomic theory and explain its historical development.

You learned earlier that all matter in the universe is made out of tiny building blocks called atoms. All modern scientists accept the concept of the atom, but when the concept of the atom was first proposed about 2,500 years ago, ancient philosophers laughed at the idea. It has always been difficult to convince people of the existence of things that are too small to see. We will spend some time considering the evidence (observations) that convince scientists of the existence of atoms.

Democritus and the Greek Philosophers

About 2,500 years ago, early Greek philosophers believed the entire universe was a single, huge, entity. In other words, "everything was one." They believed that all objects, all matter, and all substances were connected as a single, big, unchangeable "thing." One of the first people to propose "atoms" was a man known as Democritus. As an alternative to the beliefs of the Greek philosophers, he suggested that **atomos**, or atomon—tiny, indivisible, solid objects—make up all matter in the universe.



Figure **4.1.1**: (left) Democritus by Hendrick ter Brugghen, 1628. Democritus was known as the "laughing philosopher." It was a good thing he liked to laugh, because most other philosophers were laughing at his theories. (right) British physicist and chemist John Dalton (1766-1844). Unlike the Greek philosophers, John Dalton believed in both logical thinking and experimentation.

Democritus then reasoned that changes occur when the many atomos in an object were reconnected or recombined in different ways. Democritus even extended this theory, suggesting that there were different varieties of atomos with different shapes, sizes, and masses. He thought, however, that shape, size, and mass were the only properties differentiating the different types of atomos. According to Democritus, other characteristics, like color and taste, did not reflect properties of the atomos themselves, but rather, resulted from the different ways in which the atomos were combined and connected to one another.

The early Greek philosophers tried to understand the nature of the world through reason and logic, but not through experiment and observation. As a result, they had some very interesting ideas, but they felt no need to justify their ideas based on life experiences. In a lot of ways, you can think of the Greek philosophers as being "all thought and no action." It's truly amazing how much they achieved using their minds, but because they never performed any experiments, they missed or rejected a lot of discoveries that they could have made otherwise. Greek philosophers dismissed Democritus' theory entirely. Sadly, it took over two millennia before the theory of atomos (or "atoms," as they are known today) was fully appreciated.

Greeks: "All Thought and No Action"

Greek philosophers were "all thought and no action" and did not feel the need to test their theories with reality. In contrast, Dalton's efforts were based on experimentation and testing ideas against reality.

While it must be assumed that many more scientists, philosophers, and others studied composition of matter after Democritus, a major leap forward in our understanding of the composition of matter took place in the 1800's with the work of the British

scientists John Dalton. He started teaching school at age twelve, and was primarily known as a teacher. In his twenties, he moved to the growing city of Manchester, where he was able to pursue some scientific studies. His work in several areas of science brought him a number of honors. When he died, over 40,000 people in Manchester marched at his funeral.

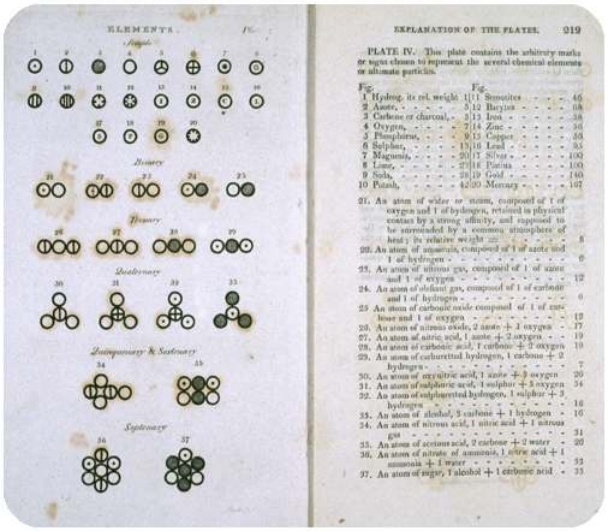
The modern atomic theory, proposed about 1803 by the English chemist John Dalton (Figure **4.1.1**), is a fundamental concept that states that all elements are composed of atoms. Previously, we defined an atom as the smallest part of an element that maintains the identity of that element. Individual atoms are extremely small; even the largest atom has an approximate diameter of only 5.4×10^{-10} m. With that size, it takes over 18 million of these atoms, lined up side by side, to equal the width of your little finger (about 1 cm).

Dalton studied the weights of various elements and compounds. He noticed that matter always combined in fixed ratios based on weight, or volume in the case of gases. Chemical compounds always contain the same proportion of elements by mass, regardless of amount, which provided further support for Proust's law of definite proportions. Dalton also observed that there could be more than one combination of two elements.

From his experiments and observations, as well as the work from peers of his time, Dalton proposed a new theory of the **atom**. This later became known as Dalton's **atomic theory**. The general tenets of this theory were as follows:

- All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
- Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties. Atoms of different elements differ in size, mass, and other properties.
- Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
- Atoms of different elements can combine in simple whole number ratios to form chemical compounds.
- In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

Dalton's atomic theory has been largely accepted by the scientific community, with the exception of three changes. We know now that (1) an atom can be further subdivided, (2) all atoms of an element are not identical in mass, and (3) using nuclear fission and fusion techniques, we can create or destroy atoms by changing them into other atoms.


ELEMENTS.

EXPLANATION OF THE PLATES. 219

PLATE IV. This plate contains the arbitrary marks or signs chosen to represent the several chemical elements or ultimate particles.

Figure **4.1.2**: Dalton's symbols from his text "A New System of Chemical Philosophy."

The evidence for atoms is so great that few doubt their existence. In fact, individual atoms are now routinely observed with state-of-the art technologies. Moreover, they can even be used for making pretty images; or as IBM research demonstrates in Video **4.1.1**, control of individual atoms can be use used create animations.



Video **4.1.1**: A Boy And His Atom: The World's Smallest Movie.

A Boy and His Atom is a 2012 stop-motion animated short film released by IBM Research. The movie tells the story of a boy and a wayward atom who meet and become friends. It depicts a boy playing with an atom that takes various forms. It was made by moving carbon monoxide molecules viewed with a scanning tunneling microscope, a device that magnifies them 100 million times. These molecules were moved to create images, which were then saved as individual frames to make the film.

Summary

- 2,500 years ago, Democritus suggested that all matter in the universe was made up of tiny, indivisible, solid objects he called "atomos." However, other Greek philosophers disliked Democritus' "atomos" theory because they felt it was illogical.
- Dalton's Atomic Theory is the first scientific theory to relate chemical changes to the structure, properties, and behavior of the atom. The general tenets of this theory are:
  - All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
  - Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties. Atoms of different elements differ in size, mass, and other properties.
  - Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
  - Atoms of different elements can combine in simple whole number ratios to form chemical compounds.
  - In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.2: The Nuclear Atom

Learning Objectives

- Explain the observations that led to Thomson's discovery of the electron.
- Describe Thomson's "plum pudding" model of the atom and the evidence for it.
- Draw a diagram of Thomson's "plum pudding" model of the atom and explain why it has this name.
- Describe Rutherford's gold foil experiment and explain how this experiment altered the "plum pudding" model.
- Draw a diagram of the Rutherford model of the atom and label the nucleus and the electron cloud.

Dalton's Atomic Theory held up well to a lot of the different chemical experiments that scientists performed to test it. In fact, for almost 100 years, it seemed as if Dalton's Atomic Theory was the whole truth. However, in 1897, a scientist named J. J. Thomson conducted some research that suggested that Dalton's Atomic Theory was not the entire story. He suggested that the small, negatively charged particles making up the cathode ray were actually pieces of atoms. He called these pieces "corpuscles," although today we know them as **electrons**. Thanks to his clever experiments and careful reasoning, J. J. Thomson is credited with the discovery of the electron.



Figure **4.2.1**: J. J. Thomson (center) concluded experiments that suggested that Dalton's (left) atomic theory was not telling the entire story. Ernest Rutherford (right) later built on Thomson's work to argue for the model nuclear atom.

Electrons and Plums

The electron was discovered by J. J. Thomson in 1897. The existence of protons was also known, as was the fact that atoms were neutral in charge. Since the intact atom had no net charge and the electron and proton had opposite charges, the next step after the discovery of subatomic particles was to figure out how these particles were arranged in the atom. This was a difficult task because of the incredibly small size of the atom. Therefore, scientists set out to design a model of what they believed the atom could look like. The goal of each **atomic model** was to accurately represent all of the experimental evidence about atoms in the simplest way possible.

Following the discovery of the electron, J.J. Thomson developed what became known as the "**plum pudding**" model in 1904. Plum pudding is an English dessert similar to a blueberry muffin. In Thomson's plum pudding model of the atom, the electrons were embedded in a uniform sphere of positive charge like blueberries stuck into a muffin. The positive matter was thought to be jelly-like or similar to a thick soup. The electrons were somewhat mobile. As they got closer to the outer portion of the atom, the positive charge in the region was greater than the neighboring negative charges, and the electron would be pulled back more toward the center region of the atom.

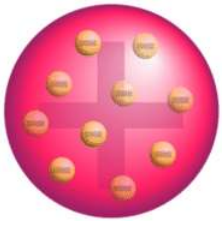


Figure **4.2.2**: The "plum pudding" model.

However, this model of the atom soon gave way to a new model developed by New Zealander Ernest Rutherford (1871-1937) about five years later. Thomson did still receive many honors during his lifetime, including being awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1906 and a knighthood in 1908.

Atoms and Gold

In 1911, Rutherford and coworkers Hans Geiger and Ernest Marsden initiated a series of groundbreaking experiments that would completely change the accepted model of the atom. They bombarded very thin sheets of gold foil with fast moving **alpha particles**. Alpha particles, a type of natural radioactive particle, are positively charged particles with a mass about four times that of a hydrogen atom.

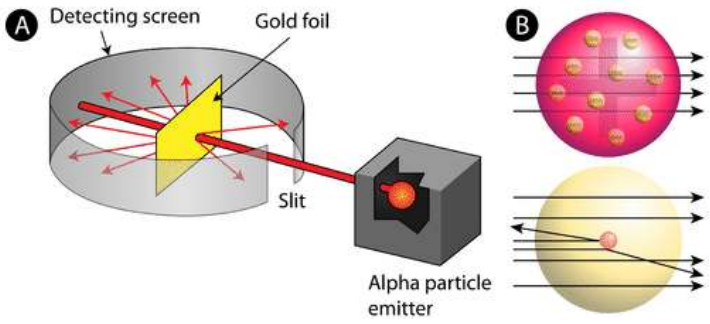


Figure **4.2.3**: (A) The experimental setup for Rutherford's gold foil experiment: A radioactive element that emitted alpha particles was directed toward a thin sheet of gold foil that was surrounded by a screen which would allow detection of the deflected particles. (B) According to the plum pudding model (top), all of the alpha particles should have passed through the gold foil with little or no deflection. Rutherford found that a small percentage of alpha particles were deflected at large angles, which could be explained by an atom with a very small, dense, positively-charged nucleus at its center (bottom).

According to the accepted atomic model, in which an atom's mass and charge are uniformly distributed throughout the atom, the scientists expected that all of the alpha particles would pass through the gold foil with only a slight deflection or none at all. Surprisingly, while most of the alpha particles were indeed not deflected, a very small percentage (about 1 in 8000 particles) bounced off the gold foil at very large angles. Some were even redirected back toward the source. No prior knowledge had prepared them for this discovery. In a famous quote, Rutherford exclaimed that it was "as if you had fired a 15-inch [artillery] shell at a piece of tissue and it came back and hit you."

Rutherford needed to come up with an entirely new model of the atom in order to explain his results. Because the vast majority of the alpha particles had passed through the gold, he reasoned that most of the atom was empty space. In contrast, the particles that were highly deflected must have experienced a tremendously powerful force within the atom. He concluded that all of the positive charge and the majority of the mass of the atom must be concentrated in a very small space in the atom's interior, which he called the nucleus. The **nucleus** is the tiny, dense, central core of the atom and is composed of protons and neutrons.

Rutherford's atomic model became known as the **nuclear model**. In the nuclear atom, the protons and neutrons, which comprise nearly all of the mass of the atom, are located in the nucleus at the center of the atom. The electrons are distributed around the nucleus and occupy most of the volume of the atom. It is worth emphasizing just how small the nucleus is compared to the rest of the atom. If we could blow up an atom to be the size of a large professional football stadium, the nucleus would be about the size of a marble.

Rutherford's model proved to be an important step towards a full understanding of the atom. However, it did not completely address the nature of the electrons and the way in which they occupy the vast space around the nucleus. It was not until some years later that a full understanding of the electron was achieved. This proved to be the key to understanding the chemical properties of elements.

Atomic Nucleus

The **nucleus** (plural, nuclei) is a positively charged region at the center of the atom. It consists of two types of subatomic particles packed tightly together. The particles are protons, which have a positive electric charge, and neutrons, which are neutral in electric charge. Outside of the nucleus, an atom is mostly empty space, with orbiting negative particles called electrons whizzing through it. The figure below shows these parts of the atom.

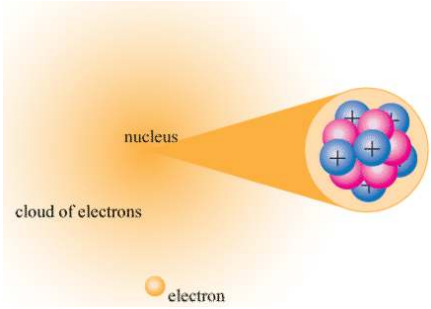


Figure **4.2.4**: The nuclear atom.

The nucleus of the atom is extremely small. Its radius is only about 1/100,000 of the total radius of the atom. Electrons have virtually no mass, but protons and neutrons have a lot of mass for their size. As a result, the nucleus has virtually all the mass of an atom. Given its great mass and tiny size, the nucleus is very dense. If an object the size of a penny had the same density as the nucleus of an atom, its mass would be greater than 30 million tons!

Holding it all Together

Particles with opposite electric charges attract each other. This explains why negative electrons orbit the positive nucleus. Particles with the same electric charge repel each other. This means that the positive protons in the nucleus push apart from one another. So why doesn't the nucleus fly apart? An even stronger force—called the **strong nuclear force**—holds protons and neutrons together in the nucleus.

Summary

- Atoms are the ultimate building blocks of all matter.
- The modern atomic theory establishes the concepts of atoms and how they compose matter.
- Bombardment of gold foil with alpha particles showed that some particles were deflected.
- The nuclear model of the atom consists of a small and dense positively charged interior surrounded by a cloud of electrons.

4.2: The Nuclear Atom is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.3: The Nuclear Atom** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Describe the locations, charges, and masses of the three main subatomic particles.
- Determine the number of protons and electrons in an atom.
- Define atomic mass unit (amu).

Dalton's Atomic Theory explained a lot about matter, chemicals, and chemical reactions. Nevertheless, it was not entirely accurate, because contrary to what Dalton believed, atoms can, in fact, be broken apart into smaller subunits or subatomic particles. We have been talking about the electron in great detail, but there are two other particles of interest to us: protons and neutrons. We already learned that J. J. Thomson discovered a negatively charged particle, called the **electron**. Rutherford proposed that these electrons orbit a positive nucleus. In subsequent experiments, he found that there is a smaller positively charged particle in the nucleus, called a **proton**. There is also a third subatomic particle, known as a neutron.

Electrons

Electrons are one of three main types of particles that make up atoms. Unlike protons and neutrons, which consist of smaller, simpler particles, electrons are fundamental particles that do not consist of smaller particles. They are a type of fundamental particle called leptons. All leptons have an electric charge of -1 or 0. Electrons are extremely small. The mass of an electron is only about 1/2000 the mass of a proton or neutron, so electrons contribute virtually nothing to the total mass of an atom. Electrons have an electric charge of -1, which is equal but opposite to the charge of a proton, which is $+1$. All atoms have the same number of electrons as protons, so the positive and negative charges "cancel out", making atoms electrically neutral.

Unlike protons and neutrons, which are located inside the nucleus at the center of the atom, electrons are found outside the nucleus. Because opposite electric charges attract one another, negative electrons are attracted to the positive nucleus. This force of attraction keeps electrons constantly moving through the otherwise empty space around the nucleus. The figure below is a common way to represent the structure of an atom. It shows the electron as a particle orbiting the nucleus, similar to the way that planets orbit the sun. However, this is an incorrect perspective, as quantum mechanics demonstrates that electrons are more complicated.



Figure **4.3.1**: Electrons are much smaller than protons or neutrons. If an electron was the mass of a penny, a proton or a neutron would have the mass of a large bowling ball!

Protons

A proton is one of three main particles that make up the atom. Protons are found in the nucleus of the atom. This is a tiny, dense region at the center of the atom. Protons have a positive electrical charge of one $(+1)$ and a mass of 1 atomic mass unit (amu), which is about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms. Together with neutrons, they make up virtually all of the mass of an atom.

Neutrons

Atoms of all elements—except for most atoms of hydrogen—have neutrons in their nucleus. Unlike protons and electrons, which are electrically charged, neutrons have no charge—they are electrically neutral. That's why the neutrons in the diagram above are labeled n^0. The zero stands for "zero charge". The mass of a neutron is slightly greater than the mass of a proton, which is 1 atomic

mass unit (amu). (An atomic mass unit equals about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms.) A neutron also has about the same diameter as a proton, or 1.7×10^{-15} meters.

As you might have already guessed from its name, the neutron is neutral. In other words, it has no charge whatsoever and is therefore neither attracted to nor repelled from other objects. Neutrons are in every atom (with one exception), and they are bound together with other neutrons and protons in the atomic nucleus.

Before we move on, we must discuss how the different types of subatomic particles interact with each other. When it comes to neutrons, the answer is obvious. Since neutrons are neither attracted to nor repelled from objects, they don't really interact with protons or electrons (beyond being bound into the nucleus with the protons).

Even though electrons, protons, and neutrons are all types of subatomic particles, they are not all the same size. When you compare the masses of electrons, protons, and neutrons, what you find is that electrons have an extremely small mass, compared to either protons or neutrons. On the other hand, the masses of protons and neutrons are fairly similar, although technically, the mass of a neutron is slightly larger than the mass of a proton. Because protons and neutrons are so much more massive than electrons, almost all of the mass of any atom comes from the nucleus, which contains all of the neutrons and protons.

Table 4.3.1: Properties of Subatomic Particles

Particle	Symbol	Mass (amu)	Relative Mass (proton = 1)	Relative Charge	Location
proton	p^+	1	1	+1	inside the nucleus
electron	e^-	5.45×10^{-4}	0.00055	−1	outside the nucleus
neutron	n^0	1	1	0	inside the nucleus

Table 4.3.1 gives the properties and locations of electrons, protons, and neutrons. The third column shows the masses of the three subatomic particles in "atomic mass units." An **atomic mass unit (amu)** is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of a carbon-12 atom. Atomic mass units (amu) are useful, because, as you can see, the mass of a proton and the mass of a neutron are almost exactly 1 in this unit system.

Negative and positive charges of equal magnitude cancel each other out. This means that the negative charge on an electron perfectly balances the positive charge on the proton. In other words, a neutral atom must have exactly one electron for every proton. If a neutral atom has 1 proton, it must have 1 electron. If a neutral atom has 2 protons, it must have 2 electrons. If a neutral atom has 10 protons, it must have 10 electrons. You get the idea. In order to be neutral, an atom must have the same number of electrons and protons.

Summary

- Electrons are a type of subatomic particle with a negative charge.
- Protons are a type of subatomic particle with a positive charge. Protons are bound together in an atom's nucleus as a result of the strong nuclear force.
- Neutrons are a type of subatomic particle with no charge (they are neutral). Like protons, neutrons are bound into the atom's nucleus as a result of the strong nuclear force.
- Protons and neutrons have approximately the same mass, but they are both much more massive than electrons (approximately 2,000 times as massive as an electron).
- The positive charge on a proton is equal in magnitude to the negative charge on an electron. As a result, a neutral atom must have an equal number of protons and electrons.
- The atomic mass unit (amu) is a unit of mass equal to one-twelfth the mass of a carbon-12 atom

4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons

Learning Objectives

- Define atomic number.
- Define mass number.
- Determine the number of protons, neutrons, and electrons in an atom.

It's important to be able to distinguish atoms of one element from atoms of another element. Elements are pure substances that make up all other matter, so each one is given a unique name. The names of elements are also represented by unique one- or two-letter symbols, such as **H** for hydrogen, **C** for carbon, or **He** for helium. However, it would more powerful if these names could be used to identify the numbers of protons and neutrons in the atoms. That's where atomic number and mass number are useful.



Figure **4.4.1**: It is difficult to find qualities that differ between each element, and to distinguish one element from another. Each element, however, does have a unique number of protons. Sulfur has 16 protons, silicon has 14 protons, and gold has 79 protons. Images used with permission (public domain for sulfur and silicon, gold is licensed by CC-BY-SA-NC-ND; Alchemist-hp).

Atomic Number

Scientists distinguish between different elements by counting the number of protons in the nucleus (Table **4.4.1**). If an atom has only one proton, we know that it's a hydrogen atom. An atom with two protons is always a helium atom. If scientists count four protons in an atom, they know it's a beryllium atom. An atom with three protons is a lithium atom, an atom with five protons is a boron atom, an atom with six protons is a carbon atom . . . the list goes on.

Since an atom of one element can be distinguished from an atom of another element by the number of protons in its nucleus, scientists are always interested in this number, and how this number differs between different elements. The number of protons in an atom is called its **atomic number** (Z). This number is very important because it is unique for atoms of a given element. All atoms of an element have the same number of protons, and every element has a different number of protons in its atoms. For example, all helium atoms have two protons, and no other elements have atoms with two protons.

Table **4.4.1**: Atoms of the First Six Elements

Name	Protons	Neutrons	Electrons	Atomic Number (Z)	Mass Number (A)
Hydrogen	1	0	1	1	1
Helium	2	2	2	2	4
Lithium	3	4	3	3	7
Beryllium	4	5	4	4	9
Boron	5	6	5	5	11
Carbon	6	6	6	6	12

Of course, since neutral atoms have to have one electron for every proton, an element's atomic number also tells you how many electrons are in a neutral atom of that element. For example, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1. This means that an atom of hydrogen has one proton, and, if it's neutral, one electron as well. Gold, on the other hand, has an atomic number of 79, which means that an atom of gold has 79 protons, and, if it's neutral, 79 electrons as well.

Neutral Atoms

Atoms are neutral in electrical charge because they have the same number of negative electrons as positive protons (Table 4.4.1). Therefore, the atomic number of an atom also tells you how many electrons the atom has. This, in turn, determines many of the atom's chemical properties.

Mass Number

The **mass number** (A) of an atom is the total number of protons and neutrons in its nucleus. The mass of the atom is a unit called the atomic mass unit (amu). One atomic mass unit is the mass of a proton, or about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms, which is an extremely small mass. A neutron has just a tiny bit more mass than a proton, but its mass is often assumed to be one atomic mass unit as well. Because electrons have virtually no mass, just about all the mass of an atom is in its protons and neutrons. Therefore, the total number of protons and neutrons in an atom determines its mass in atomic mass units (Table 4.4.1).

Consider helium again. Most helium atoms have two neutrons in addition to two protons. Therefore the mass of most helium atoms is 4 atomic mass units (2 amu for the protons + 2 amu for the neutrons). However, some helium atoms have more or less than two neutrons. Atoms with the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Because the number of neutrons can vary for a given element, the mass numbers of different atoms of an element may also vary. For example, some helium atoms have three neutrons instead of two (these are called isotopes and are discussed in detail later on).

Why do you think that the "mass number" includes protons and neutrons, but not electrons? You know that most of the mass of an atom is concentrated in its nucleus. The mass of an atom depends on the number of protons and neutrons. You have already learned that the mass of an electron is very, very small compared to the mass of either a proton or a neutron (like the mass of a penny compared to the mass of a bowling ball). Counting the number of protons and neutrons tells scientists about the total mass of an atom.

$$\text{mass number } A = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$$

An atom's mass number is very easy to calculate, provided that you know the number of protons and neutrons in an atom.

Example 4.5.1

What is the mass number of an atom of helium that contains 2 neutrons?

Solution

$(\text{number of protons}) = 2$ (Remember that an atom of helium always has 2 protons.)

$(\text{number of neutrons}) = 2$

$\text{mass number} = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$

$$\text{mass number} = 2 + 2 = 4$$

A **chemical symbol** is a one- or two-letter designation of an element. Some examples of chemical symbols are O for oxygen, Zn for zinc, and Fe for iron. The first letter of a symbol is always capitalized. If the symbol contains two letters, the second letter is lower case. The majority of elements have symbols that are based on their English names. However, some of the elements that have been known since ancient times have maintained symbols that are based on their Latin names, as shown in Table 4.4.2.

Table 4.4.2: *Symbols and Latin Names for Elements*

Chemical Symbol	Name	Latin Name
Na	Sodium	Natrium
K	Potassium	Kalium
Fe	Iron	Ferrum
Cu	Copper	Cuprum
Ag	Silver	Argentum
Sn	Tin	Stannum
Sb	Antimony	Stibium
Au	Gold	Aurum
Pb	Lead	Plumbum

Summary

- Elements are pure substances that make up all matter, so each one is given a unique name.
- The names of elements are also represented by unique one- or two-letter symbols.
- Each element has a unique number of protons. An element's atomic number is equal to the number of protons in the nuclei of any of its atoms.
- The mass number of an atom is the sum of the protons and neutrons in the atom.
- Isotopes are atoms of the same element (same number of protons) that have different numbers of neutrons in their atomic nuclei.

4.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.5: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Explain how elements are organized into the periodic table.
- Describe how some characteristics of elements relate to their positions on the periodic table.

In the 19th century, many previously unknown elements were discovered, and scientists noted that certain sets of elements had similar chemical properties. For example, chlorine, bromine, and iodine react with other elements (such as sodium) to make similar compounds. Likewise, lithium, sodium, and potassium react with other elements (such as oxygen) to make similar compounds. Why is this so?

In 1864, Julius Lothar Meyer, a German chemist, organized the elements by atomic mass and grouped them according to their chemical properties. Later that decade, Dmitri Mendeleev, a Russian chemist, organized all the known elements according to similar properties. He left gaps in his table for what he thought were undiscovered elements, and he made some bold predictions regarding the properties of those undiscovered elements. When elements were later discovered whose properties closely matched Mendeleev's predictions, his version of the table gained favor in the scientific community. Because certain properties of the elements repeat on a regular basis throughout the table (that is, they are periodic), it became known as the periodic table.

> *Mendeleev had to list some elements out of the order of their atomic masses to group them with other elements that had similar properties.*

The periodic table is one of the cornerstones of chemistry because it organizes all of the known elements on the basis of their chemical properties. A modern version is shown in Figure **4.5.1**. Most periodic tables provide additional data (such as atomic mass) in a box that contains each element's symbol. The elements are listed in order of atomic number.

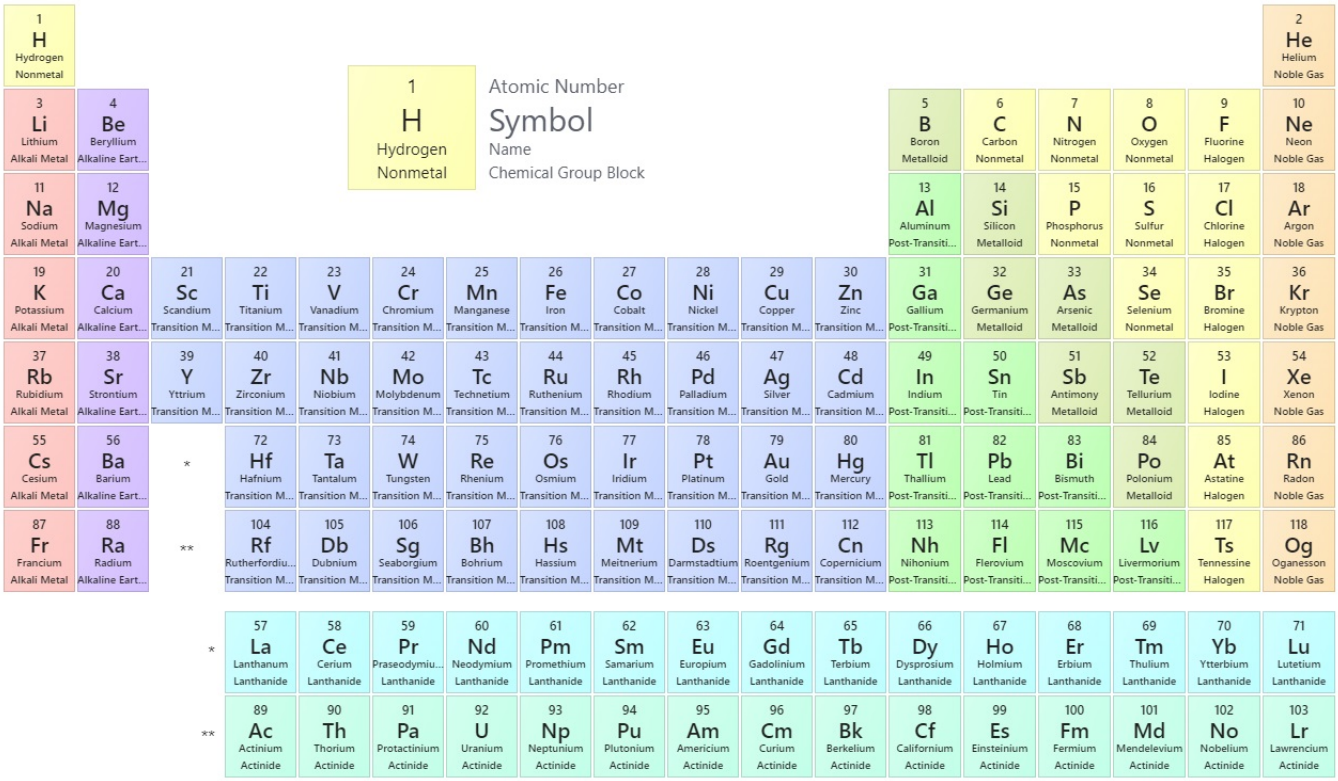


Figure **4.5.1**: A Modern Periodic Table. A modern periodic table lists elements left to right by atomic number. An interactive Periodic table can be found Periodic Table of Elements. (Public Domain; PubChem via NIH)

Features of the Periodic Table

Elements that have similar chemical properties are grouped in columns called groups (or families). As well as being numbered, some of these groups have names—for example, *alkali metals* (the first column of elements), *alkaline earth metals* (the second column of elements), *halogens* (the next-to-last column of elements), and *noble gases* (the last column of elements).

> *The word halogen comes from the Greek for "salt maker" because these elements combine with other elements to form a group of compounds called salts.*

To Your Health: Radon

Radon is an invisible, odorless noble gas that is slowly released from the ground, particularly from rocks and soils whose uranium content is high. Because it is a noble gas, radon is not chemically reactive. Unfortunately, it is radioactive, and increased exposure to it has been correlated with an increased lung cancer risk.

Because radon comes from the ground, we cannot avoid it entirely. Moreover, because it is denser than air, radon tends to accumulate in basements, which if improperly ventilated can be hazardous to a building's inhabitants. Fortunately, specialized ventilation minimizes the amount of radon that might collect. Special fan-and-vent systems are available that draw air from below the basement floor, before it can enter the living space, and vent it above the roof of a house.

After smoking, radon is thought to be the second-biggest *preventable* cause of lung cancer in the United States. The American Cancer Society estimates that 10% of all lung cancers are related to radon exposure. There is uncertainty regarding what levels of exposure cause cancer, as well as what the exact causal agent might be (either radon or one of its breakdown products, many of which are also radioactive and, unlike radon, not gases). The US Environmental Protection Agency recommends testing every floor below the third floor for radon levels to guard against long-term health effects.

Each row of elements on the periodic table is called a period. Periods have different lengths; the first period has only 2 elements (hydrogen and helium), while the second and third periods have 8 elements each. The fourth and fifth periods have 18 elements each, and later periods are so long that a segment from each is removed and placed beneath the main body of the table.

Certain elemental properties become apparent in a survey of the periodic table as a whole. Every element can be classified as either a metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid (or semi metal), as shown in Figure 4.5.2. A **metal** is a substance that is shiny, typically (but not always) silvery in color, and an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. Metals are also malleable (they can be beaten into thin sheets) and ductile (they can be drawn into thin wires). A **nonmetal** is typically dull and a poor conductor of electricity and heat. Solid nonmetals are also very brittle. As shown in Figure 4.5.2, metals occupy the left three-fourths of the periodic table, while nonmetals (except for hydrogen) are clustered in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table. The elements with properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals are called **metalloids** (or **semi-metals**). Elements adjacent to the bold line in the right-hand portion of the periodic table have semimetal properties.

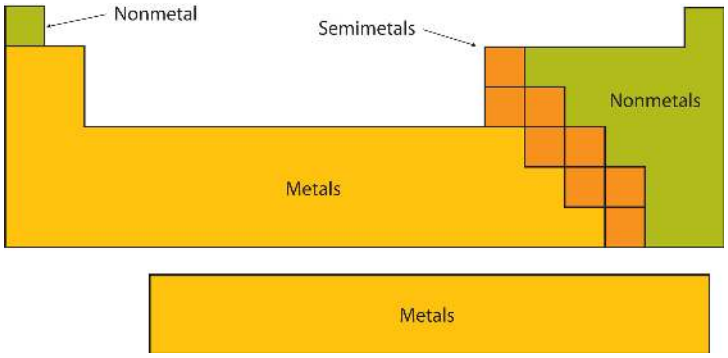


Figure 4.5.2: Types of Elements. Elements are either metals, nonmetals, or metalloids (or semi metals). Each group is located in a different part of the periodic table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Example 4.5.1

Based on its position in the periodic table, classify each element below as metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid.

a. Se
b. Mg
c. Ge

Solution

a. In Figure **4.5.1**, selenium lies above and to the right of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a nonmetal.
b. Magnesium lies to the left of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metal.
c. Germanium lies within the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metalloid.

Exercise 4.5.1

Based on its location in the periodic table, do you expect indium to be a nonmetal, a metal, or a metalloid?

Answer

Indium is a metal.

Another way to categorize the elements of the periodic table is shown in Figure **4.5.3**. The first two columns on the left and the last six columns on the right are called the main group elements. The ten-column block between these columns contains the **transition metals**. The two rows beneath the main body of the periodic table contain the **inner transition metals**. The elements in these two rows are also referred to as, respectively, the **lanthanide metals** and the **actinide metals**.

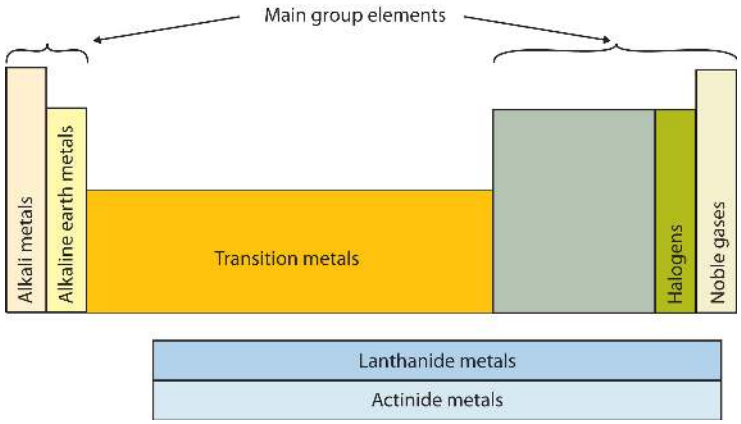


Figure **4.5.3**: Special Names for Sections of the Periodic Table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Sections of period table: Alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, transition metals, halogens, noble gases, lanthanide metals, actinide metals.

Descriptive Names

As previously noted, the periodic table is arranged so that elements with similar chemical behaviors are in the same group. Chemists often make general statements about the properties of the elements in a group using descriptive names with historical origins.

Group 1: The Alkali Metals

The alkali metals are lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, cesium, and francium. Hydrogen is unique in that it is generally placed in Group 1, but it is not a metal.

The compounds of the alkali metals are common in nature and daily life. One example is table salt (sodium chloride); lithium compounds are used in greases, in batteries, and as drugs to treat patients who exhibit manic-depressive, or bipolar, behavior. Although lithium, rubidium, and cesium are relatively rare in nature, and francium is so unstable and highly radioactive that it exists in only trace amounts, sodium and potassium are the seventh and eighth most abundant elements in Earth's crust, respectively.



Video: Alkali metals in water - Chemical elements: properties and reactions. (The Open University via https://youtu.be/6ZY6d6jrq-0)

Group 2: The Alkaline Earth Metals

The alkaline earth metals are beryllium, magnesium, calcium, strontium, barium, and radium. Beryllium, strontium, and barium are rare, and radium is unstable and highly radioactive. In contrast, calcium and magnesium are the fifth and sixth most abundant elements on Earth, respectively; they are found in huge deposits of limestone and other minerals.

Group 17: The Halogens

The halogens are fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine. The name halogen is derived from the Greek words for "salt forming," which reflects that all of the halogens react readily with metals to form compounds, such as sodium chloride and calcium chloride (used in some areas as road salt).

Compounds that contain the fluoride ion are added to toothpaste and the water supply to prevent dental cavities. Fluorine is also found in Teflon coatings on kitchen utensils. Although chlorofluorocarbon propellants and refrigerants are believed to lead to the depletion of Earth's ozone layer and contain both fluorine and chlorine, the latter is responsible for the adverse effect on the ozone layer. Bromine and iodine are less abundant than chlorine, and astatine is so radioactive that it exists in only negligible amounts in nature.

Group 18: The Noble Gases

The noble gases are helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. Because the noble gases are composed of only single atoms, they are called monatomic. At room temperature and pressure, they are unreactive gases. Because of their lack of reactivity, for many years they were called inert gases or rare gases. However, the first chemical compounds containing the noble gases were prepared in 1962. Although the noble gases are relatively minor constituents of the atmosphere, natural gas contains substantial amounts of helium. Because of its low reactivity, argon is often used as an unreactive (inert) atmosphere for welding and in light bulbs. The red light emitted by neon in a gas discharge tube is used in neon lights.

Example 4.5.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Cl

Solution

a. Lithium is an alkali metal (Group 1)
b. Argon is a noble gas (Group 18)
c. Chlorine is a halogen (Group 17)

? Exercise 4.5.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. F
b. Ca
c. Kr

Answer a:

Fluorine is a halogen (Group 17).

Answer b:

Calcium is a alkaline earth metal (Group 2).

Answer c:

Krypton is a noble gas (Group 18).

✓ Example 4.5.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Am
d. Fe

Solution

a. Lithium is a metal.
b. Argon is a non metal.
c. Americium is an inner transition metal.
d. Iron is a transition metal.

? Exercise 4.5.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. F
b. U
c. Cu

Answer a:

Fluorine is a nonmetal.

Answer b:

Uranium is a metal (and a inner transition metal too).

Answer c:

Copper is a metal (and a transition metal too).

Summary

The periodic table is an arrangement of the elements in order of increasing atomic number. Elements that exhibit similar chemistry appear in vertical columns called groups (numbered 1–18 from left to right); the seven horizontal rows are called periods. Some of the groups have widely-used common names, including the alkali metals (Group 1) and the alkaline earth metals (Group 2) on the far left, and the halogens (Group 17) and the noble gases (Group 18) on the far right.

The elements can be broadly divided into metals, nonmetals, and semi metals. Semi metals exhibit properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals. Metals are located on the left of the periodic table, and nonmetals are located on the upper right. They are separated by a diagonal band of semi metals. Metals are lustrous, good conductors of electricity, and readily shaped (they are ductile and malleable). Solid nonmetals are generally brittle and poor electrical conductors. Other important groupings of elements in the periodic table are the main group elements, the transition metals, and the inner transition metals (the lanthanides, and the actinides).

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H., William S. Harwood, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007.
2. Sisler, Harry H. Electronic structure, properties, and the periodic law. New york; Reinhold publishing corporation, 1963.
3. Petrucci, Ralph H., Carey Bissonnette, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. Custom Edition for CHEM 2. Pearson Learning Solutions, 2010.

Contributions & Attributions

4.5: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Define the two types of ions.

Atoms tend to lose, gain, or share some valance electrons, making bonds to acquire the electron configuration of the nearest noble gas, i.e., usually eight valence electrons for the main group elements, called an octet. Most atoms do not have eight electrons in their valence electron shell. Some atoms have only a few electrons in their outer shell, while others lack only one or two electrons to have an octet. In cases where an atom has three or fewer valence electrons, the atom may lose those valence electrons quite easily until what remains is a lower shell that contains an octet. Atoms that lose electrons acquire a positive charge because they are left with fewer negatively charged electrons to balance the positive charges of the protons in the nucleus. Positively charged ions are called **cations**. Most metals become cations when they make ionic compounds.

Cations

A neutral sodium atom is likely to achieve an octet in its outermost shell by losing its one valence electron.

$$Na \rightarrow Na^+ + e^-$$

The cation produced in this way, Na^+, is called the sodium ion to distinguish it from the element. The outermost shell of the sodium ion is the second electron shell, which has eight electrons in it. The octet rule has been satisfied. Figure 4.6.1 is a graphical depiction of this process.

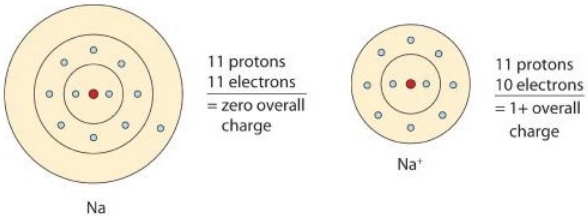


Figure 4.6.1: The Formation of a Sodium Ion. On the left, a sodium atom has 11 electrons. On the right, the sodium ion only has 10 electrons and a 1+ charge. Neutral sodium atom on left has 11 protons and 11 electrons. Sodium ion on right has 11 protons and 10 electrons, with a +1 overall charge.

Anions

Some atoms have nearly eight electrons in their valence shell and can gain additional valence electrons until they have an octet. When these atoms gain electrons, they acquire a negative charge because they now possess more electrons than protons. Negatively charged ions are called **anions**. Most nonmetals become anions when they make ionic compounds.

A neutral chlorine atom has seven electrons in its outermost shell. Only one more electron is needed to achieve an octet in chlorine's valence shell. (In table salt, this electron comes from the sodium atom.)

$$e^- + Cl \longrightarrow Cl^-$$

In this case, the ion has the same outermost shell as the original atom, but now that shell has eight electrons in it. Once again, the octet rule has been satisfied. The resulting anion, Cl^-, is called the chloride ion; note the slight change in the suffix (*-ide* instead of *-ine*) to create the name of this anion. Figure 4.6.2 is a graphical depiction of this process.

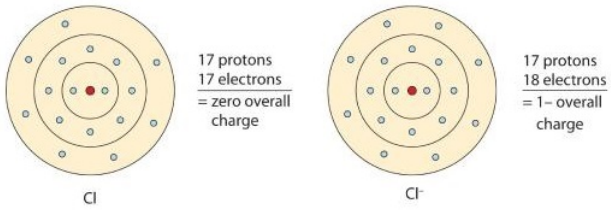


Figure **4.6.2**: The Formation of a Chlorine Ion. On the left, the chlorine atom has 17 electrons. On the right, the chloride ion has 18 electrons and has a 1− charge. Neutral chlorine atom on left has 17 protons and 17 electrons. Sodium ion on right has 17 protons and 18 electrons, with a -1 overall charge.

> *The names for positive and negative ions are pronounced CAT-eye-ons and ANN-eye-ons, respectively.*

In many cases, elements that belong to the same group (vertical column) on the periodic table form ions with the same charge because they have the same number of valence electrons. Thus, the periodic table becomes a tool for remembering the charges on many ions. For example, all ions made from alkali metals, the first column on the periodic table, have a 1+ charge. Ions made from alkaline earth metals, the second group on the periodic table, have a 2+ charge. On the other side of the periodic table, the next-to-last column, the halogens, form ions having a 1− charge. Figure **4.6.3** shows how the charge on many ions can be predicted by the location of an element on the periodic table. Note the convention of first writing the number and then the sign on a ion with multiple charges. The barium cation is written Ba^{2+}, not Ba^{+2}.

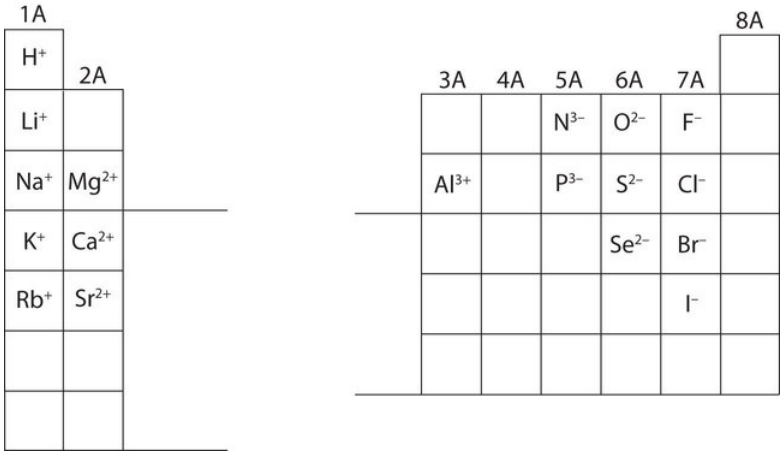


Figure **4.6.3**: Predicting Ionic Charges. The charge that an atom acquires when it becomes an ion is related to the structure of the periodic table. Within a group (family) of elements, atoms form ions of a certain charge.

4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.7: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

Learning Objectives

- Explain what isotopes are and how an isotope affects an element's atomic mass.
- Determine the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons of an element with a given mass number.

All atoms of the same element have the same number of protons, but some may have different numbers of neutrons. For example, all carbon atoms have six protons, and most have six neutrons as well. But some carbon atoms have seven or eight neutrons instead of the usual six. Atoms of the same element that differ in their numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Many isotopes occur naturally. Usually one or two isotopes of an element are the most stable and common. Different isotopes of an element generally have the same physical and chemical properties because they have the same numbers of protons and electrons.

An Example: Hydrogen Isotopes

Hydrogen is an example of an element that has isotopes. Three isotopes of hydrogen are modeled in Figure **4.7.1**. Most hydrogen atoms have just one proton, one electron, and lack a neutron. These atoms are just called hydrogen. Some hydrogen atoms have one neutron as well. These atoms are the isotope named deuterium. Other hydrogen atoms have two neutrons. These atoms are the isotope named tritium.

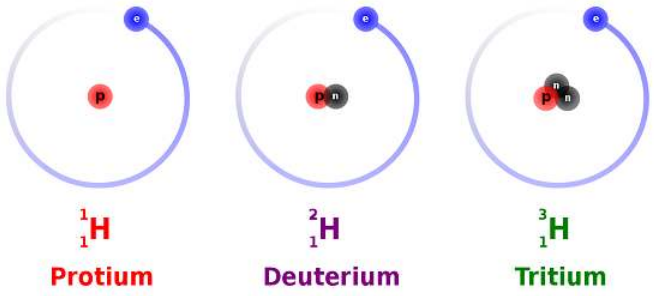


Figure **4.7.1**: The three most stable isotopes of hydrogen: protium (A = 1), deuterium (A = 2), and tritium (A = 3). (CC SA-BY 3.0; Balajijagadesh via Wikipedia).

For most elements other than hydrogen, isotopes are named for their mass number. For example, carbon atoms with the usual 6 neutrons have a mass number of 12 (6 protons + 6 neutrons = 12), so they are called carbon-12. Carbon atoms with 7 neutrons have an atomic mass of 13 (6 protons + 7 neutrons = 13). These atoms are the isotope called carbon-13.

Example 4.7.1: Lithium Isotopes

a. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 3 neutrons?
b. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 4 neutrons?

Solution

A lithium atom contains 3 protons in its nucleus irrespective of the number of neutrons or electrons.

a.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{atomic number} &= (\text{number of protons}) = 3\\ &\quad (\text{number of neutrons}) = 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mass number} &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})\\ \text{mass number} &= 3 + 3\\ &= 6\end{aligned}$$

b.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{atomic number} &= (\text{number of protons}) = 3\\ &\quad (\text{number of neutrons}) = 4\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{mass number} = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$$
$$\text{mass number} = 3 + 4$$
$$= 7$$

Notice that because the lithium atom always has 3 protons, the atomic number for lithium is always 3. The mass number, however, is 6 in the isotope with 3 neutrons, and 7 in the isotope with 4 neutrons. In nature, only certain isotopes exist. For instance, lithium exists as an isotope with 3 neutrons, and as an isotope with 4 neutrons, but it doesn't exist as an isotope with 2 neutrons or as an isotope with 5 neutrons.

Stability of Isotopes

Atoms need a certain ratio of neutrons to protons to have a stable nucleus. Having too many or too few neutrons relative to protons results in an unstable, or radioactive, nucleus that will sooner or later break down to a more stable form. This process is called radioactive decay. Many isotopes have radioactive nuclei, and these isotopes are referred to as radioisotopes. When they decay, they release particles that may be harmful. This is why radioactive isotopes are dangerous and why working with them requires special suits for protection. The isotope of carbon known as carbon-14 is an example of a radioisotope. In contrast, the carbon isotopes called carbon-12 and carbon-13 are stable.

This whole discussion of isotopes brings us back to Dalton's Atomic Theory. According to Dalton, atoms of a given element are identical. But if atoms of a given element can have different numbers of neutrons, then they can have different masses as well! How did Dalton miss this? It turns out that elements found in nature exist as constant uniform mixtures of their naturally occurring isotopes. In other words, a piece of lithium always contains both types of naturally occurring lithium (the type with 3 neutrons and the type with 4 neutrons). Moreover, it always contains the two in the same relative amounts (or "relative abundance"). In a chunk of lithium, **93%** will always be lithium with 4 neutrons, while the remaining **7%** will always be lithium with 3 neutrons.

Dalton always experimented with large chunks of an element—chunks that contained all of the naturally occurring isotopes of that element. As a result, when he performed his measurements, he was actually observing the averaged properties of all the different isotopes in the sample. For most of our purposes in chemistry, we will do the same thing and deal with the average mass of the atoms. Luckily, aside from having different masses, most other properties of different isotopes are similar.

There are two main ways in which scientists frequently show the mass number of an atom they are interested in. It is important to note that the mass number is *not* given on the periodic table. These two ways include writing a nuclear symbol or by giving the name of the element with the mass number written.

To write a **nuclear symbol**, the mass number is placed at the upper left (superscript) of the chemical symbol and the atomic number is placed at the lower left (subscript) of the symbol. The complete nuclear symbol for helium-4 is drawn below:



Nuclear symbol for helium-4: The element symbol is He, the mass number to the top left is 4, and the atomic number to the bottom left is 2

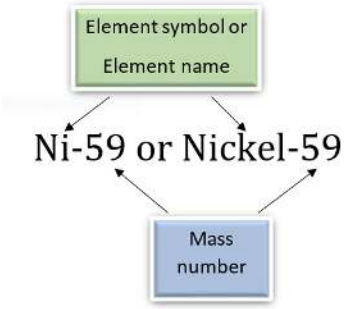
The following nuclear symbols are for a nickel nucleus with 31 neutrons and a uranium nucleus with 146 neutrons.

$$^{59}_{28}\text{Ni}$$

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U}$$

In the nickel nucleus represented above, the atomic number 28 indicates that the nucleus contains 28 protons, and therefore, it must contain 31 neutrons in order to have a mass number of 59. The uranium nucleus has 92 protons, as all uranium nuclei do; and this particular uranium nucleus has 146 neutrons.

Another way of representing isotopes is by adding a hyphen and the mass number to the chemical name or symbol. Thus the two nuclei would be Nickel-59 or Ni-59 and Uranium-238 or U-238, where 59 and 238 are the mass numbers of the two atoms, respectively. Note that the mass numbers (not the number of neutrons) are given to the side of the name.



Example 4.7.2: Potassium-40

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of $^{40}_{19}\mathrm{K}$?

Solution

$$\text{atomic number} = (\text{number of protons}) = 19$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 19$$

The mass number, 40, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 40 - 19 = 21.$$

Example 4.7.3: Zinc-65

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of zinc-65?

Solution

$$\text{number of protons} = 30$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 30$$

The mass number, 65, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 65 - 30 = 35$$

Exercise 4.7.3

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in each atom?

a. $^{60}_{27}\mathrm{Co}$
b. Na-24
c. $^{45}_{20}\mathrm{Ca}$
d. Sr-90

Answer a:

27 protons, 27 electrons, 33 neutrons

Answer b:

11 protons, 11 electrons, 13 neutrons

Answer c:

20 protons, 20 electrons, 25 neutrons

Answer d:

38 protons, 38 electrons, 52 neutrons

Summary

- The number of protons is always the same in atoms of the same element.
- The number of neutrons can be different, even in atoms of the same element.
- Atoms of the same element that contain the same number of protons, but different numbers of neutrons, are known as **isotopes**.
- Isotopes of any given element all contain the same number of protons, so they have the same atomic number (for example, the atomic number of helium is always 2).
- Isotopes of a given element contain different numbers of neutrons, therefore, different isotopes have different mass numbers.

4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.8: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Explain what is meant by the atomic mass of an element.
- Calculate the atomic mass of an element from the masses and relative percentages of the isotopes of the element.

In chemistry we very rarely deal with only one isotope of an element. We use a mixture of the isotopes of an element in chemical reactions and other aspects of chemistry, because all of the isotopes of an element react in the same manner. That means that we rarely need to worry about the mass of a specific isotope, but instead we need to know the average mass of the atoms of an element. Using the masses of the different isotopes and how abundant each isotope is, we can find the average mass of the atoms of an element. The **atomic mass** of an element is the weighted average mass of the atoms in a naturally occurring sample of the element. Atomic mass is typically reported in atomic mass units.

Calculating Atomic Mass

You can calculate the atomic mass (or average mass) of an element provided you know the **relative abundance** (the fraction of an element that is a given isotope), the element's naturally occurring isotopes, and the masses of those different isotopes. We can calculate this by the following equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (\%_1)\,(\text{mass}_1) + (\%_2)\,(\text{mass}_2) + \cdots$$

Look carefully to see how this equation is used in the following examples.

Example 4.8.1: Boron Isotopes

Boron has two naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of boron, 20% of the atoms are B-10, which is an isotope of boron with 5 neutrons and mass of $10\ \text{amu}$. The other 80% of the atoms are B-11, which is an isotope of boron with 6 neutrons and a mass of $11\ \text{amu}$. What is the atomic mass of boron?

Solution

Boron has two isotopes. We will use the equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (\%_1)\,(\text{mass}_1) + (\%_2)\,(\text{mass}_2) + \cdots$$

- Isotope 1: $\%_1 = 0.20$ (Write all percentages as decimals), $\text{mass}_1 = 10$
- Isotope 2: $\%_2 = 0.80$, $\text{mass}_2 = 11$

Substitute these into the equation, and we get:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (0.20)\,(10) + (0.80)\,(11)$$

$$\text{Atomic mass} = 10.8\ \text{amu}$$

The mass of an average boron atom, and thus boron's atomic mass, is $10.8\ \text{amu}$.

Example 4.8.2: Neon Isotopes

Neon has three naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of neon, 90.92% of the atoms are Ne-20, which is an isotope of neon with 10 neutrons and a mass of $19.99\ \text{amu}$. Another 0.3% of the atoms are Ne-21, which is an isotope of neon with 11 neutrons and a mass of $20.99\ \text{amu}$. The final 8.85% of the atoms are Ne-22, which is an isotope of neon with 12 neutrons and a mass of $21.99\ \text{amu}$. What is the atomic mass of neon?

Solution

Neon has three isotopes. We will use the equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (\%_1)\,(\text{mass}_1) + (\%_2)\,(\text{mass}_2) + \cdots$$

- Isotope 1: $\%_1 = 0.9092$ (write all percentages as decimals), $\text{mass}_1 = 19.99$

- Isotope 2: $\%_2 = 0.003$, $\text{mass}_2 = 20.99$
- Isotope 3: $\%_3 = 0.0885$, $\text{mass}_3 = 21.99$

Substitute these into the equation, and we get:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (0.9092)(19.99) + (0.003)(20.99) + (0.0885)(21.99)$$

$$\text{Atomic mass} = 20.17\ \text{amu}$$

The mass of an average neon atom is $20.17\ \text{amu}$

The periodic table gives the atomic mass of each element. The atomic mass is a number that usually appears below the element's symbol in each square. Notice that the atomic mass of boron (symbol B) is 10.8, which is what we calculated in Example 4.8.1, and the atomic mass of neon (symbol Ne) is 20.8, which is what we calculated in Example 4.8.2. Take time to notice that not all periodic tables have the atomic number above the element's symbol and the mass number below it. If you are ever confused, remember that the atomic number should always be the smaller of the two and will be a whole number, while the atomic mass should always be the larger of the two and will be a decimal number.

? Exercise 4.8.1

Chlorine has two naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of chlorine, 75.77% of the atoms are Cl-35, with a mass of $34.97\ \text{amu}$. Another 24.23% of the atoms are Cl-37, with a mass of $36.97\ \text{amu}$. What is the atomic mass of chlorine?

Answer

35.45 amu

Summary

- An element's atomic mass is the weighted average of the masses of the isotopes of an element
- An element's atomic mass can be calculated provided the relative abundance of the element's naturally occurring isotopes and the masses of those isotopes are known.
- The periodic table is a convenient way to summarize information about the different elements. In addition to the element's symbol, most periodic tables will also contain the element's atomic number and the element's atomic mass.

4.8: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Nuclear Chemistry

5.1: Nuclear Reactions
5.2: The Discovery and Nature of Radioactivity
5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes
5.4: Nuclear Decay
5.5: Radioactive Half-Life
5.6: Ionizing Radiation
5.7: Measuring Radiation

5: Nuclear Chemistry is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.1: Nuclear Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Describe nuclear structure in terms of protons, neutrons, and electrons
- Identify a nuclear reaction
- Identify the key characteristics separating nuclear and chemical reactions

Nuclear chemistry is the study of reactions that involve changes in nuclear structure. The chapter on atoms, molecules, and ions introduced the basic idea of nuclear structure, that the nucleus of an atom is composed of protons and, with the exception of $^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, neutrons. Recall that the number of protons in the nucleus is called the atomic number (Z) of the element, and the sum of the number of protons and the number of neutrons is the mass number (A). Atoms with the same atomic number but different mass numbers are isotopes of the same element. When referring to a single type of nucleus, we often use the term **nuclide** and identify it by the notation:

$$^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} \tag{5.1.1}$$

where

- X is the symbol for the element,
- A is the mass number, and
- Z is the atomic number.

Often a nuclide is referenced by the name of the element followed by a hyphen and the mass number. For example, $^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ is called "carbon-14." The element in this example, represented by the symbol *C*, is carbon. Its atomic number, 6, is the lower left subscript on the symbol and is the number of protons in the atom. The mass number, the superscript to the upper left of the symbol, is the sum of the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of this particular isotope. In this case, the mass number is 14, which means that the number of neutrons in the atom is 14 − 6 = 8 (that is, the mass number of the atom minus the number of protons in the nucleus equals the number of neutrons). Occasionally, the atomic number is omitted in this notation because the symbol of the element itself conveys its characteristic atomic number. The two isotopes of hydrogen, $^{2}\mathrm{H}$ and $^{3}\mathrm{H}$, are given their own names: deuterium (D) and tritium (T), respectively. Another way of expressing a particular isotope is to list the mass number after the element name, like carbon-12 or hydrogen-3.

Nuclear reactions are very different from chemical reactions. In chemical reactions, atoms become more stable by participating in a transfer of electrons or by sharing electrons with other atoms. In **nuclear reactions**, it is the nucleus of the atom that gains stability by undergoing a change of some kind. The energies that are released in nuclear reactions are many orders of magnitude greater than the energies involved in chemical reactions. Unlike chemical reactions, nuclear reactions are not noticeably affected by changes in environmental conditions, such as temperature or pressure.

As the following Sections will discuss, there are three main forms of radioactive emissions. The first is called an alpha particle,which is symbolized by the Greek letter α. An alpha particle is composed of two protons and two neutrons, and so it is the same as a helium nucleus. (We often use $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ to represent an alpha particle.) It has a 2+ charge. When a radioactive atom emits an alpha particle, the original atom's atomic number decreases by two (because of the loss of two protons), and its mass number decreases by four (because of the loss of four nuclear particles). We can represent the emission of an alpha particle with a **nuclear equation**—for example, the alpha-particle emission of uranium-235 is as follows:

$$^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + {}^{231}_{90}\mathrm{Th} \tag{5.1.2}$$

Chemists often use the names **parent isotope** and **daughter isotope** to represent the original atom and the product other than the alpha particle. In the previous example, $^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}$ is the parent isotope, and $^{231}_{90}\mathrm{Th}$ is the daughter isotope. When one element changes into another in this manner, it undergoes *radioactive decay*.

Major Differences between Nuclear and Chemical Reactions

1. Nuclear reactions involve a change in an atom's nucleus, usually producing a different element. Chemical reactions, on the other hand, involve only a rearrangement of electrons and do not involve changes in the nuclei.
2. Different isotopes of an element normally behave similarly in chemical reactions. The nuclear chemistry of different isotopes vary greatly from each other.
3. Rates of chemical reactions are influenced by temperature and catalysts. Rates of nuclear reactions are unaffected by such factors.
4. Nuclear reactions are independent of the chemical form of the element.
5. Energy changes accompanying nuclear reactions are much larger. This energy comes from destruction of mass.
6. In a nuclear reaction, mass is not strictly conserved. Some of the mass is converted into energy.

Contributors and Attributions

•

5.1: Nuclear Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.2: The Discovery and Nature of Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- To define and give examples of the major types of radioactivity.

Atomic theory in the 19th century presumed that nuclei had fixed compositions. But in 1896, the French scientist Henri Becquerel found that a uranium compound placed near a photographic plate made an image on the plate, even if the compound was wrapped in black cloth. He reasoned that the uranium compound was emitting some kind of radiation that passed through the cloth to expose the photographic plate. Further investigations showed that the radiation was a combination of particles and electromagnetic rays, with its ultimate source as the atomic nucleus. These emanations were ultimately called, collectively, **radioactivity**.

There are three main forms of radioactive emissions. The first is called an **alpha particle**,which is symbolized by the Greek letter α. An alpha particle is composed of two protons and two neutrons, and so it is the same as a helium nucleus. (We often use $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ to represent an alpha particle.) It has a 2+ charge. When a radioactive atom emits an alpha particle, the original atom's atomic number decreases by two (because of the loss of two protons), and its mass number decreases by four (because of the loss of four nuclear particles). We can represent the emission of an alpha particle with a nuclear equation—for example, the alpha-particle emission of uranium-235 is as follows:

$$^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + {}^{231}_{90}\mathrm{Th} \tag{5.2.1}$$

Ernest Rutherford's experiments involving the interaction of radiation with a magnetic or electric field (Figure 5.2.1) helped him determine that one type of radiation consisted of positively charged and relatively massive α particles; a second type was made up of negatively charged and much less massive β **particles**; and a third was uncharged electromagnetic waves, γ **rays**. We now know that α particles are high-energy helium nuclei, β particles are high-energy electrons, and γ radiation compose high-energy electromagnetic radiation. We classify different types of radioactive decay by the radiation produced.

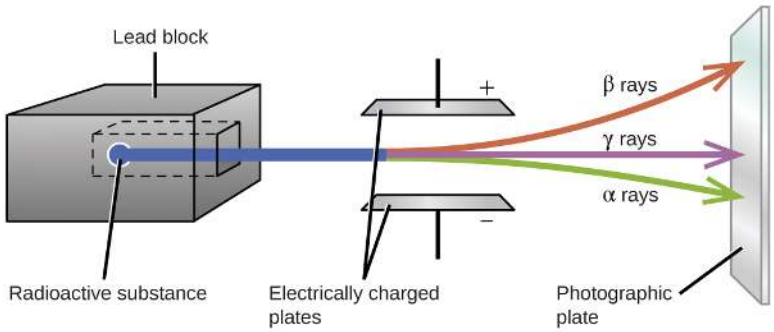


Figure 5.2.1: Alpha particles, which are attracted to the negative plate and deflected by a relatively small amount, must be positively charged and relatively massive. Beta particles, which are attracted to the positive plate and deflected a relatively large amount, must be negatively charged and relatively light. Gamma rays, which are unaffected by the electric field, must be uncharged. (CC BY 4.0; OpenStax)

Alpha, beta, and gamma emissions have different abilities to penetrate matter (Figure 5.2.2). The relatively large alpha particle is easily stopped by matter (although it may impart a significant amount of energy to the matter it contacts). Beta particles penetrate slightly into matter, perhaps a few centimeters at most. Gamma rays can penetrate deeply into matter and can impart a large amount of energy into the surrounding matter. Table 5.2.1 summarizes the properties of the three main types of radioactive emissions.

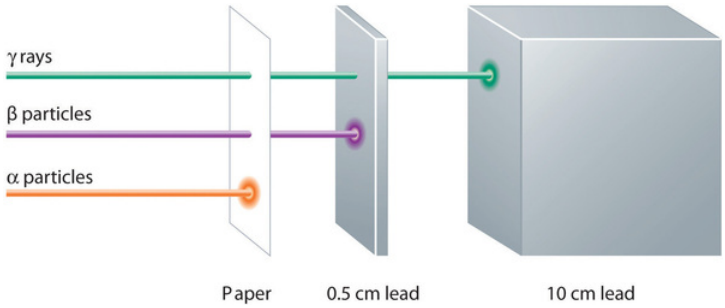


Figure **5.2.2**: Different emissions exhibit different pentration powers. (CC BY-NC-SA 3.0; anonymous)

Table **5.2.1**: The Three Main Forms of Radioactive Emissions

Characteristic	Alpha Particles	Beta Particles	Gamma Rays
symbols	α, $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$	β, $^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$	γ
identity	helium nucleus	electron	electromagnetic radiation
charge	2+	1−	none
mass number	4	0	0
penetrating power	minimal (will not penetrate skin)	short (will penetrate skin and some tissues slightly)	deep (will penetrate tissues deeply)

Key Takeaway

The major types of radioactivity include alpha particles, beta particles, and gamma rays.

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

5.2: The Discovery and Nature of Radioactivity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes

Learning Outcomes

- Recognize that radioactivity is a signature of unstable nuclide - radioisotopes.
- Describe a radioisotope.
- Explain how the stability of isotopes depends on the composition of its nucleus.
- Use the "band of stability" to identify stable isotopes.

The discovery of radioactivity and its effects on the nuclei of elements disproved Dalton's assumption that atoms are indivisible. A **nuclide** *is a term for an atom with a specific number of protons and neutrons in its nucleus*. When nuclides of one type emit radiation, they are changed into different nuclides. Radioactive decay is spontaneous and does not required an input of energy to occur. The stability of a particular nuclide depends on the composition of its nucleus, including the number of protons, the number of neutrons, and the proton-to-neutron ratio.

In nuclear reactions, it is the nucleus of the atom that gains stability by undergoing a change of some kind. Some elements have no stable isotopes, which means that any atom of that element is radioactive. For some other elements, only certain isotopes are radioactive. A **radioisotope** *is an isotope of an element that is unstable and undergoes radioactive decay*. The energies that are released in nuclear reactions are many orders of magnitude greater than the energies involved in chemical reactions. Unlike chemical reactions, nuclear reactions are not noticeably affected by changes in environmental conditions, such as temperature or pressure.

Carbon-12, with six protons and six neutrons, is a *stable* nucleus, meaning that it does not spontaneously emit radioactivity. Carbon-14, with six protons and eight neutrons, is *unstable* and naturally radioactive. Among atoms with lower atomic numbers, the ideal ratio of neutrons to protons is approximately 1:1. As the atomic number increases, the stable neutron-proton ratio gradually increases to about 1.5:1 for the heaviest known elements. For example, lead-206 is a stable nucleus that contains 124 neutrons and 82 protons, a ratio of 1.51 to 1.

This observation is shown in Figure 5.3.1. The **band of stability** *is the range of stable nuclei on a graph that plots the number of neutrons in a nuclide against the number of protons.* Known stable nuclides are shown with individual blue dots, while the 1:1 and 1.5:1 ratios are shown with a solid red line and a green line, respectively.

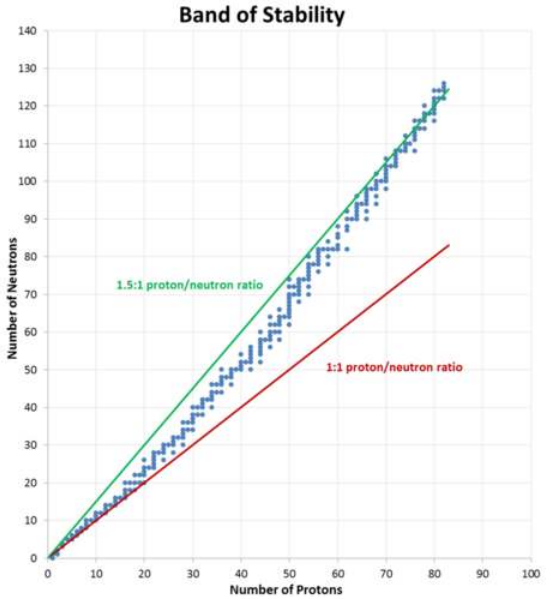


Figure 5.3.1: A graph of the number of neutrons in a nucleus as a function of the number of protons. Each known stable nucleus is represented by a blue dot. The ideal neutron to proton ratio changes from 1:1 for light nuclei to 1.5:1 for the heaviest nuclei.

It should be noted that just because a nucleus is "unstable" (able to undergo spontaneous radioactive decay) does not mean that it will rapidly decompose. For example, uranium-238 is unstable because it spontaneously decays over time, but if a sample of uranium-238 is allowed to sit for 1000 years, only 0.0000155% of the sample will have decayed. However, other unstable nuclei, such as berkelium-243, will be almost completely gone ($>99.9999\%$ decayed) in less than a day.

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Allison Soult, Ph.D. (Department of Chemistry, University of Kentucky)

This page titled 5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK-12 Foundation.

5.4: Nuclear Decay

Learning Objectives

- Write and balance nuclear equations.

Unstable nuclei spontaneously emit radiation in the form of particles and energy. This generally changes the number of protons and/or neutrons in the nucleus, resulting in a more stable nuclide. One type of a nuclear reaction is **radioactive decay**, *a reaction in which a nucleus spontaneously disintegrates into a slightly lighter nucleus, accompanied by the emission of particles, energy, or both*. An example is shown below, in which the nucleus of a polonium atom radioactively decays into a lead nucleus.

$$^{235}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{231}_{90}\text{Th} \tag{5.4.1}$$

Note that in a balanced nuclear equation, the sum of the atomic numbers (subscripts) and the sum of the mass numbers (superscripts) must be equal on both sides of the equation. How do we know that a product of the reaction is $^{231}_{90}\text{Th}$? We use a modified type of the **law of conservation of matter**, which says that we must have the same number of protons and neutrons on both sides of the chemical equation. If our uranium nucleus loses 2 protons from the alpha particle, then there are 90 protons remaining, identifying the element as thorium. Moreover, if we lose 4 nuclear particles of the original 235, there are 231 remaining. Thus, we use subtraction to identify the isotope of the thorium atom—in this case, $^{231}_{90}\text{Th}$.

Because the number of protons changes as a result of this nuclear reaction, the identity of the element changes. **Transmutation** *is a change in the identity of a nucleus as a result of a change in the number of protons*. There are several different types of naturally occurring radioactive decay, and we will examine each separately.

Alpha Emission

An **alpha particle** (α) *is a helium nucleus with two protons and two neutrons.* Alpha particles are emitted during some types of radioactive decay. The net charge of an alpha particle is $2+$, and its mass is approximately $4\ \text{amu}$. The symbol for an alpha particle in a nuclear equation is usually $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$, though sometimes α is used. Alpha emission typically occurs for very heavy nuclei in which the nuclei are unstable due to large numbers of nucleons. For nuclei that undergo alpha decay, their stability is increased by the subtraction of two protons and two neutrons. For example, uranium-238 decays into thorium-234 by the emission of an alpha particle (see Figure 5.4.1).

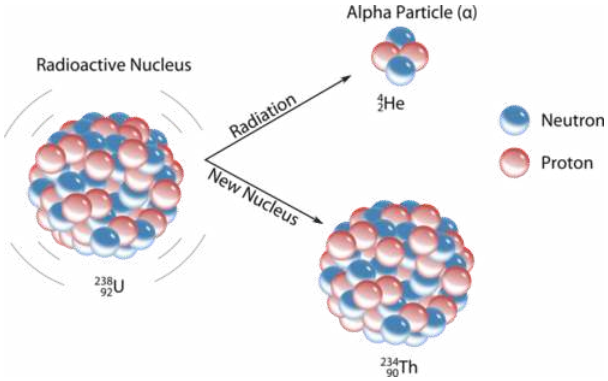


Figure 5.4.1: The unstable uranium-238 nucleus spontaneously decays into a thorium-234 nucleus by emitting an alpha particle.

Example 5.4.1: Radon-222

Write the nuclear equation that represents the radioactive decay of radon-222 by alpha particle emission and identify the daughter isotope.

Solution

Radon has an atomic number of 86, so the parent isotope is represented as $^{222}_{86}\text{Rn}$. We represent the alpha particle as $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$ and use subtraction (222 − 4 = 218 and 86 − 2 = 84) to identify the daughter isotope as an isotope of polonium, $^{218}_{84}\text{Po}$:

$$^{222}_{86}\text{Rn} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{218}_{84}\text{Po}$$

? Exercise 5.4.1: Polonium-209

Write the nuclear equation that represents the radioactive decay of polonium-209 by alpha particle emission and identify the daughter isotope.

Answer

$$^{209}_{84}\text{Po} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{205}_{82}\text{Pb}$$

Beta Emission

Nuclei above the band of stability are unstable because their neutron to proton ratio is too high. To decrease that ratio, a neutron in the nucleus is capable of turning into a proton and an electron. The electron is immediately ejected at a high speed from the nucleus. A **beta particle** (β) *is a high-speed electron emitted from the nucleus of an atom during some kinds of radioactive decay* (see Figure 5.4.2). The symbol for a beta particle in an equation is either β or $^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$. Carbon-14 undergoes beta decay, transmutating into a nitrogen-14 nucleus.

$$^{14}_{6}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\text{N} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \tag{5.4.2}$$

Note that beta decay increases the atomic number by one, but the mass number remains the same.

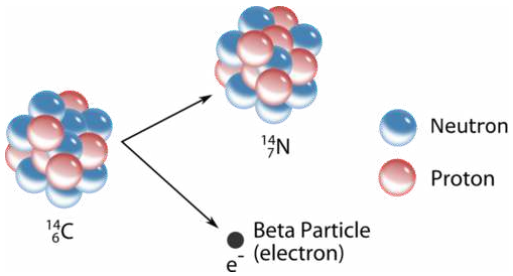


Figure 5.4.2: The beta emission of a carbon-14 nuclide involves the conversion of a neutron to a proton and an electron, with the electron being emitted from the nucleus.

✓ Example 5.4.2: Boron-12

Write the nuclear equation that represents the radioactive decay of boron-12 by beta particle emission and identify the daughter isotope. A gamma ray is emitted simultaneously with the beta particle.

Solution

The parent isotope is $^{12}_{5}\text{B}$ while one of the products is an electron, $^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$. So that the mass and atomic numbers have the same value on both sides, the mass number of the daughter isotope must be 12, and its atomic number must be 6. The element having an atomic number of 6 is carbon. Thus, the complete nuclear equation is as follows:

$$^{12}_{5}\text{B} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\text{C} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} + \gamma$$

The daughter isotope is $^{12}_{6}\text{C}$.

? Exercise 5.4.2: Iodine-131

Write the nuclear equation that represents the radioactive decay of iodine-131 by beta particle emission and identify the daughter isotope. A gamma ray is emitted simultaneously with the beta particle.

Answer

$$^{131}_{53}\text{I} \rightarrow {}^{131}_{54}\text{Xe} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} + \gamma$$

Gamma Emission

Gamma rays (γ) *are very high energy electromagnetic waves emitted from a nucleus.* Gamma rays are emitted by a nucleus when nuclear particles undergo transitions between nuclear energy levels. This is analogous to the electromagnetic radiation emitted when excited electrons drop from higher to lower energy levels; the only difference is that nuclear transitions release much more energetic radiation. Gamma ray emission often accompanies the decay of a nuclide by other means.

$$^{230}_{90}\text{Th} \rightarrow {}^{226}_{88}\text{Ra} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + \gamma \tag{5.4.3}$$

The emission of gamma radiation has no effect on the atomic number or mass number of the products, but it reduces their energy.

Positron Emission

Nuclei below the band of stability are unstable because their neutron to proton ratio is too low. One way to increase that ratio is for a proton in the nucleus to turn into a neutron and another particle called a positron. A **positron** *is a particle with the same mass as an electron, but with a positive charge*. Like the beta particle, a positron is immediately ejected from the nucleus upon its formation. The symbol for a positron in an equation is $^{0}_{+1}\text{e}$. For example, potassium-38 emits a positron, becoming argon-38.

$$^{38}_{19}\text{K} \rightarrow {}^{38}_{18}\text{Ar} + {}^{0}_{1}\text{e} \tag{5.4.4}$$

Positron emission decreases the atomic number by one, but the mass number remains the same.

Electron Capture

An alternate way for a nuclide to increase its neutron to proton ratio is by a phenomenon called **electron capture**, sympolized E.C. In electron capture, an electron from an inner orbital is captured by the nucleus of the atom and combined with a proton to form a neutron. For example, silver-106 undergoes electron capture to become palladium-106.

$$^{106}_{47}\text{Ag} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}^{106}_{46}\text{Pd} \tag{5.4.5}$$

Note that the overall result of electron capture is identical to positron emission. The atomic number decreases by one while the mass number remains the same.

Summary of Nuclear Radiation

Table **5.4.1** lists the characteristics of the different types of radioactive decay.

Table **5.4.1** *Summary of types of radioactive decay.*

Type	Symbol	Change in Atomic Number	Change in Mass Number	Change in Number of Neutrons
Alpha emission	$^{4}_{2}\text{He}$ or α	–2	–4	–2
Beta emission	$^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$ or β	+1	0	–1
Gamma emission	γ or $^{0}_{0}\gamma$	0	0	0
Positron emission	$^{0}_{1}\text{e}$ or β^{+}	–1	0	+1
electron capture	E.C.	–1	0	+1

Example 5.4.3

Write a balanced nuclear equation to describe each reaction.

a. the beta decay of $^{35}_{16}\text{S}$
b. the decay of $^{201}_{80}\text{Hg}$ by electron capture
c. the decay of $^{30}_{15}\text{P}$ by positron emission

Given: radioactive nuclide and mode of decay

Asked for: balanced nuclear equation

Strategy:

A Identify the reactants and the products from the information given.

B Use the values of *A* and *Z* to identify any missing components needed to balance the equation.

Solution

a.

A We know the identities of the reactant and one of the products (a β particle). We can therefore begin by writing an equation that shows the reactant and one of the products and indicates the unknown product as ${}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}$:

$$ {}^{35}_{16}\mathrm{S} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta $$

B Because both protons and neutrons must be conserved in a nuclear reaction, the unknown product must have a mass number of $A = 35 - 0 = 35$ and an atomic number of $Z = 16 - (-1) = 17$. The element with $Z = 17$ is chlorine, so the balanced nuclear equation is as follows:

$$ {}^{35}_{16}\mathrm{S} \rightarrow {}^{35}_{17}\mathrm{Cl} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta $$

b.

A We know the identities of both reactants: ${}^{201}_{80}\mathrm{Hg}$ and an inner electron, ${}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$. The reaction is as follows:

$$ {}^{201}_{80}\mathrm{Hg} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} $$

B Both protons and neutrons are conserved, so the mass number of the product must be $A = 201 + 0 = 201$, and the atomic number of the product must be $Z = 80 + (-1) = 79$, which corresponds to the element gold. The balanced nuclear equation is thus

$$ {}^{201}_{80}\mathrm{Hg} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \rightarrow {}^{201}_{79}\mathrm{Au} $$

c.

A As in part (a), we are given the identities of the reactant and one of the products—in this case, a positron. The unbalanced nuclear equation is therefore

$$ {}^{30}_{15}\mathrm{P} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta $$

B The mass number of the second product is $A = 30 - 0 = 30$, and its atomic number is $Z = 15 - 1 = 14$, which corresponds to silicon. The balanced nuclear equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$ {}^{30}_{15}\mathrm{P} \rightarrow {}^{30}_{14}\mathrm{Si} + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta $$

? Exercise 5.4.3

Write a balanced nuclear equation to describe each reaction.

a. ${}^{11}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ by positron emission
b. the beta decay of molybdenum-99
c. the emission of an α particle followed by gamma emission from ${}^{185}_{74}\mathrm{W}$

Answer a

$$ {}^{11}_{6}\mathrm{C} \rightarrow {}^{11}_{5}\mathrm{B} + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta $$

Answer d

$$ {}^{99}_{42}\mathrm{Mo} \rightarrow {}^{99m}_{43}\mathrm{Tc} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta $$

Answer c

$$ {}^{185}_{74}\mathrm{W} \rightarrow {}^{181}_{72}\mathrm{Hf} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha + {}^{0}_{0}\gamma $$

Example 5.4.4

Predict the kind of nuclear change each unstable nuclide undergoes when it decays.

a. $^{45}_{22}\mathrm{Ti}$
b. $^{242}_{94}\mathrm{Pu}$
c. $^{12}_{5}\mathrm{B}$
d. $^{256}_{100}\mathrm{Fm}$

Given: nuclide

Asked for: type of nuclear decay

Strategy:

Based on the neutron-to-proton ratio and the value of *Z*, predict the type of nuclear decay reaction that will produce a more stable nuclide.

Solution

a. This nuclide has a neutron-to-proton ratio of only 1.05, which is much less than the requirement for stability for an element with an atomic number in this range. Nuclei that have low neutron-to-proton ratios decay by converting a proton to a neutron. The two possibilities are positron emission, which converts a proton to a neutron and a positron, and electron capture, which converts a proton and a core electron to a neutron. In this case, both are observed, with positron emission occurring about 86% of the time and electron capture about 14% of the time.
b. Nuclei with $Z > 83$ are too heavy to be stable and usually undergo alpha decay, which decreases both the mass number and the atomic number. Thus $^{242}_{94}\mathrm{Pu}$ is expected to decay by alpha emission.
c. This nuclide has a neutron-to-proton ratio of 1.4, which is very high for a light element. Nuclei with high neutron-to-proton ratios decay by converting a neutron to a proton and an electron. The electron is emitted as a β particle, and the proton remains in the nucleus, causing an increase in the atomic number with no change in the mass number. We therefore predict that $^{12}_{5}\mathrm{B}$ will undergo beta decay.
d. This is a massive nuclide, with an atomic number of 100 and a mass number much greater than 200. Nuclides with $A \geq 200$ tend to decay by alpha emission, and even heavier nuclei tend to undergo spontaneous fission. We therefore predict that $^{256}_{100}\mathrm{Fm}$ will decay by either or both of these two processes. In fact, it decays by both spontaneous fission and alpha emission, in a 97:3 ratio.

Exercise 5.4.4

Predict the kind of nuclear change each unstable nuclide undergoes when it decays.

a. $^{32}_{14}\mathrm{Si}$
b. $^{43}_{21}\mathrm{Sc}$
c. $^{231}_{91}\mathrm{Pa}$

Answer a

beta decay

Answer d

positron emission or electron capture

Answer c

alpha decay

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Allison Soult, Ph.D. (Department of Chemistry, University of Kentucky)

5.4: Nuclear Decay is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.5: Radioactive Half-Life

Learning Objectives

- Define *half-life*.
- Determine the amount of radioactive substance remaining after a given number of half-lives.
- Describe common radiometric carbon-14 dating technique.

Whether or not a given isotope is radioactive is a characteristic of that particular isotope. Some isotopes are stable indefinitely, while others are radioactive and decay through a characteristic form of emission. As time passes, less and less of the radioactive isotope will be present, and the level of radioactivity decreases. An interesting and useful aspect of radioactive decay is **half life** ($t_{1/2}$), which is the amount of time it takes for one-half of a radioactive isotope to decay. The half-life of a specific radioactive isotope is constant; it is unaffected by conditions and is independent of the initial amount of that isotope.

Each radioactive nuclide has a characteristic, constant half-life ($t_{1/2}$), the time required for half of the atoms in a sample to decay. An isotope's half-life allows us to determine how long a sample of a useful isotope will be available, and how long a sample of an undesirable or dangerous isotope must be stored before it decays to a low-enough radiation level that is no longer a problem.

For example, cobalt-60 source, since half of the $^{60}_{27}\mathrm{Co}$ nuclei decay every 5.27 years, both the amount of material and the intensity of the radiation emitted is cut in half every 5.27 years. (Note that for a given substance, the intensity of radiation that it produces is directly proportional to the rate of decay of the substance and the amount of the substance.) Thus, a cobalt-60 source that is used for cancer treatment must be replaced regularly to continue to be effective.

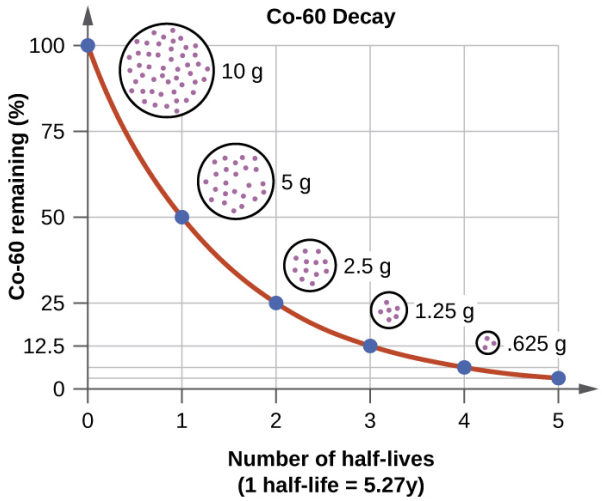


Figure 5.5.1: For cobalt-60, which has a half-life of 5.27 years, 50% remains after 5.27 years (one half-life), 25% remains after 10.54 years (two half-lives), 12.5% remains after 15.81 years (three half-lives), and so on. (CC BY 4.0; OpenStax)

We can determine the amount of a radioactive isotope remaining after a given number half-lives by using the following expression:

$$\text{amount remaining} = \text{initial amount} \times \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n} \tag{5.5.1}$$

where n is the number of half-lives. This expression works even if the number of half-lives is not a whole number.

5.5.1 Example : Fluorine-20

The half-life of fluorine-20 is 11.0 s. If a sample initially contains 5.00 g of fluorine-20, how much remains after 44.0 s?

Solution

If we compare the time that has passed to the isotope's half-life, we note that 44.0 s is exactly 4 half-lives, so using the previous expression, $n = 4$. Substituting and solving results in the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{amount remaining} &= 5.00\,g \times \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^4 \\ &= 5.00\,g \times \left(\frac{1}{16}\right) \\ &= 0.313\,g\end{aligned}$$

Less than one-third of a gram of fluorine-20 remains.

5.5.1 Exercise : Titanium-44

The half-life of titanium-44 is 60.0 y. A sample of titanium contains 0.600 g of titanium-44. How much remains after 240.0 y?

Answer

0.0375 g

Half-lives of isotopes range from fractions of a microsecond to billions of years. Table 5.5.1 - Half-Lives of Various Isotopes, lists the half-lives of some isotopes.

Table 5.5.1 Half-Lives of Various Isotopes

Isotope	Half-Life
^{3}H	12.3 y
^{14}C	5730 y
^{40}K	1.26×10^{9} y
^{51}Cr	27.70 d
^{90}Sr	29.1 y
^{131}I	8.04 d
^{222}Rn	3.823 d
^{235}U	7.04×10^{8} y
^{238}U	4.47×10^{9} y
^{241}Am	432.7 y
^{248}Bk	23.7 h
^{260}Sg	4 ms

Chemistry Is Everywhere: Radioactive Elements in the Body

You may not think of yourself as radioactive, but you are. A small portion of certain elements in the human body are radioactive and constantly undergo decay. Most of the radioactivity in the human body comes from potassium-40 and carbon-14. Potassium and carbon are two elements that we absolutely cannot live without, so unless we can remove all the radioactive isotopes of these elements, there is no way to escape at least some radioactivity. There is debate about which radioactive element is more problematic. There is more potassium-40 in the body than carbon-14, and it has a much longer half-life. Potassium-40 also decays with about 10 times more energy than carbon-14, making each decay potentially more problematic. However, carbon is the element that makes up the backbone of most living molecules, making carbon-14 more likely to be present around important molecules, such as proteins and DNA molecules. Most experts agree that while it is foolhardy to expect absolutely no exposure to radioactivity, we can and should minimize exposure to excess radioactivity.

Radiometric Dating

Several radioisotopes have half-lives and other properties that make them useful for purposes of "dating" the origin of objects such as archaeological artifacts, formerly living organisms, or geological formations. The radioactivity of carbon-14 provides a method for dating objects that were a part of a living organism. This method of radiometric dating, which is also called **radiocarbon dating** or **carbon-14 dating**, is accurate for dating carbon-containing substances that are up to about 30,000 years old, and can provide reasonably accurate dates up to a maximum of about 50,000 years old.

Naturally occurring carbon consists of three isotopes: $^{12}_{6}\text{C}$, which constitutes about 99% of the carbon on earth; $^{13}_{6}\text{C}$, about 1% of the total; and trace amounts of $^{14}_{6}\text{C}$. Carbon-14 forms in the upper atmosphere by the reaction of nitrogen atoms with neutrons from cosmic rays in space:

$$^{14}_{7}\text{N} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n} \longrightarrow {}^{14}_{6}\text{C} + {}^{1}_{1}\text{H}$$

All isotopes of carbon react with oxygen to produce CO_2 molecules. The ratio of $^{14}_{6}\text{CO}_2$ to $^{12}_{6}\text{CO}_2$ depends on the ratio of $^{14}_{6}\text{CO}$ to $^{12}_{6}\text{CO}$ in the atmosphere. The natural abundance of $^{14}_{6}\text{CO}$ in the atmosphere is approximately 1 part per trillion; until recently, this has generally been constant over time, as seen is gas samples found trapped in ice. The incorporation of $^{14}_{6}\text{C}$ $^{14}_{6}\text{CO}_2$ and $^{12}_{6}\text{CO}_2$ into plants is a regular part of the photosynthesis process, which means that the $^{14}_{6}\text{C}:\ ^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio found in a living plant is the same as the $^{14}_{6}\text{C}:\ ^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio in the atmosphere. But when the plant dies, it no longer traps carbon through photosynthesis. Because $^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ is a stable isotope and does not undergo radioactive decay, its concentration in the plant does not change. However, carbon-14 decays by β emission with a half-life of 5730 years:

$$^{14}_{6}\text{C} \longrightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\text{N} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$$

Thus, the $^{14}_{6}\text{C}:\ ^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio gradually decreases after the plant dies. The decrease in the ratio with time provides a measure of the time that has elapsed since the death of the plant (or other organism that ate the plant). Figure 5.5.2 visually depicts this process.

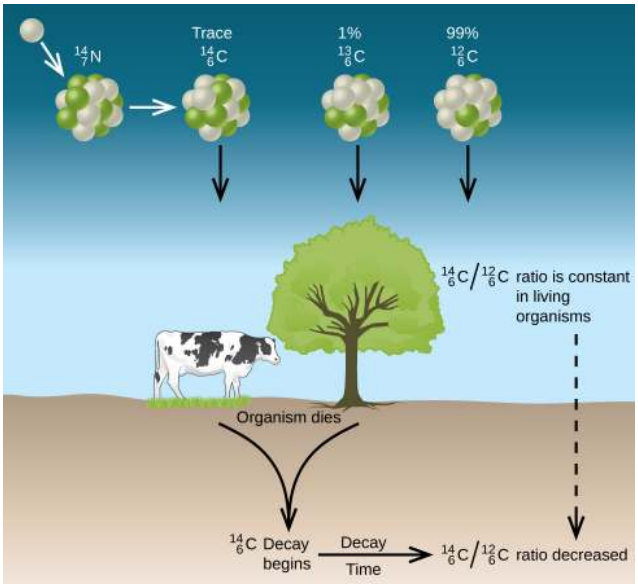


Figure 5.5.2: Along with stable carbon-12, radioactive carbon-14 is taken in by plants and animals, and remains at a constant level within them while they are alive. After death, the C-14 decays and the C-14:C-12 ratio in the remains decreases. Comparing this ratio to the C-14:C-12 ratio in living organisms allows us to determine how long ago the organism lived (and died). (CC BY 4.0; OpenStax)

For example, with the half-life of $^{14}_{6}\text{C}$ being 5730 years, if the $^{14}_{6}\text{C}:\ ^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio in a wooden object found in an archaeological dig is half what it is in a living tree, this indicates that the wooden object is 5730 years old. Highly accurate determinations of $^{14}_{6}\text{C}:\ ^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratios can be obtained from very small samples (as little as a milligram) by the use of a mass spectrometer.

Key Takeaways

- Natural radioactive processes are characterized by a half-life, the time it takes for half of the material to decay radioactively.
- The amount of material left over after a certain number of half-lives can be easily calculated.

5.5: Radioactive Half-Life is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **15.3: Half-Life** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.
- **21.3: Radioactive Decay** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.6: Ionizing Radiation

Learning Objectives

- To know the differences between ionizing and nonionizing radiation and their effects on matter.
- To identify natural and artificial sources of radiation.

Because nuclear reactions do not typically affect the valence electrons of the atom (although electron capture draws an electron from an orbital of the lowest energy level), they do not directly cause chemical changes. Nonetheless, the particles and the photons emitted during nuclear decay are very energetic, and they can indirectly produce chemical changes in the matter surrounding the nucleus that has decayed. For instance, an α particle can act as a powerful oxidant.

Ionizing versus Nonionizing Radiation

The effects of radiation on matter are determined primarily by the energy of the radiation, which depends on the nuclear decay reaction that produced it. **Nonionizing radiation** is relatively low in energy; when it collides with an atom in a molecule or an ion, most or all of its energy can be absorbed without causing a structural or a chemical change. Instead, the kinetic energy of the radiation is transferred to the atom or molecule with which it collides, causing it to rotate, vibrate, or move more rapidly. Because this energy can be transferred to adjacent molecules or ions in the form of heat, many radioactive substances are warm to the touch. Highly radioactive elements such as polonium, for example, have been used as heat sources in the US space program. As long as the intensity of the nonionizing radiation is not great enough to cause overheating, it is relatively harmless, and its effects can be neutralized by cooling.

In contrast, **ionizing radiation** is higher in energy, and some of its energy can be transferred to one or more atoms with which it collides as it passes through matter. If enough energy is transferred, electrons can be excited to very high energy levels, resulting in the formation of positively charged ions:

$$\text{atom} + \text{ionizing radiation} \rightarrow \text{ion}^+ + \text{e}^- \tag{5.6.1}$$

Molecules that have been ionized in this way are often highly reactive, and they can decompose or undergo other chemical changes that create a cascade of reactive molecules that can damage biological tissues and other materials (Figure 5.6.1). Because the energy of ionizing radiation is very high, we often report its energy in units such as megaelectronvolts (MeV) per particle:

$$1\ \text{MeV/particle} = 96\ \text{billion J/mol.} \tag{5.6.2}$$



Figure 5.6.1: Radiation Damage. When high-energy particles emitted by radioactive decay interact with matter, they can break bonds or ionize molecules, resulting in changes in physical properties such as ductility or color. The glass electrical insulator on the left has not been exposed to radiation, but the insulator on the right has received intense radiation doses over a long period of time. Radiation damage changed the chemical structure of the glass, causing it to become bright blue.

The Effects of Ionizing Radiation on Matter

The effects of ionizing radiation depend on four factors:

1. The type of radiation, which dictates how far it can penetrate into matter
2. The energy of the individual particles or photons
3. The number of particles or photons that strike a given area per unit time
4. The chemical nature of the substance exposed to the radiation

Because of its high charge and mass, α radiation interacts strongly with matter. Consequently, it does not penetrate deeply into an object, and it can be stopped by a piece of paper, clothing, or skin. In contrast, γ rays, with no charge and essentially no mass, do not interact strongly with matter and penetrate deeply into most objects, including the human body. Several inches of lead or more than 12 inches of special concrete are needed to completely stop γ rays. Because β particles are intermediate in mass and charge between α particles and γ rays, their interaction with matter is also intermediate. Beta particles readily penetrate paper or skin, but they can be stopped by a piece of wood or a relatively thin sheet of metal.

Because of their great penetrating ability, γ rays are by far the most dangerous type of radiation when they come from a source *outside* the body. Alpha particles, however, are the most damaging if their source is *inside* the body because internal tissues absorb all of their energy. Thus danger from radiation depends strongly on the type of radiation emitted and the extent of exposure, which allows scientists to safely handle many radioactive materials if they take precautions to avoid, for example, inhaling fine particulate dust that contains alpha emitters. Some properties of ionizing radiation are summarized in Table **5.6.1**.

Table **5.6.1**: Some Properties of Ionizing Radiation

Type	Energy Range (MeV)	Penetration Distance in Water*	Penetration Distance in Air*
α particles	3–9	< 0.05 mm	< 10 cm
β particles	≤ 3	< 4 mm	1 m
X rays	$<10^{-2}$	< 1 cm	< 3 m
γ rays	10^{-2} –10^{1}	< 20 cm	> 3 m
*Distance at which half of the radiation has been absorbed.			

There are many different ways to measure radiation exposure, or the dose. The **roentgen (R)**, which measures the amount of energy absorbed by dry air, can be used to describe quantitative exposure. Named after the German physicist Wilhelm Röntgen (1845–1923; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1901), who discovered X rays. The roentgen is actually defined as the amount of radiation needed to produce an electrical charge of 2.58×10^{-4} C in 1 kg of dry air. Damage to biological tissues, however, is proportional to the amount of energy absorbed by tissues, not air. The most common unit used to measure the effects of radiation on biological tissue is the **rad (radiation absorbed dose)**; the SI equivalent is the gray (Gy). The rad is defined as the amount of radiation that causes 0.01 J of energy to be absorbed by 1 kg of matter, and the gray is defined as the amount of radiation that causes 1 J of energy to be absorbed per kilogram:

$$1\ \text{rad} = 0.010\ \text{J/kg} \qquad 1\ \text{Gy} = 1\ \text{J/kg} \tag{5.6.3}$$

Thus a 70 kg human who receives a dose of 1.0 rad over his or her entire body absorbs 0.010 J/70 kg = 1.4×10^{-4} J, or 0.14 mJ. To put this in perspective, 0.14 mJ is the amount of energy transferred to your skin by a 3.8×10^{-5} g droplet of boiling water. Because the energy of the droplet of water is transferred to a relatively large area of tissue, it is harmless. A radioactive particle, however, transfers its energy to a single molecule, which makes it the atomic equivalent of a bullet fired from a high-powered rifle.

Because α particles have a much higher mass and charge than β particles or γ rays, the difference in mass between α and β particles is analogous to being hit by a bowling ball instead of a table tennis ball traveling at the same speed. Thus the amount of tissue damage caused by 1 rad of α particles is much greater than the damage caused by 1 rad of β particles or γ rays.

Wilhelm Röntgen

Born in the Lower Rhine Province of Germany, Röntgen was the only child of a cloth manufacturer and merchant. His family moved to the Netherlands where he showed no particular aptitude in school, but where he was fond of roaming the countryside. Röntgen was expelled from technical school in Utrecht after being unjustly accused of drawing a caricature of one of the teachers. He began studying mechanical engineering in Zurich, which he could enter without having the credentials of a regular student, and received a PhD at the University of Zurich in 1869. In 1876 he became professor of physics.

Summary

Nonionizing radiation is relatively low in energy and can be used as a heat source, whereas ionizing radiation, which is higher in energy, can penetrate biological tissues and is highly reactive. The effects of radiation on matter depend on the energy of the radiation. Nonionizing radiation is relatively low in energy, and the energy is transferred to matter in the form of heat. Ionizing radiation is relatively high in energy, and when it collides with an atom, it can completely remove an electron to form a positively charged ion that can damage biological tissues. Alpha particles do not penetrate very far into matter, whereas γ rays penetrate more deeply. Common units of radiation exposure, or dose, are the roentgen (R), the amount of energy absorbed by dry air, and the rad (radiation absorbed dose), the amount of radiation that produces 0.01 J of energy in 1 kg of matter. The rem (roentgen equivalent in man) measures the actual amount of tissue damage caused by a given amount of radiation.

5.6: Ionizing Radiation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **21.8: Biological Effects of Radiation** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

5.7: Measuring Radiation

Learning Objectives

- Define units for measuring radiation exposure

Radioactivity is determined by measuring the number of decay processes per unit time. Perhaps the easiest way is simply to determine the number of counts/minute, with each count measuring a single decay process, such as the emission of an α-particle. A particular isotope may have an activity of 5,000 counts/minute (cpm) while another isotope might only have 250 cpm. The amount of activity gives a rough indication of the amount of the radioisotope present - the higher the activity, the more radioactivity isotope in the sample.

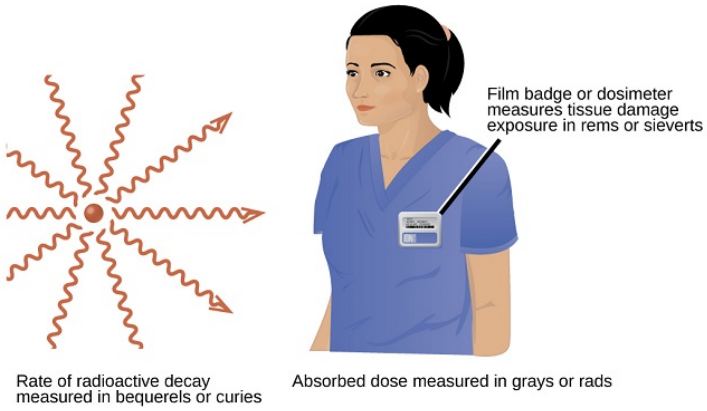


Figure 5.7.1: Different units are used to measure the rate of emission from a radioactive source, the energy that is absorbed from the source, and the amount of damage the absorbed radiation does. (CC BY 4.0; OpenStax)

Measurement of exposure to radioactivity is important for anyone who deals with radioactive materials on a regular basis. Perhaps the simplest device is a personal **dosimeter** - a film badge that will fog up when exposed to radiation (Figure 5.7.1). The amount of fogging is proportional to the amount of radiation present. These devices are not very sensitive to low levels of radiation. More sensitive systems use crystals that respond in some way to radioactivity by registering the number of emissions in a given time. These systems tend to be more sensitive and more reliable than film badges.

When alpha, beta or gamma particles collides with a target, some of the energy in the particle is transferred to the target, typically resulting in the promotion of an electron to an “excited state”. In many “targets”, especially gasses, this results in *ionization*. A **Geiger counter** (or Geiger-Müller counter) takes advantage of this to detect these particles (Figure 5.7.2). In a Geiger tube, the electron produced by ionization of a captive gas travels to the anode and the change in voltage is detected by the attached circuitry.

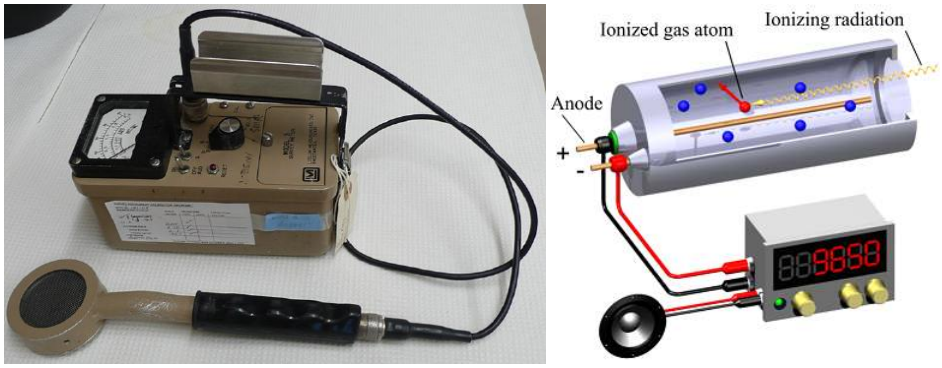


Figure 5.7.2: (left) Geiger counter with pancake type probe. Public Domain; TimVickers via Wikipedia). (right) Schematic of a Geiger-Müller counter using an "end window" tube for low penetration radiation. A loudspeaker is also used for indication. (CC-BY-SA-3.0 Svjo-2 vai Wikipedia).

Most counters of this type are designed to emit an audible “click” in response to the change in voltage, and to also show it on a digital or analog meter.

We previously used mass to indicate the amount of radioactive substance present. However, this is only one of several units used to express amounts of radiation. Some units describe the number of radioactive events occurring per unit time, while others express the amount of a person's exposure to radiation. A variety of units are used to measure various aspects of radiation (Table **5.7.1**).

Table **5.7.1**: Units Used for Measuring Radiation

Measurement Purpose	Unit	Quantity Measured	Description
activity of source	becquerel (Bq)	radioactive decays or emissions	amount of sample that undergoes 1 decay/second
	curie (Ci)		amount of sample that undergoes 3.7×10^{10} decays/second
absorbed dose	gray (Gy)	energy absorbed per kg of tissue	1 Gy = 1 J/kg tissue
	radiation absorbed dose (rad)		1 rad = 0.01 J/kg tissue
biologically effective dose	sievert (Sv)	tissue damage	Sv = RBE × Gy
	roentgen equivalent for humans (rem)		Rem = RBE × rad

The roentgen equivalent for humans (rem) is the unit for radiation damage that is used most frequently in medicine (1 rem = 1 Sv). Note that the tissue damage units (rem or Sv) includes the energy of the radiation dose (rad or Gy) along with a biological factor referred to as the RBE (for relative biological effectiveness) that is an approximate measure of the relative damage done by the radiation. These are related by:

$$\text{number of rems} = \text{RBE} \times \text{number of rads} \tag{5.7.1}$$

with RBE approximately 10 for α radiation, 2(+) for protons and neutrons, and 1 for β and γ radiation.

The Becquerel Unit

Perhaps the direct way of reporting radioactivity is the number of radioactive decays per second. One decay per second is called one **becquerel (Bq).** Even in a small mass of radioactive material, however, there are thousands upon thousands of decays or disintegrations per second. The becquerel is named after Henri Becquerel, who discovered radioactivity in 1896.

The Curie Unit

The **curie** (Ci) is one measure of the rate of decay (named after Pierre and Marie Curie). One curie is equivalent to 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations per second. Since this is obviously a large and unwieldy number, radiation is often expressed in millicuries or microcuries (still very large numbers). The curie is named after Polish scientist Marie Curie, who performed some of the initial investigations into radioactive phenomena in the early 1900s. The curie can be used in place of grams to describe quantities of radioactive material. As an example, the amount of americium in an average smoke detector has an activity of 0.9 μCi.

The Roentgen Unit

There are many different ways to measure radiation exposure, or the dose. The **roentgen (R)**, which measures the amount of energy absorbed by dry air, can be used to describe quantitative exposure.Named after the German physicist Wilhelm Röntgen (1845–1923; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1901), who discovered x-rays. The roentgen is actually defined as the amount of radiation needed to produce an electrical charge of 2.58×10^{-4} C in 1 kg of dry air. Damage to biological tissues, however, is proportional to the amount of energy absorbed by tissues, not air.

The Rad Unit

The most common unit used to measure the effects of radiation on biological tissue is the **rad (radiation absorbed dose)**; the SI equivalent is the gray (Gy). The rad is defined as the amount of radiation that causes 0.01 J of energy to be absorbed by 1 kg of matter, and the gray is defined as the amount of radiation that causes 1 J of energy to be absorbed per kilogram:

$$1\ rad = 0.010\ J/kg \quad 1\ Gy = 1\ J/kg \tag{5.7.2}$$

Thus a 70 kg human who receives a dose of 1.0 rad over his or her entire body absorbs 0.010 J/70 kg = 1.4×10^{-4} J, or 0.14 mJ. To put this in perspective, 0.14 mJ is the amount of energy transferred to your skin by a 3.8×10^{-5} g droplet of boiling water. Because the energy of the droplet of water is transferred to a relatively large area of tissue, it is harmless. A radioactive particle, however, transfers its energy to a single molecule, which makes it the atomic equivalent of a bullet fired from a high-powered rifle.

The Gray Unit

Another unit of radiation absorption is the **gray (Gy)**:

1 Gy = 100 rad

The rad is more common. To get an idea of the amount of energy this represents, consider that the absorption of 1 rad by 70,000 g of H_2O (approximately the same mass as a 150 lb person) would increase its temperature by only 0.002°C. This may not seem like a lot, but it is enough energy to break about 1×10^{21} molecular C–C bonds in a person's body. That amount of damage would not be desirable.

The Rem Unit

Because α particles have a much higher mass and charge than β particles or γ rays, the difference in mass between α and β particles is analogous to being hit by a bowling ball instead of a table tennis ball traveling at the same speed. Thus the amount of tissue damage caused by 1 rad of α particles is much greater than the damage caused by 1 rad of β particles or γ rays. Thus a unit called the **rem (roentgen equivalent in human)** was devised to describe the actual amount of tissue damage caused by a given amount of radiation. The number of rems of radiation is equal to the number of rads multiplied by the RBE (relative biological effectiveness) factor:

$$em = rad \times RBE \tag{5.7.3}$$

where RBE is the *relative biological effectiveness factor* is a number greater than or equal to 1 that takes into account the type of radioactive emission and sometimes the type of tissue being exposed. For beta particles, RBE factor equals 1. For alpha particles striking most tissues, the factor is 10, but for eye tissue, the factor is 30. Most radioactive emissions that people are exposed to are on the order of a few dozen millirems (mrem) or less; a medical X ray is about 20 mrem.

The Sievert Unit

A sievert (Sv) is related to the rem unit and is defined as 100 rem. Because actual radiation doses tend to be very small, most measurements are reported in millirems (1 mrem = 10^{-3} rem).

Assessing the Impact of Radiation Exposure

One of the more controversial public policy issues debated today is whether the radiation exposure from artificial sources, when combined with exposure from natural sources, poses a significant risk to human health. The effects of single radiation doses of different magnitudes on humans are listed in Table **5.7.2**. Because of the many factors involved in radiation exposure (length of exposure, intensity of the source, and energy and type of particle), it is difficult to quantify the specific dangers of one radioisotope versus another. Nonetheless, some general conclusions regarding the effects of radiation exposure are generally accepted as valid.

Table **5.7.2**: The Effects of a Single Radiation Dose on a 70 kg Human

Dose (rem)	Symptoms/Effects
< 5	no observable effect
5–20	possible chromosomal damage
20–100	temporary reduction in white blood cell count
50–100	temporary sterility in men (up to a year)
100–200	mild radiation sickness, vomiting, diarrhea, fatigue; immune system suppressed; bone growth in children retarded
> 300	permanent sterility in women
> 500	fatal to 50% within 30 days; destruction of bone marrow and intestine
> 3000	fatal within hours

Radiation doses of 600 rem and higher are invariably fatal, while a dose of 500 rem kills half the exposed subjects within 30 days. Smaller doses (≤ 50 rem) appear to cause only limited health effects, even though they correspond to tens of years of natural radiation. This does not, however, mean that such doses have no ill effects; they may cause long-term health problems, such as cancer or genetic changes that affect offspring. The possible detrimental effects of the much smaller doses attributable to artificial sources (< 100 mrem/yr) are more difficult to assess.

The tissues most affected by large, whole-body exposures are bone marrow, intestinal tissue, hair follicles, and reproductive organs, all of which contain rapidly dividing cells. The susceptibility of rapidly dividing cells to radiation exposure explains why cancers are often treated by radiation. Because cancer cells divide faster than normal cells, they are destroyed preferentially by radiation. Long-term radiation-exposure studies on fruit flies show a linear relationship between the number of genetic defects and both the magnitude of the dose and the exposure time. In contrast, similar studies on mice show a much lower number of defects when a given dose of radiation is spread out over a long period of time rather than received all at once. Which of the two is applicable to humans?

According to one hypothesis, mice have very low risk from low doses because their bodies have ways of dealing with the damage caused by natural radiation. At much higher doses, however, their natural repair mechanisms are overwhelmed, leading to irreversible damage. Because mice are biochemically much more similar to humans than are fruit flies, many scientists believe that this model also applies to humans. In contrast, the linear model assumes that all exposure to radiation is intrinsically damaging and suggests that stringent regulation of low-level radiation exposure is necessary. Which view is more accurate? The answer—while yet unknown—has extremely important consequences for regulating radiation exposure.

Summary

The SI unit for rate of radioactive decay is the becquerel (Bq), with 1 Bq = 1 disintegration per second. The curie (Ci) and millicurie (mCi) are much larger units and are frequently used in medicine (1 curie = 1 Ci = $\mathbf{3.7 \times 10^{10}}$ disintegrations per second). The SI unit for measuring radiation dose is the gray (Gy), with 1 Gy = 1 J of energy absorbed per kilogram of tissue. In medical applications, the radiation absorbed dose (rad) is more often used (1 rad = 0.01 Gy; 1 rad results in the absorption of 0.01 J/kg of tissue). The SI unit measuring tissue damage caused by radiation is the sievert (Sv). This takes into account both the energy and the biological effects of the type of radiation involved in the radiation dose.

5.7: Measuring Radiation is shared under a collection 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **24.3: Detection of Radioactivity** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.
- **21.6: Biological Effects of Radiation** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **21.8: Biological Effects of Radiation** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Ionic and Molecular Compounds

6.1: Ions
6.2: Ions and the Octet Rule
6.3: Ions of Some Common Elements
6.4: Periodic Properties and Ion Formation
6.5: Naming Monoatomic Ions
6.6: Polyatomic Ions
6.7: Ionic Bonds
6.8: Formulas of Ionic Compounds
6.9: Naming Ionic Compounds
6.10: Some Properties of Ionic Compounds
6.11: Covalent Bonds
6.12: Covalent Bonds and the Periodic Table
6.13: Multiple Covalent Bonds
6.14: Characteristics of Molecular Compounds
6.15: Molecular Formulas and Lewis Structures
6.16: Drawing Lewis Structures
6.17: The Shapes of Molecules
6.18: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity
6.19: Polar Molecules
6.20: Naming Binary Molecular Compounds
6.21: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises)
6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises I)
6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises II)

6: Ionic and Molecular Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.1: Ions

Learning Objectives

- Describe how an ion is formed.
- Distinguish the difference between the two types of ions.

Ions

As introduced previously, atoms contain a nucleus with neutrons and positively charged protons, surrounded by negatively charged electrons. In an atom, the total number of electrons, negative charge, *equals* the total number of protons, positive charge, and therefore, atoms are electrically neutral or uncharged. If an atom loses or gains electrons, it will become a positively or negatively charged particle, called an **ion**. The *loss* of one or more electrons results in more protons than electrons and an overall positively charged ion, called a **cation**. For example, a sodium atom with one less electron is a cation, Na^+, with a +1 charge (Figure **6.1.1**).

Figure **6.1.1**: A sodium atom (Na) has equal numbers of protons and electrons (11) and is uncharged. When it loses an electron, the resulting sodium cation has one more proton (11) than electrons (10), giving it an overall positive one charge, Na+.

When an atom *gains* one or more electrons, it becomes a negatively charged **anion**, because there are more electrons than protons. When chlorine gains one electron it forms a chloride ion, $Cl^–$, with a –1 charge (Figures **6.1.2**)

The names for positive and negative ions are pronounced CAT-eye-ons (cations) and ANN-eye-ons (anions), respectively.

Figure **6.1.2**: A chlorine atom (Cl) has equal numbers of protons and electrons (17) and is uncharged. When it gains an electron, the resulting chlorine anion has one more electron (18) than protons (17), giving it an overall negative one charge, Cl–.

Note Naming Ions

Cations are named using the element name plus "*ion*" to indicate it is charged. Anions are named by changing the element name ending to "*ide*". For example, a magnesium ion is formed when neutral magnesium loses electrons and a fluor*ide* ion is formed when neutral fluorine gains electrons.

Example 6.1.1

A calcium (Ca) atom loses two electrons and a sulfur (S) atom gains two electrons. Determine if the resulting ions are cations or anions? Write the ion symbols for each.

Solution

When calcium (Z = 20) gains two electrons the resulting ion will have 18 electrons and 20 protons and therefore a charge of +2 (there are two more positive protons than negative electrons), it is a cation. The symbol for a calcium ion is Ca^{2+}.

When sulfur (Z = 16) gains two electrons the resulting ion will have 18 electrons and 16 protons and therefore a charge of –2 (there are two more negative electrons than positive protons), it is an anion. The symbol for a sulf*ide* ion is $S^{2–}$.

Key Takeaways

- Ions are formed when atoms gain or lose electrons.
- Ions can be positively charged (cations) or negatively charged (anions).

Contributors

- Lisa Sharpe Elles, University of Kansas

This page titled 6.1: Ions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Lisa Sharpe Elles.

6.2: Ions and the Octet Rule

Learning Objectives

- Use the octet rule and electron configurations to determine if an atom will gain or lose electrons forming anions or cations.

Ions are formed when an atom, usually on the left side of the periodic table, *reacts with* and *transfers* one or more electrons to another atom, usually on the right side of the periodic table. These electrons are usually *lost from* or *gained into* the **valence shell**, or outermost energy level (shell). Why do some atoms lose electrons and others gain electrons? How can we predict the number of electrons lost or gained? Which ions are stable and which ions do not form at all? These questions are best answered by looking at electron configurations and considering what is called the **octet rule**, which states that atoms gain or lose electrons to form a stable, noble gas configuration, i.e., a filled subshell containing *eight* electrons. Therefore, it is useful to take a closer look at electron configurations to further illustrate ion formation and electron transfer between atoms.

The electron configuration for sodium shows that there are ten core electrons and one valence electron in the third energy level. When sodium loses the single valence electron, forming the cation Na^+, the electron configuration is now identical to that of neon, a stable noble gas with eight valence electrons.

$$\begin{matrix} \mathrm{Na} & \rightarrow & \mathrm{Na^+ + e^-} \\ 1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^6\,3s^1 & & 1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^6 \end{matrix} \tag{6.2.1}$$

Chlorine also has ten core electrons and valence electrons in the third energy level. However, chlorine has seven valence electrons, one less than the noble gas argon, which has eight valence electrons. Thus, chlorine will gain one electron, forming the anion, Cl^-, and achieving a stable noble gas configuration.

$$\begin{matrix} \mathrm{Cl + e^-} & \rightarrow & \mathrm{Cl^-} \\ 1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^6\,3s^2\,3p^5 & & 1s^2\,2s^2\,2p^6\,3s^2\,3p^6 \end{matrix} \tag{6.2.2}$$

The octet rule and the periodic table can be used to predict what ions will form; main group elements on the left side of the periodic table (metals in groups 1, 2, and 13) tend to lose electrons (form cations) to achieve the same electron configuration as the noble gas just *before* them in the table. The number of electrons the atom will lose depends on what group the atom is in, i.e., how many valence electrons it has. Main group elements on the right side of the periodic table (nonmetals in groups 15-17) will gain electrons to achieve the same electron configuration as the noble gas just *after* them in the table. Again, the number of electrons the atom will gain depends on the number of valence electrons it has and how many are needed to reach the filled subshell, eight electrons.

Note Violation of the Octet Rule

It is *not impossible* to violate the octet rule. Consider sodium: in its elemental form, it has one valence electron and is stable. It is rather reactive, however, and does not require a lot of energy to remove that electron to make the Na^+ ion. We *could* remove another electron by adding even *more* energy to the ion, to make the Na^{2+} ion. However, that requires much more energy than is normally available in chemical reactions, so sodium stops at a 1+ charge after losing a single electron. It turns out that the Na^+ ion has a complete octet in its new valence shell, the $n = 2$ shell, which satisfies the octet rule. The octet rule is a result of trends in energies and is useful in explaining why atoms form the ions that they do.

Example 6.2.1

Write the electron configuration of aluminum atom ($Z = 13$) and underline the *valence electrons*. How many electrons are gained/lost to form an aluminum ion? Write the symbol and the electron configuration for an aluminum ion.

Solution

The electron configuration of Al atom is $1s^2\underline{2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1}$. Aluminum has three valence electrons in the third energy level, ($3s^2 3p^1$). The cation, Al^{3+}, is formed when these three valence electrons are **lost**, leaving the configuration for the noble gas neon, $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$.

? Exercise 6.2.1

Write the electron configuration of oxygen atom (Z = 8) and underline the valence electrons. How many electrons are gained/lost to form an oxide ion? Write the symbol and electron configuration for oxide ion.

Answer

The electron configuration of O atom is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$. Oxygen has six valence electrons in the second energy level, ($2s^2 2p^4$). The anion O^{2-} is formed when two electrons are **gained** in the valence shell. The resulting electron configuration, $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$, which is also identical to the configuration for the noble gas neon.

This page titled 6.2: Ions and the Octet Rule is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Lisa Sharpe Elles.

6.3: Ions of Some Common Elements

Learning Objectives

- Become familiar with the charge of some common ions.
- Use the periodic table to predict ion charge.

In many cases, elements that belong to the *same group* (vertical column) on the periodic table form ions with the *same charge* because they have the *same number* of valence electrons. Thus, as introduced previously, the periodic table becomes a tool for remembering the charges on many ions. For example, all ions made from alkali metals, the first column on the periodic table, have a +1 charge. Ions made from alkaline earth metals, the second group on the periodic table, have a +2 charge. On the other side of the periodic table, the next-to-last column, the halogens, form ions having a −1 charge. Figure **6.3.1** shows how the charge on many ions can be predicted by the location of an element on the periodic table.

Some elements, especially transition metals, can form ions with variable charges. Figure **6.3.1** shows the characteristic charges for some of these ions. Notice that there is no simple pattern for transition metal ions (or for the larger main group elements) as there is with the main group ions. This is because the transition metals have electrons in *d* subshell and do not follow the octet rule. In order for an element such as iron (Fe) to achieve the same noble gas configuration of argon (Ar), it would need to lose 6 electrons in the *3d* subshell and 2 electrons in the *4s* subshell. An iron ion with a charge of +8 is not very likely, therefore, the octet rule is not applicable to transition elements.

Note

For a multiply-charged ion, the correct convention is to write the charge number first followed by the sign. For example, the barium cation is written Ba^{2+}, not Ba^{+2}.

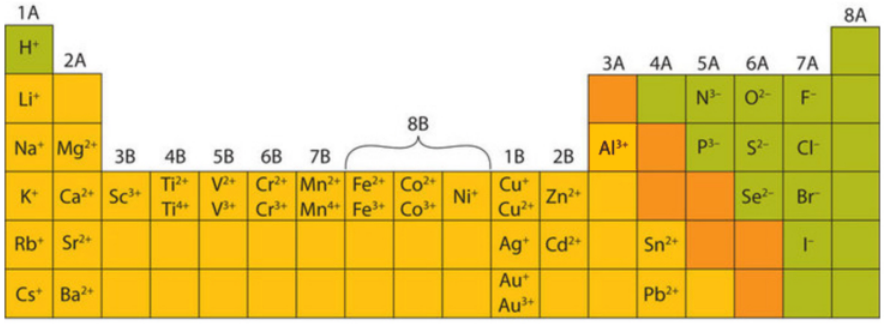


Figure **6.3.1**: Common ions formed by specific elements on the periodic table. The charge that a representative (main group element) acquires when it becomes an ion is related to the location on the periodic table. Note that some metal atoms, specifically the transition elements, commonly form ions with variable charges.

6.3.1 Example

Which of these ions is *not likely* to form?

a. Mg^{+}
b. K^{+}

Solution

(a) Mg is in Group 2A and has two valence electrons. It achieves octet by losing two electrons to form Mg^{2+} cation. Losing only one electron to form Mg^{+} does not make an octet, hence, Mg^{+} is not likely to form.

6.3.2 Exercise

Which of these ions is *not likely* to form?

a. S^{3-}

b. N^{3-}

Answer

(a) S is in Group 6A and has six valence electrons. It achieves octet by gaining two electrons to form S^{2-} anion. Gaining three electrons to form S^{3-}does not make it octet, hence, S^{3-} is not likely to form.

6.3: Ions of Some Common Elements is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.4: Periodic Properties and Ion Formation

Learning Objectives

- Describe ionization energy and electron affinity and how this relates to ion formation trends.

We have seen that elements often gain or lose enough electrons to achieve the valence electron configuration of the nearest noble gas. Why is this so? In this section, we develop a more quantitative approach to predicting such reactions by examining periodic trends in the energy changes that accompany ion formation.

Ionization Energy

Because atoms do not spontaneously lose electrons, energy is *required* to remove an electron from an atom to form a cation. Chemists define the ionization energy (IE) of an element as the amount of energy needed to remove an electron from the gaseous atom A in its ground state. IE is therefore the energy required for the reaction:

$$A(g) \rightarrow A^+(g) + e^- \qquad \text{energy required} = \text{IE} \tag{6.4.1}$$

Because an input of energy is required, the ionization energy is always positive ($IE > 0$) for the reaction as written in Equation **6.4.1**. Larger values of (IE) mean that the electron is more tightly bound to the atom and thus, harder to remove. Typical units for ionization energies are kilojoules/mole (kJ/mol) or electron volts (eV):

$$1\ eV/atom = 96.49\ kJ/mol \tag{6.4.2}$$

As you move *across* a row on the periodic table, the ionization energies generally tend to increase. This means that elements on the left side of the periodic table lose electrons more easily (requires less energy to remove an electron) than those on the right side of the periodic table. The trend in ionization energy can be explained by considering the trend in atomic radius (explained in an earlier chapter). As you move from left to right on the periodic table, the atomic size decreases and the electrostatic interactions between the nucleus and valence electrons increases, which increases the energy required to remove electrons, thus the (IE) increases.

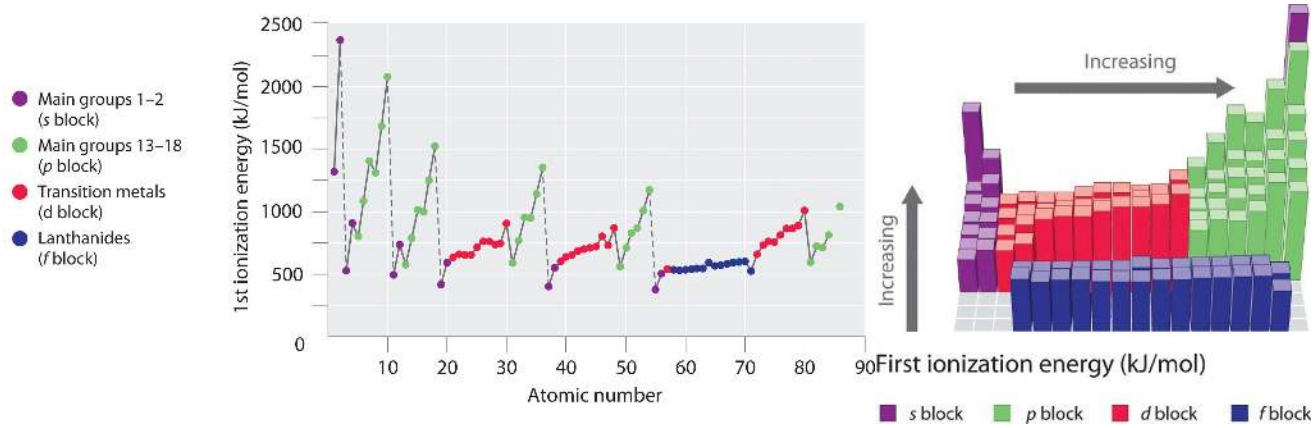


Figure **6.4.1**: Ionization Energy Trends on the Periodic Table. (Left Figure) A Plot of Periodic Variation of First Ionization Energy with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table. There is a decrease in ionization energy within a group (most easily seen here for groups 1 and 18). (Right Figure) First Ionization Energies of the *s*-, *p*-, *d*-, and *f*-Block Elements

If you look closely at the trends in ionization energy, you will notice that there are some "exceptions" where you see a decrease in energy rather than an increase. In periods 1 and 2, you can see this decrease in (IE) between groups 2 and 3 and again between groups 5 and 6. These variations in the trend can be further explained by looking closely at the electron configurations of the atoms in question. As you move from magnesium to aluminum, one electron is added to the 3*p* subshell. This 3*p* electron is slightly further from the nucleus (higher in energy) and is therefore, more easy to remove compared to the 3*s* electrons. The decrease between phosphorous and sulfur occurs because the added electron in sulfur is the first to be paired in the *p* subshell. These two electrons in the same *p* orbital repel each other, making the sulfur atom slightly less stable than would otherwise be expected, as is true of all the group 16 elements. This electron is easier to remove because it will lead to more stability.

Example 6.4.1: Lowest First Ionization Energy

Use their locations in the periodic table to predict which element has the lowest first ionization energy: Ca, K, Mg, Na, Rb, or Sr.

Given: six elements

Asked for: element with lowest first ionization energy

Strategy:

Locate the elements in the periodic table. Based on trends in ionization energies across a row and down a column, identify the element with the lowest first ionization energy.

Solution:

These six elements form a rectangle in the two far-left columns of the periodic table. Because we know that ionization energies increase from left to right in a row and from bottom to top of a column, we can predict that the element at the bottom left of the rectangle will have the lowest first ionization energy: Rb.

Exercise 6.4.1: Highest First Ionization Energy

Use their locations in the periodic table to predict which element has the highest first ionization energy: As, Bi, Ge, Pb, Sb, or Sn.

Answer

As

Electron Affinity

The electron affinity (***EA***) of an element ***A*** is defined as the energy change that occurs when an electron is added to a gaseous atom or ion:

$$A(g) + e^- \rightarrow A^-(g) \qquad \text{energy change} = EA \tag{6.4.3}$$

Unlike ionization energies, which are always positive for a neutral atom because energy is required to remove an electron, electron affinities can be negative (energy is released when an electron is added), positive (energy must be added to the system to produce an anion), or zero (the process is energetically neutral). This sign convention is consistent with a negative value corresponded to the energy change for an exothermic process, which is one in which heat is released (Figure 6.4.2).

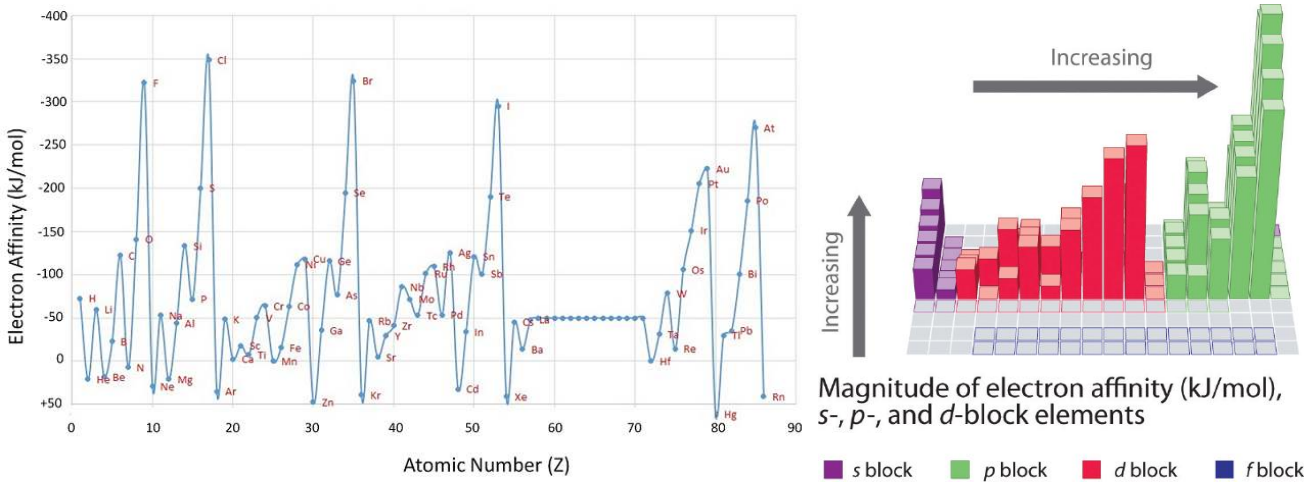


Figure 6.4.2: Electron Affinity Trends. (Left) A Plot of Periodic Variation of Electron Affinity with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table. Notice that electron affinities can be both negative and positive. from Robert J. Lancashire (University of the West Indies). (Right) Electron Affinities (in kJ/mol) of the *s*-, *p*-, and *d*-Block Elements.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/402267

The chlorine atom has the most negative electron affinity of any element, which means that more energy is released when an electron is added to a gaseous chlorine atom than to an atom of any other element:

$$\mathrm{Cl(g) + e^- \rightarrow Cl^-(g)} \qquad EA = -346\ kJ/mol \tag{6.4.4}$$

In contrast, beryllium does not form a stable anion, so its effective electron affinity is

$$\mathrm{Be(g) + e^- \rightarrow Be^-(g)} \qquad EA \geq 0 \tag{6.4.5}$$

In general, electron affinities of the main-group elements become less negative as we proceed down a column. This is because as the energy level increases, the extra electrons enter orbitals that are increasingly far from the nucleus, and it is less easy to gain extra electrons forming anions.

✔ Example 6.4.2: Contrasting Electron Affinities of Sb, Se, and Te

Based on their positions in the periodic table, which of Sb, Se, or Te would you predict to have the most negative electron affinity?

Given: three elements

Asked for: element with most negative electron affinity

Strategy:

A. Locate the elements in the periodic table. Use the trends in electron affinities going down a column for elements in the same group. Similarly, use the trends in electron affinities from left to right for elements in the same row.
B. Place the elements in order, listing the element with the most negative electron affinity first.

Solution:

We know that electron affinities become less negative going down a column (except for the anomalously low electron affinities of the elements of the second row), so we can predict that the electron affinity of Se is more negative than that of Te. We also know that electron affinities become more negative from left to right across a row, and that the group 15 elements tend to have values that are less negative than expected. Because Sb is located to the left of Te and belongs to group 15, we predict that the electron affinity of Te is more negative than that of Sb. The overall order is Se < Te < Sb, so Se has the most negative electron affinity among the three elements.

? Exercise 6.4.2: Contrasting Electron Affinities of Rb, Sr, and Xe

Based on their positions in the periodic table, which of Rb, Sr, or Xe would you predict to most likely form a gaseous anion?

Answer

Rb

6.4: Periodic Properties and Ion Formation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.5: Naming Monoatomic Ions

Learning Objectives

- Name monoatomic ions using the defined nomenclature rules.

After learning a few more details about the names of individual ions, you will be a step away from knowing how to name ionic compounds. This section begins the formal study of nomenclature, the systematic naming of chemical compounds.

Naming Cations

The name of a monatomic cation is simply the name of the element followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Na^+ is the sodium ion, Al^{3+} is the aluminum ion, Ca^{2+} is the calcium ion, and so forth.

We have seen that some elements lose different numbers of electrons, producing ions of different charges. Iron, for example, can form two cations, each of which, when combined with the same anion, makes a different ionic compound with unique physical and chemical properties. Thus, we need a different name for each iron ion to distinguish Fe^{2+} from Fe^{3+}. The same issue arises for other ions with more than one possible charge.

There are two ways to make this distinction. In the simpler, more modern approach, called the ***stock system***, an ion's positive charge is indicated by a roman numeral in parentheses after the element name, followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Fe^{2+} is called the iron(II) ion, while Fe^{3+} is called the iron(III) ion. This system is used only for elements that form more than one common positive ion. We do not call the Na^+ ion the sodium(I) ion because (I) is unnecessary. Sodium forms only a 1+ ion, so there is no ambiguity about the name *sodium ion*.

The second system, called the **common system**, is not conventional but is still prevalent and used in the health sciences. This system recognizes that many metals have two common cations. The common system uses two suffixes (*-ic* and *-ous*) that are appended to the stem of the element name. The *-ic* suffix represents the greater of the two cation charges, and the *-ous* suffix represents the lower one. In many cases, the stem of the element name comes from the Latin name of the element. Table **6.5.1** lists the elements that use the common system, along with their respective cation names.

Table **6.5.1**: Names of Some Cations

Element	Charge	Symbol	Common System Name	Stock System Name
chromium	2+	Cr^{2+}	chrom*ous* ion	chromium(II) ion
	3+	Cr^{3+}	chrom*ic* ion	chromium(III) ion
copper	1+	Cu^+	cupr*ous* ion	copper(I) ion
	2+	Cu^{2+}	cupr*ic* ion	copper(II) ion
iron	2+	Fe^{2+}	ferr*ous* ion	iron(II) ion
	3+	Fe^{3+}	ferr*ic* ion	iron(III) ion
lead	2+	Pb^{2+}	plumb*ous* ion	lead(II) ion
	4+	Pb^{3+}	plumb*ic* ion	lead(IV) ion
tin	2+	Sn^{2+}	stann*ous* ion	tin(II) ion
	4+	Sn^{4+}	stann*ic* ion	tin(IV) ion

Naming Anions

The name of a monatomic anion consists of the stem of the element name, the suffix *-ide*, and then the word *ion*. Thus, as we have already seen, Cl^- is "chlor-" + "-ide ion," or the chloride ion. Similarly, O^{2-} is the oxide ion, Se^{2-} is the selenide ion, and so forth. Table **6.5.2** lists the names of some common monatomic ions.

Table 6.5.2: Some Monatomic Anions

Element	Charge	Symbol	Name
fluorine	1–	F^-	fluoride ion
chlorine	1–	Cl^-	chloride ion
bromine	1–	Br^-	bromide ion
iodine	1–	I^-	iodide ion
oxygen	2–	O^{2-}	oxide ion
sulfur	2–	S^{2-}	sulfide ion
phosphorous	3–	P^{3-}	phosphide ion
nitrogen	3–	N^{3-}	nitride ion

Example 6.5.1

Name each ion.

a. Ca^{2+}
b. S^{2-}
c. SO_3^{2-}
d. NH_4^+
e. Cu^+

Answer a

the calcium ion

Answer b

the sulfide ion (from Table 6.5.2)

Answer c

the sulfite ion

Answer d

the ammonium ion

Answer e

the copper(I) ion or the cuprous ion (copper can form cations with either a 1+ or 2+ charge, so we have to specify which charge this ion has

Exercise 6.5.1

Name each ion.

a. Fe^{2+}
b. Fe^{3+}
c. SO_4^{2-}
d. Ba^{2+}
e. HCO_3^-

Answer a

the iron (II) or ferrous ion

Answer b

the iron (III) or ferric ion

Answer c

the sulfate ion

Answer d

the barium ion

Answer e

the bicarbonate ion or hydrogen carbonate ion

Example 6.5.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the bromide ion
b. the phosphate ion
c. the cupric ion
d. the magnesium ion

Answer a

Br^-

Answer b

PO_4^{3-}

Answer c

Cu^{2+}

Answer d

Mg^{2+}

Exercise 6.5.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the fluoride ion
b. the carbonate ion
c. the ferrous ion
d. the potassium ion

Answer a

F^-

Answer b

CO_3^{2-}

Answer c

Fe^{2+}

Answer d

K^+

Note Chemistry Is Everywhere: Salt

The element sodium (part [a] in the accompanying figure) is a very reactive metal; given the opportunity, it will react with the sweat on your hands and form sodium hydroxide, which is a very corrosive substance. The element chlorine (part [b] in the accompanying figure) is a pale yellow, corrosive gas that should not be inhaled due to its poisonous nature. Bring these two hazardous substances together, however, and they react to make the ionic compound sodium chloride (part [c] in the accompanying figure), known simply as salt.

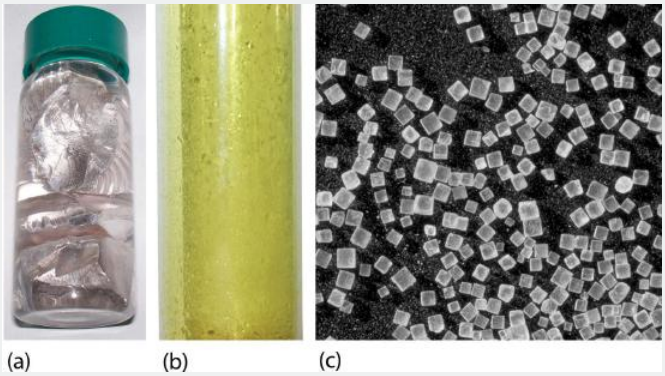


Figure **6.5.1**: Sodium + Chlorine = Sodium Chloride (a) Sodium is a very reactive metal. (b) Chlorine is a pale yellow, noxious gas. (c) Together, sodium and chlorine make sodium chloride-salt-which is necessary for our survival. Source: Photo(opens in new window) on the left courtesy of Greenhorn1. Photo(opens in new window) in the center courtesy of Benjah-bmm27, . Photo on the right © Thinkstock.

Salt is necessary for life. Na^+ ions are one of the main ions in the human body and are necessary to regulate the fluid balance in the body. Cl^- ions are necessary for proper nerve function and respiration. Both of these ions are supplied by salt. The taste of salt is one of the fundamental tastes; salt is probably the most ancient flavoring known, and one of the few rocks we eat.

The health effects of too much salt are still under debate, although a 2010 report by the US Department of Agriculture concluded that "excessive sodium intake…raises blood pressure, a well-accepted and extraordinarily common risk factor for stroke, coronary heart disease, and kidney disease."US Department of Agriculture Committee for Nutrition Policy and Promotion, Report of the Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee on the Dietary Guidelines for Americans, accessed January 5, 2010. It is clear that most people ingest more salt than their bodies need, and most nutritionists recommend curbing salt intake. Curiously, people who suffer from low salt (called *hyponatria*) do so not because they ingest too little salt but because they drink too much water. Endurance athletes and others involved in extended strenuous exercise need to watch their water intake so their body's salt content is not diluted to dangerous levels.

6.5: Naming Monoatomic Ions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.6: Polyatomic Ions

Learning Objectives

- To identify and name polyatomic ions.

Some ions consist of groups of atoms *covalently* bonded together and have an *overall electric charge*. Because these ions contain more than one atom, they are called **polyatomic ions**. The structures, names, and formulas of some polyatomic ions are found in the below figure and table.

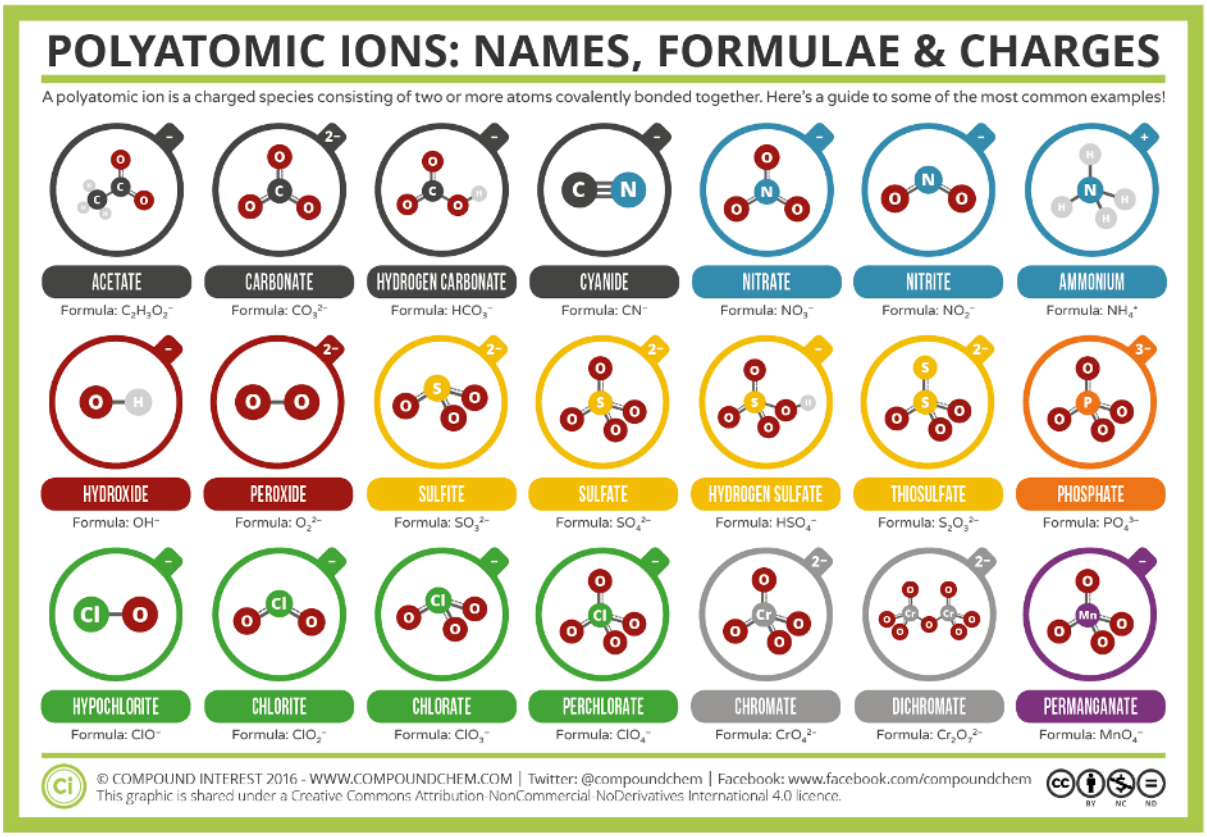


Figure **6.6.1**: Polyatomic Ions Infographic

Polyatomic ions have defined formulas, names, and charges that cannot be modified in any way. Table **6.6.1** lists the ion names and ion formulas of the most common polyatomic ions. For example, $\mathbf{NO_3^-}$ is the nitrate ion; it has one nitrogen atom and three oxygen atoms and an overall −1 charge.

Table **6.6.1**: Common Polyatomic Ion Names and Formulas

Ion Name	Ion Formula
hyddronium ion	H_3O^+
ammonium ion	NH_4^+
hydroxide ion	OH^-
cyanide ion	CN^-
carbonate ion	CO_3^{2-}
bicarbonate or hydrogen carbonate	HCO_3^-
acetate ion	$C_2H_3O_2^-$ **or** $CH_3CO_2^-$
nitrate ion	NO_3^-
nitrite ion	NO_2^-
sulfate ion	SO_4^{2-}
sulfite ion	SO_3^{2-}
phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}
phosphite ion	PO_3^{3-}

Note that only two polyatomic ions in this table are cations, hydronium ion (H_3O^+) and ammonium ion (NH_4^+), the remaining polyatomic ions are all negatively-charged and, therefore, are classified as anions. However, only two of these, the hydroxide ion and the cyanide ion, are named using the "**-ide**" suffix that is typically indicative of negatively-charged ions. The remaining polyatomic anions, which all contain oxygen, in combination with another non-metal, exist as part of a series in which the number of oxygens within the polyatomic unit can vary. A single suffix, "-ide," is insufficient for distinguishing the names of the anions in a related polyatomic series. Therefore, "**-ate**" and "**-ite**" suffixes are employed, in order to denote that the corresponding polyatomic ions are part of a series. Additionally, these suffixes also indicate the relative number of oxygens that are contained within the polyatomic ions. Note that all of the polyatomic ions whose names end in "-ate" contain one more oxygen than those polyatomic anions whose names end in "-ite." Unfortunately, much like the common system for naming transition metals, these suffixes only indicate the *relative* number of oxygens that are contained within the polyatomic ions. For example, both the nitrate ion, symbolized as NO_3^-, and the sulfate ion, symbolized as SO_4^{2-}, share an "-ate" suffix, however, the former contains three oxygens, and the latter contains four. Additionally, both the nitrate ion and the sulfite ion contain three oxygens, but these polyatomic ions do not share a common suffix. Unfortunately, the relative nature of these suffixes mandates that the ion formula/ion name combinations of the polyatomic ions must simply be memorized.

6.6: Polyatomic Ions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

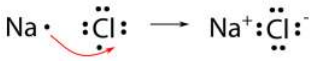
6.7: Ionic Bonds

Learning Objectives

- Define an ionic bond, ionic compound, and electrostatic force
- Recognize the complexity of three-dimensional ionic bond interactions involved in ionic compounds

Oppositely charged particles attract each other. This attractive force is often referred to as an **electrostatic attraction**. An **ionic bond** is the electrostatic electrostatic attraction that holds ions together in an **ionic compound**. The strength of the ionic bond is directly dependent upon the quantity of the charges and inversely dependent on the distance between the charged particles. A cation with a 2+ charge will make a stronger ionic bond than a cation with a 1+ charge. A larger ion makes a weaker ionic bond because of the greater distance between its electrons and the nucleus of the oppositely charged ion.

We will use sodium chloride as an example to demonstrate the nature of the ionic bond and how it forms. As you know, sodium is a metal and loses its one valence electron to become a cation. Chlorine is a nonmetal and gains one electron in becoming an anion. However, electrons cannot be simply "lost" to nowhere in particular. A more accurate way to describe what is happening is that a single electron is transferred from the sodium atom to the chlorine atom as shown below.



The ionic bond is the attraction of the Na^+ ion for the Cl^- ion. It is conventional to show show the cation without dots around the symbol to emphasize that the original energy level that contained the valence electron is now empty. The anion is now shown with a complete octet of electrons.

Ionic compounds are held together by attractive electrostatic interactions between cations and anions. In contrast to the simplified electron transfer depicted above for sodium and chlorine, the cations and anions in ionic compounds are arranged in space to form an extended three-dimensional array that maximizes the number of attractive electrostatic interactions and minimizes the number of repulsive electrostatic interactions (Figure 6.7.1). In other words, each ion is attracted to many of its neighboring ions forming a sodium chloride crystal or **ionic solid**.

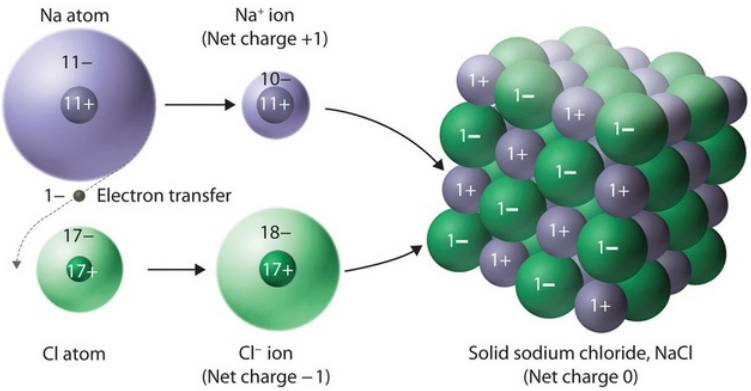


Figure 6.7.1: Ionic Bonding. The ionic compound NaCl forms when electrons from sodium atoms are transferred to chlorine atoms. The resulting Na^+ and Cl^- ions form a three-dimensional solid that is held together by attractive electrostatic interactions.

Contributors and Attributions

-

6.7: Ionic Bonds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.8: Formulas of Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Write the chemical formula for a simple ionic compound based on the charges of the cations and anions in the compound.

In every ionic compound, the total number of positive charges of the cations equals the total number of negative charges of the anions. Thus, ionic compounds are electrically neutral overall, even though they contain positive and negative ions. We can use this observation to help us write the formula of an ionic compound. The formula of an ionic compound must have a ratio of ions such that the numbers of positive and negative charges are equal.

Ionic Compounds Formed From Monoatomic Ions

Consider an Na atom in the presence of a Cl atom. The two atoms have these Lewis electron dot diagrams and electron configurations:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \qquad \cdot\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}$$

$$[Ne]\,3s^1 \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^5$$

For the Na atom to obtain an octet, it must lose an electron; for the Cl atom to obtain an octet, it must gain an electron. An electron transfers from the Na atom to the Cl atom:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \rightsquigarrow \cdot\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}$$

resulting in two ions—the Na^+ ion and the Cl^- ion:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot^{+} \qquad \mathbf{:}\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}^{-}$$

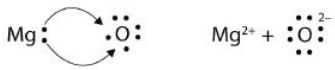
$$[Ne] \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^6$$

Both species now have complete octets, and the electron shells are energetically stable. From basic physics, we know that opposite charges attract. This is what happens to the Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot^{+} + \mathbf{:}\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}^{-} \rightarrow Na^+Cl^- \;\; or \;\; NaCl$$

where we have written the final formula (the formula for sodium chloride) as per the convention for ionic compounds, without listing the charges explicitly. As explained previously, the attraction between oppositely charged ions is called an **ionic bond**.

In electron transfer, the number of electrons lost must equal the number of electrons gained. We saw this in the formation of NaCl. A similar process occurs between Mg atoms and O atoms, except in this case two electrons are transferred:



Magnesium donates two electrons to oxygen to empty its own orbital and fill oxygens, thus creating Mg2+ and O2-.

The two ions each have octets as their valence shell, and the two oppositely charged particles attract, making an ionic bond:

$$\mathbf{Mg}^{2+} + \mathbf{:}\ddot{\mathbf{O}}\mathbf{:}^{2-} \qquad Mg^{2+}O^{2-} \; or \; MgO$$

What about when an Na atom interacts with an O atom? The O atom needs two electrons to complete its valence octet, but the Na atom supplies only one electron:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \rightsquigarrow \cdot\ddot{\mathbf{O}}\mathbf{:}$$

The O atom still does not have an octet of electrons. What we need is a second Na atom to donate a second electron to the O atom:



Two sodium atoms donate one electron each to oxygen to empty their orbitals and fill oxygen's, thus creating 2 Na+ and O2-.

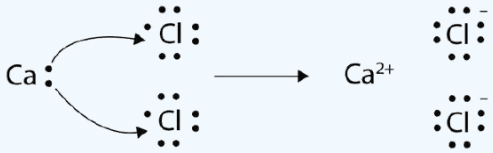
These three ions attract each other to form an overall neutrally charged ionic compound, which we write as Na_2O. The need for the number of electrons lost to be equal to the number of electrons gained explains why ionic compounds have the ratio of cations to anions that they do. This is also required by the law of conservation of matter.

Example 6.8.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form calcium chloride from Ca atoms and Cl atoms.

Solution

A Ca atom has two valence electrons, while a Cl atom has seven electrons. A Cl atom needs only one more to complete its octet, while Ca atoms have two electrons to lose. We need two Cl atoms to accept the two electrons from one Ca atom. The transfer process is as follows:



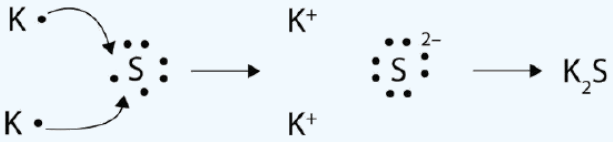
Calcium donates two electrons, one each going to a chlorine. This empties calcium's orbital and fills both of the chlorines'. This creates Ca2+ and two Cl-.

The oppositely charged ions attract one another to make $CaCl_2$.

Exercise 6.8.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form potassium sulfide from K atoms and S atoms.

Answer



Two potassium atoms donate an electron to sulphur to fill sulphur's orbital and empty their own, thus creating two K+ and one S2-. They ionically bond to form K2S.

For compounds in which the ratio of ions is not as obvious, the subscripts in the formula can be obtained by **crossing charges**: use the absolute value of the charge on one ion as the subscript for the other ion. This method is shown schematically in Figure 3.3.2.

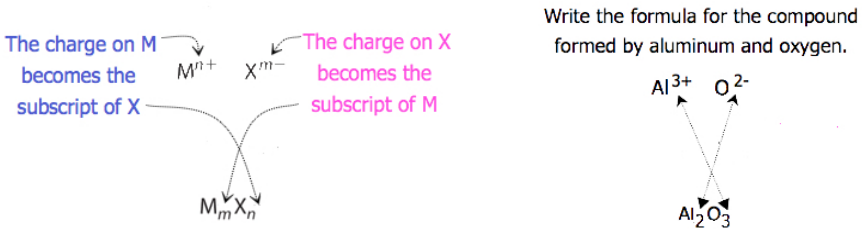


Figure **6.8.1**: Crossing charges. One method for obtaining subscripts in the empirical formula is by crossing charges.

When crossing charges, it is sometimes necessary to reduce the subscripts to their simplest ratio to write the empirical formula. Consider, for example, the compound formed by Pb^{4+} and O^{2-}. Using the absolute values of the charges on the ions as subscripts gives the formula Pb_2O_4. This simplifies to its correct empirical formula **PbO_2**. The empirical formula has one Pb^{4+} ion and two O^{2-} ions.

Example 6.8.2: Predicting the Formula of an Ionic Compound

The gemstone sapphire (Figure **6.8.2**) is mostly a compound of aluminum and oxygen that contains aluminum cations, Al^{3+}, and oxygen anions, O^{2-}. What is the formula of this compound?



Figure **6.8.2**: Although pure aluminum oxide is colorless, trace amounts of iron and titanium give blue sapphire its characteristic color. (credit: modification of work by Stanislav Doronenko)

Solution

Because the ionic compound must be electrically neutral, it must have the same number of positive and negative charges. Two aluminum ions, each with a charge of 3+, would give us six positive charges, and three oxide ions, each with a charge of 2−, would give us six negative charges. The formula would be Al_2O_3.

Exercise 6.8.2

Predict the formula of the ionic compound formed between the sodium cation, Na^+, and the sulfide anion, S^{2-}.

Answer

Na_2S

Ionic Compounds Formed From Polyatomic Ions

Many ionic compounds contain polyatomic ions as the cation, the anion, or both. As with simple ionic compounds, these compounds must also be electrically neutral, so their formulas can be predicted by treating the polyatomic ions as discrete units. We use parentheses in a formula to indicate a group of atoms that behave as a unit. For example, the formula for calcium phosphate, one of the minerals in our bones, is $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. This formula indicates that there are three calcium ions (Ca^{2+}) for every two phosphate $(\mathbf{PO_4^{3-}})$ groups. The $\mathbf{PO_4^{3-}}$ groups are discrete units, each consisting of one phosphorus atom and four oxygen atoms, and having an overall charge of 3−. The compound is electrically neutral, and its formula shows a total count of three Ca, two P, and eight O atoms.

Example 6.8.3: Predicting the Formula of a Compound with a Polyatomic Anion

Baking powder contains calcium dihydrogen phosphate, an ionic compound composed of the ions Ca^{2+} and $\mathbf{H_2PO_4^-}$. What is the formula of this compound?

Solution

The positive and negative charges must balance, and this ionic compound must be electrically neutral. Thus, we must have two negative charges to balance the 2+ charge of the calcium ion. This requires a ratio of one Ca^{2+} ion to two $\mathbf{H_2PO_4^-}$ ions. We designate this by enclosing the formula for the dihydrogen phosphate ion in parentheses and adding a subscript 2. The formula is $Ca(H_2PO_4)_2$.

Exercise 6.8.3

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the magnesium ion and the carbonate ion
b. the aluminum ion and the acetate ion

Answer a:

Mg^{2+} and $CO_3^{2-} = MgCO_3$

Answer b:

Al^{3+} and $C_2H_3O_2^- = Al(C_2H_3O_2)_3$

Formula Unit

Ionic compounds exist as alternating positive and negative ions in regular, three-dimensional arrays called crystals (Figure **6.8.3**). As you can see, there are no individual **NaCl** "particles" in the array; instead, there is a continuous lattice of alternating sodium and chloride ions. However, we can use the ratio of sodium ions to chloride ions, expressed in the lowest possible whole numbers or *simplest formula*, as a way of describing the compound. In the case of sodium chloride, the ratio of sodium ions to chloride ions, expressed in lowest whole numbers, is 1:1, so we use **NaCl** (one **Na** symbol and one **Cl** symbol) to represent the compound. Thus, **NaCl** is the chemical formula for sodium chloride, which is a concise way of describing the relative number of different ions in the compound. A macroscopic sample is composed of myriads of NaCl pairs; each individual pair called a **formula unit**. Although it is convenient to think that **NaCl** crystals are composed of individual **NaCl** units, Figure **6.8.3** shows that no single ion is exclusively associated with any other single ion. Each ion is surrounded by ions of opposite charge.

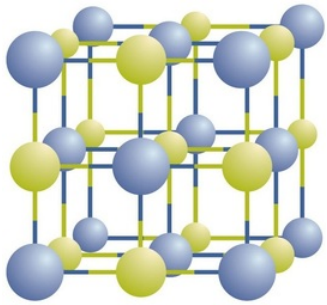


Figure **6.8.3**: A Sodium Chloride Crystal. A crystal contains a three-dimensional array of alternating positive and negative ions. The precise pattern depends on the compound. A crystal of sodium chloride, shown here, is a collection of alternating sodium and chlorine ions.

This page titled 6.8: Formulas of Ionic Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **2.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **9.3: Electron Transfer - Ionic Bonds** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

6.9: Naming Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

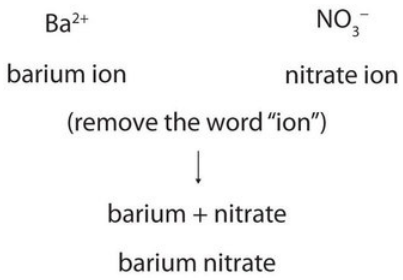
- Write the names for ionic compounds by recognizing and naming the ions in the formula unit.

Ionic compounds are named using the formula unit and by following some important conventions. First, the name of the cation is written *first* followed by the name of the anion. Because most metals form cations and most nonmetals form anions, formulas typically list the metal first and then the nonmetal. Second, charges are *not* included in the name (or the formula). Remember that in an ionic compound, the component species are ions, not neutral atoms, even though the formula does not contain charges. The proper formula for an ionic compound will show how many of each ion is needed to balance the total positive and negative charges; the name does not need to include indication of this ratio.

There are two main types of ionic compound with different naming rules for each; Type I: compounds containing cations of main group elements and Type II: compounds containing cations of variable charge (generally transition metals). Below we will look at examples of each type to learn the rules for naming.

Type I Ionic Compounds

Cations of main group elements do not have variable charges and are the simply named by placing the name of the cation first, followed by the name of the anion, and dropping the word *ion* from both parts. For example, what is the name of the compound whose formula is $\mathbf{Ba(NO_3)_2}$?



The compound's name does not need to indicate that there are two nitrate ions for every barium ion. You must determine the ratio of ions in the formula unit by balancing the positive and negative charges.

Type II Ionic Compounds

Some metals can form cations with variable charges. When naming a formula for an ionic compound whose cation can have more than one possible charge, you must first determine the charge on the cation before identifying its correct name. For example, consider $\mathbf{FeCl_2}$ and $\mathbf{FeCl_3}$. In the first compound, the iron ion has a 2+ charge because there are two $\mathbf{Cl^-}$ ions in the formula (1− charge on each chloride ion). In the second compound, the iron ion has a 3+ charge, as indicated by the three $\mathbf{Cl^-}$ ions in the formula. These are two different compounds that need two different names. By the *stock system*, the names are iron(II) chloride and iron(III) chloride. If we were to use the stems and suffixes of the *common system*, the names would be ferrous chloride and ferric chloride, respectively.

Ionic Compounds in Your Cabinets

Every day you encounter and use a large number of ionic compounds. Some of these compounds, where they are found, and what they are used for are listed in Table **6.9.1**. Look at the label or ingredients list on the various products that you use during the next few days, and see if you run into any of those in this table, or find other ionic compounds that you could now name or write as a formula.

Table **6.9.1**: Everyday Ionic Compounds

Ionic Compound	Name	Use
NaCl	sodium chloride	ordinary table salt
KI	potassium iodide	added to “iodized” salt for thyroid health
NaF	sodium fluoride	ingredient in toothpaste
$NaHCO_3$	sodium bicarbonate	baking soda; used in cooking (and in antacids)
Na_2CO_3	sodium carbonate	washing soda; used in cleaning agents
NaOCl	sodium hypochlorite	active ingredient in household bleach
$CaCO_3$	calcium carbonate	ingredient in antacids
$Mg(OH)_2$	magnesium hydroxide	ingredient in antacids
$Al(OH)_3$	aluminum hydroxide	ingredient in antacids
NaOH	sodium hydroxide	lye; used as drain cleaner
K_3PO_4	potassium phosphate	food additive (many purposes)
$MgSO_4$	magnesium sulfate	added to purified water
Na_2HPO_4	sodium hydrogen phosphate	anti-caking agent; used in powdered products
Na_2SO_3	sodium sulfite	preservative

As you practice naming compounds, use Figure **6.9.1** as a guide.

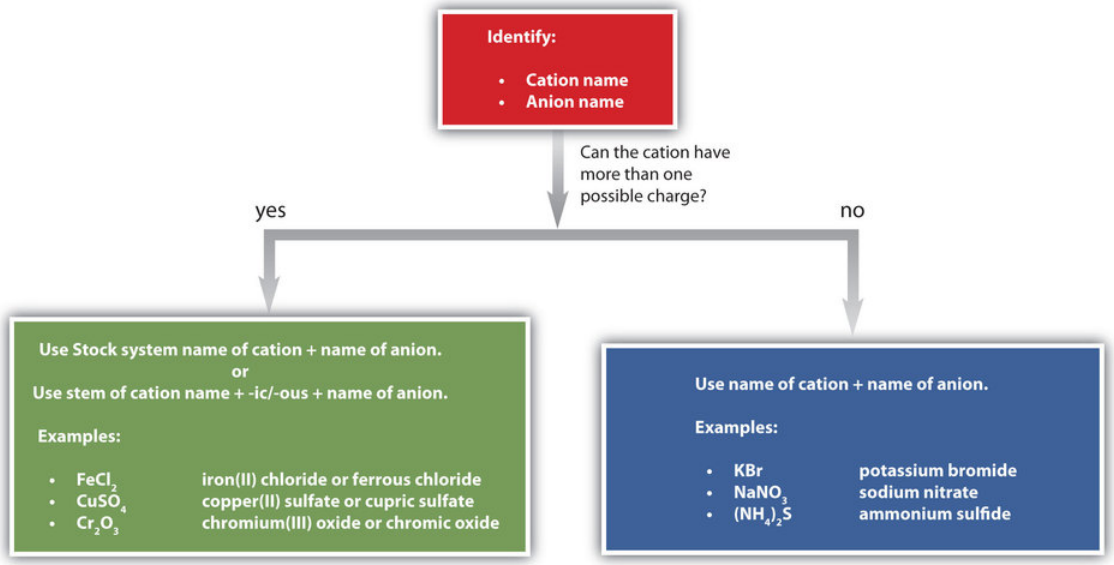


Figure **6.9.1**: A Guide to Naming Simple Ionic Compounds. Follow these steps to name a simple ionic compound.

Identify the cation name and the anion name. If the cation can have more than one possible charge, either use the Stock system name of the cation and name of the anion, or use the stem of the cation name and -ic/-ous and the name of the anion. Examples of this would be FeCl2, which is iron(II) chloride of ferrous chloride, CuSO4, which is copper(II) sulfate or cupric sulfate, and Cr2O3, which is chromium(III) oxide or chromic oxide. If the cation can not have more than one possible charge, use the name of the cation and the name of the anion. Examples of this would be KBr, which is potassium bromide, NaNO3, which is sodium nitrate, and (NH4)2S, which is ammonium sulfide.

Example 6.9.3

Name each ionic compound, using both Stock and common systems if necessary.

a. $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$
b. $(NH_4)_2Cr_2O_7$
c. KCl
d. CuCl
e. SnF_2

Answer a

calcium phosphate

Answer b

ammonium dichromate (the prefix *di-* is part of the name of the anion)

Answer c

potassium chloride

Answer d

copper(I) chloride or cuprous chloride

Answer e

tin(II) fluoride or stannous fluoride

Exercise 6.9.3

Name each ionic compound, using both Stock and common systems if necessary.

a. $ZnBr_2$
b. $Fe(NO_3)_3$
c. Al_2O_3
d. CuF_2
e. AgF

Answer a

zinc bromide

Answer b

iron (III) nitrate or ferric nitrate

Answer c

aluminum oxide

Answer d

copper (II) fluoride or cupric fluoride

Answer e

silver fluoride

This page titled 6.9: Naming Ionic Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **3.4: Ionic Nomenclature** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **2.8: Chemical Nomenclature** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.10: Some Properties of Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Describe the basic physical properties of ionic compounds.

The figure below shows just a few examples of the color and brilliance of naturally occurring ionic crystals. The regular and orderly arrangement of ions in the crystal lattice is responsible for the various shapes of these crystals, while transition metal ions give rise to the colors.

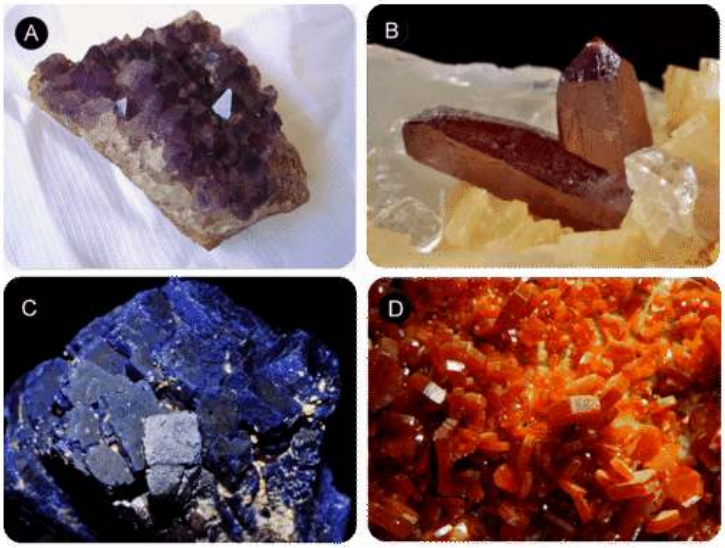


Figure **6.10.1**: *In nature, the ordered arrangement of ionic solids gives rise to beautiful crystals. (A) Amethyst - a form of quartz, SiO_2, whose purple color comes from iron ions. (B) Cinnabar - the primary ore of mercury is mercury (II) sulfide, HgS (C) Azurite - a copper mineral, $Cu_3(CO_3)_2(OH)_2$. (D) Vanadinite - the primary ore of vanadium, $Pb_3(VO_4)_3Cl$.*

Melting Points

Because of the many simultaneous attractions between cations and anions that occur, ionic crystal lattices are very strong. The process of melting an ionic compound requires the addition of large amounts of energy in order to break all of the ionic bonds in the crystal. For example, sodium chloride has a melting temperature of about 800 ^oC. As a comparison, the molecular compound water melts at 0 °C.

Shattering

Ionic compounds are generally hard, but **brittle.** Why? It takes a large amount of mechanical force, such as striking a crystal with a hammer, to force one layer of ions to shift relative to its neighbor. However, when that happens, it brings ions of the same charge next to each other (see below). The repulsive forces between like-charged ions cause the crystal to shatter. When an ionic crystal breaks, it tends to do so along smooth planes because of the regular arrangement of the ions.

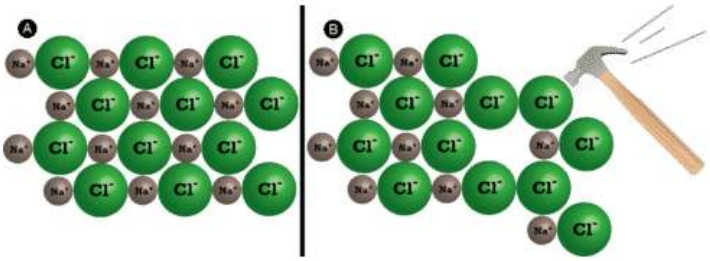


Figure **6.10.2**: *(A) The sodium chloride crystal is shown in two dimensions. (B) When struck by a hammer, the negatively-charged chloride ions are forced near each other and the repulsive force causes the crystal to shatter.*

Conductivity

Another characteristic property of ionic compounds is their **electrical conductivity**. The figure below shows three experiments in which two electrodes that are connected to a light bulb are placed in beakers containing three different substances.

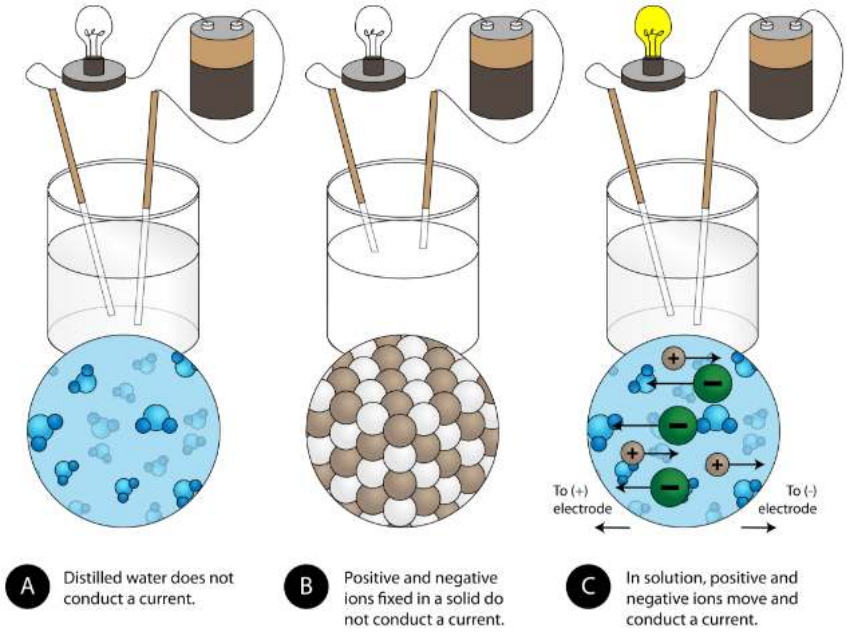


Figure **6.10.3**: *(A) Distilled water does not conduct electricity. (B) A solid ionic compound also does not conduct. (C) A water solution of an ionic compound conducts electricity well.*

In the first beaker, distilled water does not conduct a current because water is a molecular compound. In the second beaker, solid sodium chloride also does not conduct a current. Despite being ionic and thus composed of charged particles, the solid crystal lattice does not allow the ions to move between the electrodes. Mobile charged particles are required for the circuit to be complete and the light bulb to light up. In the third beaker, the NaCl has been dissolved into the distilled water. Now the crystal lattice has been broken apart and the individual positive and negative ions can move.

Example 6.10.1

Write the dissociation equation of solid NaCl in water.

Solution

$NaCl(s) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$

Exercise 6.10.1

Write the dissociation equation of solid NH_4NO_3 in water.

Answer

$NH_4NO_3(s) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$

Key Takeaways

- Ionic compounds have high melting points.
- Ionic compounds are hard and brittle.
- Ionic compounds dissociate into ions when dissolved in water.
- Solutions of ionic compounds and melted ionic compounds conduct electricity, but solid materials do not.
- An ionic compound can be identified by its chemical formula: metal + nonmetal or polyatomic ions.

Contributors and Attributions

- CK-12 Foundation by Sharon Bewick, Richard Parsons, Therese Forsythe, Shonna Robinson, and Jean Dupon.

6.10: Some Properties of Ionic Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.6: Characteristics of Ionic Compounds** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

6.11: Covalent Bonds

Learning Objectives

- Describe how covalent bonds form using the octet rule.

Formation of Covalent Bonds

Nonmetal atoms frequently form covalent bonds with other nonmetal atoms. Covalent bonds are formed between two atoms when both have similar tendencies to attract electrons to themselves (i.e., when both atoms have identical or fairly similar ionization energies and electron affinities). For example, two hydrogen atoms bond covalently to form an H_2 molecule; each hydrogen atom in the H_2 molecule has two electrons stabilizing it, giving each atom the same number of valence electrons as the noble gas He.

The bond in a hydrogen molecule, measured as the distance between the two nuclei, is about 7.4×10^{-11} m, or 74 picometers (pm; 1 pm = 1×10^{-12} m). This particular bond length represents the lowest potential energy state of two hydrogen atoms and is a balance between several forces: the ***attractions*** between oppositely charged electrons and nuclei, the ***repulsion*** between two negatively charged electrons, and the ***repulsion*** between two positively charged nuclei.

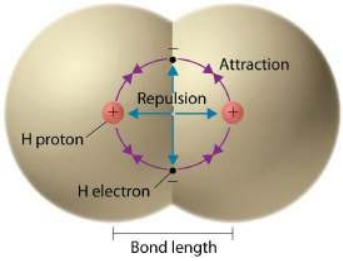


Figure **6.11.1**: Attractive and Repulsive Interactions between Electrons and Nuclei in the Hydrogen Molecule. Electron–electron and proton–proton interactions are repulsive; electron–proton interactions are attractive. At the observed bond distance, the repulsive and attractive interactions are balanced.

A plot of the potential energy of the system as a function of the internuclear distance (Figure **6.11.2**) shows that energy decreases as two hydrogen atoms move toward each other. Starting on the far right, we have two separate hydrogen atoms with a particular potential energy, indicated by the red line. Along the *x*-axis is the distance between the two atoms. As the two atoms approach each other (moving left along the *x*-axis), their valence orbitals (1*s*) begin to overlap. The single electrons on each hydrogen atom then interact with both atomic nuclei, occupying the space around both atoms. The strong attraction of each shared electron to both nuclei stabilizes the system, and the potential energy decreases as the bond distance decreases. If the atoms continue to approach each other, the positive charges in the two nuclei begin to repel each other, and the potential energy increases.

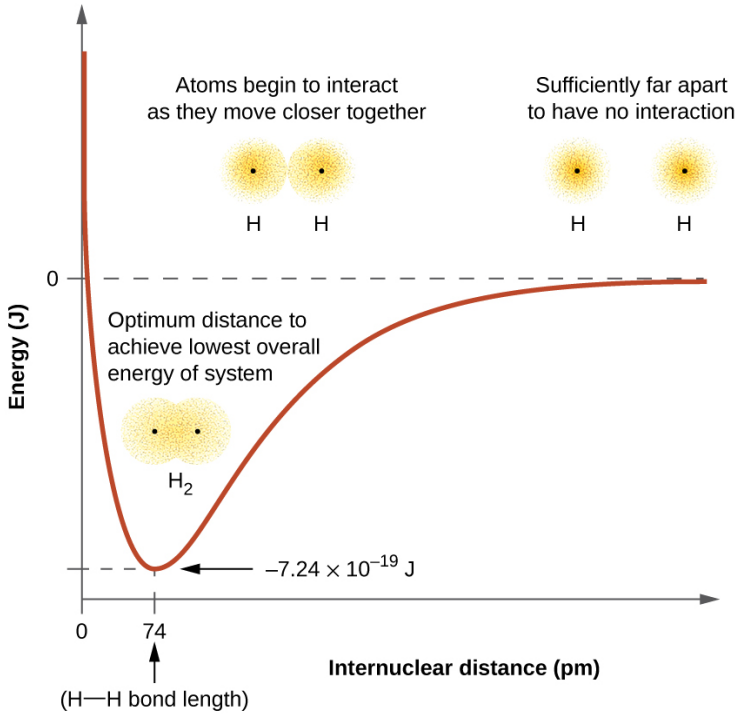


Figure **6.11.2**: The interaction of two hydrogen atoms changes as a function of distance. The energy of the system changes as the atoms interact. The lowest (most stable) energy occurs at a distance of 74 pm, which is the bond length observed for the H_2 molecule.

Lewis Structures

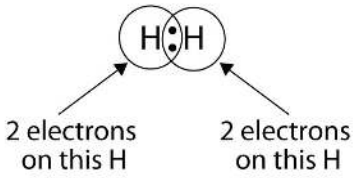
Chemists frequently use Lewis structures to represent covalent bonding in molecular substances. For example, the Lewis symbols of two separate hydrogen atoms are as follows:

$$H\bullet \qquad\qquad \bullet H$$

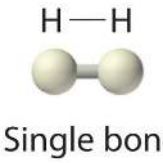
The Lewis structures of two hydrogen atoms sharing electrons looks like this:

$$H{:}H$$

We can use circles to show that each H atom has two electrons around the nucleus, completely filling each atom's valence shell:



Because each H atom has a filled valence shell, this bond is stable, and we have made a diatomic hydrogen molecule. For simplicity's sake, it is common to represent the covalent bond with a dash, instead of with two dots:



Single bond

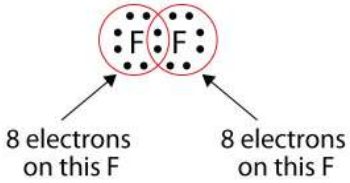
Because two atoms are sharing one pair of electrons, this covalent bond is called a **single bond**. As another example, consider fluorine. F atoms have seven electrons in their valence shell:



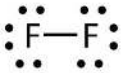
These two atoms can do the same thing that the H atoms did; they share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond.



Note that each F atom has a *complete octet* around it now:



We can also write this using a dash to represent the shared electron pair:



You will notice that there are two different types of electrons in the fluorine diatomic molecule. The **bonding electron pair** makes the covalent bond. Each F atom has three other pairs of electrons that do not participate in the bonding; they are called **lone pair electrons**. Each F atom has one bonding pair and three lone pairs of electrons.

Diatomic Molecules

Hydrogen ($\mathbf{H_2}$) and fluorine ($\mathbf{F_2}$) are both described as *diatomic molecules*. These elements and others (see Table **6.11.1**) exist naturally as molecules rather than as individual atoms. It is important to note that the names of these elements represent molecules and not individual atoms. When describing a single atom rather than a molecule, the word atom is used.

Table **6.11.1**: Elements That Exist as Diatomic Molecules

Hydrogen ($\mathbf{H_2}$)	Oxygen ($\mathbf{O_2}$)	Nitrogen ($\mathbf{N_2}$)	Fluorine ($\mathbf{F_2}$)
Chlorine ($\mathbf{Cl_2}$)	Bromine ($\mathbf{Br_2}$)	Iodine ($\mathbf{I_2}$)	

6.11: Covalent Bonds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.3: Covalent Bonding** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **4.6: Covalent Bonds- Shared Electron Pairs** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.
- **3.3: Molecules and Chemical Nomenclature** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

6.12: Covalent Bonds and the Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Predict the number of covalent bonds formed based on the elements involved and their position on the periodic table.
- Describe the important exceptions to the octet rule.

Diatomic molecules such as hydrogen (H_2), chlorine (Cl_2), fluorine (F_2), etc. containing covalent bonds between two of the same type of atom are only a few examples of the vast number of molecules that can form. Two different atoms can also share electrons and form covalent bonds. For example, water, (H_2O), has two covalent bonds between a single oxygen atom and two hydrogen atoms. Ammonia, (NH_3, is a central nitrogen atom bonded to three hydrogen atoms. Methane, (CH_4, is a single carbon atom covalently bonded to four hydrogen atoms. In these examples the central atoms form different numbers of bonds to hydrogen atoms in order to complete their valence subshell and form octets.

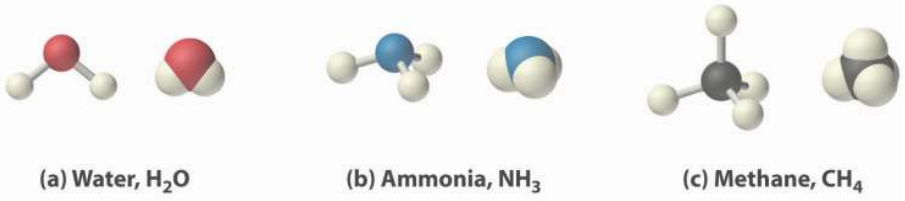
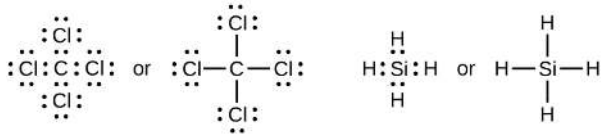


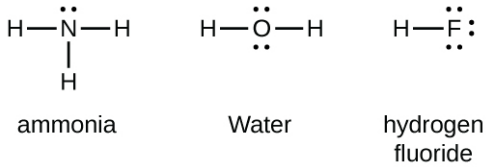
Figure **6.12.4**: 3D molecule examples. From left to right: water molecule, ammonia molecule, and methane molecule

How Many Covalent Bonds Are Formed?

The number of bonds that an atom can form can often be predicted from the number of electrons needed to reach an octet (eight valence electrons); this is especially true of the nonmetals of the second period of the periodic table (C, N, O, and F). For example, each atom of a group 14 element has four electrons in its outermost shell and therefore requires four more electrons to reach an octet. These four electrons can be gained by forming four covalent bonds, as illustrated here for carbon in CCl_4 (carbon tetrachloride) and silicon in SiH_4 (silane). Because hydrogen only needs two electrons to fill its valence shell, it is an exception to the octet rule and only needs to form one bond. The transition elements and inner transition elements also do not follow the octet rule since they have d and f electrons involved in their valence shells.



Group 15 elements such as nitrogen have five valence electrons in the atomic Lewis symbol: one lone pair and three unpaired electrons. To obtain an octet, these atoms form three covalent bonds, as in NH_3 (ammonia). Oxygen and other atoms in group 16 obtain an octet by forming two covalent bonds:



The number of electrons required to obtain an octet determines the number of covalent bonds an atom can form. This is summarized in the table below. In each case, the sum of the number of bonds and the number of lone pairs is 4, which is equivalent to eight (octet) electrons.

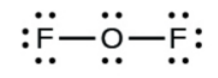
Table showing 4 different atoms, each of their number of bonds, and each of their number of lone pairs.

Atom (Group number)	Number of Bonds	Number of Lone Pairs
Carbon (Group 14)	4	0
Nitrogen (Group 15)	3	1
Oxygen (Group 16)	2	2
Fluorine (Group 17)	1	3

Because hydrogen only needs two electrons to fill its valence shell, it follows the *duet rule*. Hydrogen only needs to form one bond to complete a duet of electrons. This is the reason why H is always a terminal atom and never a central atom.

Example 6.12.1

Examine the Lewis structure of OF_2 below. Count the number of bonds formed by each element. Based on the element's location in the periodic table, does it correspond to the expected number of bonds shown in Table 4.1? Does the Lewis structure below follow the octet rule?

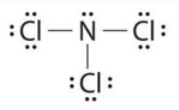


Solution

Yes. F (group 7A) forms one bond and O (group 6A) forms 2 bonds. Each atom is surrounded by 8 electrons. This structure satisfies the octet rule.

Exercise 6.12.1

Examine the Lewis structure of NCl_3 below. Count the number of bonds formed by each element. Based on the element's location in the periodic table, does it correspond to the expected number of bonds shown in Table 4.1? Does the Lewis structure below follow the octet rule?



Answer

Both Cl and N form the expected number of bonds. Cl (group 7A) has one bond and 3 lone pairs. The central atom N (group 5A) has 3 bonds and one lone pair. Yes, the Lewis structure of NCl_3 follows the octet rule.

Octet Rule Exceptions

As important and useful as the octet rule is in chemical bonding, there are many covalent molecules with central atoms that do not have eight electrons in their Lewis structures. This does not mean that the octet rule is useless—quite the contrary. As with many rules, there are exceptions, or violations. These molecules fall into three categories:

- Odd-electron molecules have an odd number of valence electrons, and therefore have an unpaired electron.
- Electron-deficient (diminished octet) molecules have a central atom that has fewer electrons than needed for a noble gas configuration.
- Expanded octet (hypervalent) molecules have a central atom that has more electrons than needed for a noble gas configuration.

Odd-electron molecules

Although they are few, some stable compounds, often called *free radicals*, have an odd number of electrons in their valence shells. With an odd number of electrons, at least one atom in the molecule will have to violate the octet rule. Examples of stable, odd-

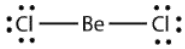
electron molecules are **NO**, NO_2, and ClO_2. The Lewis electron dot diagram for **NO**, a compound produced in internal combustion engines when oxygen and nitrogen react at high temperatures, is as follows:



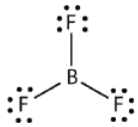
As you can see, the nitrogen and oxygen share four electrons between them. The oxygen atom has an octet of electrons but the nitrogen atom has only seven valence electrons, two electrons in the double bond, one lone pair, and one additional lone electron. Although **NO** is a stable compound, it is very chemically reactive, as are most other odd-electron compounds.

Electron-deficient molecules

These stable compounds have less than eight electrons around an atom in the molecule, i.e. they have less than an octet. The most common examples are the covalent compounds of beryllium and boron. For example, beryllium can form two covalent bonds, resulting in only four electrons in its valence shell:

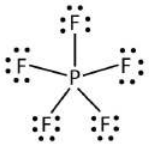


Boron commonly makes only three covalent bonds, resulting in only six valence electrons around the **B** atom. A well-known example is BF_3:

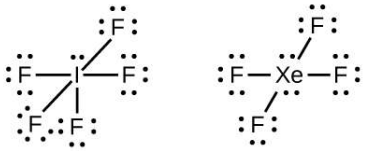


Expanded Octet Molecules

Elements in the second period of the periodic table ($n = 2$) can accommodate only eight electrons in their valence shell orbitals because they have only four valence orbitals (one 2*s* and three 2*p* orbitals). Elements in the third and higher periods ($n \geq 3$) have more than four valence orbitals and can share more than four pairs of electrons with other atoms because they have empty *d* orbitals in the same shell. Molecules formed from these elements have expanded octets and are sometimes called hypervalent molecules. Phosphorous pentachloride shares five pairs of electrons for a total of ten electrons in the valence shell.



In some expanded octet molecules, such as IF_5 and XeF_4, some of the electrons in the outer shell of the central atom are lone pairs:



Example 6.12.2

Identify each violation to the octet rule by drawing a Lewis electron dot diagram.

a. **ClO**

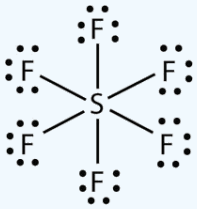
b. SF_6

Solution

1. With one Cl atom and one O atom, this molecule has 6 + 7 = 13 valence electrons, so it is an odd-electron molecule. A Lewis electron dot diagram for this molecule is as follows:



2. In SF_6, the central S atom makes six covalent bonds to the six surrounding F atoms, so it is an expanded valence shell molecule. Its Lewis electron dot diagram is as follows:



Exercise 6.12.2: Xenon Difluoride

Identify the violation to the octet rule in XeF_2 by drawing a Lewis electron dot diagram.

Answer

The Xe atom has an expanded valence shell with more than eight electrons around it.



Concept Review Exercises

1. How is a covalent bond formed between two atoms?
2. How does covalent bonding allow atoms in group 6A to satisfy the octet rule?

Answers

1. Covalent bonds are formed by two atoms sharing electrons.
2. The atoms in group 6A make two covalent bonds.

6.12: Covalent Bonds and the Periodic Table is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **9.6: Violations of the Octet Rule** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

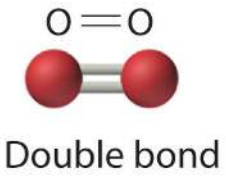
6.13: Multiple Covalent Bonds

Learning Objectives

- Identify when a multiple bond (double or triple) is needed to complete an octet.

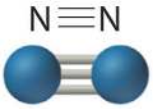
The sharing of a pair of electrons represents a single covalent bond, usually just referred to as a ***single bond***. However, in many molecules atoms attain complete octets by sharing more than one pair of electrons between them:

- Two electron pairs shared a ***double bond***



Double bond

- Three electron pairs shared a ***triple bond***



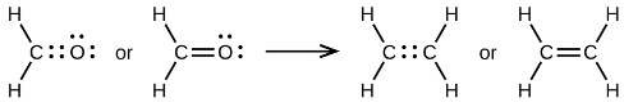
Triple bond

Because each nitrogen contains 5 valence electrons, they need to share 3 pairs to each achieve a valence octet. N_2 is fairly inert, due to the strong triple bond between the two nitrogen atoms.



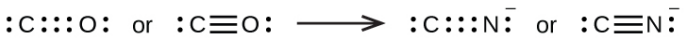
In addition to nitrogen and oxygen, carbon will also commonly form multiple bonds to complete valence octets. Additional examples involving these three atoms are shown below.

A double bond is formed between the carbon and oxygen atoms in CH_2O (formaldehyde) and between the two carbon atoms in C_2H_4 (ethylene):



formaldehyde ethylene

A triple bond is formed between carbon and oxygen in carbon monoxide (CO) and between carbon and nitrogen in the cyanide ion (CN^-):



carbon monoxide cyanide ion

Example 6.13.1: Writing Lewis Structures

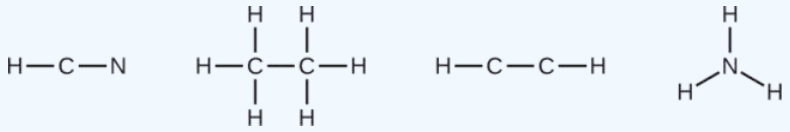
NASA's Cassini-Huygens mission detected a large cloud of toxic hydrogen cyanide (HCN) on Titan, one of Saturn's moons. Titan also contains ethane (H_3CCH_3), acetylene (HCCH), and ammonia (NH_3). What are the Lewis structures of these molecules?

Solution

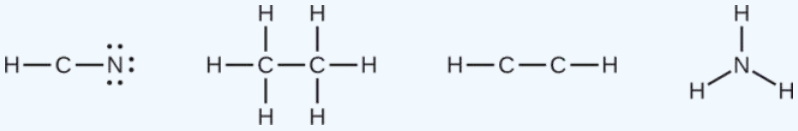
Calculate the number of valence electrons.

- HCN: (1 × 1) + (4 × 1) + (5 × 1) = 10
- H_3CCH_3: (1 × 3) + (2 × 4) + (1 × 3) = 14
- HCCH: (1 × 1) + (2 × 4) + (1 × 1) = 10
- NH_3: (5 × 1) + (3 × 1) = 8

Draw a skeleton and connect the atoms with single bonds. Remember that H is never a central atom:

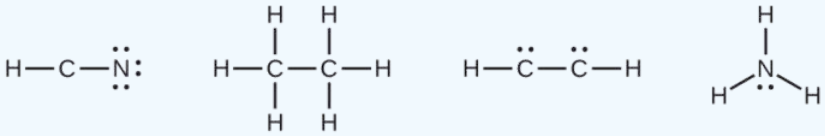


Where needed, distribute electrons to the terminal atoms:



- HCN: six electrons placed on N
- H_3CCH_3: no electrons remain
- HCCH: no terminal atoms capable of accepting electrons
- NH_3: no terminal atoms capable of accepting electrons

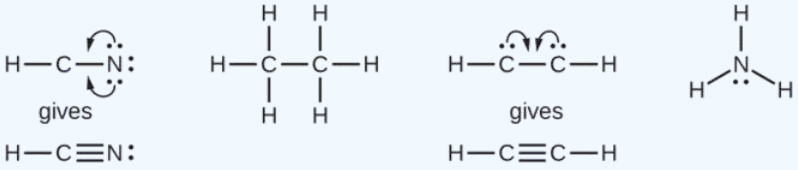
Where needed, place remaining electrons on the central atom:



- HCN: no electrons remain
- H_3CCH_3: no electrons remain
- HCCH: four electrons placed on carbon
- NH_3: two electrons placed on nitrogen

Where needed, rearrange electrons to form multiple bonds in order to obtain an octet on each atom:

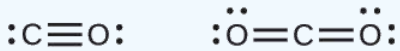
- HCN: form two more C–N bonds
- H_3CCH_3: all atoms have the correct number of electrons
- HCCH: form a triple bond between the two carbon atoms
- NH_3: all atoms have the correct number of electrons



? Exercise 6.13.1

Both carbon monoxide, CO, and carbon dioxide, CO_2, are products of the combustion of fossil fuels. Both of these gases also cause problems: CO is toxic and CO_2 has been implicated in global climate change. What are the Lewis structures of these two molecules?

Answer



6.13: Multiple Covalent Bonds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.6: Covalent Bonds- Shared Electron Pairs** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.
- **7.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.14: Characteristics of Molecular Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Compare the properties of ionic and molecular compounds.

The physical state and properties of a particular compound depend in large part on the type of chemical bonding it displays. Molecular compounds, sometimes called covalent compounds, display a wide range of physical properties due to the different types of intermolecular attractions such as different kinds of polar interactions. The melting and boiling points of molecular compounds are generally quite low compared to those of ionic compounds. This is because the energy required to disrupt the *intermolecular forces* (discussed further in a later chapter) between molecules is far less than the energy required to break the ionic bonds in a crystalline ionic compound. Since molecular compounds are composed of neutral molecules, their electrical conductivity is generally quite poor, whether in the solid or liquid state. Ionic compounds do not conduct electricity in the solid state because of their rigid structure, but conduct well when either molten or dissolved into a solution. The water solubility of molecular compounds is variable and depends primarily on the type of intermolecular forces involved. Substances that exhibit hydrogen bonding or dipole-dipole forces are generally water soluble, whereas those that exhibit only London dispersion forces are generally insoluble. Most, but not all, ionic compounds are quite soluble in water. The table below summarizes some of the differences between ionic and molecular compounds.

Table 6.14.1: Comparison of Ionic and Molecular Compounds

Property	Ionic Compounds	Molecular Compounds
Type of elements	Metal and nonmetal	Nonmetals only
Bonding	Ionic - transfer of electron(s) between atoms	Covalent - sharing of pair(s) of electrons between atoms
Representative unit	Formula unit	Molecule
Physical state at room temperature	Solid	Gas, liquid, or solid
Water solubility	Usually high	Variable
Melting and boiling temperatures	Generally high	Generally low
Electrical conductivity	Good when molten or in solution	Poor

In summary, covalent compounds are softer, have lower boiling and melting points, are more flammable, are less soluble in water and do not conduct electricity compared to ionic compounds. The individual melting and boiling points, solubility and other physical properties of molecular compounds depend on molecular polarity.

6.14: Characteristics of Molecular Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.15: Molecular Formulas and Lewis Structures

Learning Objectives

- Understand the different ways to represent molecules.

There are many "universal languages" in the world. Musicians of every culture recognize music embodied in a series of notes on a staff. This passage from a Bach cello suite could be played by any trained musician from any country, because there is an agreement as to what the symbols on the page mean. In the same way, molecules are represented using symbols and a language that all chemists agree upon.



Figure **6.15.1** (Credit: J. S. Bach; Source: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bach_cello_harmony.JPG(opens in new window); License: Public Domain)

Molecular Formulas

A **molecular formula** is a chemical formula of a molecular compound that shows the kinds and numbers of atoms present in a molecule of the compound. Ammonia is a compound of nitrogen and hydrogen as shown below:

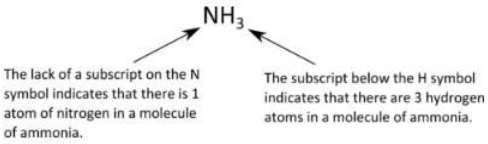
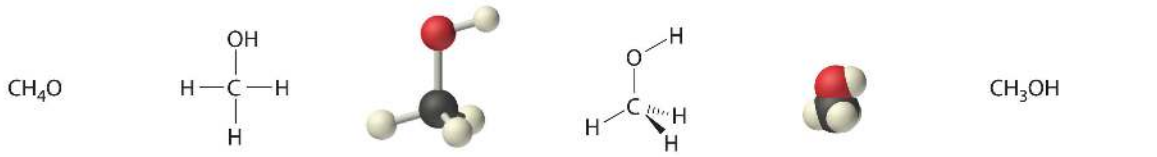


Figure **6.15.2**: The molecular formula for ammonia. (Credit: Joy Sheng; Source: CK-12 Foundation; License: CC BY-NC 3.0(opens in new window))

Note from the example that there are some standard rules to follow in writing molecular formulas. The number of atoms of each kind is indicated by a subscript following the atom. If there is only one atom, no number is written. If there is more than one atom of a specific kind, the number is written as a subscript following the atom. We would not write $\mathbf{N_3H}$ for ammonia, because that would mean that there are three nitrogen atoms and one hydrogen atom in the molecule, which is incorrect.

Although it is useful for describing a molecule, the molecular formula does not tell us anything about the shape of the molecule, where the different atoms are, or what kinds of bonds are formed. **Structural formulas** are much more useful to communicate more detailed information about a molecule because they show which atoms are bonded to one another and, in some cases, the approximate arrangement of the atoms in space. Knowing the structural formula of a compound enables chemists to create a three-dimensional model, which provides information about how that compound will behave physically and chemically.

Figure **6.15.3** shows some of the different ways to portray the structure of a slightly more complex molecule: methanol. These representations differ greatly in their information content. For example, the molecular formula for methanol (Figure **6.15.3*a***) gives only the number of each kind of atom; writing methanol as CH_4O tells nothing about its structure. In contrast, the structural formula (Figure **6.15.3*b***) indicates how the atoms are connected, but it makes methanol look as if it is planar (which it is not). Both the ball-and-stick model (part (c) in Figure **6.15.3**) and the perspective drawing (Figure **6.15.3*d***) show the three-dimensional structure of the molecule. The latter (also called a wedge-and-dash representation) is the easiest way to sketch the structure of a molecule in three dimensions. It shows which atoms are above and below the plane of the paper by using wedges and dashes, respectively; the central atom is always assumed to be in the plane of the paper. The space-filling model (part (e) in Figure **6.15.3**) illustrates the approximate relative sizes of the atoms in the molecule, but it does not show the bonds between the atoms. In addition, in a space-filling model, atoms at the “front” of the molecule may obscure atoms at the “back.”



(a) Molecular formula | (b) Structural formula | (c) Ball-and-stick model | (d) Perspective drawing | (e) Space filling model | (f) Condensed structural formula

Figure **6.15.3**: Different Ways of Representing the Structure of a Molecule. (a) The molecular formula for methanol gives only the number of each kind of atom present. (b) The structural formula shows which atoms are connected. (c) The ball-and-stick model shows the atoms as spheres and the bonds as sticks. (d) A perspective drawing (also called a wedge-and-dash representation) attempts to show the three-dimensional structure of the molecule. (e) The space-filling model shows the atoms in the molecule but not the bonds. (f) The condensed structural formula is by far the easiest and most common way to represent a molecule.

Although a structural formula, a ball-and-stick model, a perspective drawing, and a space-filling model provide a significant amount of information about the structure of a molecule, each requires time and effort. Consequently, chemists often use a condensed structural formula (part (f) in Figure **6.15.3**), which omits the lines representing bonds between atoms and simply lists the atoms bonded to a given atom next to it. Multiple groups attached to the same atom are shown in parentheses, followed by a subscript that indicates the number of such groups. For example, the condensed structural formula for methanol is CH_3OH, which indicates that the molecule contains a CH_3 unit that looks like a fragment of methane (CH_4). Methanol can therefore be viewed either as a methane molecule in which one hydrogen atom has been replaced by an –OH group or as a water molecule in which one hydrogen atom has been replaced by a $–CH_3$ fragment. Because of their ease of use and information content, we use condensed structural formulas for molecules throughout this text. Ball-and-stick models are used when needed to illustrate the three-dimensional structure of molecules, and space-filling models are used only when it is necessary to visualize the relative sizes of atoms or molecules to understand an important point.

Example 6.15.1: Molecular Formulas

Write the molecular formula for each compound. The condensed structural formula is given.

a. Sulfur monochloride (also called disulfur dichloride) is a vile-smelling, corrosive yellow liquid used in the production of synthetic rubber. Its condensed structural formula is ClSSCl.
b. Ethylene glycol is the major ingredient in antifreeze. Its condensed structural formula is $HOCH_2CH_2OH$.
c. Trimethylamine is one of the substances responsible for the smell of spoiled fish. Its condensed structural formula is $(CH_3)_3N$.

Given: condensed structural formula

Asked for: molecular formula

Strategy:

A. Identify every element in the condensed structural formula and then determine whether the compound is organic or inorganic.
B. As appropriate, use either organic or inorganic convention to list the elements. Then add appropriate subscripts to indicate the number of atoms of each element present in the molecular formula.

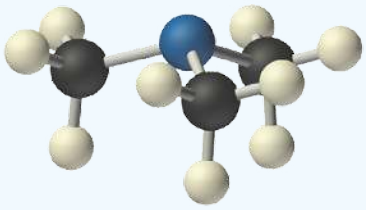
Solution:

The molecular formula lists the elements in the molecule and the number of atoms of each.

a. **A** Each molecule of sulfur monochloride has two sulfur atoms and two chlorine atoms. Because it does not contain mostly carbon and hydrogen, it is an inorganic compound. **B** Sulfur lies to the left of chlorine in the periodic table, so it is written first in the formula. Adding subscripts gives the molecular formula S_2Cl_2.

b. **A** Counting the atoms in ethylene glycol, we get six hydrogen atoms, two carbon atoms, and two oxygen atoms per molecule. The compound consists mostly of carbon and hydrogen atoms, so it is organic. **B** As with all organic compounds, C and H are written first in the molecular formula. Adding appropriate subscripts gives the molecular formula $C_2H_6O_2$.

c. **A** The condensed structural formula shows that trimethylamine contains three CH_3 units, so we have one nitrogen atom, three carbon atoms, and nine hydrogen atoms per molecule. Because trimethylamine contains mostly carbon and hydrogen, it is an organic compound. **B** According to the convention for organic compounds, C and H are written first, giving the molecular formula C_3H_9N.



Trimethylamine

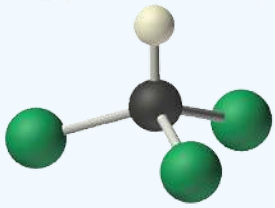
? Exercise 6.15.1: Molecular Formulas

Write the molecular formula for each molecule.

a. Chloroform, which was one of the first anesthetics and was used in many cough syrups until recently, contains one carbon atom, one hydrogen atom, and three chlorine atoms. Its condensed structural formula is $\mathbf{CHCl_3}$.

b. Hydrazine is used as a propellant in the attitude jets of the space shuttle. Its condensed structural formula is $\mathbf{H_2NNH_2}$.

c. Putrescine is a pungent-smelling compound first isolated from extracts of rotting meat. Its condensed structural formula is H2NCH2CH2CH2CH2NH2. This is often written as $\mathbf{H_2N(CH_2)_4NH_2}$ to indicate that there are four CH2 fragments linked together.



Chloroform

Answer a

$CHCl_3$

Answer b

N_2H_4

Answer c

6.15: Molecular Formulas and Lewis Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

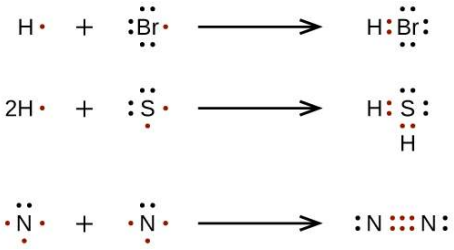
- **7.1: Molecular Formula** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.
- **2.6: Molecules and Molecular Compounds** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

6.16: Drawing Lewis Structures

Learning Objectives

- Draw Lewis structures for molecules.

For very simple molecules and molecular ions, we can write the Lewis structures by merely pairing up the unpaired electrons on the constituent atoms. See these examples:



For more complicated molecules, it is helpful to follow the step-by-step procedure outlined here:

1. **Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.** When there is a central atom, it is usually the least electronegative element in the compound. Chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom), which is another clue to the compound's structure. Hydrogen and the halogens are almost always connected to only one other atom, so they are usually *terminal* rather than central.
2. **Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.** Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.) If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion. For CO_3^{2-}, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the −2 charge.
3. **Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.** In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.
4. **Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).** These electrons will usually be lone pairs.
5. **If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.** We will explain later that some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.
6. **If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.** This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms.

Now let's apply this procedure to some particular compounds.

> The central atom is usually the least electronegative element in the molecule or ion; hydrogen and the halogens are usually terminal.

The H_2O Molecule

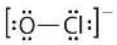
1. Because H atoms are almost always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.
2. Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.
3. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives H:O:H, with 4 electrons left over.
4. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.
5. Adding the remaining 4 electrons to the oxygen (as two lone pairs) gives the following structure:



Because this structure gives oxygen an octet and each hydrogen two electrons, we do not need to use step 6.

The OCl^- Ion

1. With only two atoms in the molecule, there is no central atom.
2. Oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and chlorine (group 17) has 7 valence electrons; we must add one more for the negative charge on the ion, giving a total of 14 valence electrons.
3. Placing a bonding pair of electrons between O and Cl gives O:Cl, with 12 electrons left over.
4. If we place six electrons (as three lone pairs) on each atom, we obtain the following structure:



Both the oxygen and chlorine have 3 electron pairs drawn around them with a bond drawn between them. The molecule has square brackets placed around it and has a negative charge.

Each atom now has an octet of electrons, so steps 5 and 6 are not needed. The Lewis electron structure is drawn within brackets as is customary for a molecular ion, with the overall charge indicated outside the brackets, and the bonding pair of electrons is indicated by a solid line. OCl^- is the hypochlorite ion, the active ingredient in chlorine laundry bleach and swimming pool disinfectant.

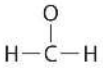
The CH_2O Molecule

1. Because carbon is less electronegative than oxygen and hydrogen is normally terminal, C must be the central atom. One possible arrangement is as follows:



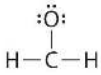
2. Each hydrogen atom (group 1) has one valence electron, carbon (group 14) has 4 valence electrons, and oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of [(2)(1) + 4 + 6] = 12 valence electrons.

3. Placing a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms gives the following:



Six electrons are used, and 6 are left over.

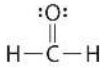
4. Adding all 6 remaining electrons to oxygen (as three lone pairs) gives the following:



Although oxygen now has an octet and each hydrogen has 2 electrons, carbon has only 6 electrons.

5. There are no electrons left to place on the central atom.

6. To give carbon an octet of electrons, we use one of the lone pairs of electrons on oxygen to form a carbon–oxygen double bond:



The bond between the oxygen and carbon is replaced with a double bond. The oxygen also has two lone pairs drawn.

Both the oxygen and the carbon now have an octet of electrons, so this is an acceptable Lewis electron structure. The O has two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, and C has four bonding pairs. This is the structure of formaldehyde, which is used in embalming fluid.

Example 6.16.1

Write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

a. NCl_3
b. S_2^{2-}
c. NOCl

Given: chemical species

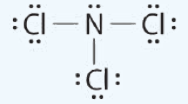
Asked for: Lewis electron structures

Strategy:

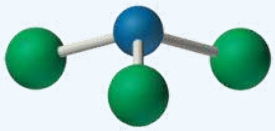
Use the six-step procedure to write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

Solution:

a. Nitrogen is less electronegative than chlorine, and halogen atoms are usually terminal, so nitrogen is the central atom. The nitrogen atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons and each chlorine atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, for a total of 26 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for each N–Cl bond and adding three lone pairs to each Cl account for (3 × 2) + (3 × 2 × 3) = 24 electrons. Rule 5 leads us to place the remaining 2 electrons on the central N:

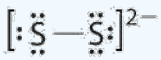


Nitrogen trichloride is an unstable oily liquid once used to bleach flour; this use is now prohibited in the United States.

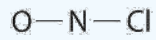


Nitrogen trichloride

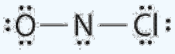
b. In a diatomic molecule or ion, we do not need to worry about a central atom. Each sulfur atom (group 16) contains 6 valence electrons, and we need to add 2 electrons for the −2 charge, giving a total of 14 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for the S–S bond, we arrange the remaining 12 electrons as three lone pairs on each sulfur, giving each S atom an octet of electrons:



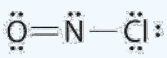
c. Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen or chlorine, it is the central atom. The N atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons, the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and the Cl atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, giving a total of 18 valence electrons. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms uses 4 electrons and gives the following:



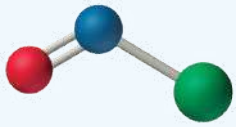
Adding three lone pairs each to oxygen and to chlorine uses 12 more electrons, leaving 2 electrons to place as a lone pair on nitrogen:



Because this Lewis structure has only 6 electrons around the central nitrogen, a lone pair of electrons on a terminal atom must be used to form a bonding pair. We could use a lone pair on either O or Cl. Because we have seen many structures in which O forms a double bond but none with a double bond to Cl, it is reasonable to select a lone pair from O to give the following:



All atoms now have octet configurations. This is the Lewis electron structure of nitrosyl chloride, a highly corrosive, reddish-orange gas.



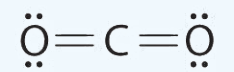
Nitrosyl chloride

? Exercise 6.16.1

Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2, a vile-smelling, unstable red liquid that is used in the manufacture of rubber.

Answer

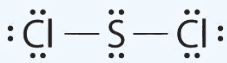
1.



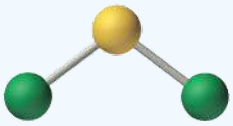


Carbon dioxide

2.



Two chlorines are bonded to a sulfur. The sulfur has 2 lone pairs while the chlorines have 3 lone pairs each.



Sulfur dichloride

6.16: Drawing Lewis Structures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **8.5: Drawing Lewis Structures** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

6.17: The Shapes of Molecules

Learning Objectives

- Predict the structures of small molecules using valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory.

The Lewis electron-pair approach can be used to predict the number and types of bonds between the atoms in a substance, and it indicates which atoms have lone pairs of electrons. This approach gives no information about the actual arrangement of atoms in space, however. We continue our discussion of structure and bonding by introducing the **valence-shell electron-pair repulsion** (VSEPR) model (pronounced "vesper"), which can be used to predict the shapes of many molecules and polyatomic ions. Keep in mind, however, that the VSEPR model, like any model, is a limited representation of reality; the model provides no information about bond lengths or the presence of multiple bonds.

The VSEPR Model

The VSEPR model can predict the structure of nearly any molecule or polyatomic ion in which the central atom is a nonmetal, as well as the structures of many molecules and polyatomic ions with a central metal atom. The premise of the VSEPR theory is that electron pairs located in bonds and lone pairs repel each other and will therefore adopt the geometry that places electron pairs as far apart from each other as possible. This theory is very simplistic and does not account for the subtleties of orbital interactions that influence molecular shapes; however, the simple VSEPR counting procedure accurately predicts the three-dimensional structures of a large number of compounds, which cannot be predicted using the Lewis electron-pair approach.

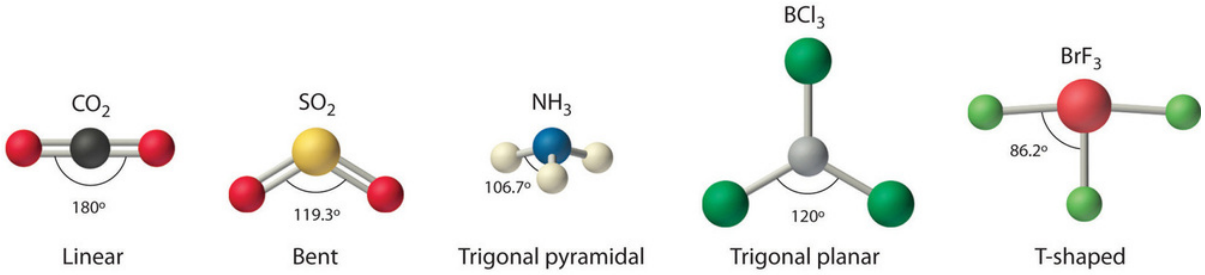


Figure **6.17.1**: Common Structures for Molecules and Polyatomic Ions That Consist of a Central Atom Bonded to Two or Three Other Atoms. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

We can use the VSEPR model to predict the geometry of most polyatomic molecules and ions by focusing only on the number of electron pairs around the *central atom*, ignoring all other valence electrons present. According to this model, valence electrons in the Lewis structure form **electron groups** (regions of electron density), which may consist of a single bond, a double bond, a triple bond, a lone pair of electrons, or even a single unpaired electron, which in the VSEPR model is counted as a lone pair. Because electrons repel each other electrostatically, the most stable arrangement of electron groups (i.e., the one with the lowest energy) is the one that minimizes repulsions. Groups are positioned around the central atom in a way that produces the molecular structure with the lowest energy, as illustrated in Figure **6.17.1**.

It is important to note that electron group geometry around a central atom is *not* the same thing as its molecular structure. Electron group geometries describe ***all*** regions where electrons are located, bonds as well as lone pairs. Molecular structure describes the location of the *atoms* alone, not including the lone pair electrons.

We differentiate between these two situations by naming the geometry that includes *all* electron pairs the **electron group geometry**. The structure that includes only the placement of the atoms in the molecule is called the **molecular structure** (or molecular shape). The electron group geometries will be the *same* as the molecular structures when there are no lone electron pairs around the central atom, but they will be *different* when there are lone pairs present on the central atom.

Predicting Electron Group Geometry and Molecular Structure

The following procedure uses VSEPR theory to determine electron group geometry and molecular structures (molecular shape):

1. Draw the Lewis structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion

1. Draw the Lewis structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
2. Count the number of electron groups or regions of electron density (lone pairs and bonds) around the central atom. A single, double, or triple bond counts as one electron group.
3. Determine the electron group geometry by placing the groups as far apart as possible.
4. Determine the molecular structure (looking at the bonded groups only).

Table **6.17.1** summarizes the shapes of molecules based on the number of electron groups and surrounding atoms.

Table **6.17.1**: Summary of Electron Group Geometries and Molecular Structures

Number of Electron Groups on Central Atom	Number of Bonding Groups	Number of Lone Pairs	Electron Group Geometry	Molecular Structure
2	2	0	linear	linear
3	3	0	trigonal planar	trigonal planar
3	2	1	trigonal planar	bent 120°
4	4	0	tetrahedral	tetrahedral
4	3	1	tetrahedral	trigonal pyramidal
4	2	2	tetrahedral	bent 109°

Two Electron Groups

Any molecule with only two atoms is **linear**. A molecule whose central atom contains only two electron groups orients those two groups as far apart from each other as possible, which is 180° apart. When the two electron groups are 180° apart, the atoms attached to those electron groups are also 180° apart, so the overall molecular structure is linear. Examples include BeH_2 and CO_2:



Figure **6.17.2**: Beryllium hydride and carbon dioxide bonding.

Three Electron Groups

A molecule with three electron groups orients the three groups as far apart as possible. They adopt the positions of an equilateral triangle, 120° apart and in a plane. The shape of such molecules is **trigonal planar**. An example is BF_3:

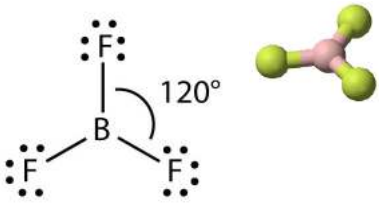


Figure **6.17.3**: Boron trifluoride bonding. (CK12 Licence)

Some substances have a trigonal planar electron group distribution but have atoms bonded to only two of the three electron groups. An example is GeF_2:

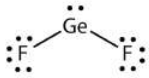


Figure **6.17.4**: Germanium difluoride bonding.

From an electron group geometry perspective, GeF_2 has a trigonal planar shape, but its real shape is dictated by the positions of the atoms. This molecular structure is called **bent 120°** or angular.

Four Electron Groups

A molecule with four electron groups about the central atom orients the four groups in the direction of a tetrahedron with bond angles of approximately 109.5°. If there are four atoms attached to these electron groups, then the molecular structure is also **tetrahedral**. Methane (CH_4) is an example.



Figure **6.17.5**: Tetrahedral structure of methane. (CK12 Licence)

This diagram of CH_4 illustrates the standard convention of displaying a three-dimensional molecule on a two-dimensional surface. The straight lines are in the plane of the page, the solid wedged line is coming out of the plane toward the reader, and the dashed wedged line is going out of the plane away from the reader.

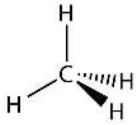


Figure **6.17.6**: Methane bonding. (CK12 Licence)

NH_3 is an example of a molecule whose central atom has four electron groups, but only three of them are bonded to surrounding atoms.



Figure **6.17.7**: Ammonia bonding. (CK12 Licence)

Although the electron groups are oriented in the shape of a *tetrahedron*, from a molecular geometry perspective, the shape of NH_3 is **trigonal pyramidal**.

H_2O is an example of a molecule whose central atom has four electron groups, but only two of them are bonded to surrounding atoms.

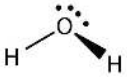


Figure **6.17.8**: Water bonding.

Although the electron groups are oriented in the shape of a tetrahedron, the shape of the molecule is **bent 109°** or angular. A molecule with four electron groups about the central atom, but only one electron group bonded to another atom, is linear because there are only two atoms in the molecule.

Shapes of Molecules with Double or Triple Bonds

Double or triple bonds count as a single electron group. The Lewis electron dot diagram of formaldehyde (CH_2O) is shown in Figure **6.17.9**.



Figure **6.17.9**: Lewis Electron Dot Diagram of Formaldehyde.

The central C atom has three electron groups around it because the double bond counts as one electron group. The three electron groups repel each other to adopt a *trigonal planar shape*.

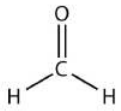


Figure 6.17.10: Formaldehyde bonding.

(The lone electron pairs on the O atom are omitted for clarity.) The molecule will not be a perfect equilateral triangle because the C–O double bond is different from the two C–H bonds, but both planar and triangular describe the appropriate approximate shape of this molecule.

Example 6.17.1

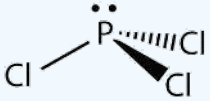
What is the approximate shape of each molecule?

a. PCl_3
b. NOF

Solution

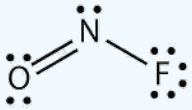
The first step is to draw the Lewis structure of the molecule.

For PCl_3, the electron dot diagram is as follows:



The lone electron pairs on the Cl atoms are omitted for clarity. The P atom has four electron groups with three of them bonded to surrounding atoms, so the molecular shape is trigonal pyramidal.

The electron dot diagram for NOF is as follows:



The N atom has three electron groups on it, two of which are bonded to other atoms. The molecular shape is bent.

Exercise 6.17.1

What is the approximate molecular shape of CH_2Cl_2?

Answer

Tetrahedral

Exercise 6.17.2

Ethylene (C_2H_4) has two central atoms. Determine the geometry around each central atom and the shape of the overall molecule. (Hint: hydrogen is a terminal atom.)

Answer

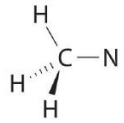
Trigonal planar about both central C atoms.

Molecules With Multiple Central Atoms

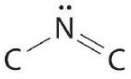
The VSEPR model can be used to predict the structure of somewhat more complex molecules with more than one central atom by using VSEPR as described above for each central atom individually. We will demonstrate with methyl isocyanate (CH_3–N=C=O), a

volatile and highly toxic molecule that is used to produce the pesticide Sevin.

Start by looking at the electron groups around the first carbon atom at the left, which is connected to three H atoms and one N atom by single bonds. There are four groups or electrons or four bonds around the carbon. We can therefore predict the CH_3–N portion of the molecule to be roughly *tetrahedral*, similar to methane:



The nitrogen atom is connected to one carbon by a single bond and to the other carbon by a double bond, producing a total of three bonds, C–N=C. For nitrogen to have an octet of electrons, it must also have a lone pair:



One carbon bonded to nitrogen and another carbon double bonded to the nitrogen. The nitrogen has one lone pair.

Because multiple bonds are not shown in the VSEPR model, the nitrogen is effectively surrounded by three electron groups. Thus according to the VSEPR model, the C–N=C fragment should be *bent* with an angle ~120°.

The carbon in the –N=C=O fragment is doubly bonded to both nitrogen and oxygen, which in the VSEPR model gives carbon a total of two electron pairs. The N=C=O angle should therefore be 180°, or linear. The three fragments combine to give the following structure:

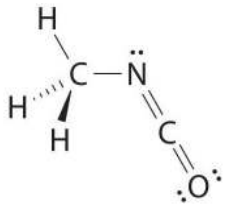


Figure **6.17.11**). The Lewis Structure of Methyl Isocyanate

Three hydrogens are bonded to a carbon. The carbon is also bonded to a nitrogen. The nitrogen is double bonded to another carbon. The second carbon is double bonded to an oxygen. The nitrogen has one lone pair. The oxygen has two lone pairs.

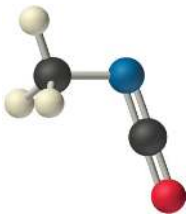


Figure **6.17.12**: The Experimentally Determined Structure of Methyl Isocyanate

Certain patterns are seen in the structures of moderately complex molecules. For example, carbon atoms with four bonds (such as the carbon on the left in methyl isocyanate) are generally tetrahedral. Similarly, the carbon atom on the right has two double bonds that are similar to those in CO_2, so its geometry, like that of CO_2, is linear. Recognizing similarities to simpler molecules will help you predict the molecular geometries of more complex molecules.

✔ Example 6.17.3

Use the VSEPR model to predict the molecular geometry of propyne (H_3C–C≡CH), a gas with some anesthetic properties.

Given: chemical compound

Asked for: molecular geometry

Strategy:

Count the number of electron groups around each carbon, recognizing that in the VSEPR model, a multiple bond counts as a single group. Use Figure **6.17.3** to determine the molecular geometry around each carbon atom and then deduce the structure of

the molecule as a whole.

Solution:

Because the carbon atom on the left is bonded to four other atoms, we know that it is approximately tetrahedral. The next two carbon atoms share a triple bond, and each has an additional single bond. Because a multiple bond is counted as a single bond in the VSEPR model, each carbon atom behaves as if it had two electron groups. This means that both of these carbons are linear, with C–C≡C and C≡C–H angles of 180°.

? Exercise 6.17.3

Predict the geometry of allene ($H_2C=C=CH_2$), a compound with narcotic properties that is used to make more complex organic molecules.

Answer

The terminal carbon atoms are trigonal planar, the central carbon is linear, and the C–C–C angle is 180°.

6.17: The Shapes of Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.2: The VSEPR Model** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.
- **7.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **10.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed notset.

6.18: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity

Learning Objectives

- Describe electronegativity and polarity.
- Use electronegativity values to predict bond polarity.

Our discussions of bonding thus far have focused on two types, ionic and covalent. In ionic bonds, like $NaCl$, electrons are *transferred*; the 3s electron is stripped from the Na atom and is incorporated into the electronic structure of the Cl atom, and the compound is most accurately described as consisting of individual Na^+ and Cl^- ions. In covalent bonding, unpaired electrons from individual atoms are *shared* in order to fill the valence shell of each atom. When a covalent bond is formed between the same type of atoms, such as Cl_2, the electrons are *shared equally* between the two. However, when a covalent bond is formed between different types of atoms, the electrons are not necessarily shared equally. In these compounds their bond character falls *between* the two extremes: transferred and shared equally.

Bond Polarity

As demonstrated below, **bond polarity** is a useful concept for describing the sharing of electrons between atoms, within a covalent bond:

- A **nonpolar covalent bond** (Figure **6.18.1***a*)is one in which the electrons are shared *equally* between two atoms.
- A **polar covalent bond** (Figure **6.18.1***b*) is one in which one atom has a greater attraction for the electrons than the other atom.
- If the relative attraction of an atom for electrons is great enough, then the bond is an **ionic bond (**Figure **6.18.1***c*).

Electron density in a polar bond is distributed unevenly and is greater around the atom that attracts the electrons more than the other. For example, the electrons in the H–Cl bond of a hydrogen chloride molecule spend more time near the chlorine atom than near the hydrogen atom. Note that the shaded area around Cl in Figure **6.18.1***b* is much larger than it is around H. This imbalance in electron density results in a buildup of *partial negative charge* (designated as δ−) on one side of the bond (Cl) and a *partial positive charge* (designated δ+) on the other side of the bond (H).

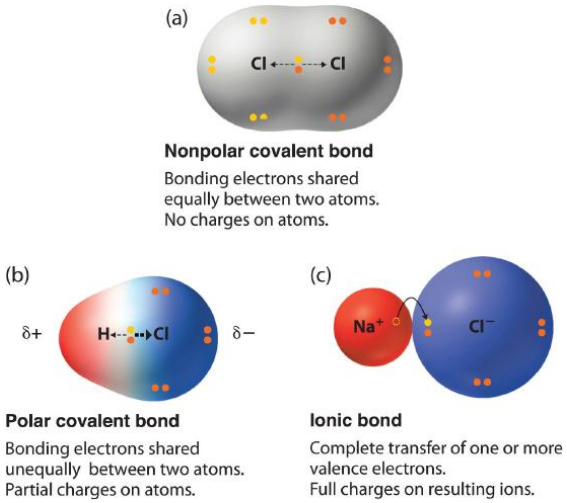


Figure **6.18.1**: The Electron Distribution in a Nonpolar Covalent Bond, a Polar Covalent Bond, and an Ionic Bond Using Lewis Electron Structures. In a purely covalent bond (a), the bonding electrons are shared equally between the atoms. In a purely ionic bond (c), an electron has been transferred completely from one atom to the other. A polar covalent bond (b) is intermediate between the two extremes: the bonding electrons are shared unequally between the two atoms, and the electron distribution is asymmetrical with the electron density being greater around the more electronegative atom. Electron-rich (negatively charged) regions are shown in blue; electron-poor (positively charged) regions are shown in red.

Any covalent bond between atoms of different elements is a polar bond, but the degree of polarity varies widely. Some bonds between different elements are only minimally polar, while others are strongly polar. Ionic bonds can be considered the ultimate in

polarity, with electrons being transferred rather than shared. To judge the relative polarity of a covalent bond, chemists use electronegativity, which is a relative measure of how strongly an atom attracts electrons when it forms a covalent bond.

Electronegativity

Because the tendency of an element to gain or lose electrons is so important in determining its chemistry, various methods have been developed to quantitatively describe this tendency. The most important method uses a measurement called **electronegativity**, defined as the *relative ability* of an atom to attract electrons to itself in a chemical compound. Elements with high electronegativities tend to acquire electrons in chemical reactions and are found in the upper right corner of the periodic table. Elements with low electronegativities tend to lose electrons in chemical reactions and are found in the lower left corner of the periodic table.

Unlike ionization energy or electron affinity, the electronegativity of an atom is not a simple, fixed property that can be directly measured in a single experiment. In fact, an atom's electronegativity should depend to some extent on its chemical environment because the properties of an atom are influenced by its neighbors in a chemical compound. Nevertheless, when different methods for measuring the electronegativity of an atom are compared, they all tend to assign similar relative values to a given element. For example, all scales predict that fluorine has the highest electronegativity and cesium the lowest of the stable elements, which suggests that all the methods are measuring the same fundamental property.

Electronegativity is a function of:

1. the atom's ***ionization energy*** (how strongly the atom holds on to its own electrons) and
2. the atom's ***electron affinity*** (how strongly the atom attracts other electrons).

Both of these are properties of the *isolated* atom. An element will be *highly electronegative* if it has a large (negative) electron affinity and a high ionization energy (always positive for neutral atoms). Thus, it will attract electrons from other atoms and resist having its own electrons attracted away.

> *Electronegativity is defined as the ability of an atom in a particular molecule to attract electrons to itself. The greater the value, the greater the attractiveness for electrons.*

The Pauling Electronegativity Scale

The original electronegativity scale, developed in the 1930s by Linus Pauling (1901– 1994) was based on measurements of the strengths of covalent bonds between different elements. Pauling arbitrarily set the electronegativity of fluorine at 4.0 (although today it has been refined to 3.98), thereby creating a scale in which all elements have values between 0 and 4.0.

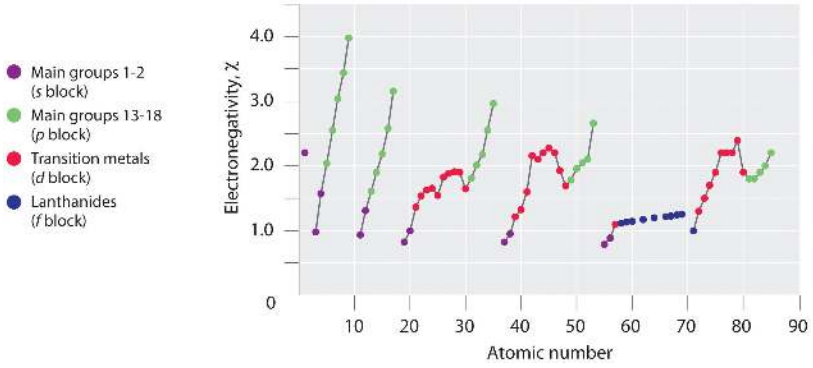


Figure **6.18.2**: A Plot of Periodic Variation of Electronegativity with Atomic Number for the First Six Rows of the Periodic Table
The main groups 1 and 2 are purple, the main groups 13 through 18 are green, the transition metals are red, and the lanthanides are blue.

Periodic variations (trends) in Pauling's electronegativity values are illustrated in Figures **6.18.2** and **6.18.3**. If we ignore the inert gases and elements for which no stable isotopes are known, we see that fluorine is the most electronegative element and cesium is the least electronegative nonradioactive element. Because electronegativities generally increase diagonally from the lower left to the upper right of the periodic table, elements lying on diagonal lines running from upper left to lower right tend to have comparable values (e.g., O and Cl, and N, S, and Br).

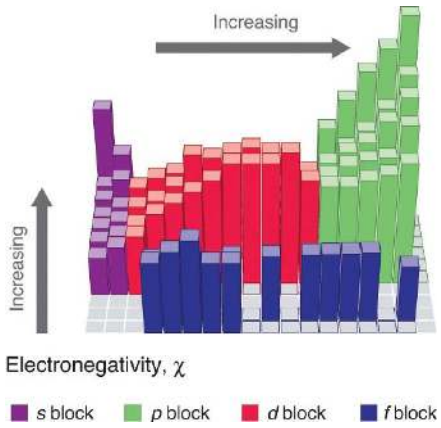


Figure **6.18.3**: Pauling Electronegativity Values of the *s*-, *p*-, *d*-, and *f*-Block Elements. Values for most of the actinides are approximate. Elements for which no data are available are shown in gray. Source: Data from L. Pauling, *The Nature of the Chemical Bond*, 3rd ed. (1960).

The s blocks are purple, the p blocks are green, the d blocks are red, and the f blocks are blue. Electronegativity increase from bottom to top and left to right.

The polarity of a covalent bond can be judged by determining the difference in the electronegativities of the two atoms making the bond. The greater the difference in electronegativities, the greater the imbalance of electron sharing in the bond. Although there are no hard and fast rules, the general rule, (see Figure **6.18.5**), is if the difference in electronegativities is less than about 0.4, the bond is considered nonpolar; if the difference is greater than 0.4, the bond is considered polar. If the difference in electronegativities is large enough (generally greater than about 1.8), the resulting compound is considered ionic rather than covalent. An electronegativity difference of zero, of course, indicates a nonpolar covalent bond.

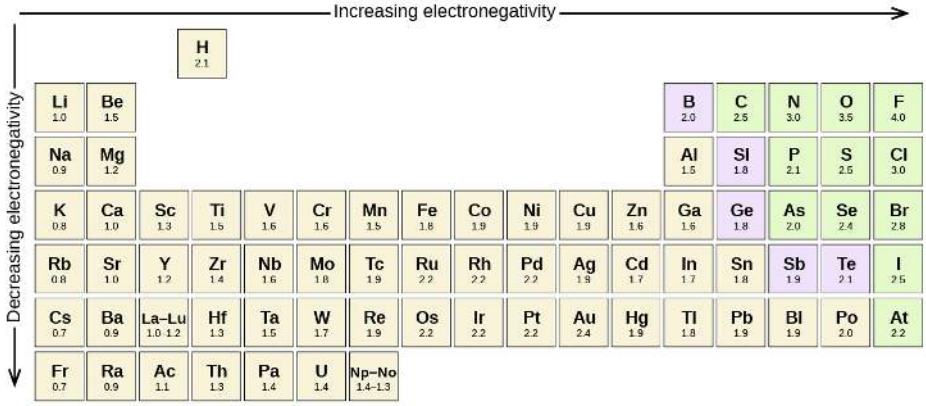
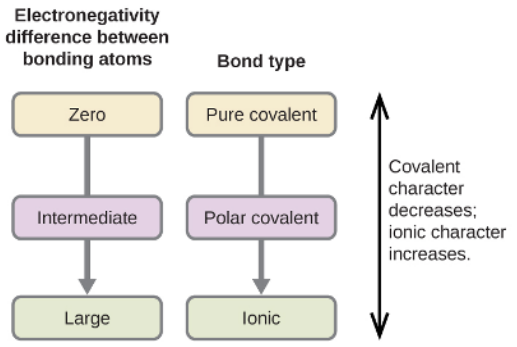


Figure **6.18.4** The electronegativity values derived by Pauling follow predictable periodic trends with the higher electronegativities toward the upper right of the periodic table. Fluorine has the highest value (4.0).



Bond Type	Electronegativity Difference
pure covalent	< 0.4
polar covalent	between 0.4 and 1.8
ionic	> 1.8

Figure **6.18.5**: As the electronegativity difference increases between two atoms, the bond becomes more ionic.

Example 6.18.1

Describe the electronegativity difference between each pair of atoms and the resulting polarity (or bond type).

a. C and H
b. H and H
c. Na and Cl
d. O and H

Solution

a. Carbon has an electronegativity of 2.5, while the value for hydrogen is 2.1. The difference is 0.4, which is rather small. The C–H bond is therefore considered nonpolar.
b. Both hydrogen atoms have the same electronegativity value—2.1. The difference is zero, so the bond is nonpolar.
c. Sodium's electronegativity is 0.9, while chlorine's is 3.0. The difference is 2.1, which is rather high, and so sodium and chlorine form an ionic compound.
d. With 2.1 for hydrogen and 3.5 for oxygen, the electronegativity difference is 1.4. We would expect a very polar bond. The sharing of electrons between O and H is unequal with the electrons more strongly drawn towards O.

Exercise 6.18.1

Describe the electronegativity (EN) difference between each pair of atoms and the resulting polarity (or bond type).

a. C and O
b. K and Br
c. N and N
d. Cs and F

Answer a:

The EN difference is 1.0 , hence polar. The sharing of electrons between C and O is unequal with the electrons more strongly drawn towards O.

Answer b:

The EN difference is greater than 1.8, hence ionic.

Answer c:

Identical atoms have zero EN difference, hence nonpolar.

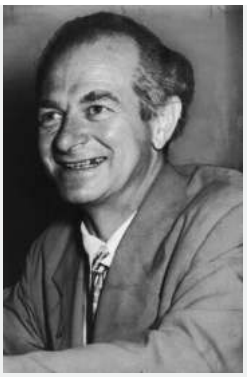
Answer d:

The EN difference is greater than 1.8, hence ionic.

Looking Closer: Linus Pauling

Arguably the most influential chemist of the 20th century, Linus Pauling (1901–94) is the only person to have won two individual (that is, unshared) Nobel Prizes. In the 1930s, Pauling used new mathematical theories to enunciate some fundamental principles of the chemical bond. His 1939 book *The Nature of the Chemical Bond* is one of the most significant books ever published in chemistry.

By 1935, Pauling's interest turned to biological molecules, and he was awarded the 1954 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his work on protein structure. (He was very close to discovering the double helix structure of DNA when James Watson and James Crick announced their own discovery of its structure in 1953.) He was later awarded the 1962 Nobel Peace Prize for his efforts to ban the testing of nuclear weapons.



Linus Pauling was one of the most influential chemists of the 20th century.

In his later years, Pauling became convinced that large doses of vitamin C would prevent disease, including the common cold. Most clinical research failed to show a connection, but Pauling continued to take large doses daily. He died in 1994, having spent a lifetime establishing a scientific legacy that few will ever equal.

6.18: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.4: Bond Polarity and Electronegativity** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

6.19: Polar Molecules

Learning Objectives

- Recognize bond characteristics of covalent compounds: bond length and bond polarity.
- Use electronegativity values to predict bond polarity.

If there is only one bond in the molecule, the bond polarity determines the *molecular polarity*. Any diatomic molecule in which the two atoms are the same element must be a nonpolar molecule. A diatomic molecule that consists of a polar covalent bond, such as HF, is a polar molecule where one end of the molecule is slightly positive, while the other end is slightly negative. The two electrically charged regions on either end of the molecule are called poles, similar to a magnet having a north and a south pole. Hence, a molecule with two poles has a **dipole moment**.

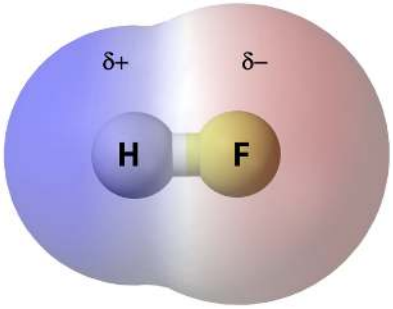


Figure **6.19.1**: A molecular dipole results from the unequal distribution of electron density throughout a molecule. The H, with less electron density is partially positive and the F, with more electron density is partially negative. (Figure modified from: Wikipedia [en.Wikipedia.org])

For molecules with more than two atoms, the molecular geometry must also be taken into account when determining if the molecule is polar or nonpolar. The figure below shows a comparison between carbon dioxide and water.

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) is a linear molecule with carbon in the center and two oxygens at the terminal ends. The oxygen atoms are more electronegative than the carbon atom, so there are two individual dipoles pointing outward from the C atom to each O atom. However, since the dipoles are of equal strength and pointing in opposite directions, they *cancel out* and the overall molecular polarity of CO_2 is zero (no net dipole), therefore CO_2 is a *nonpolar molecule*.

Water has a bent molecular structure because it has four electron groups, two bonded groups and two lone electron groups on the central oxygen atom. The individual O–H bond dipoles point from the slightly positive H atoms toward the more electronegative O atom. Because of the bent shape, the dipoles, which are equal in strength, both point towards the oxygen atom and will not cancel each other out, therefore, the water molecule is polar. In the figure below, you can see that the oxygen end of the molecule is slightly negative and the hydrogen side is slightly positive, there is a separation of charge throughout the whole molecule, a **net dipole** (shown in blue) that points upward.

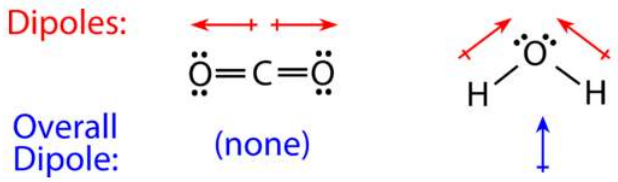


Figure **6.19.2**: The molecular geometry of a molecule affects its polarity. Each CO bond has a dipole moment, but they point in opposite directions so that the net CO_2 molecule is nonpolar. In contrast, water is polar because the OH bond dipole moments do not cancel out. There is a net separation of charge or overall dipole moment.

Some other molecules are shown in the figure below. Notice that a tetrahedral molecule such as CH_4 is nonpolar. However, if one of the peripheral H atoms is replaced with another atom that has a different electronegativity, the molecule becomes polar. A trigonal planar molecule (BF_3) may be nonpolar if all three peripheral atoms are the same, but a trigonal pyramidal molecule (NH_3) is polar.

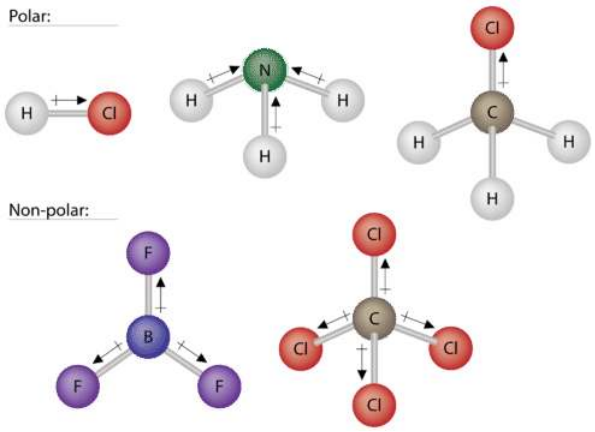


Figure **6.19.3**: Some examples of polar and nonpolar molecules based on molecular geometry.

To summarize, to be polar, a molecule must:

1. Contain at least one polar covalent bond.
2. Have a molecular structure such that the sum of the vectors of each bond dipole moment do not cancel.

Steps to Identify Polar Molecules

1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Figure out the geometry (using VSEPR theory).
3. Visualize or draw the geometry.
4. Find the net dipole moment (you don't have to actually do calculations if you can visualize it).
5. If the net dipole moment is zero, it is non-polar. Otherwise, it is polar.

Properties of Polar Molecules

Polar molecules tend to align when placed in an electric field with the positive end of the molecule oriented toward the negative plate and the negative end toward the positive plate (Figure **6.19.4**). We can use an electrically charged object to attract polar molecules, but nonpolar molecules are not attracted. Also, polar solvents are better at dissolving polar substances, and nonpolar solvents are better at dissolving nonpolar substances.

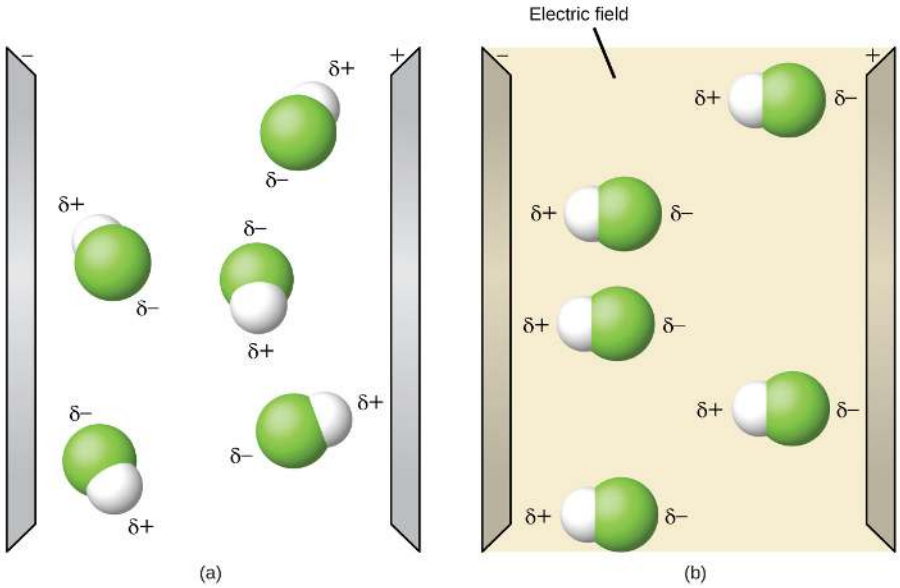


Figure **6.19.4**: (a) Molecules are always randomly distributed in the liquid state in the absence of an electric field. (b) When an electric field is applied, polar molecules like HF will align to the dipoles with the field direction. (OpenStax CC-BY-SA);

While molecules can be described as "polar covalent" or "ionic", it must be noted that this is often a relative term, with one molecule simply being *more polar* or *less polar* than another. However, the following properties are typical of such molecules. Polar molecules tend to:

- have higher melting points than nonpolar molecules
- have higher boiling points than nonpolar molecules
- be more soluble in water (dissolve better) than nonpolar molecules
- have lower vapor pressures than nonpolar molecules

Example 6.19.1: Polarity Simulations

Open the molecule polarity simulation (above) and select the “Three Atoms” tab at the top. This should display a molecule ABC with three electronegativity adjustors. You can display or hide the bond moments, molecular dipoles, and partial charges at the right. Turning on the Electric Field will show whether the molecule moves when exposed to a field.

Use the electronegativity controls to determine how the molecular dipole will look for the starting bent molecule if:

a. A and C are very electronegative and B is in the middle of the range.
b. A is very electronegative, and B and C are not.

Solution

a. Molecular dipole moment points immediately between A and C.
b. Molecular dipole moment points along the A–B bond, toward A.

Exercise 6.19.1

Determine the partial charges that will give the largest possible bond dipoles.

Answer

The largest bond moments will occur with the largest partial charges. The two solutions above represent how unevenly the electrons are shared in the bond. The bond moments will be maximized when the electronegativity difference is greatest. The controls for A and C should be set to one extreme, and B should be set to the opposite extreme. Although the magnitude of the bond moment will not change based on whether B is the most electronegative or the least, the direction of the bond moment will.

6.19: Polar Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.8: Electronegativity and Polarity - Why Oil and Water Do not Mix** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.
- **7.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.20: Naming Binary Molecular Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Name binary molecular compounds.

Naming *binary* (two-element) covalent compounds is very similar to naming simple ionic compounds. The first element in the formula is simply listed using the name of the element. The second element is named by taking the stem of the element name and adding the suffix *-ide*. Unlike for ionic compounds, molecular compounds can be formed using the same elements in different ratios. Therefore, it is important to indicate the number of each type of atom, using a system of numerical prefixes, listed in Table 6.20.1. Normally, no prefix is added to the first element's name if there is only one atom of the first element in a molecule. If the second element is oxygen, the trailing vowel is usually omitted from the end of a polysyllabic prefix but not a monosyllabic one (that is, we would say "monoxide" rather than "monooxide" and "trioxide" rather than "troxide").

Table 6.20.1: Numerical Prefixes for Naming Binary Covalent Compounds

Number of Atoms in Compound	Prefix on the Name of the Element
1	mono-*
2	di-
3	tri-
4	tetra-
5	penta-
6	hexa-
7	hepta-
8	octa-
9	nona-
10	deca-

*This prefix is not used for the first element's name.

Let us practice by naming the compound whose molecular formula is CCl_4. The name begins with the name of the first element carbon. The second element, chlor*ine*, becomes chlor*ide*, and we attach the correct numerical prefix ("tetra-") to indicate that the molecule contains four chlorine atoms. Putting these pieces together gives the name *carbon tetrachloride* for this compound.

Example 6.20.1

Write the molecular formula for each compound.

a. chlorine trifluoride
b. phosphorus pentachloride
c. sulfur dioxide
d. dinitrogen pentoxide

Solution

If there is no numerical prefix on the first element's name, we can assume that there is only one atom of that element in a molecule.

a. ClF_3
b. PCl_5

c. SO_2
d. N_2O_5 (The *di-* prefix on nitrogen indicates that two nitrogen atoms are present.)

? Exercise 6.20.1

Write the molecular formula for each compound.

a. nitrogen dioxide
b. dioxygen difluoride
c. sulfur hexafluoride
d. selenium monoxide

Answer a:

a. NO_2

Answer b:

O_2F_2

Answer c:

SF_6

Answer d:

SeO

Because it is so unreactive, sulfur hexafluoride is used as a spark suppressant in electrical devices such as transformers.

✔ Example 6.20.2

Write the name for each compound.

a. BrF_5
b. S_2F_2
c. CO

Solution

a. bromine pentafluoride
b. disulfur difluoride
c. carbon monoxide

? Exercise 6.20.2

Write the name for each compound.

a. CF_4
b. $SeCl_2$
c. SO_3

Answer a:

carbon tetrafluoride

Answer b:

selenium dichloride

Answer c:

> sulfur trioxide

For some simple covalent compounds, we use common names rather than systematic names. We have already encountered these compounds, but we list them here explicitly:

- H_2O: water
- NH_3: ammonia
- CH_4: methane

Methane is the simplest organic compound. Organic compounds are compounds with carbon atoms and are named by a separate nomenclature system that we will introduce later.

6.20: Naming Binary Molecular Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.21: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises)

4.1: Covalent Bonds

Concept Review Exercises

1. How is a covalent bond formed between two atoms?
2. How does covalent bonding allow atoms in group 6A to satisfy the octet rule?

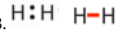
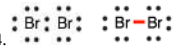
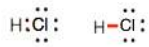
Answers

1. Covalent bonds are formed by two atoms sharing electrons.
2. The atoms in group 6A make two covalent bonds.

Exercises

1. Define *covalent bond*.
2. What is electron sharing?
3. Draw the Lewis diagram for the covalent bond in the H_2 molecule.
4. Draw the Lewis diagram for the covalent bond in the Br_2 molecule.
5. Draw the Lewis diagram for the covalent bond in the HCl molecule.
6. What is the difference between a molecule and a formula unit?
7. Why do hydrogen atoms not follow the octet rule when they form covalent bonds?
8. Draw the Lewis diagram for the covalent bonding in H_2S. How many bonding electrons and nonbonding electrons are in the molecule?
9. Draw the Lewis diagram for the covalent bonding in CF_4. How many bonding electrons and nonbonding electrons are in the molecule?
10. Draw the Lewis diagram for the covalent bonding in PCl_3. How many bonding electrons and nonbonding electrons are in the molecule?
11. How many covalent bonds does a hydrogen atom typically form? Why?
12. How many covalent bonds does an oxygen atom typically form? Why?
13. Tellurium atoms make covalent bonds. How many covalent bonds would a tellurium atom make? Predict the formula of a compound between tellurium and hydrogen.
14. Tin atoms make covalent bonds. How many covalent bonds would a tin atom make? Predict the formula of a compound between tin and hydrogen.
15. Astatine is a synthetic element, made one atom at a time in huge “atom-smasher” machines. It is in the halogen group on the periodic table. How many covalent bonds would an atom of this element form?
16. There have been reports that atoms of element 116 (Lv) were made by smashing smaller atoms together. Using the periodic table, determine what column element 116 would be in and suggest how many covalent bonds an atom of this element would form.

Answers

1. A covalent bond is formed when two atoms share electrons.
2. Electron sharing joins two atoms in a covalent bond. This is a more stable arrangement than 2 individual atoms.
3. 
4. 
5. 

6. A molecule is a discrete combination of atoms; a formula unit is the lowest ratio of ions in a crystal. 7. Hydrogen atoms follow the duet rule (not the octet rule). This is because it has only one shell and this shell can only hold 2 electrons.

8. 

bonding electrons: 4; nonbonding electrons: 4

9. 

bonding electrons: 8; nonbonding electrons: 24

10. 

bonding electrons: 6; nonbonding electrons: 20

11. Hydrogen atoms form only one covalent bond because they have only one valence electron to pair.
12. Oxygen atoms form 2 covalent bonds because oxygen atoms have 6 valence electrons (2 lone pairs plus 2 unpaired electrons that are shared to achieve octet).
13. two; H_2Te
14. four: SnH_4

15. one
16. two

4.2: Covalent Compounds - Formulas and Names

Concept Review Exercises

1. How do you recognize a covalent compound?
2. What are the rules for writing the molecular formula of a simple covalent compound?
3. What are the rules for naming a simple covalent compound?

Answers

1. A covalent compound is usually composed of two or more nonmetal elements.
2. It is just like an ionic compound except that the element further down and to the left on the periodic table is listed first and is named with the element name.
3. Name the first element first and then the second element by using the stem of the element name plus the suffix -ide. Use numerical prefixes if there is more than one atom of the first element; always use numerical prefixes for the number of atoms of the second element.

Exercises

1. Identify whether each compound has covalent bonds.
   a. NaI
   b. Na_2CO_3
   c. N_2O
   d. SiO_2
2. Identify whether each compound has covalent bonds.
   a. C_2H_6
   b. C_6H_5Cl
   c. $KC_2H_3O_2$
   d. $Ca(OH)_2$
3. Identify whether each compound has ionic bonds, covalent bonds, or both.
   a. Na_3PO_4
   b. K_2O
   c. $COCl_2$
   d. $CoCl_2$
4. Identify whether each compound has ionic bonds, covalent bonds, or both.
   a. $FeCl_3$
   b. $Fe(NO_3)_3$
   c. $(NH_2)_2CO$
   d. SO_3
5. Which is the correct molecular formula—H_4Si or SiH_4? Explain.
6. Which is the correct molecular formula—SF_6 or F_6S? Explain.
7. Write the name for each covalent compound.
   a. SiF_4
   b. NO_2
   c. CS_2
   d. P_2O_5
8. Write the name for each covalent compound.
   a. CO
   b. S_2O_3
   c. BF_3
   d. GeS_2
9. Write the formula for each covalent compound.
   a. iodine trichloride
   b. disulfur dibromide
   c. arsenic trioxide
   d. xenon hexafluoride
10. Write the formula for each covalent compound.
    a. boron trichloride
    b. carbon dioxide
    c. tetraphosphorus decoxide
    d. germanium dichloride
11. Write two covalent compounds that have common rather than systematic names.
12. What is the name of the simplest organic compound? What would its name be if it followed the nomenclature for binary covalent compounds?

Answers

1. a. no
   b. yes
   c. yes
   d. yes
2.

a. yes
b. yes
c. yes
d. yes

3. a. both
   b. ionic
   c. covalent
   d. ionic

4.

   a. ionic
   b. both
   c. covalent
   d. covalent

5. SiH_4; except for water, hydrogen is almost never listed first in a covalent compound.

6. SF_6; the less electronegative atom (S) is written first

7. a. silicon tetrafluoride
   b. nitrogen dioxide
   c. carbon disulfide
   d. diphosphorus pentoxide

8.

   a. carbon monoxide
   b. disulfur trioxide
   c. boron trifluoride
   d. germanium disulfide

9. a. ICl_3
   b. S_2Br_2
   c. AsO_3
   d. XeF_6

10.

    a. BCl_3
    b. CO_2
    c. P_4O_{10}
    d. $GeCl_2$

11. H_2O and NH_3 (water and ammonia) (answers will vary)
12. CH_4; carbon tetrahydride

4.3: Drawing Lewis Structures

Exercises

1. What is one clue that a molecule has a multiple bond?

2. Draw the Lewis diagram for each of the following.

   a. H_2O

   b. NH_3

   c. C_2H_6

   d. CCl_4

3. Each molecule contains double bonds. Draw the Lewis diagram for each. The first element is the central atom.

   a. CS_2
   b. C_2F_4
   c. $COCl_2$

4. Each molecule contains multiple bonds. Draw the Lewis diagram for each. Assume that the first element is the central atom, unless otherwise noted.

   a. N_2
   b. CO
   c. HCN (The carbon atom is the central atom.)
   d. POCl (The phosphorus atom is the central atom.)

5. Explain why hydrogen atoms do not form double bonds.

6. Why is it incorrect to draw a double bond in the Lewis diagram for MgO?

Answers

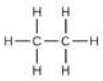
1. If single bonds between all atoms do not give all atoms (except hydrogen) an octet, multiple covalent bonds may be present.
2. a.



b.



c.



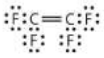
d.



3. a.



b.



c.

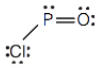


4. a. $\ddot{N} \equiv \ddot{N}$

b. $:C \equiv O:$

c. $H:C \equiv \ddot{N}$

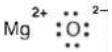
d.



5. Hydrogen can accept only one more electron; multiple bonds require more than one electron pair to be shared.

6. MgO is an ionic compound (Mg transfers two electrons to O). The electrons are not shared hence it's incorrect to draw a double bond.

This is the Lewis dot structure of MgO.



4.4: Characteristics of Covalent Bonds

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the name for the distance between two atoms in a covalent bond?
2. What does the electronegativity of an atom indicate?
3. What type of bond is formed between two atoms if the difference in electronegativities is small? Medium? Large?

Answers

1. bond length
2. Electronegativity is a qualitative measure of how much an atom attracts electrons in a covalent bond.
3. nonpolar; polar; ionic

Exercises

1. Which is longer—a C–H bond or a C–O bond? (Refer to Table **6.21.1**.)
2. Which is shorter—an N–H bond or a C–H bond? (Refer to Table **6.21.1**.)
3. A nanometer is 10^{-9} m. Using the data in Table **6.21.1** and Table **6.21.2**, determine the length of each bond in nanometers.
   a. a C–O bond
   b. a C=O bond
   c. an H–N bond
   d. a C≡N bond
4. An angstrom (Å) is defined as 10^{-10} m. Using Table **6.21.1** and Table **6.21.2**, determine the length of each bond in angstroms.
   a. a C–C bond
   b. a C=C bond
   c. an N≡N bond
   d. an H–O bond
5. Refer to Exercise 3. Why is the nanometer unit useful as a unit for expressing bond lengths?
6. Refer to Exercise 4. Why is the angstrom unit useful as a unit for expressing bond lengths?
7. Using Figure **6.21.3**, determine which atom in each pair has the higher electronegativity.
   a. H or C
   b. O or Br

c. Na or Rb
d. I or Cl

8. Using Figure **6.21.3**, determine which atom in each pair has the lower electronegativity.

a. Mg or O
b. S or F
c. Al or Ga
d. O or I

9. Will the electrons be shared equally or unequally across each covalent bond? If unequally, to which atom are the electrons more strongly drawn?

a. a C–O bond
b. an F–F bond
c. an S–N bond
d. an I–Cl bond

10. Will the electrons be shared equally or unequally across each covalent bond? If unequally, to which atom are the electrons more strongly drawn?

a. a C–C bond
b. a S–Cl bond
c. an O–H bond
d. an H–H bond

11. Arrange the following bonds from least polar to most polar: H-F, H-N, H-O, H-C

12. Arrange the following bonds from least polar to most polar: C-F, C-N, C-O, C-C

Answers

1. A C–O bond is longer.

2. An H-N bond is shorter than an H-C bond.

3. a. 0.143 nm
b. 0.120 nm
c. 0.100 nm
d. 0.116 nm

4.

a. 1.54 Å
b. 1.34 Å
c. 1.10 Å
d. 0.97 Å

5. Actual bond lengths are very small, so the nanometer unit makes the expression of length easier to understand.

6. Actual bond lengths are very small, so the angstrom unit makes the expression of length easier to understand.

7. a. C
b. O
c. Na
d. Cl

8.

a. Mg
b. S
c. Al
d. I

9.

a. unequally toward the O
b. equally
c. unequally toward the N
d. unequally toward the Cl

10.

a. equally
b. unequally toward the Cl
c. unequally toward the O
d. equally

11. The electronegativity difference increases from 0.4; 0.9; 1.4; 1.9. Hence, the least to most polar: H-C, H-N, H-O, H-F

12. The electronegativity difference increases from 0; 0.5; 1.0; 1.5. Hence, the least to most polar: C-C, C-N, C-O, C-F

4.5: Characteristics of Molecules

Concept Review Exercises

1. How do you determine the molecular mass of a covalent compound?
2. How do you determine the shape of a molecule?
3. How do you determine whether a molecule is polar or nonpolar?

Answers

1. The molecular mass is the sum of the masses of the atoms in the formula.

2. The shape of a molecule is determined by the position of the atoms, which in turn is determined by the repulsion of the bonded and lone electron pairs around the central atom.

3. If all the bonds in a molecule are nonpolar, the molecule is nonpolar. If it contains identical polar bonds that are oriented symmetrically opposite each other (linear, trigonal planar or tetrahedral) then the molecule is nonpolar. If it contains polar bonds that don't cancel each other's effects, the molecule is polar.

Exercises

1. What is the molecular mass of each compound?
   a. H_2S
   b. N_2O_4
   c. ICl_3
   d. HCl
2. What is the molecular mass of each compound?
   a. O_2F_2
   b. CCl_4
   c. C_6H_6
   d. SO_3
3. Aspirin ($C_9H_8O_4$) is a covalent compound. What is its molecular mass?
4. Cholesterol ($C_{27}H_{46}O$) is a biologically important compound. What is its molecular mass?
5. What is the shape of each molecule? State whether it is polar or nonpolar.
   a. H_2S
   b. $COCl_2$
   c. SO_2
6. What is the shape of each molecule? State whether it is polar or nonpolar.
   a. NBr_3
   b. SF_2
   c. SiH_4
7. Predict the shape of nitrous oxide (N_2O), which is used as an anesthetic. A nitrogen atom is in the center of this three-atom molecule. Is this polar?
8. Predict the shape of acetylene (C_2H_2), which has the two carbon atoms in the middle of the molecule with a triple bond. What generalization can you make about the shapes of molecules that have more than one central atom?

Answers

1. a. 34.08 amu
   b. 92.02 amu
   c. 233.25 amu
   d. 36.46 amu
2. What is the molecular mass of each compound?
   a. 70.00 amu
   b. 153.81 amu
   c. 78.12 amu
   d. 80.06 amu
3. 180.17 amu
4. 386.73 amu
5. a. bent; polar
   b. trigonal planar; nonpolar
   c. bent; polar
6.
   a. pyramidal; polar
   b. bent; polar
   c. tetrahedral; nonpolar
7. linear; polar
8. linear; in a molecule with more than one central atom, the geometry around each central atom needs to be examined.

4.6: Organic Chemistry

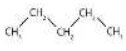
Concept Review Exercises

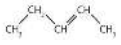
1. What is organic chemistry?
2. What is a functional group? Give at least two examples of functional groups.

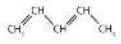
Answers

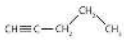
1. Organic chemistry is the study of the chemistry of carbon compounds.
2. A functional group is a specific structural arrangement of atoms or bonds that imparts a characteristic chemical reactivity to the molecule; alcohol group and carboxylic group (answers will vary).

Exercises

1. Give three reasons why carbon is the central element in organic chemistry.
2. Are organic compounds based more on ionic bonding or covalent bonding? Explain.
3. Identify the type of hydrocarbon in each structure.
   a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

4. Identify the type of hydrocarbon in each structure.

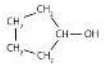
a. 

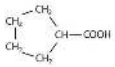
b. 

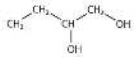
c.

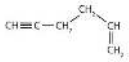
d. 

5. Identify the functional group(s) in each molecule.

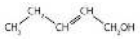
a. 

b. 

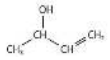
c. 

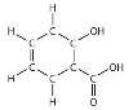
d. 

6. Identify the functional group(s) in each molecule.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

7. How many functional groups described in this section contain carbon and hydrogen atoms only? Name them.

8. What is the difference in the ways the two oxygen atoms in the carboxyl group are bonded to the carbon atom?

Answers

1. Carbon atoms bond reasonably strongly with other carbon atoms. Carbon atoms bond reasonably strongly with atoms of other elements. Carbon atoms make a large number of covalent bonds (four).

2. Organic compounds are based on covalent bonding or electron sharing. The atoms C, H, O, N that make up organic compounds are all nonmetals.

3.

a. alkane
b. alkene
c. alkene
d. alkyne

4.

a. alkene
b. alkane
c. alkyne
d. alkene

5.

a. alcohol
b. carboxyl
c. alcohol
d. alkene and alkyne

6.

a. a carbon-carbon double bond and alcohol
b. carboxyl group
c. carbon-carbon double bond and alcohol
d. carbon-carbon double bond; alcohol and carboxyl group

7. two; carbon-carbon double bonds and carbon-carbon triple bonds

8. There are two oxygen atoms in a carboxyl group: one is double-bonded while the other is OH, single bonded to the same carbon atom.

Additional Exercises

Use the atomic masses found in Figure 2.7.1

1. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. what is the mass in grams of each molecule of (a) H_2S (b) N_2O_4 (c) ICl_3 (d) NCl_3?
2. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of (a) O_2F_2 (b) CCl_4 (c) C_6H_6 (d) SO_3?
3. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of 5.00×10^{22} molecules of $C_9H_8O_4$?
4. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of 1.885×10^{20} molecules of $C_{27}H_{46}O$?
5. Acetic acid has the following structure:

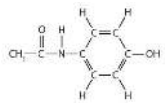


This molecule can lose a hydrogen ion (H^+) and the resulting anion can combine with other cations, such as Na^+:



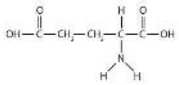
Name this ionic compound.

6. Formic acid (HCOOH) loses a hydrogen ion to make the formate ion ($HCOO^-$). Write the formula for each ionic compound: potassium formate, calcium formate, and ferric formate.
7. Cyanogen has the formula C_2N_2. Propose a bonding scheme that gives each atom the correct number of covalent bonds. (Hint: the two carbon atoms are in the center of a linear molecule.)
8. How many carbon–carbon single bonds, linked together, are needed to make a carbon chain that is 1.000 cm long?
9. How many carbon–carbon double bonds, linked together, are needed to make a carbon chain that is 1.000 cm long?
10. In addition to themselves, what other atoms can carbon atoms bond with and make covalent bonds that are nonpolar (or as nonpolar as possible)?
11. What is the greatest possible electronegativity difference between any two atoms? Use Figure 4.4 to find the answer.
12. Acetaminophen, a popular painkiller, has the following structure:



Name the recognizable functional groups in this molecule. Do you think there are other groups of atoms in this molecule that might qualify as functional groups?

13. Glutamic acid is the parent compound of monosodium glutamate (known as MSG), which is used as a flavor enhancer. Glutamic acid has the following structure:



Name the functional groups you recognize in this molecule. Do you think there are other groups of atoms in this molecule that might qualify as functional groups?

Answers

1.

a: 5.661×10^{-23} g

b: 1.528×10^{-22} g

c: 3.874×10^{-22} g

d: 1.999×10^{-22} g

2.

a: 1.163×10^{-22} g

b: 2.555×10^{-22} g

c: 1.298×10^{-22} g

d: 1.330×10^{-22} g

3. 14.96 g

4. 0.1211 g

5. sodium acetate

6.

a. KHCOO

b. $Ca(HCOO)_2$

c. $Fe(HCOO)_3$

7. :N≡C–C≡N:
8. 6.49×10^7 C-C bonds
9. 7.46×10^7 C=C bonds
10. Hydrogen atoms make relatively nonpolar bonds with carbon atoms.
11. The greatest electronegativity difference is 3.2, between F and Rb.
12. alcohol; the ring with double bonds, and the O=C-NH are also likely functional groups.
13. carboxyl and $-NH_2$ functional groups

Additional Questions

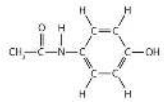
1. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of each molecule of (a) H_2S (b) N_2O_4 (c) ICl_3 (d) NCl_3?
2. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of (a) O_2F_2 (b) CCl_4 (c) C_6H_6 (d) SO_3?
3. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of 5.00×10^{22} molecules of $C_9H_8O_4$?
4. An atomic mass unit equals 1.661×10^{-24} g. What is the mass in grams of 1.885×10^{20} molecules of $C_{27}H_{46}O$?
5. Acetic acid has the following structure:



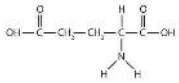
   This molecule can lose a hydrogen ion (H^+) and the resulting anion can combine with other cations, such as Na^+:



   Name this ionic compound.
6. Formic acid (HCOOH) loses a hydrogen ion to make the formate ion ($HCOO^-$). Write the formula for each ionic compound: potassium formate, calcium formate, and ferric formate.
7. Cyanogen has the formula C_2N_2. Propose a bonding scheme that gives each atom the correct number of covalent bonds. (Hint: the two carbon atoms are in the center of a linear molecule.)
8. The molecular formula C_3H_6 represents not only propene, a compound with a carbon–carbon double bond, but also a molecule that has all single bonds. Draw the molecule with formula C_3H_6 that has all single bonds.
9. How many carbon–carbon single bonds, linked together, are needed to make a carbon chain that is 1.000 cm long?
10. How many carbon–carbon double bonds, linked together, are needed to make a carbon chain that is 1.000 cm long?
11. In addition to themselves, what other atoms can carbon atoms bond with and make covalent bonds that are nonpolar (or as nonpolar as possible)?
12. What is the greatest possible electronegativity difference between any two atoms? Use Figure 4.4 to find the answer.
13. Acetaminophen, a popular painkiller, has the following structure:



   Name the recognizable functional groups in this molecule. Do you think there are other groups of atoms in this molecule that might qualify as functional groups?
14. Glutamic acid is the parent compound of monosodium glutamate (known as MSG), which is used as a flavor enhancer. Glutamic acid has the following structure:



   Name the functional groups you recognize in this molecule. Do you think there are other groups of atoms in this molecule that might qualify as functional groups?

Answers

1. 1a: 5.75×10^{-23} g; 1b: 1.53×10^{-22} g; 1c: 3.88×10^{-22} g; 1d: 6.06×10^{-23} g

3. 14.96 g

5. sodium acetate

7. N≡C–C≡N

9. 6.49×10^7 bonds

11. Hydrogen atoms make relatively nonpolar bonds with carbon atoms.

13. alcohol; the N–H group, the ring with double bonds, and the C=O are also likely functional groups.

This page titled 6.21: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **4.1: Covalent Bonds** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **4.2: Covalent Compounds - Formulas and Names** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **4.3: Drawing Lewis Structures** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **4.4: Characteristics of Covalent Bonds** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **4.5: Characteristics of Molecules** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **4.6: Organic Chemistry** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **4.E: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises)** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises I)

These are homework exercises to accompany Chapter 3 of the Ball et al. "The Basics of GOB Chemistry" Textmap.

3.1: Two Types of Bonding

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the octet rule?
2. How are ionic bonds formed?

Answers

1. The octet rule is the concept that atoms tend to have eight electrons in their valence electron shell.
2. Ionic bonds are formed by the attraction between oppositely charged ions.

Exercises

1. Why is an ionic compound unlikely to consist of two positively charged ions?
2. Why is an ionic compound unlikely to consist of two negatively charged ions?
3. A calcium atom has two valence electrons. Do you think it will lose two electrons or gain six electrons to obtain an octet in its outermost electron shell?
4. An aluminum atom has three valence electrons. Do you think it will lose three electrons or gain five electrons to obtain an octet in its outermost electron shell?
5. A selenium atom has six valence electrons. Do you think it will lose six electrons or gain two electrons to obtain an octet in its outermost electron shell?
6. An iodine atom has seven valence electrons. Do you think it will lose seven electrons or gain one electron to obtain an octet in its outermost electron shell?

Answers

1. Positive charges repel each other, so an ionic compound is not likely between two positively charged ions.

3. It is more likely to lose two electrons.

5. It is more likely to gain two electrons.

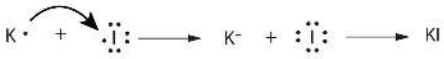
3.2: Ions

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are the two types of ions?
2. Use Lewis diagrams to illustrate the formation of an ionic compound from a potassium atom and an iodine atom.
3. When the following atoms become ions, what charges do they acquire?
    a. Li
    b. S
    c. Ca
    d. F

Answers

1. Cations have positive charges, and anions have negative charges.
2.



3.

a. 1+
b. 2−
c. 2+
d. 1−

Key Takeaways

- Ions can be positively charged or negatively charged.
- A Lewis diagram is used to show how electrons are transferred to make ions and ionic compounds.

Exercises

1. Identify each as a cation, an anion, or neither.

a. H^+
b. Cl^-
c. O_2
d. Ba^{2+}
e. CH_4
f. CS_2

2. Identify each as a cation, an anion, or neither.

a. NH_3
b. Br^-
c. H^-
d. Hg^{2+}
e. CCl_4
f. SO_3

3. Write the electron configuration for each ion.

a. Li^+
b. Mg^{2+}
c. F^-
d. S^{2-}

4. Write the electron configuration for each ion.

a. Na^+
b. Be^{2+}
c. Cl^-
d. O^{2-}

5. Draw Lewis diagrams for the ions listed in Exercise 3. Also include Lewis diagrams for the respective neutral atoms as a comparison.

6. Draw Lewis diagrams for the ions listed in Exercise 4. Also include Lewis diagrams for the respective neutral atoms as a comparison.

7. Using Lewis diagrams, show the electron transfer for the formation of LiF.

8. Using Lewis diagrams, show the electron transfer for the formation of MgO.

9. Using Lewis diagrams, show the electron transfer for the formation of Li_2O.

10. Using Lewis diagrams, show the electron transfer for the formation of CaF_2.
11. What characteristic charge do atoms in the first column of the periodic table have when they become ions?
12. What characteristic charge do atoms in the second column of the periodic table have when they become ions?
13. What characteristic charge do atoms in the third-to-last column of the periodic table have when they become ions?
14. What characteristic charge do atoms in the next-to-last column of the periodic table have when they become ions?

Answers

1.

a. cation
b. anion
c. neither
d. cation
e. neither
f. neither

3.

a. $1s^2$
b. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
c. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
d. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$

5.

a. $Li\bullet$, Li^+
b. $\bullet Mg\bullet$, Mg^{2+}
c.
d. $:\dot{S}:$, $:\dot{S}:^{2-}$

7. $Li\bullet + :\dot{F}: \longrightarrow Li^+ + :\dot{F}:^- \longrightarrow LiF$

9. $Li\bullet + :\dot{O}:\dot{} + \bullet Li \longrightarrow 2Li^+ + :\dot{O}:^{2-} \longrightarrow Li_2O$

11. 1+

13. 2−

3.3: Formulas for Ionic Compounds

Concept Review Exercises

1. What information is contained in the formula of an ionic compound?
2. Why do the chemical formulas for some ionic compounds contain subscripts, while others do not?
3. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Mg^{2+} and I^-

b. Na^+ and O^{2-}

Answers

1. the ratio of each kind of ion in the compound
2. Sometimes more than one ion is needed to balance the charge on the other ion in an ionic compound.
3. a. MgI_2
   b. Na_2O

Key Takeaways

- Proper chemical formulas for ionic compounds balance the total positive charge with the total negative charge.
- Groups of atoms with an overall charge, called polyatomic ions, also exist.

Exercises

1. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Na^+ and Br^-
   b. Mg^{2+} and Br^-
   c. Mg^{2+} and S^{2-}
2. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. K^+ and Cl^-
   b. Mg^{2+} and Cl^-
   c. Mg^{2+} and Se^{2-}
3. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Na^+ and N^{3-}
   b. Mg^{2+} and N^{3-}
   c. Al^{3+} and S^{2-}
4. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Li^+ and N^{3-}
   b. Mg^{2+} and P^{3-}
   c. Li^+ and P^{3-}
5. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Fe^{3+} and Br^-
   b. Fe^{2+} and Br^-
   c. Au^{3+} and S^{2-}
   d. Au^+ and S^{2-}
6. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Cr^{3+} and O^{2-}
   b. Cr^{2+} and O^{2-}
   c. Pb^{2+} and Cl^-
   d. Pb^{4+} and Cl^-
7. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.
   a. Cr^{3+} and NO_3^-
   b. Fe^{2+} and PO_4^{3-}
   c. Ca^{2+} and CrO_4^{2-}

d. Al^{3+} and OH^-

8. Write the chemical formula for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.

a. NH_4^+ and NO_3^-
b. H^+ and $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$
c. Cu^+ and CO_3^{2-}
d. Na^+ and HCO_3^-

9. For each pair of elements, determine the charge for their ions and write the proper formula for the resulting ionic compound between them.

a. Ba and S
b. Cs and I

10. For each pair of elements, determine the charge for their ions and write the proper formula for the resulting ionic compound between them.

a. K and S
b. Sc and Br

11. Which compounds would you predict to be ionic?

a. Li_2O
b. $(NH_4)_2O$
c. CO_2
d. $FeSO_3$
e. C_6H_6
f. C_2H_6O

12. Which compounds would you predict to be ionic?

a. $Ba(OH)_2$
b. CH_2O
c. NH_2CONH_2
d. $(NH_4)_2CrO_4$
e. C_8H_{18}
f. NH_3

Answers

1.

a. NaBr
b. $MgBr_2$
c. MgS

3.

a. Na_3N
b. Mg_3N_2
c. Al_2S_3

5.

a. $FeBr_3$
b. $FeBr_2$
c. Au_2S_3

d. Au_2S

7.

a. $Cr(NO_3)_3$
b. $Fe_3 (PO_4)_2$
c. $CaCrO_4$
d. $Al(OH)_3$

9.

a. Ba^{2+}, S^{2-}, BaS
b. Cs^{+}, I^{-}, CsI

11.

a. ionic
b. ionic
c. not ionic
d. ionic
e. not ionic
f. not ionic

3.4: Ionic Nomenclature

Concept Review Exercises

1. Briefly describe the process for naming an ionic compound.
2. In what order do the names of ions appear in the names of ionic compounds?
3. Which ionic compounds can be named using two different systems? Give an example.

Answers

1. Name the cation and then the anion but don't use numerical prefixes.
2. the cation name followed by the anion name
3. Ionic compounds in which the cation can have more than one possible charge have two naming systems. $FeCl_3$ is either iron(III) chloride or ferric chloride (answers will vary).

Key Takeaways

- Each ionic compound has its own unique name that comes from the names of the ions.

Exercises

1. Name each ion.

a. Ra^{2+}
b. P^{3-}
c. $H_2PO_4^{-}$
d. Sn^{4+}

2. Name each ion.

a. Cs^{+}
b. As^{3-}

c. HSO_4^-
d. Sn^{2+}

3. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.

a. Na^+ and Br^-
b. Mg^{2+} and Br^-
c. Mg^{2+} and S^{2-}

4. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.

a. K^+ and Cl^-
b. Mg^{2+} and Cl^-
c. Mg^{2+} and Se^{2-}

5. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.

a. Na^+ and N^{3-}
b. Mg^{2+} and N^{3-}
c. Al^{3+} and S^{2-}

6. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions.

a. Li^+ and N^{3-}
b. Mg^{2+} and P^{3-}
c. Li^+ and P^{3-}

7. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions. Use both the Stock and common systems, where appropriate.

a. Fe^{3+} and Br^-
b. Fe^{2+} and Br^-
c. Au^{3+} and S^{2-}
d. Au^+ and S^{2-}

8. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions. Use both the Stock and common systems, where appropriate.

a. Cr^{3+} and O^{2-}
b. Cr^{2+} and O^{2-}
c. Pb^{2+} and Cl^-
d. Pb^{4+} and Cl^-

9. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions. Use both the Stock and common systems, where appropriate.

a. Cr^{3+} and NO_3^-
b. Fe^{2+} and PO_4^{3-}
c. Ca^{2+} and CrO_4^{2-}
d. Al^{3+} and OH^-

10. Name the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions. Use both the Stock and common systems, where appropriate.

a. NH_4^+ and NO_3^-
b. H^+ and $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$
c. Cu^+ and CO_3^{2-}
d. Na^+ and HCO_3^-

11. Give two names for each compound.

a. $Al(HSO_4)_3$
b. $Mg(HSO_4)_2$

12. Give two names for each compound.

a. $Co(HCO_3)_2$

b. $LiHCO_3$

Answers

1.

a. the radium ion
b. the phosphide ion
c. the dihydrogen phosphate ion
d. the tin(IV) ion or the stannic ion

3.

a. sodium bromide
b. magnesium bromide
c. magnesium sulfide

5.

a. sodium nitride
b. magnesium nitride
c. aluminum sulfide

7.

a. iron(III) bromide or ferric bromide
b. iron(II) bromide or ferrous bromide
c. gold(III) sulfide or auric sulfide
d. gold(I) sulfide or aurous sulfide

9.

a. chromium(III) nitrate or chromic nitrate
b. iron(II) phosphate or ferrous phosphate
c. calcium chromate
d. aluminum hydroxide

11.

a. aluminum hydrogen sulfate or aluminum bisulfate
b. magnesium hydrogen sulfate or magnesium bisulfate

3.5: Formula Mass

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the relationship between atomic mass and formula mass?
2. How are subscripts used to determine a formula mass when more than one polyatomic ion is present in a chemical formula?

Answers

1. The formula mass is the sum of the atomic masses of the atoms in the formula.
2. The subscript is distributed throughout the parentheses to determine the total number of atoms in the formula.

Key Takeaways

- Formula masses of ionic compounds can be determined from the masses of the atoms in their formulas.

Exercises

1. What is the formula mass for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions?
    a. Na^+ and Br^-
    b. Mg^{2+} and Br^-
    c. Mg^{2+} and S^{2-}
2. What is the formula mass for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions?
    a. K^+ and Cl^-
    b. Mg^{2+} and Cl^-
    c. Mg^{2+} and Se^{2-}
3. What is the formula mass for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions?
    a. Na^+ and N^{3-}
    b. Mg^{2+} and N^{3-}
    c. Al^{3+} and S^{2-}
4. What is the formula mass for the ionic compound formed by each pair of ions?
    a. Li^+ and N^{3-}
    b. Mg^{2+} and P^{3-}
    c. Li^+ and P^{3-}
5. What is the formula mass for each compound?
    a. $FeBr_3$
    b. $FeBr_2$
    c. Au_2S_3
    d. Au_2S
6. What is the formula mass for each compound?
    a. Cr_2O_3
    b. CrO
    c. $PbCl_2$
    d. $PbCl_4$
7. What is the formula mass for each compound?
    a. $Cr(NO_3)_3$
    b. $Fe_3(PO_4)_2$
    c. $CaCrO_4$
    d. $Al(OH)_3$
8. What is the formula mass for each compound?
    a. NH_4NO_3
    b. $H_2Cr_2O_7$
    c. Cu_2CO_3
    d. $NaHCO_3$
9. What is the formula mass for each compound?
    a. $Al(HSO_4)_3$
    b. $Mg(HSO_4)_2$

10. What is the formula mass for each compound?

a. $Co(HCO_3)_2$
b. $LiHCO_3$

Answers

1.

a. 102.90 amu
b. 184.11 amu
c. 56.38 amu

3.

a. 83.00 amu
b. 100.93 amu
c. 150.17 amu

5.

a. 295.50 amu
b. 215.60 amu
c. 490.30 amu
d. 426.10 amu

7.

a. 238.00 amu
b. 357.49 amu
c. 156.08 amu
d. 78.01 amu

9.

a. 318.22 amu
b. 218.47 amu

This page titled 6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises I) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises II)

Additional Exercises

1. What number shell is the valence electron shell of a sodium atom? What number shell is the valence shell of a sodium ion? Explain the difference.
2. What number shell is the valence electron shell of a bromine atom? What number shell is the valence shell of a bromide ion? Explain the difference between these answers and the answers to Exercise 1.
3. What is the electron configuration of each ion?
   a. K^+
   b. Mg^{2+}
   c. F^-
   d. S^{2-}
4. What is the electron configuration of each ion?
   a. Li^+
   b. Ca^{2+}
   c. Cl^-
   d. O^{2-}
5. a. If a sodium atom were to lose two electrons, what would be the electron configuration of the resulting cation?
   b. Considering that electron shells are typically separated by large amounts of energy, use your answer to Exercise 5a to suggest why sodium atoms do not form a 2+ cation.
6. a. If a chlorine atom were to gain two electrons, what would be the electron configuration of the resulting anion?
   b. Considering that electron shells are typically separated by large amounts of energy, use your answer to Exercise 6a to suggest why chlorine atoms do not form a 2− anion.
7. Use Lewis diagrams and arrows to show the electron transfer that occurs during the formation of an ionic compound among Mg atoms and F atoms. (Hint: how many atoms of each will you need?)
8. Use Lewis diagrams and arrows to show the electron transfer that occurs during the formation of an ionic compound among K atoms and O atoms. (Hint: how many atoms of each will you need?)
9. Mercury forms two possible cations—Hg^{2+} and Hg_2^{2+}, the second of which is actually a two-atom cation with a 2+ charge.
   a. Using common names, give the probable names of these ions.
   b. What are the chemical formulas of the ionic compounds these ions make with the oxide ion, O^{2-}?
10. The uranyl ion (UO_2^{2+}) is a common water-soluble form of uranium. What is the chemical formula of the ionic compound uranyl nitrate? What is the chemical formula of the ionic compound uranyl phosphate?
11. The formal chemical name of the mineral *strengite* is iron(III) phosphate dihydrate. What is the chemical formula of strengite? What is the formula mass of strengite?
12. What is the formula mass of $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$?
13. What is the formula mass of $CaSO_4 \cdot ½H_2O$?
14. What mass does 20 formula units of NaCl have?
15. What mass does 75 formula units of K_2SO_4 have?
16. If an atomic mass unit equals 1.66×10^{-24} g, what is the mass in grams of one formula unit of NaCl?
17. If an atomic mass unit equals 1.66×10^{-24} g, what is the mass in grams of 5.00×10^{22} formula units of NaOH?
18. If an atomic mass unit equals 1.66×10^{-24} g, what is the mass in grams of 3.96×10^{23} formula units of $(NH_4)_2SO_4$?

19. Both tin and lead acquire 2+ or 4+ charges when they become ions. Use the periodic table to explain why this should not surprise you.

20. Which ion would you expect to be larger in size—In^{3+} or Tl^{3+}? Explain.

21. Which ion would you expect to be smaller in size—I^- or Br^-? Explain.

22. Which ion with a 2+ charge has the following electron configuration? $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

23. Which ion with a 3− charge has the following electron configuration? $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

Answers

1. For sodium, the valence shell is the third shell; for the sodium ion, the valence shell is the second shell because it has lost all its third shell electrons.

3. a. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$
   b. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
   c. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$
   d. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$

5. a. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
   b. It probably requires too much energy to form.

7. 

9. a. mercuric and mercurous, respectively
   b. HgO and Hg_2O, respectively

11. $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$; 186.86 u

13. 145.16 u

15. 13,070.25 u

17. 3.32 g

19. Both tin and lead have two *p* electrons and two *s* electrons in their valence shells.

21. Br^- because it is higher up on the periodic table

23. N^{3-}

This page titled 6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises II) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Chemical Reactions and Quantities

7.1: Chemical Equations
7.2: Balancing Chemical Equations
7.3: Precipitation Reactions and Solubility Guidelines
7.4: Acids, Bases, and Neutralization Reactions
7.5: Recognizing Redox Reactions
7.6: The Mole and Avogadro's Number
7.7: Gram-Mole Conversions
7.8: Mole Relationships and Chemical Equations
7.9: Mass Relationships and Chemical Equations
7.10: Limiting Reagent and Percent Yield
7.11: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises)
7.E: Quantities in Chemical Reactions (Exercises)

7: Chemical Reactions and Quantities is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.1: Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- Define *chemical reaction*.
- Understand the Law of Conservation of Matter

Water (H_2O) is composed of hydrogen and oxygen. Suppose we imagine a process in which we take some elemental hydrogen (H_2) and elemental oxygen (O_2) and let them react to make water. The statement

"hydrogen and oxygen react to make water"

is one way to represent that process, which is called a chemical reaction. Figure **7.1.1** shows a rather dramatic example of this very reaction.

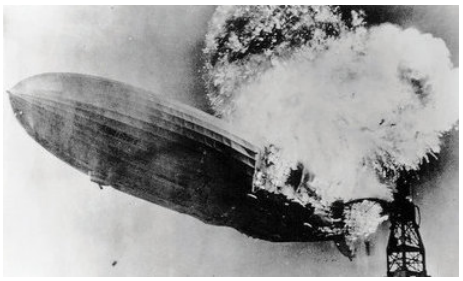


Figure **7.1.1**: The Formation of Water. Hydrogen and oxygen combine to form water. Here, the hydrogen gas in the zeppelin *SS Hindenburg* reacts with oxygen in the air to make water. Source: Photo courtesy of the US Navy. For a video of this see www.youtube.com/watch?v=CgWHbpMVQ1U.

To simplify the writing of reactions, we use formulas instead of names when we describe a reaction. We can also use symbols to represent other words in the reaction. A plus sign connects the initial substances (and final substances, if there is more than one), and an arrow ($\rightarrow$) represents the chemical change:

$$\mathrm{H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O} \tag{7.1.1}$$

This statement is one example of a **chemical equation**, an abbreviated way of using symbols to represent a chemical change. The substances on the left side of the arrow are called **reactants**, and the substances on the right side of the arrow are called **products**. It is not uncommon to include a phase label with each formula—(s) for solid, (ℓ) for liquid, (g) for gas, and (aq) for a substance dissolved in water, also known as an *aqueous solution*. If we included phase labels for the reactants and products, under normal environmental conditions, the reaction would be as follows:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow H_2O\ (\ell)} \tag{7.1.2}$$

This equation is still not complete because *it does not satisfy the* ***law of conservation of matter***. Count the number of atoms of each element on each side of the arrow. On the reactant side, there are two H atoms and two O atoms; on the product side, there are two H atoms and only one oxygen atom. The equation is not balanced because the number of oxygen atoms on each side is not the same (Figure **7.1.2**).

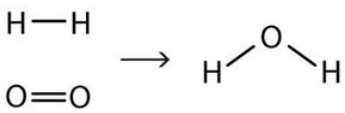


Figure **7.1.2**: Balanced—Yes or No? By counting the atoms of each element, we can see that the reaction is not balanced as written.

To make this chemical equation conform to the law of conservation of matter, we must revise the amounts of the reactants and the products as necessary to get the *same* number of atoms of a given element on each side. Because every substance has a characteristic chemical formula, we cannot change the chemical formulas of the individual substances. For example, we cannot change the formula for elemental oxygen to O. However, we can assume that different numbers of reactant molecules or product molecules may be involved. For instance, perhaps two water molecules are produced, not just one:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O\ (\ell)} \tag{7.1.3}$$

The **2** preceding the formula for water is called a **coefficient**. It implies that two water molecules are formed. There are now two oxygen atoms on each side of the equation.

> This point is so important that we should repeat it. You *cannot* change the formula of a chemical substance to balance a chemical reaction! You *must* use the proper chemical formula of the substance.

Unfortunately, by inserting the coefficient 2 in front of the formula for water, we have also changed the number of hydrogen atoms on the product side as well. As a result, we no longer have the same number of hydrogen atoms on each side. This can be easily fixed, however, by putting a coefficient of 2 in front of the diatomic hydrogen reactant:

$$2\,H_2\,(g) + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O\,(\ell) \tag{7.1.4}$$

Now we have four hydrogen atoms and two oxygen atoms on each side of the equation. The law of conservation of matter is satisfied because we now have the *same number* of atoms of each element in the reactants and in the products. We say that the reaction is now **balanced** (Figure 7.1.3). Note: The diatomic oxygen has a coefficient of 1, which typically is not written but assumed in balanced chemical equations.

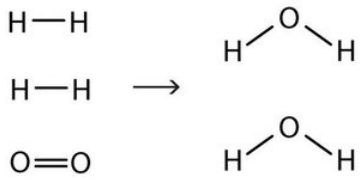


Figure 7.1.3: Balanced—Yes or No? By counting the atoms of each element, we can see that the reaction is now balanced.

Proper chemical equations should be balanced. Writing balanced reactions is a chemist's way of acknowledging the law of conservation of matter.

7.1.1 Example

Is each chemical equation balanced?

a. $2Na(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2Na_2O(s)$
b. $CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
c. $AgNO_3(aq) + 2KCl(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s) + KNO_3(aq)$

Solution

a. By counting, we find two sodium atoms and two oxygen atoms in the reactants and four sodium atoms and two oxygen atoms in the products. This equation is not balanced.
b. The reactants have one carbon atom, four hydrogen atoms, and four oxygen atoms. The products have one carbon atom, four hydrogen atoms, and four oxygen atoms. This equation is balanced.
c. The reactants have one silver atom, one nitrogen atom, three oxygen atoms, two potassium atoms, and two chlorine atoms. The products have one silver atom, one chlorine atom, one potassium atom, one nitrogen atom, and three oxygen atoms. Because there are different numbers of chlorine and potassium atoms, this equation is not balanced.

7.1.1 Exercise

Is each chemical equation balanced?

a. $2Hg_{(\ell)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow Hg_2O_{2(s)}$
b. $C_2H_{4(g)} + 2O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2CO_{2(g)} + 2H_2O_{(\ell)}$
c. $Mg(NO_3)_{2(s)} + 2Li_{(s)} \rightarrow Mg_{(s)} + 2LiNO_{3(s)}$.

Answer a:

balanced

Answer b:

O is not balanced; the 4 atoms of oxygen on the left does not balance with the 6 oxygen atoms on the right

Answer c:

balanced

7.1: Chemical Equations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.2: Chemical Equations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

7.2: Balancing Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- Balance chemical equations.

How does one balance a chemical equation, starting with the correct formulas of the reactants and products? Basically, a back-and-forth (or trial-and-error) approach is adopted, counting the number of atoms of one element on one side, checking the number of atoms of that element on the other side, and changing a coefficient if necessary. Then check another element, going back and forth from one side of the equation to another, until each element has the same number of atoms on both sides of the arrow. In many cases, it does not matter which element is balanced first and which is balanced last, as long as all elements have the same number of atoms on each side of the equation.

Below are guidelines for writing and balancing chemical equations.

1. Determine the correct chemical formulas for each reactant and product. Write the skeleton equation.
2. Count the number of atoms of each element that appears as a reactant and as a product. If a polyatomic ion is unchanged on both sides of the equation, count it as a unit.
3. Balance each element one at a time by placing coefficients in front of the formulas. No coefficient is written for a 1. It is best to begin by balancing elements that only appear in one chemical formula on each side of the equation. NEVER change the subscripts in a chemical formula - you can only balance equations by using coefficients.
4. Check each atom or polyatomic ion to be sure that they are equal on both sides of the equation.
5. Make sure that all coefficients are in the lowest possible ratio. If necessary, reduce to the lowest ratio.

For example, to balance the equation

Step 1: Write the skeleton equation with the correct formulas.

$$\mathrm{CH_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow CCl_4 + HCl} \tag{7.2.1}$$

Step 2: Count the number of each atom or polyatomic ion on both sides of the equation.

Reactants	**Products**
1 C atom	1 C atom
4 H ions	1 H ions
2 Cl atom	5 Cl atoms

(7.2.2)

*Step 3: W*e find that both sides are already balanced with one carbon atom. So we proceed to balance the hydrogen atoms. We find that the reactant side has four hydrogen atoms, so the product side must also have four hydrogen atoms. This is balanced by putting a 4 in front of the HCl:

$$\mathrm{CH_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow CCl_4 + 4\,HCl} \tag{7.2.3}$$

Reactants	**Products**
1 C atom	1 C atom
4 H ions	4 H ions
2 Cl atom	8 Cl atoms

(7.2.4)

Now each side has four hydrogen atoms. The product side has a total of eight chlorine atoms (four from the CCl_4 and four from the four molecules of HCl), so we need eight chlorine atoms as reactants. Because elemental chlorine is a diatomic molecule, we need four chlorine molecules to get a total of eight chlorine atoms. We add another 4 in front of the Cl_2 reactant:

$$\mathrm{CH_4 + 4\,Cl_2 \rightarrow CCl_4 + 4\,HCl} \tag{7.2.5}$$

Reactants	**Products**
1 C atom	1 C atom
4 H ions	4 H ions
8 Cl atom	8 Cl atoms

(7.2.6)

Step 3: Now we check: each side has one carbon atom, four hydrogen atoms, and eight chlorine atoms. The chemical equation is balanced. And, the coefficients are in the lowest possible ratio.

Example 7.2.2

Aqueous solutions of lead (II) nitrate and sodium chloride are mixed. The products of the reaction are an aqueous solution of sodium nitrate and a solid precipitate of lead (II) chloride. Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Solution

Step 1: Write the skeleton equation with the correct formulas.

$$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaNO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{PbCl_2}\,(s) \tag{7.2.7}$$

Step 2: Count the number of each atom or polyatomic ion on both sides of the equation.

Reactants	Products
1 Pb atom	1 Pb atom
2 NO_3^- ions	1 NO_3^- ions
1 Na atom	1 Na atom
1 Cl atom	2 Cl atoms

(7.2.8)

Step 3: Solve. The nitrate ions and the chlorine atoms are unbalanced. Start by placing a 2 in front of the NaCl. This increases the reactant counts to 2 Na atoms and 2 Cl atoms. Then place a 2 in front of the $\mathrm{NaNO_3}$. The result is:

$$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaNO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{PbCl_2}\,(s) \tag{7.2.9}$$

Step 4: The new count for each atom and polyatomic ion becomes:

Reactants	Products
1 Pb atom	1 Pb atom
2 NO_3^- ions	2 NO_3^- ions
2 Na atom	2 Na atom
2 Cl atom	2 Cl atoms

(7.2.10)

Step 5: Think about the result.

The equation is now balanced since there are equal numbers of atoms of each element on both sides of the equation. And, the coefficients are in the lowest possible ratio.

Exercise 7.2.2

Fermentation is a biochemical process that enables yeast cells to live in the absence of oxygen. Humans have exploited it for centuries to produce wine and beer and make bread rise. In fermentation, sugars such as glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) are converted to ethanol (C_2H_5OH) and carbon dioxide CO_2. Write a balanced chemical reaction for the fermentation of glucose.



Commercial use of fermentation. *(a) Microbrewery vats are used to prepare beer. (b) The fermentation of glucose by yeast cells is the reaction that makes beer production possible.*

Answer

$C_6H_{12}O_6(s) \rightarrow 2C_2H_5OH(l) + 2CO_2(g)$

7.2: Balancing Chemical Equations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.2: Chemical Equations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

7.3: Precipitation Reactions and Solubility Guidelines

Learning Objectives

- Use solubility rules to predict whether a precipitate will form.
- Write and balance chemical equations for precipitation reactions.

There are many types of chemical reactions that you will learn about in chemistry. In this chapter, we will focus on some reactions of ionic compounds: *precipitation reactions* (a type of *double-replacement reaction*), *acid-base neutralization reactions*, and *oxidation-reduction reactions*.

The practice of barter (trading one thing for another) has been in existence since the beginning of time. In the past, for example, items like chickens were bartered for newspapers. Person A had something that person B wanted, and vice versa. So, when person A and person B traded items, they each had something new. Some chemical reactions are like that—compounds swap parts, and the products are new materials.

A **double-replacement reaction** is a reaction in which the positive and negative ions of two ionic compounds exchange places to form two new compounds. The general form of a double-replacement (also called double-displacement) reaction is:

$$\mathrm{AB + CD \rightarrow AD + CB} \tag{7.3.1}$$

In this reaction, **A** and **C** are positively-charged cations, while **B** and **D** are negatively-charged anions. Double-replacement reactions generally occur between substances in aqueous solution. In order for a reaction to occur, one of the products is usually a solid precipitate, a gas, or a molecular compound such as water.

Formation of a Precipitate

A **precipitate** forms in a double-replacement reaction when the cations from one of the reactants combine with the anions from the other reactant to form an insoluble ionic compound. When aqueous solutions of potassium iodide and lead (II) nitrate are mixed, the following reaction occurs:

$$\mathrm{2KI\,(\mathit{aq}) + Pb(NO_3)_2\,(\mathit{aq}) \rightarrow 2KNO_3\,(\mathit{aq}) + PbI_2\,(\mathit{s})} \tag{7.3.2}$$

There are very strong attractive forces that occur between $\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}$ and $\mathrm{I^-}$ ions and the result is a brilliant yellow precipitate (see Figure **7.3.1** below). The other product of the reaction, potassium nitrate, remains soluble.



Figure **7.3.1**: Formation of lead iodide precipitate. (CC BY-NC; CK-12)

To judge whether double-replacement reactions will occur, we need to know what kinds of ionic compounds form precipitates. For this, we use **solubility rules**, which are general statements that predict which ionic compounds dissolve (are soluble) and which do not (are not soluble, or insoluble). Table **7.3.1** lists some general solubility rules. We need to consider each ionic compound (both the reactants and the possible products) in light of the solubility rules. If a compound is soluble, we use the (*aq*) label with it, indicating that it dissolves. If a compound is not soluble, we use the (*s*) label with it and assume that it will precipitate out of solution. If everything is soluble, then no reaction will be expected.

Table **7.3.1**: Solubility Rules: Soluble Compounds and Their Exceptions

These compounds generally dissolve in water (are soluble):	Exceptions:
All compounds of Li^+, Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Cs^+, and NH_4^+	None
All compounds of NO_3^- and $C_2H_3O_2^-$	None
Compounds of Cl^-, Br^-, I^-	Ag^+, Hg_2^{2+}, Pb^{2+}
Compounds of SO_4^{2}	Hg_2^{2+}, Pb^{2+}, Sr^{2+}, Ba^{2+}

Table **7.3.2**: Solubility Rules: Insoluble Compounds and Their Exceptions

These compounds generally do not dissolve in water (are insoluble):	Exceptions:
Compounds of CO_3^{2-} and PO_4^{3-}	Compounds of Li^+, Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Cs^+, and NH_4^+
Compounds of OH^-	Compounds of Li^+, Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Cs^+, NH_4^+, Sr^{2+}, and Ba^{2+}

For example, consider the possible double-replacement reaction between Na_2SO_4 and $SrCl_2$. The solubility rules say that all ionic sodium compounds are soluble and all ionic chloride compounds are soluble, except for Ag^+, Hg_2^{2+}, and Pb^{2+}, which are not being considered here. Therefore, Na_2SO_4 and $SrCl_2$ are both soluble. The possible double-replacement reaction products are NaCl and $SrSO_4$. Are these soluble? NaCl is (by the same rule we just quoted), but what about $SrSO_4$? Compounds of the sulfate ion are generally soluble, but Sr^{2+} is an exception: we expect it to be insoluble—a precipitate. Therefore, we expect a reaction to occur, and the balanced chemical equation would be:

$$\mathrm{Na_2SO_4\,(aq) + SrCl_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,NaCl\,(aq) + SrSO_4\,(s)}$$

You would expect to see a visual change corresponding to $SrSO_4$ precipitating out of solution (Figure **7.3.2**).



Figure **7.3.2**: Double-Replacement Reactions. Some double-replacement reactions are obvious because you can see a solid precipitate coming out of solution. Source: Photo courtesy of Choij, Wikimedia(opens in new window) [commons.wikimedia.org].

A blue solution is shown in a glass beaker. White precipitate can be seen forming at the bottom of the beaker.

Example 7.3.4:

Will a precipitation reaction occur? If so, identify the products.

1. $Ca(NO_3)_2$ + KBr → ?
2. NaOH + $FeCl_2$ → ?

Solution

1. According to the solubility rules, both $Ca(NO_3)_2$ and KBr are soluble. Now we consider what the double-replacement products would be by switching the cations (or the anions)—namely, $CaBr_2$ and KNO_3. However, the solubility rules predict that these two substances would also be soluble, so no precipitate would form. Thus, we predict no reaction in this case.
2. According to the solubility rules, both NaOH and $FeCl_2$ are expected to be soluble. If we assume that a double-replacement reaction may occur, we need to consider the possible products, which would be NaCl and $Fe(OH)_2$. NaCl is soluble, but, according to the solubility rules, $Fe(OH)_2$ is not. Therefore, a reaction would occur, and $Fe(OH)_2$(s) would precipitate out of solution. The balanced chemical equation is

$$2\,NaOH\,(aq) + FeCl_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,NaCl\,(aq) + Fe(OH)_2\,(s)$$

? Exercise 7.3.4

$$Sr(NO_3)_2 + KCl \longrightarrow$$

Answer

No reaction; all possible products are soluble.

Key Takeaways

- A single-replacement reaction replaces one element for another in a compound.
- The periodic table or an activity series can help predict whether single-replacement reactions occur.
- A double-replacement reaction exchanges the cations (or the anions) of two ionic compounds.
- A precipitation reaction is a double-replacement reaction in which one product is a solid precipitate.
- Solubility rules are used to predict whether some double-replacement reactions will occur.

7.3: Precipitation Reactions and Solubility Guidelines is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.3: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.
- **11.9: Double Replacement Reactions** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

7.4: Acids, Bases, and Neutralization Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Identify an acid-base neutralization reaction and predict its products.

Previously, you learned that an acid is any compound that produces hydrogen ions (H^+) in an aqueous solution, and the chemical opposite of an acid is a base, which is a compound that produces hydroxide ions (OH^-) in an aqueous solution. These original definitions were proposed by Arrhenius (the same person who proposed ion dissociation) in 1884, so they are referred to as the **Arrhenius definition** of an acid and a base, respectively.

You may recognize that, based on the description of a hydrogen atom, an H^+ ion is a hydrogen atom that has lost its lone electron; that is, H^+ is simply a proton. Do we really have bare protons moving about in aqueous solution? No. What is more likely is that the H^+ ion has attached itself to one (or more) water molecule(s). To represent this chemically, we define the **hydronium ion** as H_3O^+, which represents an additional proton attached to a water molecule. We use the hydronium ion as the more logical way that a hydrogen ion appears in an aqueous solution, although in many chemical reactions H^+ and H_3O^+ are treated equivalently.

The reaction of an acid and a base is called a **neutralization reaction**. Although acids and bases have their own unique chemistries, the acid and base "cancel" each other's chemistry to produce a rather innocuous substance, water. In fact, the general reaction between an acid and a base is:

$$\textbf{acid} + \textbf{base} \longrightarrow \textbf{water} + \textbf{salt}$$

where the term **salt** is generally used to define any ionic compound (soluble or insoluble) that is formed from a reaction between an acid and a base. (In chemistry, the word *salt* refers to more than just table salt.) For example, the balanced chemical equation for the reaction between HCl(aq) and KOH(aq) is

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq) + KOH\,(aq) \longrightarrow H_2O(\ell) + KCl\,(aq)}$$

where the salt is KCl. By counting the number of atoms of each element, we find that only one water molecule is formed as a product. However, in the reaction between HCl(aq) and $Mg(OH)_2$(aq), additional molecules of HCl and H_2O are required to balance the chemical equation:

$$\mathrm{2\,HCl\,(aq) + Mg(OH)_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + MgCl_2\,(aq)}$$

Here, the salt is $MgCl_2$. (This is one of several reactions that take place when a type of antacid, a base, is used to treat stomach acid.)

Example 7.4.1:

Write the neutralization reactions between each acid and base.

a. HNO_3(aq) and $Ba(OH)_2$(aq)
b. H_3PO_4(aq) and $Ca(OH)_2$(aq)

Solution

First, we will write the chemical equation with the formulas of the reactants and the expected products; then we will balance the equation.

a. The expected products are water and barium nitrate, so the initial chemical reaction is

$$\mathrm{HNO_3\,(aq) + Ba(OH)_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow H_2O(\ell) + Ba(NO_3)_2\,(aq)}$$

To balance the equation, we need to realize that there will be two H_2O molecules, so two HNO_3 molecules are required:

$$\mathrm{2\,HNO_3\,(aq) + Ba(OH)_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + Ba(NO_3)_2\,(aq)}$$

This chemical equation is now balanced.

b. The expected products are water and calcium phosphate, so the initial chemical equation is

$$H_3PO_4(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \longrightarrow H_2O(\ell) + Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s)$$

According to the solubility rules, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is insoluble, so it has an (s) phase label. To balance this equation, we need two phosphate ions and three calcium ions. We end up with six water molecules to balance the equation:

$$2\,H_3PO_4(aq) + 3\,Ca(OH)_2(aq) \longrightarrow 6\,H_2O(\ell) + Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s)$$

This chemical equation is now balanced.

? Exercise 7.4.1

Write the neutralization reaction between H_2SO_4(aq) and $Sr(OH)_2$(aq).

Answer

$$H_2SO_4(aq) + Sr(OH)_2(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + SrSO_4(aq)$$

Neutralization reactions are one type of chemical reaction that proceeds even if one reactant is not in the aqueous phase. For example, the chemical reaction between HCl(aq) and $Fe(OH)_3$(s) still proceeds according to the equation:

$$3\,HCl(aq) + Fe(OH)_3(s) \longrightarrow 3\,H_2O(\ell) + FeCl_3(aq)$$

even though $Fe(OH)_3$ is not soluble. When one realizes that $Fe(OH)_3$(s) is a component of rust, this explains why some cleaning solutions for rust stains contain acids; the neutralization reaction produces products that are soluble and wash away. (Washing with acids like HCl is one way to remove rust and rust stains, but HCl must be used with caution!)

Key Takeaways

- The Arrhenius definition of an acid is a substance that increases the amount of H^+ in an aqueous solution.
- The Arrhenius definition of a base is a substance that increases the amount of OH^- in an aqueous solution.
- Neutralization is the reaction of an acid and a base, which forms water and a salt.

7.4: Acids, Bases, and Neutralization Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.6: Neutralization Reactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

7.5: Recognizing Redox Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Assign oxidation numbers to atoms in simple compounds.
- Recognize a reaction as an oxidation-reduction reaction.

Redox reactions require that we keep track of the electrons assigned to each atom in a chemical reaction. How do we do that? We use **oxidation numbers** to keep track of electrons in atoms. Oxidation numbers are assigned to atoms based on four rules. Oxidation numbers are not necessarily equal to the charge on the atom (although sometimes they can be); we must keep the concepts of charge and oxidation numbers separate.

Assigning Oxidation Numbers

The rules for assigning oxidation numbers to atoms are as follows:

1. Atoms in their elemental state are assigned an oxidation number of 0.
2. Atoms in monatomic (i.e., one-atom) ions are assigned an oxidation number equal to their charge. Oxidation numbers are usually written with the sign first, then the magnitude, to differentiate them from charges.
3. In compounds, fluorine is assigned a −1 oxidation number; oxygen is usually assigned a −2 oxidation number (except in peroxide compounds [where it is −1] and in binary compounds with fluorine [where it is positive]); and hydrogen is usually assigned a +1 oxidation number (except when it exists as the hydride ion [H^-], in which case rule 2 prevails).
4. In compounds, all other atoms are assigned an oxidation number so that the sum of the oxidation numbers on all the atoms in the species equals the charge on the species (which is zero if the species is neutral).

Here are some examples for practice. In H_2, both H atoms have an oxidation number of 0 by rule 1. In $MgCl_2$, magnesium has an oxidation number of +2, while chlorine has an oxidation number of −1 by rule 2. In H_2O, the H atoms each have an oxidation number of +1, while the O atom has an oxidation number of −2, even though hydrogen and oxygen do not exist as ions in this compound (rule 3). By contrast, by rule 3, each H atom in hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) has an oxidation number of +1, while each O atom has an oxidation number of −1. We can use rule 4 to determine oxidation numbers for the atoms in SO_2. Each O atom has an oxidation number of −2; for the sum of the oxidation numbers to equal the charge on the species (which is zero), the S atom is assigned an oxidation number of +4. Does this mean that the sulfur atom has a 4+ charge on it? No, it means only that the S atom is assigned a +4 oxidation number by our rules of apportioning electrons among the atoms in a compound.

Example 7.5.1

Assign oxidation numbers to the atoms in each substance.

1. Cl_2
2. GeO_2
3. $Ca(NO_3)_2$

Solution

1. Cl_2 is the elemental form of chlorine. Rule 1 states each atom has an oxidation number of 0.
2. By rule 3, oxygen is normally assigned an oxidation number of −2. For the sum of the oxidation numbers to equal the charge on the species (zero), the Ge atom is assigned an oxidation number of +4.
3. $Ca(NO_3)_2$ can be separated into two parts: the Ca^{2+} ion and the NO_3^- ion. Considering these separately, the Ca^{2+} ion has an oxidation number of +2 by rule 2. Now consider the NO_3^- ion. Oxygen is assigned an oxidation number of −2, and there are three of them. According to rule 4, the sum of the oxidation numbers on all atoms must equal the charge on the species, so we have the simple algebraic equation $x + 3(-2) = -1$

   where x is the oxidation number of the N atom and the −1 represents the charge on the species. Evaluating for x,

   $x + (-6) = -1x = +5$

Thus the oxidation number on the N atom in the NO_3^- ion is +5.

Exercise 7.5.1: Phosphoric Acid

Assign oxidation numbers to the atoms in H_3PO_4.

Answer

H: +1; O: −2; P: +5

All redox reactions occur with a simultaneous change in the oxidation numbers of some atoms. At least two elements must change their oxidation numbers. When an oxidation number of an atom is increased in the course of a redox reaction, that atom is being *oxidized*. When an oxidation number of an atom is decreased in the course of a redox reaction, that atom is being *reduced*. Oxidation and reduction can also be defined in terms of increasing or decreasing oxidation numbers, respectively.

Example 7.5.2:

Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox reaction.

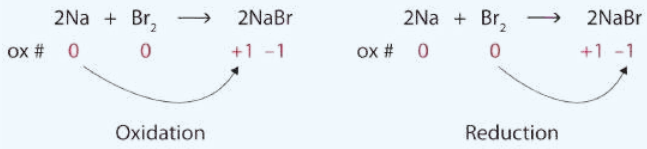
$$2\,Na + Br_2 \longrightarrow 2\,NaBr$$

Solution

Both reactants are the elemental forms of their atoms, so the Na and Br atoms have oxidation numbers of 0. In the ionic product, the Na^+ ions have an oxidation number of +1, while the Br^- ions have an oxidation number of −1.

$$\overset{0}{2Na} + \overset{0}{Br_2} \rightarrow \overset{+1-1}{2NaBr}$$

Sodium is increasing its oxidation number from 0 to +1, so it is being oxidized; bromine is decreasing its oxidation number from 0 to −1, so it is being reduced:



Because oxidation numbers are changing, this is a redox reaction. The total number of electrons being lost by sodium (two, one lost from each Na atom) is gained by bromine (two, one gained for each Br atom).

Exercise 7.5.2

Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox reaction.

$$C + O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2$$

Answer

C is being oxidized from 0 to +4; O is being reduced from 0 to −2.

Oxidation reactions can become quite complex, as attested by the following redox reaction:

$$6H^+(aq) + 2\overset{+7}{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 5\overset{-1}{H_2O_2}(l) \rightarrow 2\overset{+2}{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 5\overset{0}{O_2}(g) + 8H_2O(l)$$

To demonstrate that this is a redox reaction, the oxidation numbers of the species being oxidized and reduced are listed; can you determine what is being oxidized and what is being reduced?

Food and Drink Application: Fortifying Food with Iron

Iron is an essential mineral in our diet; iron-containing compounds like the heme protein in hemoglobin could not function without it. Most biological iron has the form of the Fe^{2+} ion; iron with other oxidation numbers is almost inconsequential in human biology (although the body does contain an enzyme to reduce Fe^{3+} to Fe^{2+}, so Fe^{3+} must have some biological significance, albeit minor). To ensure that we ingest enough iron, many foods are enriched with iron. Although Fe^{2+} compounds are the most logical substances to use, some foods use "reduced iron" as an ingredient (bread and breakfast cereals are the most well-known examples). Reduced iron is simply iron metal; iron is added as a fine metallic powder. The metallic iron is oxidized to Fe^{2+} in the digestive system and then absorbed by the body, but the question remains: Why are we ingesting metallic iron? Why not just use Fe^{2+} salts as an additive?

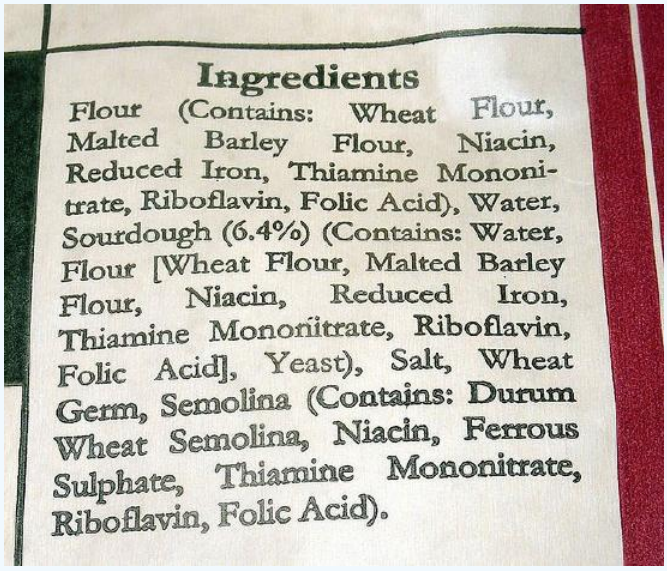


Figure 7.5.1 Ingredients. Many prepared foods list reduced iron in their ingredients list.

The ingredients list contains Flour (Contains: wheat flour, malted barley flour, niacin, reduced iron, thiamine mononitrate, riboflavin, folic acid), water, sourdough (6.4%) (contains: water, flour [wheat flour, malted barley flour, niacin, reduced iron, thiamine mononitrate, riboflavin, folic acid], yeast), salt, wheat germ, semolina (contains: durum wheat semolina, niacin, ferrous sulphate, thiamine mononitrate, riboflavin, folic acid).

Although it is difficult to establish conclusive reasons, a search of scientific and medical literature suggests a few reasons. One reason is that fine iron filings do not affect the taste of the product. The size of the iron powder (several dozen micrometers) is not noticeable when chewing iron-supplemented foods, and the tongue does not detect any changes in flavor that can be detected when using Fe^{2+} salts. Fe^{2+} compounds can affect other properties of foodstuffs during preparation and cooking, like dough pliability, yeast growth, and color. Finally, of the common iron substances that might be used, metallic iron is the least expensive. These factors appear to be among the reasons why metallic iron is the supplement of choice in some foods.

Key Takeaways

- Oxidation numbers are used to keep track of electrons in atoms.
- There are rules for assigning oxidation numbers to atoms.
- Oxidation is an increase in oxidation number (loss of electrons); reduction is a decrease in oxidation number (gain of electrons).

7.5: Recognizing Redox Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.2: Oxidation-Reduction Reactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

7.6: The Mole and Avogadro's Number

Learning Objectives

- Calculate formula masses for covalent and ionic compounds.
- Define the amount unit mole and the related quantity Avogadro's number.
- Calculate molar mass of a compound from the molecular formula.

We can argue that modern chemical science began when scientists started exploring the quantitative as well as the qualitative aspects of chemistry. For example, Dalton's atomic theory was an attempt to explain the results of measurements that allowed him to calculate the relative masses of elements combined in various compounds. Understanding the relationship between the masses of atoms and the chemical formulas of compounds allows us to quantitatively describe the composition of substances.

Formula Mass

In an earlier chapter, we described the development of the atomic mass unit, the concept of average atomic masses, and the use of chemical formulas to represent the elemental makeup of substances. These ideas can be extended to calculate the **formula mass** of a substance, which is equal to the sum of the atomic masses for all the atoms represented in the substance's formula.

Formula Mass for Covalent Substances

For covalent substances, the formula represents the numbers and types of atoms composing a single molecule of the substance; therefore, the formula mass may be correctly referred to as a molecular mass. Consider chloroform ($CHCl_3$), a covalent compound once used as a surgical anesthetic and now primarily used in the production of tetrafluoroethylene, the building block for the "anti-stick" polymer, Teflon. The molecular formula of chloroform indicates that a single molecule contains one carbon atom, one hydrogen atom, and three chlorine atoms. The average molecular mass of a chloroform molecule is therefore equal to the sum of the average atomic masses of these atoms. Figure **7.6.1** outlines the calculations used to derive the molecular mass of chloroform, which is 119.37 amu.

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	1	×	12.01	=	12.01
H	1	×	1.008	=	1.008
Cl	3	×	35.45	=	106.35
				Molecular mass	119.37

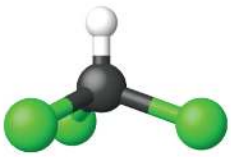


Figure **7.6.1**: The average mass of a chloroform molecule, $CHCl_3$, is 119.37 amu, which is the sum of the average atomic masses of each of its constituent atoms. The model shows the molecular structure of chloroform.

A table and diagram are shown. The table is made up of six columns and five rows. The header row reads: "Element," "Quantity," a blank space, "Average atomic mass (a m u)," a blank space, and "Subtotal (a m u)." The first column contains the symbols "C," "H," "C l" and a blank, merged cell that runs the width of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers "1," "1," and "3" as well as the merged cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers "12.01," "1.008," and "35.45" as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol "=" in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values "12.01," "1.008," "106.35," and "119.37." There is a thick black line below the number 106.35. The merged cell under the first five columns reads "Molecular mass." To the left of the table is a diagram of a molecule. Three green spheres are attached to a slightly smaller black sphere, which is also attached to a smaller white sphere. The green spheres lie beneath and to the sides of the black sphere while the white sphere is located straight up from the black sphere.

Likewise, the molecular mass of an aspirin molecule, $C_9H_8O_4$, is the sum of the atomic masses of nine carbon atoms, eight hydrogen atoms, and four oxygen atoms, which amounts to 180.15 amu (Figure **7.6.2**).

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	9	×	12.01	=	108.09
H	8	×	1.008	=	8.064
O	4	×	16.00	=	64.00
				Molecular mass	180.15

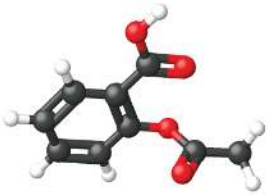


Figure **7.6.2**: The average mass of an aspirin molecule is 180.15 amu. The model shows the molecular structure of aspirin, $C_9H_8O_4$. A table and diagram are shown. The table is made up of six columns and five rows. The header row reads: “Element,” “Quantity,” a blank space, “Average atomic mass (a m u),” a blank space, and “Subtotal (a m u).” The first column contains the symbols “C,” “H,” “O,” and a merged cell. The merged cell runs the length of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers “9,” “8,” and “4” as well as the merged, cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers “12.01,” “1.008,” and “16.00” as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol “=” in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values: “108.09,” “8.064,” “64.00,” and “180.15.” There is a thick black line below the number 64.00. The merged cell under the first five columns reads “Molecular mass.” To the left of the table is a diagram of a molecule. Six black spheres are located in a six-sided ring and connected by alternating double and single black bonds. Attached to each of the four black spheres is one smaller white sphere. Attached to the farthest right black sphere is a red sphere, connected to two more black spheres, all in a row. Attached to the last black sphere of that row are two more white spheres. Attached to the first black sphere of that row is another red sphere. A black sphere, attached to two red spheres and a white sphere is attached to the black sphere on the top right of the six-sided ring.

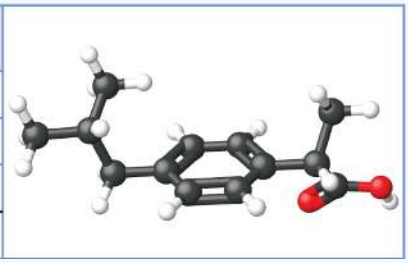
Example **7.6.1**: Computing Molecular Mass for a Covalent Compound

Ibuprofen, $C_{13}H_{18}O_2$, is a covalent compound and the active ingredient in several popular nonprescription pain medications, such as Advil and Motrin. What is the molecular mass (amu) for this compound?

Solution

Molecules of this compound are comprised of 13 carbon atoms, 18 hydrogen atoms, and 2 oxygen atoms. Following the approach described above, the average molecular mass for this compound is therefore:

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	13	×	12.01	=	156.13
H	18	×	1.008	=	18.114
O	2	×	16.00	=	32.00
				Molecular mass	206.27



Exercise **7.6.1**

Acetaminophen, $C_8H_9NO_2$, is a covalent compound and the active ingredient in several popular nonprescription pain medications, such as Tylenol. What is the molecular mass (amu) for this compound?

Answer

151.16 amu

Formula Mass for Ionic Compounds

Ionic compounds are composed of discrete cations and anions combined in ratios to yield electrically neutral bulk matter. The formula mass for an ionic compound is calculated in the same way as the formula mass for covalent compounds: by summing the average atomic masses of all the atoms in the compound’s formula. Keep in mind, however, that the formula for an ionic compound does not represent the composition of a discrete molecule, so it may not correctly be referred to as the “molecular mass.”

As an example, consider sodium chloride, NaCl, the chemical name for common table salt. Sodium chloride is an ionic compound composed of sodium cations, Na^+, and chloride anions, Cl^-, combined in a 1:1 ratio. The formula mass for this compound is

computed as 58.44 amu (Figure **7.6.3**).

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal
Na	1	×	22.99	=	22.99
Cl	1	×	35.45	=	35.45
				Formula mass	58.44

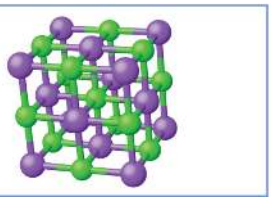


Figure **7.6.3**: Table salt, NaCl, contains an array of sodium and chloride ions combined in a 1:1 ratio. Its formula mass is 58.44 amu.
A table and diagram are shown. The table is made up of six columns and four rows. The header row reads: “Element,” “Quantity,” a blank space, “Average atomic mass (a m u),” a blank space and “Subtotal (a m u).” The first column contains the symbols “N a”, “C l,” and a merged cell. The merged cell runs the length of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers “1” and “1” as well as the merged cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers “22.99” and “35.45” as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol “=” in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values “22.99,” “35.45,” and “58.44.” There is a thick black line below the number “35.45.” The merged cell under the first five columns reads “Formula mass.” To the left of the table is a diagram of a chemical structure. The diagram shows green and purple spheres placed in an alternating pattern, making up the corners of eight stacked cubes to form one larger cube. The green spheres are slightly smaller than the purple spheres.

Note that the average masses of neutral sodium and chlorine atoms were used in this computation, rather than the masses for sodium cations and chlorine anions. This approach is perfectly acceptable when computing the formula mass of an ionic compound. Even though a sodium cation has a slightly smaller mass than a sodium atom (since it is missing an electron), this difference will be offset by the fact that a chloride anion is slightly more massive than a chloride atom (due to the extra electron). Moreover, the mass of an electron is negligibly small with respect to the mass of a typical atom. Even when calculating the mass of an isolated ion, the missing or additional electrons can generally be ignored, since their contribution to the overall mass is negligible, reflected only in the nonsignificant digits that will be lost when the computed mass is properly rounded. The few exceptions to this guideline are very light ions derived from elements with precisely known atomic masses.

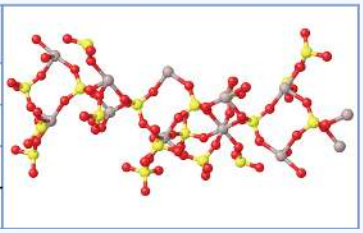
✔ Example 7.6.2: Computing Formula Mass for an Ionic Compound

Aluminum sulfate, $Al_2(SO_4)_3$, is an ionic compound that is used in the manufacture of paper and in various water purification processes. What is the formula mass (amu) of this compound?

Solution

The formula for this compound indicates it contains Al^{3+} and SO_4^{2-} ions combined in a 2:3 ratio. For purposes of computing a formula mass, it is helpful to rewrite the formula in the simpler format, $Al_2S_3O_{12}$. Following the approach outlined above, the formula mass for this compound is calculated as follows:

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
Al	2	×	26.98	=	53.96
S	3	×	32.06	=	96.18
O	12	×	16.00	=	192.00
				Molecular mass	342.14



? Exercise 7.6.2

Calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, is an ionic compound and a common anti-caking agent added to food products. What is the formula mass (amu) of calcium phosphate?

Answer

310.18 amu

The Mole

So far, we have been talking about chemical substances in terms of individual atoms and molecules. Yet we do not typically deal with substances one atom or molecule at a time; we work with millions, billions, and trillions of atoms and molecules at a time. We need a way to deal with macroscopic, rather than microscopic, amounts of matter. We need a unit of amount that relates quantities of substances on a scale that we can interact with.

Chemistry uses a unit called **mole**. The mole (mol) is an counting term similar to familiar units like pair, dozen, gross, etc. It provides a specific measure of *the number* of atoms or molecules in a bulk sample of matter. A mole is defined as the amount of substance containing the same number of discrete entities (such as atoms, molecules, and ions) as the number of atoms in a sample of pure ^{12}C weighing exactly 12 g. One Latin connotation for the word "mole" is "large mass" or "bulk," which is consistent with its use as the name for this unit. The mole provides a link between an easily measured macroscopic property, bulk mass, and an extremely important fundamental property, number of atoms, molecules, and so forth.

The number of entities composing a mole has been experimentally determined to be $6.02214179 \times 10^{23}$, a fundamental constant named **Avogadro's number** (N_A) or the Avogadro constant in honor of Italian scientist Amedeo Avogadro. This constant is properly reported with an explicit unit of "per mole," a conveniently rounded version being $6.022 \times 10^{23}/\text{mol}$.

How big is a mole? It is very large. Suppose you had a mole of dollar bills that need to be counted. If everyone on earth (about 6 billion people) counted one bill per second, it would take about 3.2 million years to count all the bills. A mole of sand would fill a cube about 32 km on a side. A mole of pennies stacked on top of each other would have about the same diameter as our galaxy, the Milky Way. Atoms and molecules are very tiny, so one mole of carbon atoms would make a cube that is 1.74 cm on a side, small enough to carry in your pocket. One mole of water molecules is approximately 18 mL or just under 4 teaspoons of water.

Example 7.6.3

How many molecules are present in 2.76 mol of H_2O? How many atoms is this?

Solution

The definition of a mole is an equality that can be used to construct a conversion factor. Also, because we know that there are three atoms in each molecule of H_2O, we can also determine the number of atoms in the sample.

$$2.76 \cancel{mol\ H_2O} \times \frac{6.022 \times 10^{23} molecules\ H_2O}{\cancel{mol\ H_2O}} = 1.66 \times 10^{24} molecules\ H_2O$$

To determine the total number of atoms, we have

$$1.66 \times 10^{24} \cancel{molecules\ H_2O} \times \frac{3\ atoms}{1\ molecule} = 4.99 \times 10^{24}\ atoms$$

Exercise 7.6.3

How many molecules are present in 4.61×10^{-2} mol of O_2?

Answer

2.78×10^{22} molecules

Molar Mass

Why is the mole unit so important? It represents the link between the microscopic and the macroscopic, especially in terms of mass. *A mole of a substance has the same mass in grams as one unit (atom or molecules) has in atomic mass units*. The mole unit allows us to express amounts of atoms and molecules in visible amounts that we can understand.

For example, we already know that, by definition, a mole of carbon has a mass of exactly 12 g. This means that exactly 12 g of C has 6.022×10^{23} atoms:

$$12\ g\ C = 6.022 \times 10^{23}\ atoms\ C$$

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/402293

We can use this equality as a conversion factor between the number of atoms of carbon and the number of grams of carbon. How many grams are there, say, in 1.50×10^{25} atoms of carbon? This is a one-step conversion:

$$1.50 \times 10^{25} \cancel{atoms\ C} \times \frac{12.0000\ g\ C}{6.022 \times 10^{23} \cancel{atoms\ C}} = 299\ g\ C$$

But it also goes beyond carbon. Previously we defined atomic and molecular masses as the number of atomic mass units per atom or molecule. Now we can do so in terms of grams. The atomic mass of an element is the number of grams in 1 mol of atoms of that element, while the molecular mass of a compound is the number of grams in 1 mol of molecules of that compound. Sometimes these masses are called **molar masses** to emphasize the fact that they are the mass for 1 mol of things. (The term *molar* is the adjective form of mole and has nothing to do with teeth.)

Consistent with its definition as an amount unit, 1 mole of any element contains the same number of atoms as 1 mole of any other element. The masses of 1 mole of different elements, however, are different, since the masses of the individual atoms are drastically different. The molar mass of an element (or compound) is the mass in grams of 1 mole of that substance, a property expressed in units of grams per mole (g/mol) (Figure **7.6.1**).

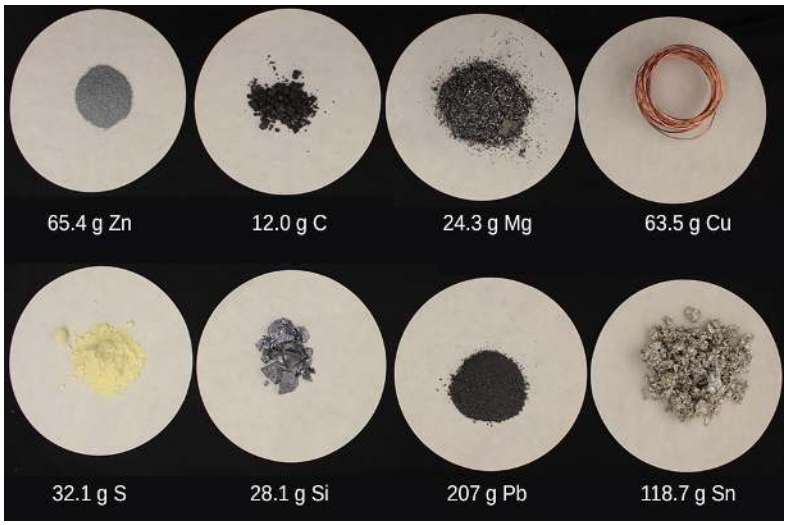


Figure **7.6.1**: Each sample contains $\mathbf{6.022 \times 10^{23}}$ atoms —1.00 mol of atoms. From left to right (top row): 65.4 g zinc, 12.0 g carbon, 24.3 g magnesium, and 63.5 g copper. From left to right (bottom row): 32.1 g sulfur, 28.1 g silicon, 207 g lead, and 118.7 g tin. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).

This figure contains eight different substances displayed on white circles. The amount of each substance is visibly different.

Because the definitions of both the mole and the atomic mass unit are based on the same reference substance, ^{12}C, the molar mass of any substance is numerically equivalent to its atomic or formula weight in amu. Per the amu definition, a single ^{12}C atom weighs 12 amu (its atomic mass is 12 amu). According to the definition of the mole, 12 g of ^{12}C contains 1 mole of ^{12}C atoms (its molar mass is 12 g/mol). This relationship holds for all elements, since their atomic masses are measured relative to that of the amu-reference substance, ^{12}C.

Table **7.6.1**: Mass of one mole of elements

Element	Average Atomic Mass (amu)	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Atoms/Mole
C	12.01	12.01	$\mathbf{6.022 \times 10^{23}}$
H	1.008	1.008	$\mathbf{6.022 \times 10^{23}}$
O	16.00	16.00	$\mathbf{6.022 \times 10^{23}}$
Na	22.99	22.99	$\mathbf{6.022 \times 10^{23}}$
Cl	33.45	35.45	$\mathbf{6.022 \times 10^{23}}$

While atomic mass and molar mass are numerically equivalent, keep in mind that they are vastly different in terms of scale, as represented by the vast difference in the magnitudes of their respective units (amu versus g). To appreciate the enormity of the mole, consider a small drop of water after a rainfall. Although this represents just a tiny fraction of 1 mole of water (~18 g), it contains more water molecules than can be clearly imagined. If the molecules were distributed equally among the roughly seven billion people on earth, each person would receive more than 100 billion molecules.



Video **7.6.1**: The mole is used in chemistry to represent 6.022×10^{23} of something, but it can be difficult to conceptualize such a large number. Watch this video and then complete the "Think" questions that follow. Explore more about the mole by reviewing the information under "Dig Deeper."

The relationships between formula mass, the mole, and Avogadro's number can be applied to compute various quantities that describe the composition of substances and compounds. For example, if we know the mass and chemical composition of a substance, we can determine the number of moles and calculate number of atoms or molecules in the sample. Likewise, if we know the number of moles of a substance, we can derive the number of atoms or molecules and calculate the substance's mass.

Here are some examples. The mass of 1 hydrogen atom is 1.0079 u; the mass of 1 mol of hydrogen atoms is 1.0079 g. Elemental hydrogen exists as a diatomic molecule, H_2. One molecule has a mass of 1.0079 u + 1.0079 u = 2.0158 u, while 1 mol of H_2 has a mass of 1.0079 g + 1.0079 g = 2.0158 g. One molecule of H_2O has a mass of about 18.01 u; 1 mol H_2O has a mass of 18.01 g. A single unit of NaCl has a mass of 58.45 u; NaCl has a molar mass of 58.45 g. In each of these moles of substances, there are 6.022×10^{23} units: 6.022×10^{23} atoms of H, 6.022×10^{23} molecules of H_2 and H_2O, 6.022×10^{23} units of NaCl ions. These relationships give us plenty of opportunities to construct conversion factors for simple calculations.

✔ ✔ Example 7.6.4: Sugar

What is the molar mass of sugar ($C_6H_{12}O_6$)?

Solution

To determine the molar mass, we simply add the atomic masses of the atoms in the molecular formula; but express the total in grams per mole, not atomic mass units. The masses of the atoms can be taken from the periodic table.

6 C = 6 × 12.011	= 72.066
12 H = 12 × 1.0079	= 12.0948
6 O = 6 × 15.999	= 95.994
TOTAL	= 180.155 g/mol

Per convention, the unit *grams per mole* is written as a fraction.

Exercise 7.6.4

What is the molar mass of $AgNO_3$?

Answer

169.87 g/mol

Summary

The mole is a key unit in chemistry. The molar mass of a substance, in grams, is numerically equal to one atom's or molecule's mass in atomic mass units.

7.6: The Mole and Avogadro's Number is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **5.3: The Mole** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

7.7: Gram-Mole Conversions

Learning Objectives

- To convert between mass units and mole units.

As we just discussed, **molar mass** is defined as the mass (in grams) of 1 mole of substance (or Avogadro's number of molecules or formula units).

The simplest type of manipulation using molar mass as a *conversion factor* is a mole-gram conversion (or its reverse, a gram-mole conversion).

We also established that 1 mol of Al has a mass of 26.98 g (Example **7.7.1**). Stated mathematically,

$$1 \text{ mol Al} = 26.98 \text{ g Al}$$

We can divide both sides of this expression by either side to get one of two possible conversion factors:

$$\frac{1 \text{ mol Al}}{26.98 \text{ g Al}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{26.98 \text{ g Al}}{1 \text{ mol Al}}$$

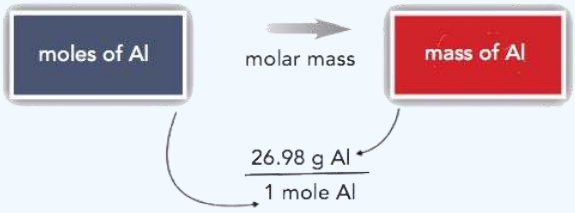
The first conversion factor can be used to convert from mass to moles, and the second converts from moles to mass. Both can be used to solve problems that would be hard to do “by eye.”

Example 7.7.1

What is the mass of 3.987 mol of Al?

Solution

The first step in a conversion problem is to decide what conversion factor to use. Because we are starting with mole units, we want a conversion factor that will cancel the mole unit and introduce the unit for mass in the numerator. Therefore, we should use the $\frac{26.98 \text{ g Al}}{1 \text{ mol Al}}$ conversion factor. We start with the given quantity and multiply by the conversion factor:



$$3.987 \text{ mol Al} \times \frac{26.98 \text{ g Al}}{1 \text{ mol Al}}$$

Note that the mol units cancel algebraically. (The quantity 3.987 mol is understood to be in the numerator of a fraction that has 1 in the unwritten denominator.) Canceling and solving gives

$$3.987 \text{ mol Al} \times \frac{26.98 \text{ g Al}}{1 \text{ mol Al}} = 107.6 \text{ g Al}$$

Our final answer is expressed to four significant figures.

Exercise 7.7.1

How many moles are present in 100.0 g of Al? (Hint: you will have to use the other conversion factor we obtained for aluminum.)

Answer

$$100.0 \text{ g Al} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol Al}}{26.98 \text{ g Al}} = 3.706 \text{ mol Al}$$

Conversions like this are possible for any substance, as long as the proper atomic mass, formula mass, or molar mass is known (or can be determined) and expressed in grams per mole. Figure **7.7.1** is a chart for determining what conversion factor is needed, and Figure **7.7.2** is a flow diagram for the steps needed to perform a conversion.

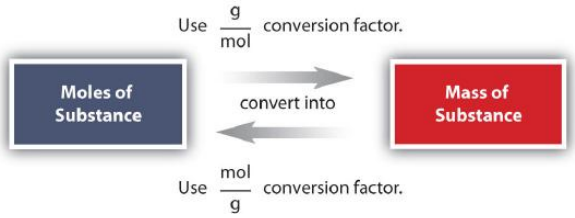


Figure **7.7.1** A Simple Flowchart for Converting between Mass and Moles of a Substance. It takes one mathematical step to convert from moles to mass or from mass to moles.

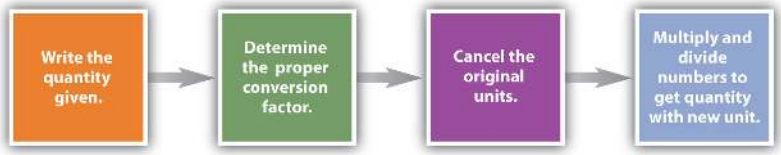


Figure **7.7.2** A Flowchart Illustrating the Steps in Performing a Unit Conversion. When performing many unit conversions, the same logical steps can be taken.

Example 7.7.2

A biochemist needs 0.00655 mol of bilirubin ($C_{33}H_{36}N_4O_6$) for an experiment. How many grams of bilirubin will that be?

Solution

To convert from moles to mass, we need the molar mass of bilirubin, which we can determine from its chemical formula:

33 C molar mass:	33 × 12.01 g =	396.33 g
36 H molar mass:	36 × 1.01 g =	36.36 g
4 N molar mass:	4 × 14.01 g =	56.04 g
6 O molar mass:	6 × 16.00 g =	96.00 g
Total:		584.73 g

The molar mass of bilirubin is 584.73 g. Using the relationship

$$1 \text{ mol bilirubin} = 584.73 \text{ g bilirubin}$$

we can construct the appropriate conversion factor for determining how many grams there are in 0.00655 mol. Following the steps from Figure **7.7.2**:

$$0.00655 \text{ mol bilirubin} \times \frac{584.73 \text{ g bilirubin}}{\text{mol bilirubin}} = 3.83 \text{ g bilirubin}$$

The mol bilirubin unit cancels. The biochemist needs 3.83 g of bilirubin.

Exercise 7.7.2

A chemist needs 457.8 g of $KMnO_4$ to make a solution. How many moles of $KMnO_4$ is that?

Answer

$$457.8 \text{ g } KMnO_4 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } KMnO_4}{158.04 \text{ g } KMnO_4} = 2.897 \text{ mol } KMnO_4$$

To Your Health: Minerals

For our bodies to function properly, we need to ingest certain substances from our diets. Among our dietary needs are minerals, the noncarbon elements our body uses for a variety of functions, such developing bone or ensuring proper nerve transmission. The US Department of Agriculture has established some recommendations for the RDIs of various minerals. The accompanying table lists the RDIs for minerals, both in mass and moles, assuming a 2,000-calorie daily diet.

Table **7.7.1**: Essential Minerals and their Composition in Humans

Mineral	Male (age 19–30 y)		Female (age 19–30 y)	
Ca	1,000 mg	0.025 mol	1,000 mg	0.025 mol
Cr	35 µg	6.7×10^{-7} mol	25 µg	4.8×10^{-7} mol
Cu	900 µg	1.4×10^{-5} mol	900 µg	1.4×10^{-5} mol
F	4 mg	2.1×10^{-4} mol	3 mg	1.5×10^{-4} mol
I	150 µg	1.2×10^{-6} mol	150 µg	1.2×10^{-6} mol
Fe	8 mg	1.4×10^{-4} mol	18 mg	3.2×10^{-4} mol
K	3,500 mg	9.0×10^{-2} mol	3,500 mg	9.0×10^{-2} mol
Mg	400 mg	1.6×10^{-2} mol	310 mg	1.3×10^{-2} mol
Mn	2.3 mg	4.2×10^{-5} mol	1.8 mg	3.3×10^{-5} mol
Mo	45 mg	4.7×10^{-7} mol	45 mg	4.7×10^{-7} mol
Na	2,400 mg	1.0×10^{-1} mol	2,400 mg	1.0×10^{-1} mol
P	700 mg	2.3×10^{-2} mol	700 mg	2.3×10^{-2} mol
Se	55 µg	7.0×10^{-7} mol	55 µg	7.0×10^{-7} mol
Zn	11 mg	1.7×10^{-4} mol	8 mg	1.2×10^{-4} mol

Table **7.7.1** illustrates several things. First, the needs of men and women for some minerals are different. The extreme case is for iron; women need over twice as much as men do. In all other cases where there is a different RDI, men need more than women.

Second, the amounts of the various minerals needed on a daily basis vary widely—both on a mass scale and a molar scale. The average person needs 0.1 mol of Na a day, which is about 2.5 g. On the other hand, a person needs only about 25–35 µg of Cr per day, which is under one millionth of a mole. As small as this amount is, a deficiency of chromium in the diet can lead to diabetes-like symptoms or neurological problems, especially in the extremities (hands and feet). For some minerals, the body does not require much to keep itself operating properly.

Although a properly balanced diet will provide all the necessary minerals, some people take dietary supplements. However, too much of a good thing, even minerals, is not good. Exposure to too much chromium, for example, causes a skin irritation, and certain forms of chromium are known to cause cancer (as presented in the movie *Erin Brockovich*).

7.7: Gram-Mole Conversions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.3: Mole-Mass Conversions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

7.8: Mole Relationships and Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- To use a balanced chemical reaction to determine molar relationships between the substances.

Previously, you learned to balance chemical equations by comparing the numbers of each type of atom in the reactants and products. The coefficients in front of the chemical formulas represent the numbers of molecules or formula units (depending on the type of substance). Here, we will extend the meaning of the coefficients in a chemical equation.

Consider the simple chemical equation

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

The convention for writing balanced chemical equations is to use the lowest whole-number ratio for the coefficients. However, the equation is balanced as long as the coefficients are in a 2:1:2 ratio. For example, this equation is also balanced if we write it as

$$4\,H_2 + 2\,O_2 \longrightarrow 4\,H_2O$$

The ratio of the coefficients is 4:2:4, which reduces to 2:1:2. The equation is also balanced if we were to write it as

$$22\,H_2 + 11\,O_2 \longrightarrow 22\,H_2O$$

because 22:11:22 also reduces to 2:1:2.

Suppose we want to use larger numbers. Consider the following coefficients:

$$12.044 \times 10^{23}\ H_2 + 6.022 \times 10^{23}\ O_2 \rightarrow 12.044 \times 10^{23}\ H_2O$$

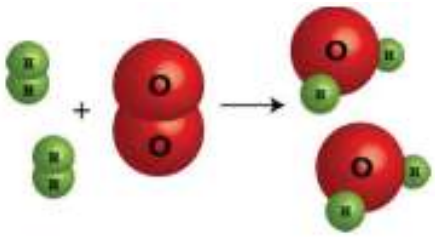
These coefficients also have the ratio 2:1:2 (check it and see), so this equation is balanced. But 6.022×10^{23} is 1 mol, while 12.044×10^{23} is 2 mol (and the number is written that way to make this more obvious), so we can simplify this version of the equation by writing it as

$$2\ \text{mol}\ \ H_2 + 1\ \ \text{mol}\ \ O_2 \longrightarrow 2\ \text{mol}\ \ H_2O$$

We can leave out the word *mol* and not write the 1 coefficient (as is our habit), so the final form of the equation, still balanced, is

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

Now we interpret the coefficients as referring to molar amounts, not individual molecules. The lesson? *Balanced chemical equations are balanced not only at the molecular level but also in terms of molar amounts of reactants and products.* Thus, we can read this reaction as "two moles of hydrogen react with one mole of oxygen to produce two moles of water."



2 molecules H_2 1 molecule O_2 2 molecules H_2O

2 moles H_2 1 mole O_2 2 moles H_2O

2 x 2.02 g=4.04 g H_2 32.0 g O_2 2 x 18.02 g=36.04 g H_2O

Figure 7.8.1: This representation of the production of water from oxygen and hydrogen show several ways to interpret the quantitative information of a chemical reaction.

By the same token, the ratios we constructed to describe molecules reaction can also be constructed in terms of moles rather than molecules. For the reaction in which hydrogen and oxygen combine to make water, for example, we can construct the following

ratios:

$$\frac{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2}\ \text{or}\ \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2}$$

$$\frac{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2O}{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2}\ \text{or}\ \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2O}$$

$$\frac{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2O}\ \text{or}\ \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2O}{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2}$$

We can use these ratios to determine what amount of a substance, in moles, will react with or produce a given number of moles of a different substance. The study of the numerical relationships between the reactants and the products in balanced chemical reactions is called ***stoichiometry*.** The ratio of coefficients in a balanced chemical equation, used in computations relating amounts of reactants and products is called the **stoichiometric factor.**

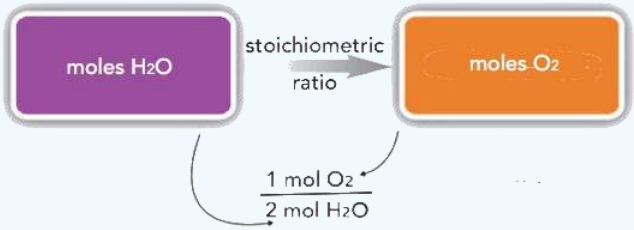
Example 7.8.1

How many moles of oxygen react with hydrogen to produce 27.6 mol of H_2O? The balanced equation is as follows:

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

Solution

Because we are dealing with quantities of H_2O and O_2, we will use the **stoichiometric ratio** that relates those two substances. Because we are given an amount of H_2O and want to determine an amount of O_2, we will use the ratio that has H_2O in the denominator (so it cancels) and O_2 in the numerator (so it is introduced in the answer). Thus,



$$27.6\ \text{mol}\ H_2O \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2O} = 13.8\ \text{mol}\ O_2$$

To produce 27.6 mol of H_2O, 13.8 mol of O_2 react.

Exercise 7.8.1

Using $2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$, how many moles of hydrogen react with 3.07 mol of oxygen to produce H_2O?

Answer

$$3.07\ \text{mol}\ O_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2} = 6.14\ \text{mol}\ H_2$$

Key Takeaway

- The balanced chemical reaction can be used to determine molar relationships between substances.

7.8: Mole Relationships and Chemical Equations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

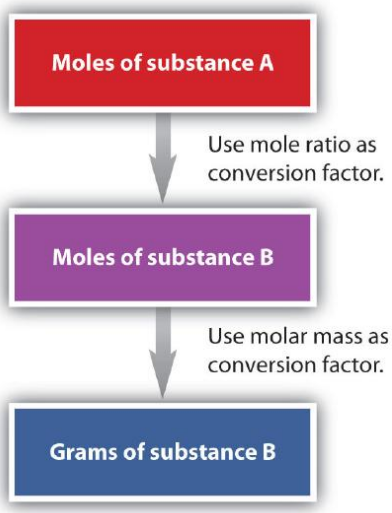
- **6.4: Mole-Mole Relationships in Chemical Reactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

7.9: Mass Relationships and Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- To convert from mass or moles of one substance to mass or moles of another substance in a chemical reaction.

We have established that a balanced chemical equation is balanced in terms of moles as well as atoms or molecules. We have used balanced equations to set up ratios, now in terms of moles of materials, that we can use as conversion factors to answer stoichiometric questions, such as how many moles of substance A react with so many moles of reactant B. We can extend this technique even further. Recall that we can relate a molar amount to a mass amount using molar mass. We can use that ability to answer stoichiometry questions in terms of the masses of a particular substance, in addition to moles. We do this using the following sequence:



Collectively, these conversions are called mole-mass calculations.

As an example, consider the balanced chemical equation

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3 + 3\,SO_3 \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3}$$

If we have 3.59 mol of Fe_2O_3, how many grams of SO_3 can react with it? Using the mole-mass calculation sequence, we can determine the required mass of SO_3 in two steps. First, we construct the appropriate molar ratio, determined from the balanced chemical equation, to calculate the number of moles of SO_3 needed. Then using the molar mass of SO_3 as a conversion factor, we determine the mass that this number of moles of SO_3 has.

The first step resembles the exercises we did in Section 6.4. As usual, we start with the quantity we were given:

$$\mathrm{3.59\ mol\ Fe_2O_3 \times \frac{3\ mol\ SO_3}{1\ mol\ Fe_2O_3} = 10.77\ mol\ SO_3}$$

The mol Fe_2O_3 units cancel, leaving mol SO_3 unit. Now, we take this answer and convert it to grams of SO_3, using the molar mass of SO_3 as the conversion factor:

$$\mathrm{10.77\ mol\ SO_3 \times \frac{80.07\ g\ SO_3}{1\ mol\ SO_3} = 862.4\ g\ SO_3}$$

Our final answer is expressed to three significant figures. Thus, in a two-step process, we find that 862 g of SO_3 will react with 3.59 mol of Fe_2O_3. Many problems of this type can be answered in this manner.

The same two-step problem can also be worked out in a single line, rather than as two separate steps, as follows:



$$3.59 \text{ mol } Fe_2O_3 \times \underbrace{\frac{3 \text{ mol } SO_3}{1 \text{ mol } Fe_2O_3}}_{\text{converts to moles of } SO_3} \times \underbrace{\frac{80.07 \text{ g } SO_3}{1 \text{ mol } SO_3}}_{\text{converts to grams of } SO_3} = 862.4 \text{ g } SO_3$$

We get exactly the same answer when combining all the math steps together as we do when we calculate one step at a time.

Example 7.9.1

How many grams of CO_2 are produced if 2.09 mol of HCl are reacted according to this balanced chemical equation?

$$CaCO_3 + 2\,HCl \rightarrow CaCl_2 + CO_2 + H_2O$$

Solution

Our strategy will be to convert from moles of HCl to moles of CO_2 and then from moles of CO_2 to grams of CO_2. We will need the molar mass of CO_2, which is 44.01 g/mol. Performing these two conversions in a single-line gives 46.0 g of CO_2:

$$2.09 \text{ mol } HCl \times \underbrace{\frac{1 \text{ mol } CO_2}{2 \text{ mol } HCl}}_{\text{from the coefficients of the balanced equation}} \times \frac{44.01 \text{ g } CO_2}{1 \text{ mol } CO_2} = 46.0 \text{ g } CO_2$$

The molar ratio between CO_2 and HCl comes from the balanced chemical equation.

Exercise

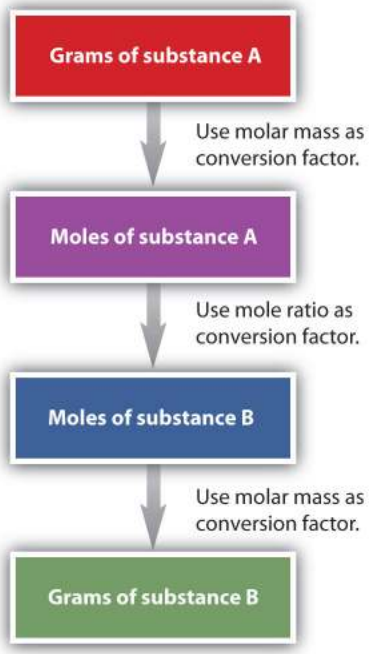
How many grams of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) are produced if 17.3 mol of H_2O are reacted according to this balanced chemical equation?

$$6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\,O_2$$

Answer

$$17.3 \text{ mol } H_2O \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } C_6H_{12}O_6}{6 \text{ mol } H_2O} \times \frac{180.18 \text{ g } C_6H_{12}O_6}{1 \text{ mol } C_6H_{12}O_6} = 520 \text{ g } C_6H_{12}O_6$$

It is a small step from mole-mass calculations to mass-mass calculations. If we start with a known mass of one substance in a chemical reaction (instead of a known number of moles), we can calculate the corresponding masses of other substances in the reaction. The first step in this case is to convert the known mass into moles, using the substance's molar mass as the conversion factor. Then—and only then—we use the balanced chemical equation to construct a conversion factor to convert that quantity to moles of another substance, which in turn can be converted to a corresponding mass. Sequentially, the process is as follows:



This three-part process can be carried out in three discrete steps or combined into a single calculation that contains three conversion factors. The following example illustrates both techniques.

Example 7.9.2: Chlorination of Carbon

Methane can react with elemental chlorine to make carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4). The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$CH_4 + 4\,Cl_2 \rightarrow CCl_4 + 4\,HCl$$

How many grams of HCl are produced by the reaction of 100.0 g of CH_4?

Solution

First, let us work the problem in stepwise fashion. We begin by converting the mass of CH_4 to moles of CH_4, using the molar mass of CH_4 (16.05 g/mol) as the conversion factor:

$$100.0\ g\ CH_4 \times \frac{1\ mol\ CH_4}{16.05\ g\ CH_4} = 6.231\ mol\ CH_4$$

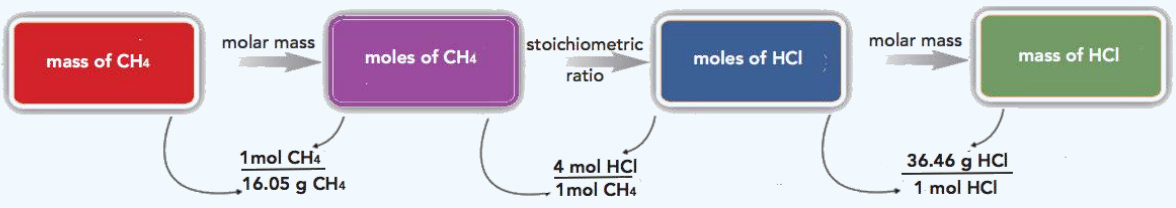
Note that we inverted the molar mass so that the gram units cancel, giving us an answer in moles. Next, we use the balanced chemical equation to determine the ratio of moles CCl_4 and moles HCl and convert our first result into moles of HCl:

$$6.231\ mol\ CH_4 \times \frac{4\ mol\ HCl}{1\ mol\ CH_4} = 24.92\ mol\ HCl$$

Finally, we use the molar mass of HCl (36.46 g/mol) as a conversion factor to calculate the mass of 24.92 mol of HCl:

$$24.92\ mol\ HCl \times \frac{36.46\ g\ HCl}{1\ mol\ HCl} = 908.5\ g\ HCl$$

In each step, we have limited the answer to the proper number of significant figures. If desired, we can do all three conversions on a single line:



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/402296

$$100.0\ \text{g CH}_4 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol CH}_4}{16.05\ \text{g CH}_4} \times \frac{4\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol CH}_4} \times \frac{36.46\ \text{g HCl}}{1\ \text{mol HCl}} = 908.7\ \text{g HCl}$$

This final answer is slightly different from our first answer because only the final answer is restricted to the proper number of significant figures. In the first answer, we limited each intermediate quantity to the proper number of significant figures. As you can see, both answers are essentially the same.

? Exercise 7.9.2: Oxidation of Propanal

The oxidation of propanal (CH_3CH_2CHO) to propionic acid (CH_3CH_2COOH) has the following chemical equation:

$$CH_3CH_2CHO + 2K_2Cr_2O_7 \rightarrow CH_3CH_2COOH + \text{other products}$$

How many grams of propionic acid are produced by the reaction of 135.8 g of $K_2Cr_2O_7$?

Answer

$$135.8\ \text{g K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7}{294.20\ \text{g K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}}{2\ \text{mol K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7} \times \frac{74.09\ \text{g CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}}{1\ \text{mol CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}} = 17.10\ \text{g CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$$

To Your Health: The Synthesis of Taxol

Taxol is a powerful anticancer drug that was originally extracted from the Pacific yew tree (*Taxus brevifolia*). As you can see from the accompanying figure, taxol is a very complicated molecule, with a molecular formula of $C_{47}H_{51}NO_{14}$. Isolating taxol from its natural source presents certain challenges, mainly that the Pacific yew is a slow-growing tree, and the equivalent of six trees must be harvested to provide enough taxol to treat a single patient. Although related species of yew trees also produce taxol in small amounts, there is significant interest in synthesizing this complex molecule in the laboratory.

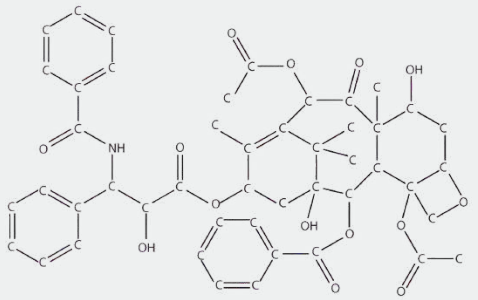


Figure 7.9.1 The Structure of the Cancer Drug Taxol. Because of the complexity of the molecule, hydrogen atoms are not shown, but they are present on every atom to give the atom the correct number of covalent bonds (four bonds for each carbon atom).

After a 20-year effort, two research groups announced the complete laboratory synthesis of taxol in 1994. However, each synthesis required over 30 separate chemical reactions, with an overall efficiency of less than 0.05%. To put this in perspective, to obtain a single 300 mg dose of taxol, you would have to begin with 600 g of starting material. To treat the 26,000 women who are diagnosed with ovarian cancer each year with one dose, almost 16,000 kg (over 17 tons) of starting material must be converted to taxol. Taxol is also used to treat breast cancer, with which 200,000 women in the United States are diagnosed every year. This only increases the amount of starting material needed.

Clearly, there is intense interest in increasing the overall efficiency of the taxol synthesis. An improved synthesis not only will be easier but also will produce less waste materials, which will allow more people to take advantage of this potentially life-saving drug.

Key Takeaway

- A balanced chemical equation can be used to relate masses or moles of different substances in a reaction.

7.9: Mass Relationships and Chemical Equations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.5: Mole-Mass and Mass-Mass Problems** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

7.10: Limiting Reagent and Percent Yield

Learning Objectives

- Define and determine theoretical yields, actual yields, and percent yields.
- Identify a limiting reagent from a set of reactants.
- Calculate how much product will be produced from the limiting reagent.
- Calculate how much reactant(s) remains when the reaction is complete.

Yield

In all the previous calculations we have performed involving balanced chemical equations, we made two assumptions:

1. The reaction goes exactly as written.
2. The reaction proceeds completely.

In reality, such things as side reactions occur that make some chemical reactions rather messy. For example, in the actual combustion of some carbon-containing compounds, such as methane, some CO is produced as well as CO_2. However, we will continue to ignore side reactions, unless otherwise noted. The second assumption, that the reaction proceeds completely, is more troublesome. Many chemical reactions do not proceed to completion as written, for a variety of reasons. When we calculate an amount of product assuming that all the reactant reacts, we calculate the **theoretical yield**, an amount that is theoretically produced as calculated using the balanced chemical reaction.

In many cases, however, this is not what really happens. In many cases, less—sometimes, much less—of a product is made during the course of a chemical reaction. The amount that is actually produced in a reaction is called the **actual yield**. By definition, the actual yield is less than or equal to the theoretical yield. If it is not, then an error has been made.

Both theoretical yields and actual yields are expressed in units of moles or grams. It is also common to see something called a percent yield. The **percent yield** is a comparison between the actual yield and the theoretical yield and is defined as

$$\text{percent yield} = \frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}} \times 100\% \tag{7.10.1}$$

It does not matter whether the actual and theoretical yields are expressed in moles or grams, as long as they are expressed in the same units. However, the percent yield always has units of percent. Proper percent yields are between 0% and 100%. In the laboratory, a student will occasionally obtain a yield that appears to be greater than 100%. This usually happens when the product is impure or is wet with a solvent such as water. If this is not the case, then the student must have made an error in weighing either the reactants or the products. The law of conservation of mass applies even to undergraduate chemistry laboratory experiments. A 100% yield means that everything worked perfectly, and the chemist obtained all the product that could have been produced. Anyone who has tried to do something as simple as fill a salt shaker or add oil to a car's engine without spilling knows the unlikelihood of a 100% yield. At the other extreme, a yield of 0% means that no product was obtained. A percent yield of 80%–90% is usually considered good to excellent; a yield of 50% is only fair. In part because of the problems and costs of waste disposal, industrial production facilities face considerable pressures to optimize the yields of products and make them as close to 100% as possible.

Example 7.10.1:

A worker reacts 30.5 g of Zn with nitric acid and evaporates the remaining water to obtain 65.2 g of $Zn(NO_3)_2$. What are the theoretical yield, the actual yield, and the percent yield?

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s) + 2\,HNO_3\,(aq) \longrightarrow Zn(NO_3)_2\,(aq) + H_2\,(g)}$$

Solution

A mass-mass calculation can be performed to determine the theoretical yield. We need the molar masses of Zn (65.39 g/mol) and $Zn(NO_3)_2$ (189.41 g/mol). In three steps, the mass-mass calculation is:

$$30.5\ \cancel{g\ Zn} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Zn}}{65.39\ \cancel{g\ Zn}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Zn(NO_3)_2}}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Zn}} \times \frac{189.41\ g\ Zn(NO_3)_2}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Zn(NO_3)_2}} = 88.3\ g\ Zn(NO_3)_2$$

Thus, the theoretical yield is 88.3 g of $Zn(NO_3)_2$. The actual yield is the amount that was actually made, which was 65.2 g of $Zn(NO_3)_2$. To calculate the percent yield, we take the actual yield and divide it by the theoretical yield and multiply by 100 (Equation 7.10.1):

$$\frac{65.2\ g\ Zn(NO_3)_2}{88.3\ g\ Zn(NO_3)_2} \times 100\% = 73.8\%$$

The worker achieved almost three-fourths of the possible yield.

? Exercise 7.10.1

A synthesis produced 2.05 g of NH_3 from 16.5 g of N_2. What is the theoretical yield and the percent yield?

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$$

*Technically, this is a reversible reaction (with double arrows), but for this exercise consider it irreversible (single arrow).

Answer

theoretical yield = 20.1 g; percent yield = 10.2%

Chemistry is Everywhere: Actual Yields in Drug Synthesis and Purification

Many drugs are the product of several steps of chemical synthesis. Each step typically occurs with less than 100% yield, so the overall percent yield might be very small. The general rule is that the overall percent yield is the product of the percent yields of the individual synthesis steps. For a drug synthesis that has many steps, the overall percent yield can be very tiny, which is one factor in the huge cost of some drugs. For example, if a 10-step synthesis has a percent yield of 90% for each step, the overall yield for the entire synthesis is only 35%. Many scientists work every day trying to improve percent yields of the steps in the synthesis to decrease costs, improve profits, and minimize waste.

Even purifications of complex molecules into drug-quality purity are subject to percent yields. Consider the purification of impure albuterol. Albuterol ($C_{13}H_{21}NO_2$; accompanying figure) is an inhaled drug used to treat asthma, bronchitis, and other obstructive pulmonary diseases. It is synthesized from norepinephrine, a naturally occurring hormone and neurotransmitter. Its initial synthesis makes very impure albuterol that is purified in five chemical steps. The details of the steps do not concern us; only the percent yields do:

impure albuterol → intermediate A	percent yield = 70%
intermediate A → intermediate B	percent yield = 100%
intermediate B → intermediate C	percent yield = 40%
intermediate C → intermediate D	percent yield = 72%
intermediate D → purified albuterol	percent yield = 35%
overall percent yield = 70% × 100% × 40% × 72% × 35% = 7.5%	

That is, only about *one-fourteenth* of the original material was turned into the purified drug. This demonstrates one reason why some drugs are so expensive—a lot of material is lost in making a high-purity pharmaceutical.



Figure 7.10.1 A child using an albuterol inhaler, the container of albuterol medication, and a molecular model of the albuterol molecule. Source: Photo on far left © Thinkstock. Photo in center courtesy of Intropin, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Fi...te_%281%29.JPG.

Limiting Reagent

In all the examples discussed thus far, the reactants were assumed to be present in stoichiometric quantities. Consequently, none of the reactants was left over at the end of the reaction. This is often desirable, as in the case of a space shuttle, where excess oxygen or hydrogen was not only extra freight to be hauled into orbit but also an explosion hazard. More often, however, reactants are present in mole ratios that are not the same as the ratio of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. As a result, one or more of them will not be used up completely but will be left over when the reaction is completed. In this situation, the amount of product that can be obtained is limited by the amount of only one of the reactants. The reactant that restricts the amount of product obtained is called the limiting reactant. The reactant that remains after a reaction has gone to completion is in excess.

Consider a nonchemical example. Assume you have invited some friends for dinner and want to bake brownies for dessert. You find two boxes of brownie mix in your pantry and see that each package requires two eggs. The balanced equation for brownie preparation is thus

$$\text{1 box mix} + \text{2 eggs} \rightarrow \text{1 batch brownies} \tag{7.10.2}$$

If you have a dozen eggs, which ingredient will determine the number of batches of brownies that you can prepare? Because each box of brownie mix requires two eggs and you have two boxes, you need four eggs. Twelve eggs is eight more eggs than you need. Although the ratio of eggs to boxes in is 2:1, the ratio in your possession is 6:1. Hence the eggs are the ingredient (reactant) present in excess, and the brownie mix is the limiting reactant. Even if you had a refrigerator full of eggs, you could make only two batches of brownies.

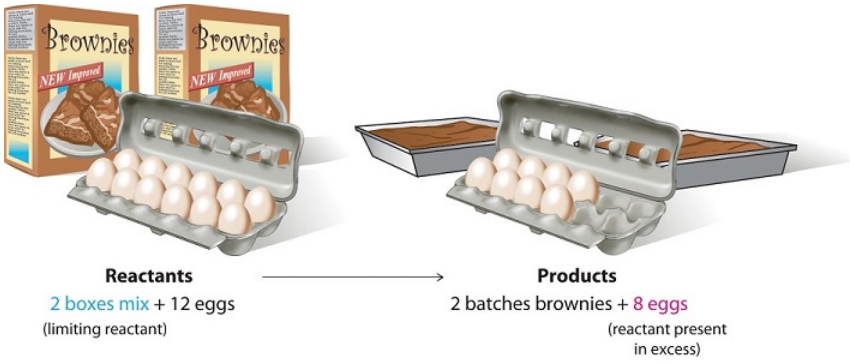


***Figure* 7.10.1**: *The Concept of a Limiting Reactant in the Preparation of Brownies*

A similar situation exists for many chemical reactions: you usually run out of one reactant before all of the other reactant has reacted. The reactant you run out of is called the **limiting reagent**; the other reactant or reactants are considered to be *in excess*. A crucial skill in evaluating the conditions of a chemical process is to determine which reactant is the limiting reagent and which is in excess.

The key to recognizing which reactant is the limiting reagent is based on a mole-mass or mass-mass calculation: whichever reactant gives the *lesser* amount of product is the limiting reagent. What we need to do is determine an amount of one product (either moles or mass), assuming all of each reactant reacts. Whichever reactant gives the least amount of that particular product is the limiting reagent. It does not matter which product we use, as long as we use the same one each time. It does not matter whether we

determine the number of moles or grams of that product; however, we will see shortly that knowing the final mass of product can be useful.

For example, consider this reaction:

$$4As(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2As_2O_3(s)$$

Suppose we start a reaction with 50.0 g of As and 50.0 g of O_2. Which one is the limiting reagent? We need to perform two mole-mass calculations, each assuming that each reactant reacts completely. Then we compare the amount of the product produced by each and determine which is less.

The calculations are as follows:

$$50.0\ g\cancel{As} \times \frac{1\ mol\cancel{As}}{74.92\ g\cancel{As}} \times \frac{2\ mol\ As_2O_3}{4\ mol\cancel{As}} = 0.334\ mol\ As_2O_3$$

$$50.0\ g\cancel{O_2} \times \frac{1\ mol\cancel{O_2}}{32.00\ g\cancel{O_2}} \times \frac{2\ mol\ As_2O_3}{3\ mol\cancel{O_2}} = 1.04\ mol\ As_2O_3$$

Comparing these two answers, it is clear that 0.334 mol of As_2O_3 is less than 1.04 mol of As_2O_3, so arsenic is the limiting reagent. If this reaction is performed under these initial conditions, the arsenic will run out before the oxygen runs out. We say that the oxygen is "in excess."

Identifying the limiting reagent, then, is straightforward. However, there are usually two associated questions: (1) what mass of product (or products) is then actually formed? and (2) what mass of what reactant is left over? The first question is straightforward to answer: simply perform a conversion from the number of moles of product formed to its mass, using its molar mass. For As_2O_3, the molar mass is 197.84 g/mol; knowing that we will form 0.334 mol of As_2O_3 under the given conditions, we will get

$$0.334\ mol\cancel{As_2O_3} \times \frac{197.84\ g\ As_2}{1\ mol\cancel{As_2O_3}} = 66.1\ g\ As_2O_3$$

The second question is somewhat more convoluted to answer. First, we must do a mass-mass calculation relating the limiting reagent (here, As) to the other reagent (O_2). Once we determine the mass of O_2 that reacted, we subtract that from the original amount to determine the amount left over. According to the mass-mass calculation,

$$50.0\ g\cancel{As} \times \frac{1\ mol\cancel{As}}{74.92\ g\cancel{As}} \times \frac{3\ mol\cancel{O_2}}{4\ mol\cancel{As}} \times \frac{32.00\ g\ O_2}{1\ mol\cancel{O_2}} = 16.0\ g\ O_2\ reacted$$

Because we reacted 16.0 g of our original O_2, we subtract that from the original amount, 50.0 g, to get the mass of O_2 remaining:

50.0 g O_2 − 16.0 g O_2 reacted = 34.0 g O_2 left over

You must remember to perform this final subtraction to determine the amount remaining; a common error is to report the 16.0 g as the amount remaining.

Example 7.10.1:

A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$ according to this chemical reaction:

$$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$

What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of what reactant is left over?

Solution

Because the question asks what mass of magnesium is formed, we can perform two mass-mass calculations and determine which amount is less.

$$5.00\ g\cancel{Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\cancel{Rb}}{85.47\ g\cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{1\ mol\cancel{Mg}}{2\ mol\cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\cancel{Mg}} = 0.711\ g\ Mg$$

$$3.44\ g\ MgCl_2 \times \frac{1\ mol\ MgCl_2}{95.21\ g\ MgCl_2} \times \frac{1\ mol\ Mg}{1\ mol\ MgCl_2} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\ Mg} = 0.878\ g\ Mg$$

The 0.711 g of Mg is the lesser quantity, so the associated reactant—5.00 g of Rb—is the limiting reagent. To determine how much of the other reactant is left, we have to do one more mass-mass calculation to determine what mass of MgCl2 reacted with the 5.00 g of Rb, and then subtract the amount reacted from the original amount.

$$5.00\ g\ Rb \times \frac{1\ mol\ Rb}{85.47\ g\ Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\ MgCl_2}{2\ mol\ Rb} \times \frac{95.21\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\ MgCl_2} = 2.78\ g\ MgCl_2\ \ reacted$$

Because we started with 3.44 g of MgCl2, we have

3.44 g MgCl2 − 2.78 g MgCl2 reacted = 0.66 g MgCl2 left

? Exercise 7.10.1

Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and what is the mass of the leftover reagent?

$$\underbrace{22.7\ g}_{MgO(s)} + \underbrace{17.9\ g}_{H_2S} \rightarrow MgS(s) + H_2O(l)$$

Answer

H_2S is the limiting reagent; 1.5 g of MgO are left over.

Summary

Theoretical yield is the calculated yield using the balanced chemical reaction. Actual yield is what is actually obtained in a chemical reaction. Percent yield is a comparison of the actual yield with the theoretical yield.

The limiting reagent is the reactant that produces the least amount of product. Mass-mass calculations can determine how much product is produced and how much of the other reactants remain.

7.10: Limiting Reagent and Percent Yield is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.7: Limiting Reagents** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.
- **5.6: Yields** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

7.11: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises)

5.1: The Law of Conservation of Matter

1. What is the law of conservation of matter?
2. How does the law of conservation of matter apply to chemistry?

ANSWERS

1. The law of conservation of matter states that in any given system that is closed to the transfer of matter, the amount of matter in the system stays constant
2. The law of conservation of matter says that in chemical reactions, the total mass of the products must equal the total mass of the reactants.

Exercises

1. Express the law of conservation of matter in your own words.

2. Explain why the concept of conservation of matter is considered a scientific law.

3. Potassium hydroxide ($\mathbf{KOH}$) readily reacts with carbon dioxide ($\mathbf{CO_2}$) to produce potassium carbonate ($\mathbf{K_2CO_3}$) and water ($\mathbf{H_2O}$). How many grams of potassium carbonate is produced if 224.4 g of $\mathbf{KOH}$ reacted with 88.0 g of $\mathbf{CO_2}$. The reaction also produced 36.0 g of water.

Answers

1. Matter may not be created or destroyed.

2. The concept is a scientific law because it is based on experimentation.

3. 276.4 g

5.2: Chemical Equations

Concept Review Exercises

a. What are the parts of a chemical equation?
b. Explain why chemical equations need to be balanced.

Answers

a. reactants and products

b. Chemical equations need to be balanced to satisfy the law of conservation of matter.

Exercises

1. Write a chemical equation to express the fact that hydrogen gas and solid iodine react to make gaseous hydrogen iodide. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.
2. Write a chemical equation to express the fact that sodium metal and chlorine gas react to make solid sodium chloride. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.
3. Write an equation expressing the fact that hydrogen gas and fluorine gas react to make gaseous hydrogen fluoride. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.
4. Write an equation expressing the fact that solid potassium and fluorine gas react to make solid potassium fluoride. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.
5. Mercury reacts with oxygen to make mercury(II) oxide. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.

6. Octane (C_8H_{18}) reacts with oxygen to make carbon dioxide and water. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.
7. Propyl alcohol (C_3H_7OH) reacts with oxygen to make carbon dioxide and water. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.
8. Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) reacts with iron metal to make iron(III) sulfate and hydrogen gas. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.
9. Balance each equation.
    a. $MgCl_2 + K \rightarrow KCl + Mg$
    b. $C_6H_{12}O_6 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$
    c. $NaN_3 \rightarrow Na + N_2$ (This is the reaction used to inflate airbags in cars.)
10. Balance each equation.
    a. $NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow N_2O + H_2O$
    b. $TiBr_4 + H_2O \rightarrow TiO_2 + HBr$
    c. $C_3H_5N_3O_9 \rightarrow CO_2 + N_2 + O_2 + H_2O$ (This reaction represents the decomposition of nitroglycerine.)
11. Balance each equation.
    a. $NH_3 + O_2 \rightarrow NO + H_2O$
    b. $Li + N_2 \rightarrow Li_3N$
    c. $AuCl \rightarrow Au + AuCl_3$
12. Balance each equation.
    a. $NaOH + H_3PO_4 \rightarrow Na_3PO_4 + H_2O$
    b. $N_2H_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow N_2 + HCl$
    c. $Na_2S + H_2S \rightarrow NaSH$
13. Chromium(III) oxide reacts with carbon tetrachloride to make chromium(III) chloride and phosgene ($COCl_2$). Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.
14. The reaction that occurs when an Alka-Seltzer tablet is dropped into a glass of water has sodium bicarbonate reacting with citric acid ($H_3C_6H_5O_7$) to make carbon dioxide, water, and sodium citrate ($Na_3C_6H_5O_7$). Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.
15. When sodium hydrogen carbonate is used to extinguish a kitchen fire, it decomposes into sodium carbonate, carbon dioxide and water. Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction.
16. Elemental bromine gas can be generated by reacting sodium bromide with elemental chlorine. The other product is sodium chloride. Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Answers

1. $H_2(g) + I_2(s) \rightarrow 2HI(g)$
2. $2Na(s) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow 2NaCl(s)$
3. $H_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2HF(g)$
4. $2K(s) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2KF(s)$
5. $2Hg + O_2 \rightarrow 2HgO$
6. $2C_8H_{18} + 25O_2 \rightarrow 16CO_2 + 18H_2O$
7. $2C_3H_7OH + 9O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 8H_2O$
8. $3H_2SO_4 + 2Fe \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3 + 3H_2$
9. a. $MgCl_2 + 2K \rightarrow 2KCl + Mg$

b. $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O$
c. $2NaN_3 \rightarrow 2Na + 3N_2$

10.

a. $NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow N_2O + 2H_2O$
b. $TiBr_4 + 2H_2O \rightarrow TiO_2 + 4HBr$
c. $4C_3H_5N_3O_9 \rightarrow 12CO_2 + 6N_2 + O_2 + 10H_2O$

11.

a. $4NH_3 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 4NO + 6H_2O$
b. $6Li + N_2 \rightarrow 2Li_3N$
c. $3AuCl \rightarrow 2Au + AuCl_3$

12.

a. $3NaOH + H_3PO_4 \rightarrow Na_3PO_4 + 3H_2O$
b. $N_2H_4 + 2Cl_2 \rightarrow N_2 + 4HCl$
c. $Na_2S + H_2S \rightarrow 2NaSH$

13. $Cr_2O_3 + 3CCl_4 \rightarrow 2CrCl_3 + 3COCl_2$

14. $3NaHCO_3 + H_3C_6H_5O_7 \rightarrow 3CO_2 + 3H_2O + Na_3C_6H_5O_7$

15. $2NaHCO_3 \rightarrow Na_2CO_3 + CO_2 + H_2O$

16. $2NaBr + Cl_2 \rightarrow Br_2 + 2NaCl$

5.3: Quantitative Relationships Based on Chemical Equations

Concept Review Exercises

1. Explain how stoichiometric ratios are constructed from a chemical equation.
2. Why is it necessary for a chemical equation to be balanced before it can be used to construct conversion factors?

Answers

1. Stoichiometric ratios are made using the coefficients of the substances in the balanced chemical equation.
2. A balanced chemical equation is necessary so one can construct the proper stoichiometric ratios.

Exercises

1. Balance this equation and write every stoichiometric ratio you can from it.

$$NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow N_2O + H_2O$$

2. Balance this equation.

$$N_2 + H_2 \rightarrow NH_3$$

3. Balance this equation and write every stoichiometric ratio you can from it.

$$Fe_2O_3 + C \rightarrow Fe + CO_2$$

4. Balance this equation.

$$Fe_2O_3 + CO \rightarrow Fe + CO_2$$

5. Balance this equation and determine how many molecules of CO_2 are formed if 15 molecules of C_6H_6 are reacted.

$$C_6H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$$

6. Balance this equation and determine how many formula units of $Ag_2CO_3(s)$ are produced if 20 formula units of Na_2CO_3 are reacted.

$$Na_2CO_3(aq) + AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + Ag_2CO_3(s)$$

7. Copper metal reacts with nitric acid according to this equation:

$$3Cu(s) + 8HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 3Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2NO(g) + 4H_2O(\ell)$$

   a. Verify that this equation is balanced.
   b. How many Cu atoms will react if 488 molecules of aqueous HNO_3 are reacted?

8. Gold metal reacts with a combination of nitric acid and hydrochloric acid according to this equation:

$$Au(s) + 3HNO_3(aq) + 4HCl(aq) \rightarrow HAuCl_4(aq) + 3NO_2(g) + 3H_2O(\ell)$$

   a. Verify that this equation is balanced.
   b. How many Au atoms react with 639 molecules of aqueous HNO_3?

9. Sulfur can be formed by reacting sulfur dioxide with hydrogen sulfide at high temperatures according to this equation:

$$SO_2(g) + 2H_2S(g) \rightarrow 3S(g) + 2H_2O(g)$$

   a. Verify that this equation is balanced.
   b. How many S atoms will be formed from by reacting 1,078 molecules of H_2S?

10. Nitric acid is made by reacting nitrogen dioxide with water:

$$3NO_2(g) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow 2HNO_3(aq) + NO(g)$$

   a. Verify that this equation is balanced.
   b. How many molecules of NO will be formed by reacting 2,268 molecules of NO_2?

Answers

1. $NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow N_2O + 2H_2O$; the stoichiometric ratios are $\frac{1NH_4NO_3}{1N_2O}$, $\frac{1NH_4NO_3}{2H_2O}$, $\frac{1N_2O}{2H_2O}$, and their reciprocals.
2. $N_2 + 3H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$
3. $2Fe_2O_3 + 3C \rightarrow 4Fe + 3CO_2$; the stoichiometric ratios are $\frac{2Fe_2O_3}{3C}$, $\frac{2Fe_2O_3}{4Fe}$, $\frac{2Fe_2O_3}{3CO_2}$, $\frac{3C}{4Fe}$, $\frac{3C}{3CO_2}$, $\frac{4Fe}{3CO_2}$, and their reciprocals.
4. $Fe_2O_3 + 3CO \rightarrow 2Fe + 3CO_2$
5. $2C_6H_6 + 15O_2 \rightarrow 12CO_2 + 6H_2O$; 90 molecules
6. $Na_2CO_3(aq) + 2AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2NaNO_3(aq) + Ag_2CO_3(s)$; 20 formula units
7.
   a. It is balanced.
   b. 183 atoms
8.
   a. It is balanced.
   b. 213 atoms
9.
   a. It is balanced.
   b. 1,617 atoms
10.
   a. It is balanced.
   b. 756 molecules

5.4: Some Types of Chemical Reactions

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the difference between a combination reaction and a combustion reaction?
2. Give the distinguishing characteristic(s) of a decomposition reaction.
3. How do we recognize a combustion reaction?

Answers

1. A combination reaction produces a certain substance; a combustion reaction is a vigorous reaction, usually a combination with oxygen, that is accompanied by the production of light and/or heat.
2. In a decomposition reaction, a single substance reacts to make multiple substances as products.
3. A combustion reaction is typically a vigorous reaction accompanied by light and/or heat, usually because of reaction with oxygen.

Exercises

1. Identify each type of reaction.

    a. $C_6H_5CH_3 + 9O_2 \rightarrow 7CO_2 + 4H_2O$
    b. $2NaHCO_3 \rightarrow Na_2CO_3 + H_2O + CO_2$
    c. $C + 2H_2 \rightarrow CH_4$

2. Identify each type of reaction.

    a. $P_4O_{10} + 6H_2O \rightarrow 4H_3PO_4$
    b. $FeO + SO_3 \rightarrow FeSO_4$
    c. $CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + CaO(s)$

3. Identify each type of reaction.

    a. $2NH_4NO_3(s) \rightarrow 2N_2(g) + 4H_2O(g) + O_2(g)$
    b. $Hg(\ell) + ½O_2\ (g) \rightarrow HgO(s)$
    c. $CH_2CH_2(g) + Br_2(\ell) \rightarrow CH_2BrCH_2Br$

4. Identify each type of reaction.

    a. $Ti(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow TiO_2(s)$
    b. $H_2SO_3(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + SO_2(g)$
    c. $3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2O_3(g)$

Answers

1.
    a. combustion
    b. decomposition
    c. combination
2.
    a. combination
    b. combination
    c. decomposition
3.
    a. decomposition
    b. combustion (also combination)
    c. combination

4.

a. combination

b. decomposition

c. combination

5.5: Oxidation-Reduction (Redox) Reactions

Concept Review Exercises

1. Give two different definitions for oxidation and reduction.
2. Give an example of each definition of oxidation and reduction.

Answers

1. Oxidation is the loss of electrons or the addition of oxygen; reduction is the gain of electrons or the addition of hydrogen.
2. $Zn \rightarrow Zn^{2+} + 2e^-$ (oxidation); $C_2H_4 + H_2 \rightarrow C_2H_6$ (reduction) (answers will vary)

Exercises

1. Which reactions are redox reactions? For those that are redox reactions, identify the oxidizing and reducing agents.

   a. $NaOH + HCl \rightarrow H_2O + NaCl$
   b. $3Mg + 2AlCl_3 \rightarrow 2Al + 3MgCl_2$
   c. $H_2O_2 + H_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$
   d. $KCl + AgNO_3 \rightarrow AgCl + KNO_3$

2. Which reactions are redox reactions? For those that are redox reactions, identify the oxidizing and reducing agents.

   a. $3Cu + 8HNO_3 \rightarrow 3Cu(NO_3)_2 + 2NO + 4H_2O$
   b. $2C_2H_6 + 7O_2 \rightarrow 4CO_2 + 6H_2O$
   c. $2NaHCO_3 \rightarrow Na_2CO_3 + CO_2 + H_2O$
   d. $2K + 2H_2O \rightarrow 2KOH + H_2$

3. Balance each redox reaction by writing appropriate half reactions and combining them to cancel the electrons.

   a. $Ca(s) + H^+(aq) \rightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + H_2(g)$
   b. $I^-(aq) + Br_2(\ell) \rightarrow Br^-(aq) + I_2(s)$

4. Balance each redox reaction by writing appropriate half reactions and combining them to cancel the electrons.

   a. $Fe(s) + Sn^{4+}(aq) \rightarrow Fe^{3+}(aq) + Sn^{2+}(aq)$
   b. $Pb(s) + Pb^{4+}(aq) \rightarrow Pb^{2+}(aq)$ (Hint: both half reactions will yield the same product.)

Answers

1.

   a. no

   b. yes; oxidizing agent: $AlCl_3$; reducing agent: Mg

   c. yes; oxidizing agent: H_2O_2; reducing agent: H_2

   d. no

2.

   a. yes; oxidizing agent: HNO_3; reducing agent: Cu
   b. yes; oxidizing agent: O_2; reducing agent: C_2H_6
   c. no

d. yes; oxidizing agent: H_2O; reducing agent: K

3.

a. Combined: $Ca + 2H^+ \rightarrow Ca^{2+} + H_2$
b. Combined: $Br_2 + 2I^- \rightarrow 2Br^- + I_2$

4.

a. $(Fe \rightarrow Fe^{3+} + 3e^-) \times 2$

$(Sn^{4+} + 2e^- \rightarrow Sn^{2+}) \times 3$

Combined: $2Fe + 3Sn^{4+} \rightarrow 2Fe^{3+} + 3Sn^{2+}$

b. $Pb \rightarrow Pb^{2+} + 2e^-$

$Pb^{4+} + 2e^- \rightarrow Pb^{2+}$

Combined: $Pb + Pb^{4+} \rightarrow 2Pb^{2+}$

5.6: Redox Reactions in Organic Chemistry and Biochemistry

Concept Review Exercise

1. Give some biochemical examples of oxidation and reduction reactions.

Answer

1. photosynthesis and antioxidants in foods (answers will vary)

Exercises

1. A typical respiratory reaction discussed in the text is the oxidation of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$):

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O$$

Is this a redox reaction? If so, what are the oxidizing and reducing agents?

2. The major net reaction in photosynthesis is as follows:

$$6CO_2 + 6H_2O \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

Is this a redox reaction? If so, what are the oxidizing and reducing agents?

3. What would be the ultimate organic product if $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$ were to react with a solution of $K_2Cr_2O_7$?
4. What would be the ultimate organic product if $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$ were to react with a solution of $K_2Cr_2O_7$?
5. What would be the final organic product if $CH_3CH_2CHOHCH_3$ were to react with a solution of $K_2Cr_2O_7$?
6. What would be the major organic product if $CH_3CH_2CHOHCH_2CH_3$ were to react with a solution of $K_2Cr_2O_7$?
7. What alcohol is produced in the reduction of acetone [$(CH_3)_2CO$]?
8. What alcohol is produced in the reduction of propanal (CH_3CH_2CHO)?

Answers

1. yes; oxidizing agent: O_2; reducing agent: $C_6H_{12}O_6$
2. yes; oxidizing agent: CO_2; reducing agent: H_2O
3. CH_3CH_2COOH
4. $CH_3CH_2CH_2COOH$
5. $CH_3CH_2C(O)CH_3$, where the carbon is double bonded to the oxygen
6. $CH_3CH_2C(O)CH_2CH_3$, carbon #3 is double bonded to the oxygen

7. $CH_3CHOHCH_3$, or isopropyl alcohol

8. $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$

5.

Additional Exercises

1. Isooctane (C_8H_{18}) is used as a standard for comparing gasoline performance. Write a balanced chemical equation for the combustion of isooctane.
2. Heptane (C_7H_{16}), like isooctane (see Exercise 1), is also used as a standard for determining gasoline performance. Write a balanced chemical equation for the combustion of heptane.
3. What is the difference between a combination reaction and a redox reaction? Are all combination reactions also redox reactions? Are all redox reactions also combination reactions?
4. Are combustion reactions always redox reactions as well? Explain.
5. A friend argues that the equation

   $$Fe^{2+} + Na \rightarrow Fe + Na^{+}$$

   is balanced because each side has one iron atom and one sodium atom. Explain why your friend is incorrect.
6. Some antacids contain aluminum hydroxide [$Al(OH)_3$]. This compound reacts with excess hydrochloric acid (HCl) in the stomach to neutralize it. If the products of this reaction are water and aluminum chloride, what is the balanced chemical equation for this reaction? What is the stoichiometric ratio between the number of HCl molecules made to the number of H_2O molecules made?
7. Sulfuric acid is made in a three-step process: (1) the combustion of elemental sulfur to produce sulfur dioxide, (2) the continued reaction of sulfur dioxide with oxygen to produce sulfur trioxide, and (3) the reaction of sulfur trioxide with water to make sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4). Write balanced chemical equations for all three reactions.
8. If the products of glucose metabolism are carbon dioxide and water, what is the balanced chemical equation for the overall process? What is the stoichiometric ratio between the number of CO_2 molecules made to the number of H_2O molecules made?
9. Historically, the first true battery was the Leclanché cell, named after its discoverer, Georges Leclanché. It was based on the following reaction:

   $$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$$

   Identify what is being oxidized, what is being reduced, and the respective reducing and oxidizing agents.

Answers

1. $2C_8H_{18} + 25O_2 \rightarrow 16CO_2 + 18H_2O$

2. $C_7H_{16} + 11O_2 \rightarrow 7CO_2 + 8H_2O$

3. A combination reaction makes a new substance from more than one reactant; a redox reaction rearranges electrons. Most (not all) combination reactions are redox reactions. Not all redox reactions are combination reactions.

4. All combustion reactions are redox reactions. In combustion a chemical is combining with oxygen and that chemical is being oxidized. Oxygen, on the other hand, is being reduced.

5. Your friend is incorrect because the number of electrons transferring is not balanced. A balanced equation must not only have the same number of atoms of each element on each side of the equation but must also have the same charge on both sides.

6. $Al(OH)_3 + 3HCl \rightarrow 3H_2O + AlCl_3$; 1:1

7. (1) $S + O_2 \rightarrow SO_2$; (2) $2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$; (3) $SO_3 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2SO_4$

8. $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O$; 1:1

9. oxidized and reducing agent: Zn; reduced and oxidizing agent: Cu^{2+}

This page titled 7.11: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **5.E: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises)** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **5.1: The Law of Conservation of Matter** by Binod Shrestha is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **5.2: Chemical Equations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **5.3: Quantitative Relationships Based on Chemical Equations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **5.4: Some Types of Chemical Reactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **5.5: Oxidation-Reduction (Redox) Reactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **5.6: Redox Reactions in Organic Chemistry and Biochemistry** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

7.E: Quantities in Chemical Reactions (Exercises)

Additional Exercises

1. If the average male has a body mass of 70 kg, of which 60% is water, how many moles of water are in an average male?
2. If the average female is 60.0 kg and contains 0.00174% iron, how many moles of iron are in an average female?
3. How many moles of each element are present in 2.67 mol of each compound?
   a. HCl
   b. H_2SO_4
   c. $Al(NO_3)_3$
   d. $Ga_2(SO_4)_3$
4. How many moles of each element are present in 0.00445 mol of each compound?
   a. HCl
   b. H_2SO_4
   c. $Al_2(CO_3)_3$
   d. $Ga_2(SO_4)_3$
5. What is the mass of one hydrogen atom in grams? What is the mass of one oxygen atom in grams? Do these masses have a 1:16 ratio, as expected?
6. What is the mass of one sodium atom in grams?
7. If 6.63×10^{-6} mol of a compound has a mass of 2.151 mg, what is the molar mass of the compound?
8. Hemoglobin (molar mass is approximately 64,000 g/mol) is the major component of red blood cells that transports oxygen and carbon dioxide in the body. How many moles are in 0.034 g of hemoglobin?

Answers

1. 2,330 mol
3. a. 2.67 mol of H and 2.67 mol of Cl
   b. 5.34 mol of H, 2.67 mol of S, and 10.68 mol of O
   c. 2.67 mol of Al, 8.01 mol of N, and 24.03 mol of O
   d. 5.34 mol of Ga, 8.01 mol of S, and 32.04 mol of O
5. H = 1.66×10^{-24} g and O = 2.66×10^{-23} g; yes, they are in a 1:16 ratio.
7. 324 g/mol

This page titled 7.E: Quantities in Chemical Reactions (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Gases

8.1: States of Matter and Their Changes
8.2: Intermolecular Forces
8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory
8.4: Gas Pressure
8.5: Boyle’s Law - The Relation between Volume and Pressure
8.6: Charles’s Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature
8.7: Gay-Lussac's Law- The Relationship Between Pressure and Temperature
8.8: The Combined Gas Law
8.9: Avogadro’s Law - The Relation between Volume and Molar Amount
8.10: The Ideal Gas Law
8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law
8.E: Solids, Liquids, and Gases (Exercises)

8: Gases is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

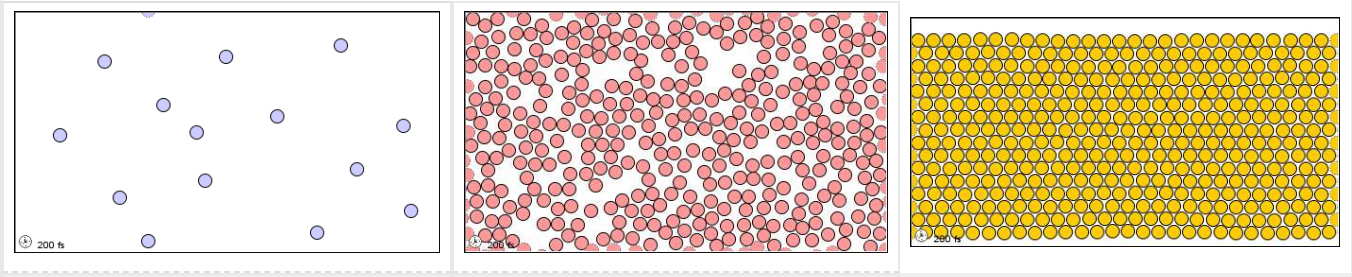
8.1: States of Matter and Their Changes

Learning Objectives

- Review the states of matter and their properties
- Describe how change in temperature will affect the state of matter.

Previously, you were introduced to the three states, also called phases, of matter; solid, liquid, and gas. A phase is a certain form of matter that includes a specific set of physical properties. That is, the atoms, the molecules, or the ions that make up the phase do so in a consistent manner throughout the phase. Science recognizes three stable phases: the ***solid*** *phase*, in which individual particles can be thought of as in contact and held in place; the ***liquid*** *phase*, in which individual particles are in contact but moving with respect to each other; and the ***gas*** *phase*, in which individual particles are separated from each other by relatively large distances (see Figure **8.1.1**).

The *state* of a substance depends on the balance between the *kinetic energy* of the individual particles (molecules or atoms) and the attractive forces between molecules, called *intermolecular forces*. The kinetic energy keeps the molecules apart and moving around, and is a function of the temperature of the substance. The intermolecular forces draw the particles together. A discussed previously, gasses are very sensitive to temperatures and pressure. However, these also affect liquids and solids too. Heating and cooling can change the *kinetic energy* of the particles in a substance, and so, we can change the physical state of a substance by heating or cooling it. Increasing the pressure on a substance forces the molecules closer together, which *increases* the strength of intermolecular forces.



(a) in the gaseous state | *(b) as a liquid* | (c) *in solid form*

Figure **8.1.1**: Molecular level picture of gases, liquids and solids.

We take advantage of changes between the gas, liquid, and solid states to cool a drink with ice cubes (solid to liquid), cool our bodies by perspiration (liquid to gas), and cool food inside a refrigerator (gas to liquid and vice versa). We use dry ice, which is solid CO_2, as a refrigerant (solid to gas), and we make artificial snow for skiing and snowboarding by transforming a liquid to a solid. In this section, we examine what happens when any of the three forms of matter is converted to either of the other two. These **changes of state** are often called phase changes. The six most common phase changes are shown in Figure **8.1.2**.

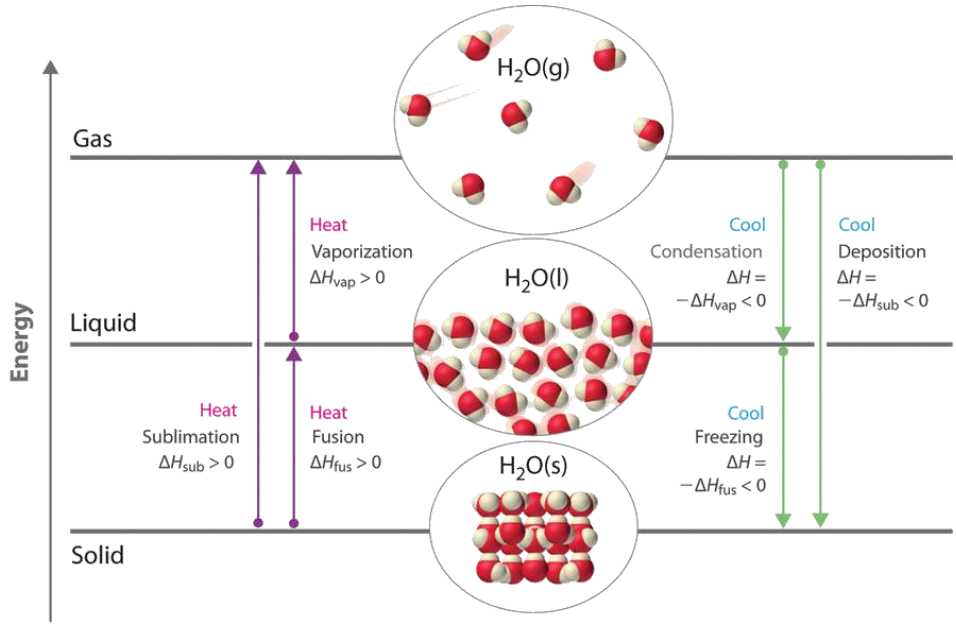


Figure **8.1.2**: Enthalpy changes that accompany phase transitions are indicated by purple and green arrows. (CC BY-SA-NC; anoymous)

Energy Changes That Accompany Phase Changes

Phase changes are *always* accompanied by a change in the enthalpy, ΔH, of a system. For example, converting a liquid, in which the molecules are close together, to a gas, in which the molecules are, on average, far apart, requires an input of energy (heat) to give the molecules enough kinetic energy to allow them to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces. The stronger the attractive forces, the more energy is needed to overcome them. Solids, which are highly ordered, have the strongest intermolecular interactions, whereas gases, which are very disordered, have the weakest. Thus any transition from a more ordered to a less ordered state (solid to liquid, liquid to gas, or solid to gas) requires an input of energy; the ΔH is positive (endothermic). Conversely, any transition from a less ordered to a more ordered state (liquid to solid, gas to liquid, or gas to solid) releases energy; the ΔH is negative (exothermic). The energy change associated with each common phase change is shown in Figure **8.1.2**.

> *ΔH is positive for any transition from a more ordered to a less ordered state and negative for a transition from a less ordered to a more ordered state.*

Previously, we defined the enthalpy changes associated with various chemical and physical processes. The molar **enthalpy of fusion** (ΔH_{fus}), is the energy required to convert a solid to a liquid, a process known as fusion (or melting). As noted above, the process of melting requires energy and therefore, the (ΔH_{fus}) is positive. The reverse process of freezing would release energy making the (ΔH_{fus}) negative. The molar **enthalpy of vaporization** (ΔH_{vap}), is the energy required to convert a liquid to a gas, known as vaporization. Melting points, enthalpies of fusion, boiling points, and enthalpies of vaporization for selected compounds are listed in Table **8.1.1**.

Table **8.1.1**: Melting and Boiling Points and Enthalpies of Fusion and Vaporization for Selected Substances. Values given under 1 atm. of external pressure.

Substance	Melting Point (°C)	ΔH_{fus} (kJ/mol)	Boiling Point (°C)	ΔH_{vap} (kJ/mol)
N_2	−210.0	0.71	−195.8	5.6
HCl	−114.2	2.00	−85.1	16.2
Br_2	−7.2	10.6	58.8	30.0
CCl_4	−22.6	2.56	76.8	29.8
CH_3CH_2OH (ethanol)	−114.1	4.93	78.3	38.6
$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$ (*n*-hexane)	−95.4	13.1	68.7	28.9
H_2O	0	6.01	100	40.7
Na	97.8	2.6	883	97.4
NaF	996	33.4	1704	176.1

The substances with the highest melting points usually have the highest enthalpies of fusion; they tend to be ionic compounds that are held together by very strong electrostatic interactions. Substances with high boiling points are those with strong intermolecular interactions that must be overcome to convert a liquid to a gas, resulting in high enthalpies of vaporization. The enthalpy of vaporization of a given substance is much greater than its enthalpy of fusion because it takes more energy to completely separate molecules (conversion from a liquid to a gas) than to enable them only to move past one another freely (conversion from a solid to a liquid).

8.1: States of Matter and Their Changes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.1: A Molecular Comparison of Gases, Liquids, and Solids** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.
- **11.4: Phase Changes** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

8.2: Intermolecular Forces

Learning Objective

- Identify the different types of intermolecular forces.
- Relate the physical properties of a substance to the strength of attractive forces.

Why does a substance exist as a solid, liquid, or a gas at specific temperatures? Why do some substances evaporate quickly or melt more easily? These questions can be answered by considering the balance between the energy of the particles and **intermolecular forces** (or intermolecular interactions) between the particles. If the forces between particles are strong enough, the substance is a liquid or, if stronger, a solid. If the forces between particles are weak and sufficient energy is present, the particles separate from each other, so the gas phase is the preferred phase. The energy of the particles is mostly determined by temperature, so temperature is the main variable that determines what phase is stable at any given point.

There are three types of intermolecular forces: *London Dispersion, dipole-dipole, and hydrogen bonding*, collectively termed van der Waals forces, that will be introduced below.

London Dispersion Forces

There are forces between all molecules that are caused by electrons being in different places in a molecule at any one time, which sets up a temporary separation of charge (a temporary dipole moment) that disappears almost as soon as it appears. These very weak intermolecular interactions are called **dispersion forces** (or **London dispersion forces**, named for the physicist Fritz London, who first described this force in the early 1900s).

Dispersion forces that develop between atoms in different molecules can attract the two molecules to each other. The forces are relatively weak, however, and become significant only when the molecules are very close. **Larger and heavier atoms and molecules** exhibit **stronger dispersion forces** than do smaller and lighter atoms and molecules. F_2 and Cl_2 are gases at room temperature (reflecting weaker attractive forces); Br_2 is a liquid, and I_2 is a solid (reflecting stronger attractive forces). Trends in observed melting and boiling points for the halogens clearly demonstrate this effect, as seen in Table **8.2.1**.

Table **8.2.1**: **Melting and Boiling Points of the Halogens**

Halogen	Molar Mass	Atomic Radius	Melting Point	Boiling Point
fluorine, F_2	38 g/mol	72 pm	53 K	85 K
chlorine, Cl_2	71 g/mol	99 pm	172 K	238 K
bromine, Br_2	160 g/mol	114 pm	266 K	332 K
iodine, I_2	254 g/mol	133 pm	387 K	457 K
astatine, At_2	420 g/mol	150 pm	575 K	610 K

The increase in melting and boiling points with increasing atomic/molecular size may be rationalized by considering how the strength of dispersion forces is affected by the electronic structure of the atoms or molecules in the substance. In a larger atom, the valence electrons are, on average, farther from the nuclei than in a smaller atom. Thus, they are less tightly held and can more easily form the temporary dipoles that produce the attraction. The measure of how easy or difficult it is for another electrostatic charge (for example, a nearby ion or polar molecule) to distort a molecule's charge distribution (its electron cloud) is known as **polarizability**. A molecule that has a charge cloud that is easily distorted is said to be very polarizable and will have large dispersion forces; one with a charge cloud that is difficult to distort is not very polarizable and will have small dispersion forces.

Example 8.2.1

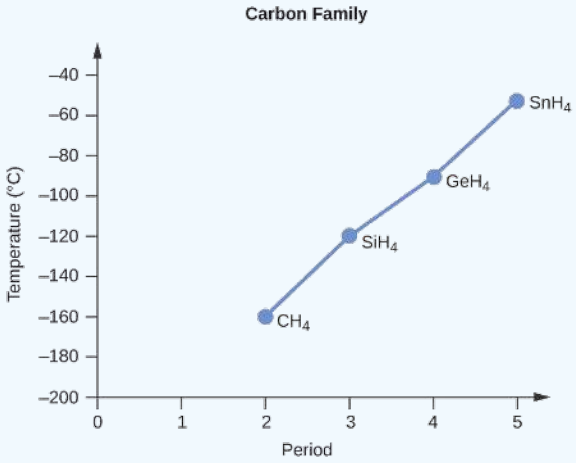
Order the following compounds of a group 14 element and hydrogen from lowest to highest boiling point: CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

Applying the skills acquired in the chapter on chemical bonding and molecular geometry, all of these compounds are predicted to be nonpolar, so they may experience only dispersion forces: the smaller the molecule, the less polarizable and the weaker the dispersion forces; the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces. The molar masses of CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4 are approximately 16 g/mol, 32 g/mol, 77 g/mol, and 123 g/mol, respectively. Therefore, CH_4 is expected to have the lowest boiling point and SnH_4 the highest boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is expected to be

$CH_4 < SiH_4 < GeH_4 < SnH_4$

A graph of the actual boiling points of these compounds versus the period of the group 14 elements shows this prediction to be correct:



? Exercise 8.2.1

Order the following hydrocarbons from lowest to highest boiling point: C_2H_6, C_3H_8, and C_4H_{10}.

Answer

All of these compounds are nonpolar and only have London dispersion forces: the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces and the higher the boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is therefore

$$C_2H_6 < C_3H_8 < C_4H_{10}.$$

Dipole-Dipole Intermolecular Forces

Recall that a polar molecule will have a net unequal distribution of electrons in its covalent bonds resulting in a partial positive charge on one side of the molecule and a partial negative charge on the other side of the molecule—a separation of charge called a ***dipole***. The electrostatic attraction between oppositely charged ends of polar molecules are called **dipole-dipole interactions**, (as illustrated in Figure 8.2.1). Dipole-dipole attractions are between permanent dipoles and are therefore generally *stronger* than dispersion forces, which are between temporary dipoles. Thus, a polar molecule such as CH_2Cl_2 has a significantly higher boiling point (313 K, or 40°C) than a nonpolar molecule like CF_4 (145 K, or −128°C), even though it has a lower molar mass (85 g/mol vs. 88 g/mol).

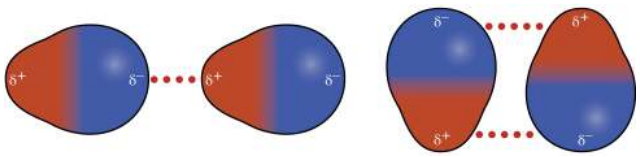


Figure 8.2.1: This image illustrates a dipole-dipole interaction, two arrangements of polar molecules that allow an attraction between the partial negative end of one molecule and the partial positive end of another.

Example 8.2.2

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: N_2 or CO. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

CO and N_2 are both diatomic molecules with masses of about 28 amu, so they experience similar London dispersion forces. Because CO is a polar molecule, it experiences dipole-dipole attractions. Because N_2 is nonpolar, its molecules cannot exhibit dipole-dipole attractions. The dipole-dipole attractions between CO molecules are comparably stronger than the dispersion forces between nonpolar N_2 molecules, so CO is expected to have the higher boiling point.

Exercise 8.2.2

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: **ICl** or $\mathbf{Br_2}$. Explain your reasoning.

Answer

ICl. ICl and Br_2 have similar masses (~160 amu) and therefore experience similar London dispersion forces. ICl is polar and thus also exhibits dipole-dipole attractions; Br_2 is nonpolar and does not. The relatively stronger dipole-dipole attractions require more energy to overcome, so ICl will have the higher boiling point.

Hydrogen Bonds

An unusually strong form of dipole-dipole interaction is called **hydrogen bonding**. Hydrogen bonding is found in molecules with an H atom bonded to an N atom, an O atom, or an F atom. Such covalent bonds are very polar, and the dipole-dipole interaction between these bonds in two or more molecules is strong enough to create a new category of intermolecular force. Hydrogen bonding is the reason water has unusual properties. For such a small molecule (its molar mass is only 18 g/mol), H_2O has relatively high melting and boiling points. Its boiling point is 373 K (100°C), while the boiling point of a similar molecule, H_2S, is 233 K (−60°C). This is because H_2O molecules experience hydrogen bonding, while H_2S molecules do not. This strong attraction between H_2O molecules requires additional energy to separate the molecules in the condensed phase, so its boiling point is higher than would be expected. Hydrogen bonding is also responsible for water's ability as a solvent, its high heat capacity, and its ability to expand when freezing; the molecules line up in such a way that there is extra space between the molecules, increasing its volume in the solid state (Figure **8.2.2**).

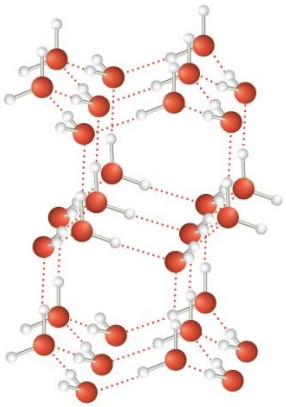


Figure **8.2.2**: Hydrogen Bonding. When water solidifies, hydrogen bonding between the molecules forces the molecules to line up in a way that creates empty space between the molecules, increasing the overall volume of the solid. This is why ice is less dense than liquid water.

Despite use of the word “bond,” keep in mind that hydrogen bonds are *intermolecular* attractive forces, not *intramolecular* attractive forces (covalent bonds). Hydrogen bonds are much weaker than covalent bonds, but are generally much stronger than other dipole-dipole attractions and dispersion forces.

Hydrogen Bonding and DNA

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is found in every living organism and contains the genetic information that determines the organism's characteristics, provides the blueprint for making the proteins necessary for life, and serves as a template to pass this information on to the organism's offspring. A DNA molecule consists of two (anti-)parallel chains of repeating nucleotides, which form its well-known double helical structure, as shown in Figure **8.2.3**.

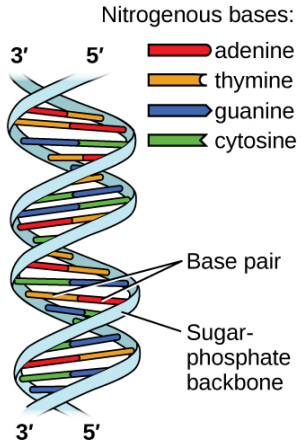


Figure **8.2.3**: Two separate DNA molecules form a double-stranded helix in which the molecules are held together via hydrogen bonding. (credit: modification of work by Jerome Walker, Dennis Myts)

Each nucleotide contains a (deoxyribose) sugar bound to a phosphate group on one side, and one of four nitrogenous bases on the other. Two of the bases, cytosine (C) and thymine (T), are single-ringed structures known as pyrimidines. The other two, adenine (A) and guanine (G), are double-ringed structures called purines. These bases form complementary base pairs consisting of one purine and one pyrimidine, with adenine pairing with thymine, and cytosine with guanine. Each base pair is held together by hydrogen bonding. A and T share two hydrogen bonds, C and G share three, and both pairings have a similar shape and structure Figure **8.2.4**

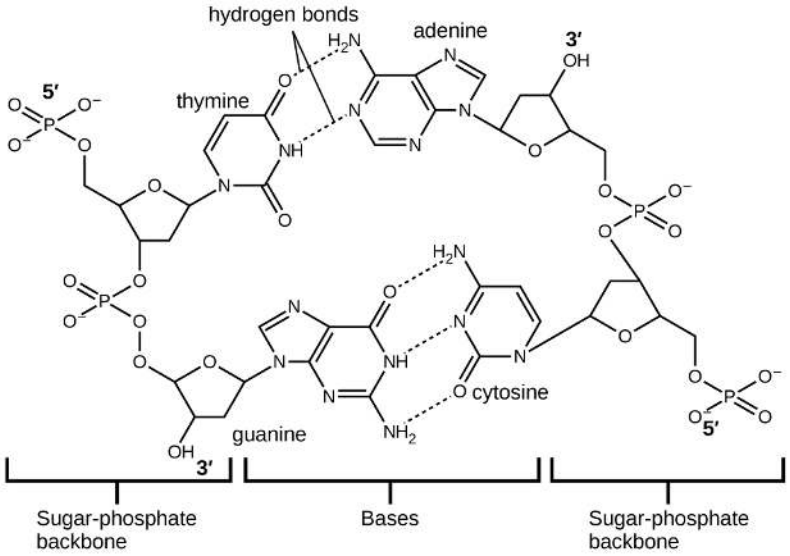


Figure **8.2.4**: The geometries of the base molecules result in maximum hydrogen bonding between adenine and thymine (AT) and between guanine and cytosine (GC), so-called "complementary base pairs."

The cumulative effect of millions of hydrogen bonds effectively holds the two strands of DNA together. Importantly, the two strands of DNA can relatively easily "unzip" down the middle since hydrogen bonds are relatively weak compared to the covalent bonds that hold the atoms of the individual DNA molecules together. This allows both strands to function as a template for replication.

Applications: Geckos and Intermolecular Forces

Geckos have an amazing ability to adhere to most surfaces. They can quickly run up smooth walls and across ceilings that have no toe-holds, and they do this without having suction cups or a sticky substance on their toes. And while a gecko can lift its feet easily as it walks along a surface, if you attempt to pick it up, it sticks to the surface. How are geckos (as well as spiders and some other insects) able to do this? Although this phenomenon has been investigated for hundreds of years, scientists only recently uncovered the details of the process that allows geckos' feet to behave this way.

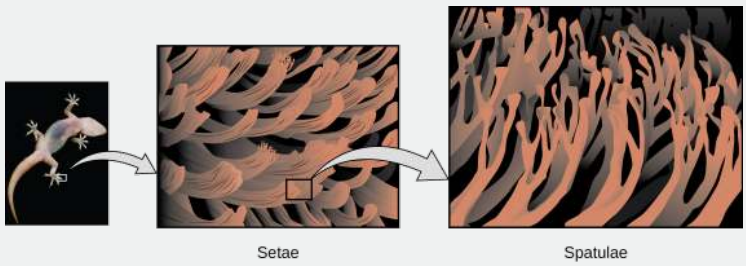


Figure **8.2.12**: *Geckos' toes contain large numbers of tiny hairs (setae), which branch into many triangular tips (spatulae). Geckos adhere to surfaces because of van der Waals attractions between the surface and a gecko's millions of spatulae. By changing how the spatulae contact the surface, geckos can turn their stickiness "on" and "off." (credit photo: modification of work by "JC*+A!"/Flickr)*

Geckos' toes are covered with hundreds of thousands of tiny hairs known as *setae*, with each seta, in turn, branching into hundreds of tiny, flat, triangular tips called *spatulae*. The huge numbers of spatulae on its setae provide a gecko, shown in Figure 8.1.12, with a large total surface area for sticking to a surface. In 2000, Kellar Autumn, who leads a multi-institutional gecko research team, found that geckos adhered equally well to both polar silicon dioxide and nonpolar gallium arsenide. This proved that geckos stick to surfaces because of dispersion forces—weak intermolecular attractions arising from temporary, synchronized charge distributions between adjacent molecules. Although dispersion forces are very weak, the total attraction over millions of spatulae is large enough to support many times the gecko's weight.

In 2014, two scientists developed a model to explain how geckos can rapidly transition from "sticky" to "non-sticky." Alex Greaney and Congcong Hu at Oregon State University described how geckos can achieve this by changing the angle between their spatulae and the surface. Geckos' feet, which are normally nonsticky, become sticky when a small shear force is applied. By curling and uncurling their toes, geckos can alternate between sticking and unsticking from a surface, and thus easily move across it. Further investigations may eventually lead to the development of better adhesives and other applications.

Boiling Points and Bonding Types

In order for a substance to enter the gas phase, its particles must completely overcome the intermolecular forces holding them together. Therefore, a comparison of boiling points is essentially equivalent to comparing the strengths of the attractive intermolecular forces exhibited by the individual molecules. For small molecular compounds, London dispersion forces are the weakest intermolecular forces. Dipole-dipole forces are somewhat stronger, and hydrogen bonding is a particularly strong form of dipole-dipole interaction. However, when the mass of a nonpolar molecule is sufficiently large, its dispersion forces can be stronger than the dipole-dipole forces in a lighter polar molecule. Thus, nonpolar Cl_2 has a higher boiling point than polar HCl.

Table **8.2.3**: Intermolecular Forces and Boiling Points

Substance	Strongest Intermolecular Force	Boiling Point (°C)
H_2	dispersion	-253
Ne	dispersion	-246
O_2	dispersion	-183
Cl_2	dispersion	-34
HCl	dipole-dipole	-85
HBr	dipole-dipole	-66
H_2S	dipole-dipole	-61
NH_3	hydrogen bonding	-33
HF	hydrogen bonding	20
H_2O	hydrogen bonding	100

Example 8.2.3

Consider the compounds dimethylether (CH_3OCH_3), ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH), and propane ($CH_3CH_2CH_3$). Their boiling points, not necessarily in order, are −42.1 °C, −24.8 °C, and 78.4 °C. Match each compound with its boiling point. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

The shapes of CH_3OCH_3, CH_3CH_2OH, and $CH_3CH_2CH_3$ are similar, as are their molar masses (46 g/mol, 46 g/mol, and 44 g/mol, respectively), so they will exhibit similar dispersion forces. Since $CH_3CH_2CH_3$ is nonpolar, it may exhibit *only* dispersion forces. Because CH_3OCH_3 is polar, it will also experience dipole-dipole attractions. Finally, CH_3CH_2OH has an −OH group, and so it will experience the uniquely strong dipole-dipole attraction known as hydrogen bonding. So the ordering in terms of strength of IMFs, and thus boiling points, is $CH_3CH_2CH_3 < CH_3OCH_3 < CH_3CH_2OH$. The boiling point of propane is −42.1 °C, the boiling point of dimethylether is −24.8 °C, and the boiling point of ethanol is 78.5 °C.

Exercise 8.2.3

Ethane (CH_3CH_3) has a melting point of −183 °C and a boiling point of −89 °C. Predict the melting and boiling points for methylamine (CH_3NH_2). Explain your reasoning.

Answer

The melting point and boiling point for methylamine are predicted to be significantly greater than those of ethane. CH_3CH_3 and CH_3NH_2 are similar in size and mass, but methylamine possesses an −NH group and therefore may exhibit hydrogen bonding. This greatly increases its IMFs, and therefore its melting and boiling points. It is difficult to predict values, but the known values are a melting point of −93 °C and a boiling point of −6 °C.

Example 8.2.4: Intermolecular Forces

What intermolecular forces besides dispersion forces, if any, exist in each substance? Are any of these substances solids at room temperature?

a. potassium chloride (KCl)
b. ethanol (C_2H_5OH)
c. bromine (Br_2)

Solution

a. Potassium chloride is composed of ions, so the intermolecular interaction in potassium chloride is ionic forces. Because ionic interactions are strong, it might be expected that potassium chloride is a solid at room temperature.

b. Ethanol has a hydrogen atom attached to an oxygen atom, so it would experience hydrogen bonding. If the hydrogen bonding is strong enough, ethanol might be a solid at room temperature, but it is difficult to know for certain. (Ethanol is actually a liquid at room temperature.)

c. Elemental bromine has two bromine atoms covalently bonded to each other. Because the atoms on either side of the covalent bond are the same, the electrons in the covalent bond are shared equally, and the bond is a nonpolar covalent bond. Thus, diatomic bromine does not have any intermolecular forces other than dispersion forces. It is unlikely to be a solid at room temperature unless the dispersion forces are strong enough. Bromine is a liquid at room temperature.

? Exercise 8.2.4

What intermolecular forces besides dispersion forces, if any, exist in each substance? Are any of these substances solids at room temperature?

a. methylamine (CH_3NH_2)
b. calcium sulfate ($CaSO_4$)
c. carbon monoxide (CO)

Answer

a. dipole-dipole, hydrogen bonding

b. ionic forces (solid at room temperature)

c. dipole-dipole

Concept Review Exercise

1. What types of intermolecular interactions can exist in compounds?

2. What is the difference between covalent network and covalent molecular compounds?

Answer

1. ionic bonding, network covalent, dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding.

2. Covalent network compounds contain atoms that are covalently bonded to other individual atoms in a giant 3-dimensional network. Covalent molecular compounds contain individual molecules that are attracted to one another through dispersion, dipole-dipole or hydrogen bonding.

Key Takeaways

- A phase is a form of matter that has the same physical properties throughout.
- Molecules interact with each other through various forces: dipole-dipole interactions, hydrogen bonding, and dispersion forces.
- Dipole-dipole attractions result from the electrostatic attraction of the partial negative end of one dipolar molecule for the partial positive end of another.
- Hydrogen bonds are a special type of dipole-dipole attraction that results when hydrogen is bonded to one of the three most electronegative elements: F, O, or N.
- The temporary dipole that results from the motion of the electrons in an atom can induce a dipole in an adjacent atom and give rise to the London dispersion force. London forces increase with increasing molecular size.

Exercises

1. List the three common phases in the order you are likely to find them—from lowest temperature to highest temperature.

2. List the three common phases in the order they exist from lowest energy to highest energy.

3. List these intermolecular interactions from weakest to strongest: London forces, hydrogen bonding, and ionic interactions.
4. List these intermolecular interactions from weakest to strongest: covalent network bonding, dipole-dipole interactions, and dispersion forces.
5. What type of intermolecular interaction is predominate in each substance?
    a. water (H_2O)
    b. sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4)
    c. decane ($C_{10}H_{22}$)
6. What type of intermolecular interaction is predominate in each substance?
    a. diamond (C, crystal)
    b. helium (He)
    c. ammonia (NH_3)
7. Explain how a molecule like carbon dioxide (CO_2) can have polar covalent bonds but be nonpolar overall.
8. Sulfur dioxide (SO_2) has a formula similar to that of carbon dioxide (see Exercise 7) but is a polar molecule overall. What can you conclude about the shape of the SO_2 molecule?
9. What are some of the physical properties of substances that experience covalent network bonding?
10. What are some of the physical properties of substances that experience only dispersion forces?

Answers

1. solid, liquid, and gas

2. solid, liquid, and gas

3. London forces, hydrogen bonding, and ionic interactions

4. dispersion, dipole-dipole, network covalent

5. a. hydrogen bonding
    b. ionic interactions
    c. dispersion forces

6. a. network covalent
b. dispersion
c. hydrogen bonding

7. The two covalent bonds are oriented in such a way that their dipoles cancel out.

8. SO_2 is not a linear molecule. It has a bent or V-shape.

9. very hard, high melting point

10. very soft, very low melting point

8.2: Intermolecular Forces is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.2: Intermolecular Forces** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory

Learning Objectives

- State the major concepts behind the kinetic theory of gases.
- Relate the general properties of gases to the kinetic theory.

Gases were among the first substances studied in terms of the modern scientific method, which was developed in the 1600s. It did not take long to recognize that gases all shared certain physical behaviors, suggesting that all gases could be described by one all-encompassing theory. Today, that theory is the **kinetic theory of gases**. The kinetic theory of gases is based on the following statements:

1. Gases consist of tiny particles of matter that are in constant motion.
2. Gas particles are constantly colliding with each other and the walls of a container. These collisions are elastic—that is, there is no net loss of energy from the collisions.
3. Gas particles are separated by large distances, with the size of a gas particle tiny compared to the distances that separate them.
4. There are no interactive forces (i.e., attraction or repulsion) between the particles of a gas.
5. The average speed of gas particles is dependent on the temperature of the gas.

Figure 8.3.1 shows a representation of how we mentally picture the gas phase.

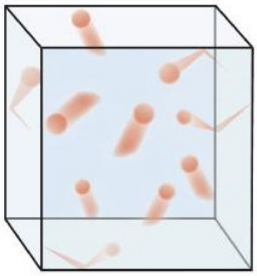


Figure 8.3.1: The Kinetic Theory of Gases. The kinetic theory of gases describes this state of matter as composed of tiny particles in constant motion, with a lot of distance between the particles.

This model of gases explains some of the physical properties of gases. Because most of a gas is empty space, a gas has a low density and can expand or contract under the appropriate influence. The fact that gas particles are in constant motion means that two or more gases will always mix, as the particles from the individual gases move and collide with each other.

An **ideal gas** is a gas that exactly follows the statements of the kinetic theory. Unfortunately, *real gases* are not ideal. Many gases deviate slightly from agreeing perfectly with the kinetic theory of gases. However, most gases adhere to the statements, and the kinetic theory of gases is well accepted by the scientific community.

- The physical behavior of gases is explained by the kinetic theory of gases.
- An ideal gas adheres exactly to the kinetic theory of gases.

This page titled 8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, & Adam Hahn.

- **6.2: Kinetic Theory of Gases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.4: Gas Pressure

Learning Objectives

- To describe and measure the pressure of a gas.

This page titled 8.4: Gas Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

8.5: Boyle’s Law - The Relation between Volume and Pressure

Learning Objectives

- Define the relationship between gas volume and pressure, Boyle's Law.
- Use Boyle's Law to calculate changes in pressure or volume of a gas.

When seventeenth-century scientists began studying the physical properties of gases, they noticed some simple relationships between some of the measurable properties of the gas. Take pressure (P) and volume (V), for example. Scientists noted that for a given amount of a gas (usually expressed in units of moles [n]), if the temperature (T) of the gas was kept constant, pressure and volume were related: As one increases, the other decreases. As one decreases, the other increases. We say that pressure and volume are *inversely related*.

There is more to it, however: pressure and volume of a given amount of gas at constant temperature are *numerically* related. If you take the pressure value and multiply it by the volume value, the product is a constant (k) for a given amount of gas at a constant temperature:

$$P \times V = k \ (at\ constant\ n\ and\ T)$$

If either volume or pressure changes while amount and temperature stay the same, then the other property must change so that the product of the two properties still equals that same constant. That is, if the original conditions are labeled P_1 and V_1 and the new conditions are labeled P_2 and V_2, we have

$$P_1V_1 = k = P_2V_2$$

where the properties are assumed to be multiplied together. Leaving out the middle part, we have simply

$$P_1V_1 = P_2V_2 \ (at\ constant\ n\ and\ T)$$

This equation is an example of a gas law. A **gas law** is a simple mathematical formula that allows you to model, or predict, the behavior of a gas. This particular gas law is called **Boyle's law**, after the English scientist Robert Boyle, who first announced it in 1662. Figure 8.5.1 shows two representations of how Boyle's law works.

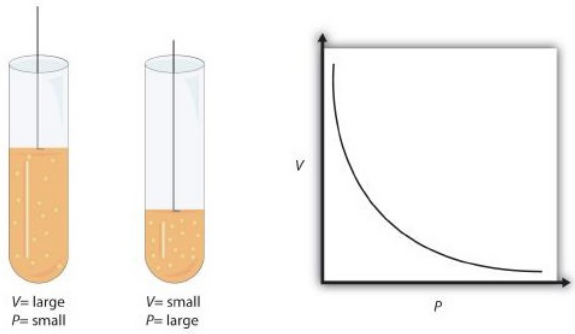


Figure 8.5.1: Boyle's Law. A piston having a certain pressure and volume (left piston) will have half the volume when its pressure is twice as much (right piston). One can also plot P versus V for a given amount of gas at a certain temperature; such a plot will look like the graph on the right.

Boyle's law is an example of a second type of mathematical problem we see in chemistry—one based on a mathematical formula. Tactics for working with mathematical formulas are different from tactics for working with conversion factors. First, most of the questions you will have to answer using formulas are word-type questions, so the first step is to identify what quantities are known and assign them to variables. Second, in most formulas, some mathematical rearrangements (i.e., algebra) must be performed to solve for an unknown variable. The rule is that to find the value of the unknown variable, you must mathematically isolate the unknown variable *by itself and in the numerator* of one side of the equation. Finally, units must be consistent. For example, in Boyle's law there are two pressure variables; they must have the same unit. There are also two volume variables; they also must have the same unit. In most cases, it won't matter *what* the unit is, but the unit must be the *same* on both sides of the equation.

Example 8.5.1

A sample of gas has an initial pressure of 2.44 atm and an initial volume of 4.01 L. Its pressure changes to 1.93 atm. What is the new volume if temperature and amount are kept constant?

Solution

First, determine what quantities we are given. We are given an initial pressure and an initial volume, so let these values be P_1 and V_1:

$$P_1 = 2.44 \text{ atm and } V_1 = 4.01 \text{ L}$$

We are given another quantity, final pressure of 1.93 atm, but not a final volume. This final volume is the variable we will solve for.

$$P_2 = 1.93 \text{ atm and } V_2 = ? \text{ L}$$

Substituting these values into Boyle's law, we get

$$(2.44 \text{ atm})(4.01 \text{ L}) = (1.93 \text{ atm})V_2$$

To solve for the unknown variable, we isolate it by dividing both sides of the equation by 1.93 atm—both the number *and* the unit:

$$\frac{(2.44\,atm)(4.01\,L)}{1.93\,atm} = \frac{(1.93\,atm)\,V_2}{1.93\,atm}$$

Note that, on the left side of the equation, the unit *atm* is in the numerator and the denominator of the fraction. They cancel algebraically, just as a number would. On the right side, the unit *atm* and the number 1.93 are in the numerator and the denominator, so the entire quantity cancels:

$$\frac{(2.44\,\cancel{atm})(4.01\,L)}{1.93\,\cancel{atm}} = \frac{(1.93\,\cancel{atm})\,V_2}{1.93\,\cancel{atm}}$$

What we have left is

$$\frac{(2.44)(4.01\,L)}{1.93} = V_2$$

Now we simply multiply and divide the numbers together and combine the answer with the L unit, which is a unit of volume. Doing so, we get $V_2 = 5.07\,L$

Does this answer make sense? We know that pressure and volume are inversely related; as one decreases, the other increases. Pressure is decreasing (from 2.44 atm to 1.93 atm), so volume should be increasing to compensate, and it is (from 4.01 L to 5.07 L). So the answer makes sense based on Boyle's law.

Exercise 8.5.1

If P_1 = 334 torr, V_1 = 37.8 mL, and P_2 = 102 torr, what is V_2?

Answer

124 mL

As mentioned, you can use any units for pressure or volume, but both pressures must be expressed in the same units, and both volumes must be expressed in the same units.

Example 8.5.2

A sample of gas has an initial pressure of 722 torr and an initial volume of 88.8 mL. Its volume changes to 0.663 L. What is the new pressure?

Solution

We can still use Boyle's law to answer this, but now the two volume quantities have different units. It does not matter which unit we change, as long as we perform the conversion correctly. Let us change the 0.663 L to milliliters:

$$0.663\,L \times \frac{1000\,ml}{1\,L} = 663\,ml$$

Now that both volume quantities have the same units, we can substitute into Boyle's law:

$$(722\,torr)(88.8\,ml) = P_2(663\,ml)$$

$$\frac{(722\,torr)(88.8)\,ml}{(663\,ml)} = P_2$$

The mL units cancel, and we multiply and divide the numbers to get P_2 = 96.7 torr

The volume is increasing, and the pressure is decreasing, which is as expected for Boyle's law.

? Exercise 8.5.2

If V_1 = 456 mL, P_1 = 308 torr, and P_2 = 1.55 atm, what is V_2?

Answer

119 mL

To Your Health: Breathing and Boyle's Law

What do you do about 20 times per minute for your whole life, without break, and often without even being aware of it? The answer, of course, is respiration, or breathing. How does it work? It turns out that the gas laws apply here. Your lungs take in gas that your body needs (oxygen) and get rid of waste gas (carbon dioxide). Lungs are made of spongy, stretchy tissue that expands and contracts while you breathe. When you inhale, your diaphragm and intercostal muscles (the muscles between your ribs) contract, expanding your chest cavity and making your lung volume larger. The increase in volume leads to a decrease in pressure (Boyle's law). This causes air to flow into the lungs (from high pressure to low pressure). When you exhale, the process reverses: Your diaphragm and rib muscles relax, your chest cavity contracts, and your lung volume decreases, causing the pressure to increase (Boyle's law again), and air flows out of the lungs (from high pressure to low pressure). You then breathe in and out again, and again, repeating this Boyle's law cycle for the rest of your life (Figure **8.5.2**).

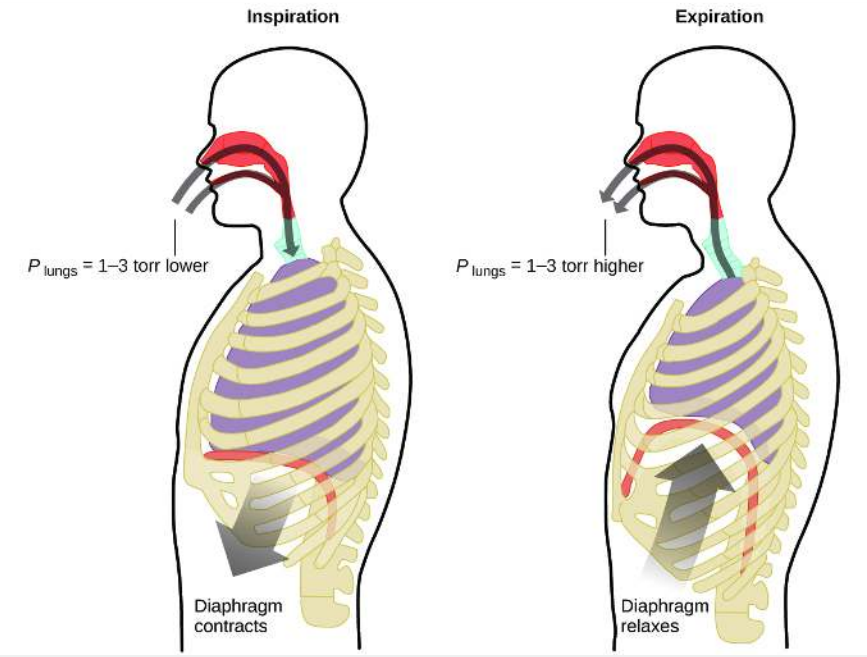


Figure **8.5.2**: Breathing occurs because expanding and contracting lung volume creates small pressure differences between your lungs and your surroundings, causing air to be drawn into and forced out of your lungs.

This figure contains two diagrams of a cross section of the human head and torso. The first diagram on the left is labeled “Inspiration.” It shows curved arrows in gray proceeding through the nasal passages and mouth to the lungs. An arrow points downward from the diaphragm, which is relatively flat, just beneath the lungs. This arrow is labeled “Diaphragm contracts.” At the entrance to the mouth and nasal passages, a label of P subscript lungs equals 1 dash 3 torr lower” is provided. The second, similar diagram, which is labeled “Expiration,” reverses the direction of both arrows. Arrows extend from the lungs out through the nasal passages and mouth. Similarly, an arrow points up to the diaphragm, showing a curved diaphragm and lungs reduced in size from the previous image. This arrow is labeled “Diaphragm relaxes.” At the entrance to the mouth and nasal passages, a label of P subscript lungs equals 1 dash 3 torr higher” is provided.

Summary

- The behavior of gases can be modeled with gas laws.
- Boyle's law relates a gas's pressure and volume at constant temperature and amount.

8.5: Boyle’s Law - The Relation between Volume and Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.4: Gas Laws** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.
- **9.2: Relating Pressure, Volume, Amount, and Temperature - The Ideal Gas Law** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

8.6: Charles's Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature

Learning Objectives

- Define the relationship between gas temperature and volume, Charles's Law.
- Use Charles's Law to calculate changes in temperature or volume of a gas.

In addition to pressure and volume, another measurable characteristics of a gas is temperature (*T*). Perhaps one can vary the temperature of a gas sample and note what effect it has on the other properties of the gas. Early scientists did just this, discovering that if the amount of a gas and its pressure are kept constant, then changing the temperature changes the volume (*V*). As temperature increases, volume increases; as temperature decreases, volume decreases. We say that these two characteristics are *directly related*.

Kelvin Temperature Scale

A mathematical relationship between *V* and *T* should be possible except for one thought: what temperature scale should we use? We know from previous chapters that scientists uses several possible temperature scales. Experiments show that the volume of a gas is related to its absolute temperature in **Kelvin**, *not its temperature in degrees Celsius*. If the temperature of a gas is expressed in Kelvins, then experiments show that the *ratio* of volume to temperature is a constant (*k*):

$$\frac{V}{T} = k$$

Charles's Law

We can modify this equation as we modified Boyle's law: the initial conditions V_1 and T_1 have a certain value, and the value must be the same when the conditions of the gas are changed to some new conditions V_2 and T_2, as long as pressure and the amount of the gas remain constant. Thus, we have another gas law:

$$\frac{V_1}{T_1} = \frac{V_2}{T_2} \ (at\ constant\ P\ and\ n)$$

This gas law is commonly referred to as **Charles's law**, after the French scientist Jacques Charles, who performed experiments on gases in the 1780s. The tactics for using this mathematical formula are similar to those for Boyle's law. To determine an unknown quantity, use algebra to isolate the unknown variable by itself and in the numerator; the units of similar variables must be the same. But we add one more tactic: all temperatures must be expressed in the absolute temperature scale (Kelvin). As a reminder, we review the conversion between the absolute temperature scale and the Celsius temperature scale:

$$K = °C + 273$$

where K represents the temperature in kelvins, and °C represents the temperature in degrees Celsius.

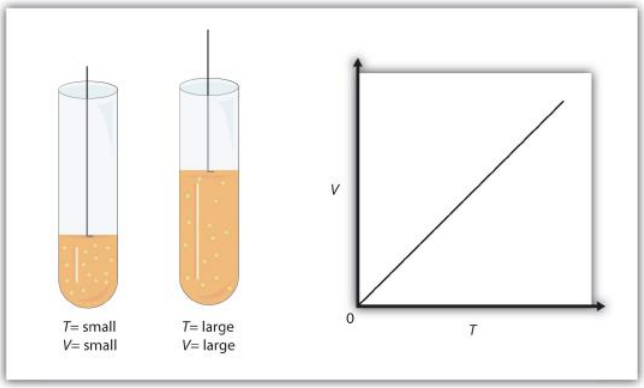


Figure **8.6.1**: Charles's Law. A piston having a certain volume and temperature (left piston) will have twice the volume when its temperature is twice as much (right piston). One can also plot V versus T for a given amount of gas at a certain pressure; such a plot will look like the graph on the right.

Example 8.6.1

A sample of gas has an initial volume of 34.8 mL and an initial temperature of 315 K. What is the new volume if the temperature is increased to 559 K? Assume constant pressure and amount for the gas.

Solution

First, we assign the given values to their variables. The initial volume is V_1, so V_1 = 34.8 mL, and the initial temperature is T_1, so T_1 = 315 K. The temperature is increased to 559 K, so the final temperature T_2 = 559 K. We note that the temperatures are already given in kelvins, so we do not need to convert the temperatures. Substituting into the expression for Charles's law yields

$$\frac{34.8\,ml}{315\,K} = \frac{V_2}{559\,K}$$

We solve for V_2 by algebraically isolating the V_2 variable on one side of the equation. We do this by multiplying both sides of the equation by 559 K (number and unit). When we do this, the temperature unit cancels on the left side, while the entire 559 K cancels on the right side:

$$\frac{(559\,\cancel{K})(34.8\,ml)}{315\,\cancel{K}} = \frac{V_2(\cancel{559\,K})}{\cancel{559\,K}}$$

The expression simplifies to

$$\frac{(559)(34.8\,ml)}{315} = V_2$$

By multiplying and dividing the numbers, we see that the only remaining unit is mL, so our final answer is

V_2 = 61.8 mL

Does this answer make sense? We know that as temperature increases, volume increases. Here, the temperature is increasing from 315 K to 559 K, so the volume should also increase, which it does.

Exercise 8.6.1

If V_1 = 3.77 L and T_1 = 255 K, what is V_2 if T_2 = 123 K?

Answer

1.82 L

It is more mathematically complicated if a final temperature must be calculated because the T variable is in the denominator of Charles's law. There are several mathematical ways to work this, but perhaps the simplest way is to take the reciprocal of Charles's law. That is, rather than write it as

$$\frac{V_1}{T_1} = \frac{V_2}{T_2}$$

write the equation as

$$\frac{T_1}{V_1} = \frac{T_2}{V_2}$$

It is still an equality and a correct form of Charles's law, but now the temperature variable is in the numerator, and the algebra required to predict a final temperature is simpler.

Example 8.6.2

A sample of a gas has an initial volume of 34.8 L and an initial temperature of −67°C. What must the temperature of the gas be for its volume to be 25.0 L?

Solution

Here, we are looking for a final temperature, so we will use the reciprocal form of Charles's law. However, the initial temperature is given in degrees Celsius, not kelvins. We must convert the initial temperature to kelvins:

−67°C + 273 = 206 K

In using the gas law, we must use T_1 = 206 K as the temperature. Substituting into the reciprocal form of Charles's law, we get

$$\frac{206\,K}{34.8\,L} = \frac{T_2}{25.0\,L}$$

Bringing the 25.0 L quantity over to the other side of the equation, we get

$$\frac{(25.0\,\cancel{L})(206\,K)}{34.8\,\cancel{L}} = T_2$$

The L units cancel, so our final answer is T_2 = 148 K

This is also equal to −125°C. As temperature decreases, volume decreases, which it does in this example.

? Exercise 8.6.2

If V_1 = 623 mL, T_1 = 255°C, and V_2 = 277 mL, what is T_2?

Answer

235 K, or −38°C

Summary

- Charles's law relates a gas's volume and temperature at constant pressure and amount.
- In gas laws, temperatures must always be expressed in kelvins.

This page titled 8.6: Charles's Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, & Adam Hahn.

- **6.4: Gas Laws** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.7: Gay-Lussac's Law- The Relationship Between Pressure and Temperature

Learning Objectives

- Define the relationship between gas pressure and temperature, Gay-Lussac's Law.

A third gas law may be derived as a corollary to Boyle's and Charles's laws. Suppose we double the thermodynamic temperature of a sample of gas. According to Charles's law, the volume should double. Now, how much pressure would be required at the higher temperature to return the gas to its original volume? According to Boyle's law, we would have to double the pressure to halve the volume. Thus, if the volume of gas is to remain the same, doubling the temperature will require doubling the pressure. This law was first stated by the Frenchman Joseph Gay-Lussac (1778 to 1850). According to **Gay-Lussac's law**, *for a given amount of gas held at constant volume, the pressure is proportional to the absolute temperature.* Mathematically,

$$P \propto T \text{ or } P = k \times T \text{ or } \frac{P}{T} = k$$

where $\propto$ means "is proportional to," and k is a proportionality constant that depends on the identity, amount, and volume of the gas.

In terms of two sets of data: $\frac{P_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2}{T_2}$. This equation is useful for pressure-temperature calculations for a confined gas at constant volume. Note that temperatures must be on the kelvin scale for any gas law calculations (0 on the kelvin scale and the lowest possible temperature is called absolute zero). (Also note that there are at least three ways we can describe how the pressure of a gas changes as its temperature changes: We can use a table of values, a graph, or a mathematical equation.)

Gay-Lussac's law tells us that it may be dangerous to heat a gas in a closed container. The increased pressure might cause the container to explode, as you can see in the video below. The video shows very, very cold nitrogen gas in a bottle being warmed by the air. Since the bottle's volume is relatively constant, as the temperature of the nitrogen gas (formed when the liquid nitrogen boils) increases, so does the pressure inside the bottle until, finally, BOOM!



Example 8.7.1: Temperature

A container is designed to hold a pressure of 2.5 atm. The volume of the container is 20.0 cm^3, and it is filled with air at room temperature (20°C) and normal atmospheric pressure. Would it be safe to throw the container into a fire where temperatures of 600°C would be reached?

Solution

Using the common-sense method, we realize that the pressure will increase at the higher temperature, and so:

$$P_2 = 1.0 \text{ atm} \times \frac{(273.15 + 600) \text{ K}}{(273.15 + 20) \text{ K}} = 3.0 \text{ atm}$$

This would exceed the safe strength of the container. Note that the volume of the container was not needed to solve the problem.

This concept works in reverse, as well. For instance, if we subject a gas to lower temperatures than their initial state, the external atmosphere can actually force the container to shrink. The following video demonstrates how a sample of hot gas, when cooled will collapse a container. A syringe barrel is filled with hot steam (vaporized water) and a plunger placed to cap off the end. The syringe is then placed in a beaker of ice water to cool the internal gas. When the temperature of the water vapor decreases, the pressure exerted by the vapor decreases as well. This leads to a difference in pressure between the vapor inside the barrel and the atmosphere. Atmospheric pressure then pushes the plunger into the barrel.

Summary

- Gay-Lussac's law relates a gas's temperature and pressure at constant volume and amount.
- In gas laws, temperatures must always be expressed in kelvins.

This page titled 8.7: Gay-Lussac's Law- The Relationship Between Pressure and Temperature is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, & Adam Hahn.

- **9.9: Gay-Lussac's Law** by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, & Adam Hahn is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.
- **9.2: Relating Pressure, Volume, Amount, and Temperature - The Ideal Gas Law** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **6.4: Gas Laws** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.8: The Combined Gas Law

Learning Objectives

- Use the combined gas law to determine the relationships between pressure, volume, and temperature of a gas.

One thing we notice about all gas laws, collectively, is that volume and pressure are always in the numerator, and temperature is always in the denominator. This suggests that we can propose a gas law that combines pressure, volume, and temperature. This gas law is known as the **combined gas law**, and its mathematical form is:

$$\frac{P_1V_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{T_2} \; at \; constant \; n$$

This allows us to follow changes in all three major properties of a gas. Again, the usual warnings apply about how to solve for an unknown algebraically (isolate it on one side of the equation in the numerator), units (they must be the same for the two similar variables of each type), and units of temperature must be in kelvins.

Notice that each of the previous gas laws introduced, can be derived from the combined gas law:

At constant T, $\frac{P_1V_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{T_2}$ *gives* **Boyle's Law:** $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$

At constant P, $\frac{P_1V_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{T_2}$ *gives* **Charles's Law:** $\frac{V_1}{T_1} = \frac{V_2}{T_2}$

At constant V, $\frac{P_1V_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{T_2}$ *gives* **Gay-Lussac's Law:** $\frac{P_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2}{T_2}$

In other words, if you know the equation for the combined gas law, you can calculate relationships between pressure, volume, or temperature of a fixed amount of gas.

Example 8.8.2

A sample of gas at an initial volume of 8.33 L, an initial pressure of 1.82 atm, and an initial temperature of 286 K simultaneously changes its temperature to 355 K and its volume to 5.72 L. What is the final pressure of the gas?

Solution

We can use the combined gas law directly; all the units are consistent with each other, and the temperatures are given in Kelvin. Substituting,

$$\frac{(1.82\,atm)(8.33\,L)}{286\,K} = \frac{P_2(5.72\,L)}{355\,K}$$

We rearrange this to isolate the P_2 variable all by itself. When we do so, certain units cancel:

$$\frac{(1.82\,atm)(8.33\,\cancel{L})(355\,\cancel{K})}{(286\,\cancel{K})(5.72\,\cancel{L})} = P_2$$

Multiplying and dividing all the numbers, we get

$$P_2 = 3.29\,atm$$

Ultimately, the pressure increased, which would have been difficult to predict because two properties of the gas were changing.

Exercise 8.8.2

If P_1 = 662 torr, V_1 = 46.7 mL, T_1 = 266 K, P_2 = 409 torr, and T_2 = 371 K, what is V_2?

Answer

105 mL

Summary

- There are gas laws that relate any two physical properties of a gas.
- The combined gas law relates pressure, volume, and temperature of a gas.

Contributors

This page titled 8.8: The Combined Gas Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **6.5: Other Gas Laws** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.9: Avogadro’s Law - The Relation between Volume and Molar Amount

Learning Objectives

- Describe the relationship between the amount and volume of a gas, Avogadro's Law.
- Define the conditions of standard temperature and pressure.

The Relationship between Amount and Volume: Avogadro's Law

We can demonstrate the relationship between the volume and the amount of a gas by filling a balloon; as we add more gas, the balloon gets larger. The specific quantitative relationship was discovered by the Italian chemist Amedeo Avogadro, who recognized the importance of Gay-Lussac’s work on combining volumes of gases. In 1811, Avogadro postulated that, at the same temperature and pressure, equal volumes of gases contain the same number of gaseous particles (Figure 8.9.1). This is the historic “Avogadro’s hypothesis.”

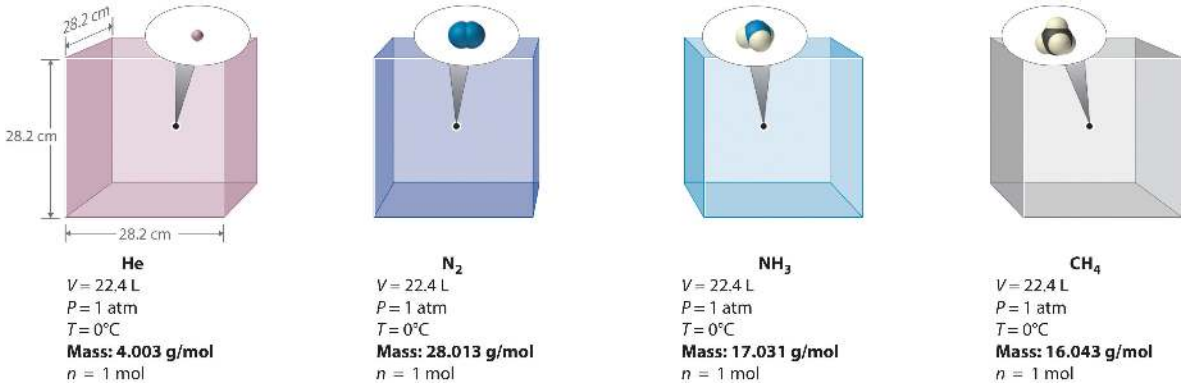


Figure 8.9.1: Avogadro’s Hypothesis. Equal volumes of four different gases at the same temperature and pressure contain the same number of gaseous particles. Because the molar mass of each gas is different, the *mass* of each gas sample is different even though all contain 1 mol of gas (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous).

Because the number of particles is related to the number of moles (1 mol = 6.022×10^{23} particles), **Avogadro's law** essentially states that equal volumes of different gases, at the same temperature and pressure, contain the same *amount* (moles, particles) of gas. *At constant temperature and pressure, the volume (V) of a sample of gas is directly proportional to the number of moles (n) of gas in the sample.* Stated mathematically,

$$V \propto n \text{ or } V = k \times n \text{ or } \frac{V}{n} = k$$

where $\propto$ means “is proportional to,” and k is a proportionality constant that is the same for all gases.

In terms of two sets of data: $\frac{V_1}{n_1} = \frac{V_2}{n_2}$.

This relationship is valid for most gases at relatively low pressures, but deviations from strict linearity are observed at elevated pressures. Mathematical relationships can also be determined for the other variable pairs, such as P versus n, and n versus T.

> *Visit this interactive PhET simulation to investigate the relationships between pressure, volume, temperature, and amount of gas. Use the simulation to examine the effect of changing one parameter on another while holding the other parameters constant (as described in the preceding sections on the various gas laws).*

Standard Temperature and Pressure

It should be obvious by now that some physical properties of gases depend strongly on the conditions. What we need is a set of standard conditions so that properties of gases can be properly compared to each other. **Standard Temperature and Pressure**

(STP) is defined as exactly 100 kPa of pressure (0.986 atm) and 273 K (0°C). For simplicity, we will use 1 atm as standard pressure. Defining STP allows us to more directly compare the properties of gases that differ from one another.

One property shared among gases is a molar volume. The **molar volume** is the volume of 1 mol of a gas. At STP, the molar volume of a gas can be easily determined by using the ideal gas law:

$$(1\,atm)V = (1\,mol)\left(0.08205\frac{L.atm}{mol.K}\right)(273\,K)$$

All the units cancel except for L, the unit of volume. So V = 22.4 L

Note that we have not specified the identity of the gas; we have specified only that the pressure is 1 atm and the temperature is 273 K. This makes for a very useful approximation: *any gas at STP has a volume of 22.4 L per mole of gas*; that is, the molar volume at STP is 22.4 L/mol (Figure 8.9.1). This molar volume makes a useful conversion factor in stoichiometry problems if the conditions are at STP. If the conditions are not at STP, a molar volume of 22.4 L/mol is not applicable. However, if the conditions are at STP, the combined gas law can be used to calculate what the volume of the gas would be if at STP; then the 22.4 L/mol molar volume can be used.

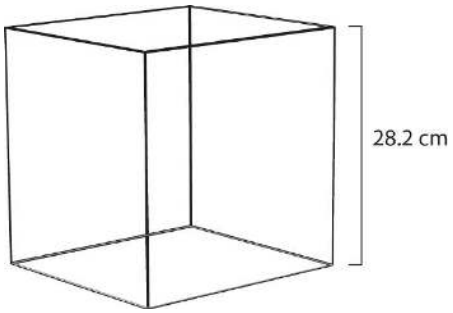


Figure 8.9.1: Molar Volume. A mole of gas at STP occupies 22.4 L, the volume of a cube that is 28.2 cm on a side.

✔ Example 8.9.4

How many moles of Ar are present in 38.7 L at STP?

Solution

We can use the molar volume, 22.4 L/mol, as a conversion factor, but we need to reverse the fraction so that the L units cancel and mol units are introduced. It is a one-step conversion:

$$38.7\,\cancel{L} \times \frac{1\,mol}{22.4\,\cancel{L}} = 1.73\,mol$$

? Exercise 8.9.4

What volume does 4.87 mol of Kr have at STP?

Answer

109 L

✔ Example 8.9.5

What volume of H_2 is produced at STP when 55.8 g of Zn metal react with excess HCl?

$$Zn\,(s) + 2\,HCl\,(aq) \longrightarrow ZnCl_2\,(aq) + H_2\,(g)$$

Solution

This is a stoichiometry problem with a twist: we need to use the molar volume of a gas at STP to determine the final answer. The first part of the calculation is the same as in a previous example:

$$55.8\ \cancel{g\ Zn} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Zn}}{65.41\ \cancel{g\ Zn}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ H_2}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Zn}} = 0.853\ H_2$$

Now we can use the molar volume, 22.4 L/mol, because the gas is at STP:

$$0.853\ \cancel{mol\ H_2} \times \frac{22.4\ L}{1\ \cancel{mol\ H_2}} = 19.1\ L\ H_2$$

Alternatively, we could have applied the molar volume as a third conversion factor in the original stoichiometry calculation.

? Exercise 8.9.5

What volume of $\mathbf{HCl}$ is generated if 3.44 g of $\mathbf{Cl_2}$ are reacted at STP?

$$\mathbf{H_2\,(g) + Cl_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,HCl\,(g)}$$

Answer

2.17 L

Summary

- Avogadro's law states that the volume of gas is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas.
- Standard temperature and pressure (STP) are a useful set of benchmark conditions to compare other properties of gases.
- At STP, gases have a volume of 22.4 L per mole.

8.9: Avogadro's Law - The Relation between Volume and Molar Amount is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.3: The Gas Laws** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.
- **9.2: Relating Pressure, Volume, Amount, and Temperature - The Ideal Gas Law** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **6.6: The Ideal Gas Law and Some Applications** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.10: The Ideal Gas Law

Learning Objectives

- Describe the ideal gas law.
- Use the ideal gas law to calculate pressure, volume, temperature, or moles of an ideal gas.

So far, the gas laws we have considered have all required that the gas change its conditions; then we can predict a resulting change in one of its properties. Are there any gas laws that relate the physical properties of a gas at any given time? Consider a further extension of the combined gas law to include *n*. By analogy to Avogadro's law, *n* is positioned in the denominator of the fraction, opposite the volume. So,

$$\frac{PV}{nT} = constant$$

Because pressure, volume, temperature, and amount are the only four independent physical properties of a gas, the constant in the above equation is truly a constant. Indeed, because we do not need to specify the identity of a gas to apply the gas laws, this constant is the same for all gases. We define this constant with the symbol *R*, so the previous equation is written as

$$\frac{PV}{nT} = R$$

which is usually rearranged as

$$PV = nRT$$

This equation is called the **ideal gas law**. It relates the four independent properties of a gas at any time. The constant \(*R*\) is called the **ideal gas law constant**. Its value depends on the units used to express pressure and volume.

Table **8.10.1**: Values of the Ideal Gas Law Constant lists the numerical values of ***R***.

Numerical Value	Units
0.08205	$\frac{L \cdot atm}{mol \cdot K}$
62.36	$\frac{L \cdot torr}{mol \cdot K} = \frac{L \cdot mmHg}{mol \cdot K}$
8.314	$\frac{J}{mol \cdot K}$

The ideal gas law is used like any other gas law, with attention paid to the unit and expression of the temperature in kelvin. However, *the ideal gas law does not require a change in the conditions of a gas sample*. The ideal gas law implies that if you know any three of the physical properties of a gas, you can calculate the fourth property.

Example 8.10.1

A 4.22 mol sample of **Ar** has a pressure of 1.21 atm and a temperature of 34°C. What is its volume?

Solution

The first step is to convert temperature to kelvins:

$$\mathbf{34 + 273 = 307\,K}$$

Now we can substitute the conditions into the ideal gas law:

$$(1.21atm)(V) = (4.22\,mol)\left(0.08205\frac{L.atm}{mol.K}\right)(307\,K)$$

The *atm* unit is in the numerator of both sides, so it cancels. On the right side of the equation, the *mol* and *K* units appear in the numerator and the denominator, so they cancel as well. The only unit remaining is *L*, which is the unit of volume that we are looking for. We isolate the volume variable by dividing both sides of the equation by 1.21:

$$V = \frac{(4.22)(0.08205)(307)}{1.21} L$$

Then solving for volume, we get V = 87.9 L

Exercise 8.10.1

A 0.0997 mol sample of O_2 has a pressure of 0.692 atm and a temperature of 333 K. What is its volume?

Answer

3.94 L

Example 8.10.2

At a given temperature, 0.00332 g of Hg in the gas phase has a pressure of 0.00120 mmHg and a volume of 435 L. What is its temperature?

Solution

We are not given the number of moles of Hg directly, but we are given a mass. We can use the molar mass of Hg to convert to the number of moles.

$$0.00332\,\cancel{g\,Hg} \times \frac{1\,mol\,Hg}{200.59\,\cancel{g\,Hg}} = 0.0000165\,mol = 1.65 \times 10^{-5} mol$$

Pressure is given in units of millimeters of mercury. We can either convert this to atmospheres or use the value of the ideal gas constant that includes the mmHg unit. We will take the second option. Substituting into the ideal gas law,

$$(0.00332\,mm\,Hg)(435\,L) = (1.65 \times 10^{-5} mol)(62.36 \frac{L.mmHg}{mol.K})T$$

The mmHg, L, and mol units cancel, leaving the K unit, the unit of temperature. Isolating T on one side, we get

$$T = \frac{(0.00332)(435)}{(1.65 \times 10^{-5})(62.36)} K$$

Then solving for K, we get T = 1,404 K.

Exercise 8.10.2

For a 0.00554 mol sample of H_2, P = 23.44 torr and T = 557 K. What is its volume?

Answer

8.21 L

The ideal gas law can also be used in stoichiometry problems.

Example 8.10.3

What volume of H_2 is produced at 299 K and 1.07 atm when 55.8 g of Zn metal react with excess HCl?

$$Zn\,(s) + 2\,HCl\,(aq) \longrightarrow ZnCl_2\,(aq) + H_2\,(g)$$

Solution

Here we have a stoichiometry problem where we need to find the number of moles of H_2 produced. Then we can use the ideal gas law, with the given temperature and pressure, to determine the volume of gas produced. First, the number of moles of H_2 is calculated:

$$55.8\,\cancel{g\,Zn} \times \frac{1\,\cancel{mol\,Zn}}{65.41\,\cancel{g\,Zn}} \times \frac{1\,mol\,H_2}{1\,\cancel{mol\,Zn}} = 0.853\,H_2$$

Now that we know the number of moles of gas, we can use the ideal gas law to determine the volume, given the other conditions:

$$(1.07atm)V = (0.853\,mol)\left(0.08205\frac{L.atm}{mol.K}\right)(299\,K)$$

All the units cancel except for L, for volume, which means V = 19.6 L

? Exercise 8.10.3

What pressure of $\mathbf{HCl}$ is generated if 3.44 g of $\mathbf{Cl_2}$ are reacted in 4.55 L at 455 K?

$$\mathbf{H_2\,(g) + Cl_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,HCl\,(g)}$$

Answer

0.796 atm

Summary

- The ideal gas law relates the four independent physical properties of a gas at any time.
- The ideal gas law can be used in stoichiometry problems with chemical reactions that involve gases.

This page titled 8.10: The Ideal Gas Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **6.6: The Ideal Gas Law and Some Applications** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law

8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law

This page titled 8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, & Adam Hahn.

8.E: Solids, Liquids, and Gases (Exercises)

8.1: Intermolecular Interactions

Concept Review Exercise

1. What types of intermolecular interactions can exist in compounds?

2. What is the difference between covalent network and covalent molecular compounds?

Answer

1. ionic bonding, network covalent, dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding.

2. Covalent network compounds contain atoms that are covalently bonded to other individual atoms in a giant 3-dimensional network. Covalent molecular compounds contain individual molecules that are attracted to one another through dispersion, dipole-dipole or hydrogen bonding.

Exercises

1. List the three common phases in the order you are likely to find them—from lowest temperature to highest temperature.
2. List the three common phases in the order they exist from lowest energy to highest energy.
3. List these intermolecular interactions from weakest to strongest: London forces, hydrogen bonding, and ionic interactions.
4. List these intermolecular interactions from weakest to strongest: covalent network bonding, dipole-dipole interactions, and dispersion forces.
5. What type of intermolecular interaction is predominate in each substance?
    a. water (H_2O)
    b. sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4)
    c. decane ($C_{10}H_{22}$)
6. What type of intermolecular interaction is predominate in each substance?
    a. diamond (C, crystal)
    b. helium (He)
    c. ammonia (NH_3)
7. Explain how a molecule like carbon dioxide (CO_2) can have polar covalent bonds but be nonpolar overall.
8. Sulfur dioxide (SO_2) has a formula similar to that of carbon dioxide (see Exercise 7) but is a polar molecule overall. What can you conclude about the shape of the SO_2 molecule?
9. What are some of the physical properties of substances that experience covalent network bonding?
10. What are some of the physical properties of substances that experience only dispersion forces?

Answers

1. solid, liquid, and gas

2. solid, liquid, and gas

3. London forces, hydrogen bonding, and ionic interactions

4. dispersion, dipole-dipole, network covalent

5. a. hydrogen bonding
    b. ionic interactions
    c. dispersion forces

6. a. network covalent

b. dispersion
c. hydrogen bonding

7. The two covalent bonds are oriented in such a way that their dipoles cancel out.

8. SO_2 is not a linear molecule. It has a bent or V-shape.

9. very hard, high melting point

10. very soft, very low melting point

8.2: Solids and Liquids

Concept Review Exercise

1. How do the strengths of intermolecular interactions in solids and liquids differ?

Answer

1. Solids have stronger intermolecular interactions than liquids do.

Exercises

1. What are the general properties of solids?
2. What are the general properties of liquids
3. What are the general properties of gases?
4. What phase or phases have a definite volume? What phase or phases do not have a definite volume?
5. Name a common substance that forms a crystal in its solid state.
6. Name a common substance that forms an amorphous solid in its solid state.
7. Are substances with strong intermolecular interactions likely to be solids at higher or lower temperatures? Explain.
8. Are substances with weak intermolecular interactions likely to be liquids at higher or lower temperatures? Explain.
9. State two similarities between the solid and liquid states.
10. State two differences between the solid and liquid states.
11. If individual particles are moving around with respect to each other, a substance may be in either the _____ or _____ state but probably not in the _____ state.
12. If individual particles are in contact with each other, a substance may be in either the _____ or _____ state but probably not in the _____ state.

Answers

1. hard, specific volume and shape, high density, cannot be compressed

2. fixed volume, no definite shape, high density, individual molecules touch each other but in a random way

3. variable volume and shape, low density, compressible

4. solid and liquid have definite volume; gas has no definite volume

5. sodium chloride (answers will vary)

6. glass

7. At higher temperatures, their intermolecular interactions are strong enough to hold the particles in place.

8. Substances with weak intermolecular interactions are likely to be liquids at lower temperatures. Their attractive forces are more easily broken hence they melt more readily.

9. high density; definite volume

10. Solids have definite shape while liquids don't. In solids, molecules occupy fixed positions in a pattern, while in liquids, the molecules are moving in a random arrangement.

11. liquid; gas; solid

12. solid; liquid; gas

8.3: Gases and Pressure

Concept Review Exercise

1. What is pressure, and what units do we use to express it?

Answer

1. Pressure is the force per unit area; its units can be pascals, torr, millimeters of mercury, or atmospheres.

Exercises

1. What is the kinetic theory of gases?
2. According to the kinetic theory of gases, the individual gas particles are (always, frequently, never) moving.
3. Why does a gas exert pressure?
4. Why does the kinetic theory of gases allow us to presume that all gases will show similar behavior?
5. Arrange the following pressure quantities in order from smallest to largest: 1 mmHg, 1 Pa, and 1 atm.
6. Which unit of pressure is larger—the torr or the atmosphere?
7. How many torr are there in 1.56 atm?
8. Convert 760 torr into pascals.
9. Blood pressures are expressed in millimeters of mercury. What would be the blood pressure in atmospheres if a patient’s systolic blood pressure is 120 mmHg and the diastolic blood pressure is 82 mmHg? (In medicine, such a blood pressure would be reported as “120/82,” spoken as “one hundred twenty over eighty-two.”)
10. In weather forecasting, barometric pressure is expressed in inches of mercury (in. Hg), where there are exactly 25.4 mmHg in every 1 in. Hg. What is the barometric pressure in millimeters of mercury if the barometric pressure is reported as 30.21 in. Hg?

Answers

1. Gases are composed of tiny particles that are separated by large distances. Gas particles are constantly moving, experiencing collisions with other gas particles and the walls of their container. The velocity of gas particles is related to the temperature of a gas. Gas particles do not experience any force of attraction or repulsion with each other.

2. always

3. A gas exerts pressure as its particles rebound off the walls of its container.

4. Because the molecules are far apart and don't have attractive forces between them

5. 1 Pa, 1 mmHg, and 1 atm

6. atm

7. 1,190 torr

8. 98,700 Pa

9. 0.158 atm; 0.108 atm

10. 767.3 mm Hg

8.4: Gas Laws

Concept Review Exercises

1. What properties do the gas laws help us predict?
2. What makes the ideal gas law different from the other gas laws?

Answers

1. Gas laws relate four properties: pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles.
2. The ideal gas law does not require that the properties of a gas change.

Exercises

1. What conditions of a gas sample should remain constant for Boyle's law to be used?
2. What conditions of a gas sample should remain constant for Charles's law to be used?
3. Does the identity of a gas matter when using Boyle's law? Why or why not?
4. Does the identity of a gas matter when using Charles's law? Why or why not?
5. A sample of nitrogen gas is confined to a balloon that has a volume of 1.88 L and a pressure of 1.334 atm. What will be the volume of the balloon if the pressure is changed to 0.662 atm? Assume that the temperature and the amount of the gas remain constant.
6. A sample of helium gas in a piston has a volume of 86.4 mL under a pressure of 447 torr. What will be the volume of the helium if the pressure on the piston is increased to 1,240 torr? Assume that the temperature and the amount of the gas remain constant.
7. If a gas has an initial pressure of 24,650 Pa and an initial volume of 376 mL, what is the final volume if the pressure of the gas is changed to 775 torr? Assume that the amount and the temperature of the gas remain constant.
8. A gas sample has an initial volume of 0.9550 L and an initial pressure of 564.5 torr. What would the final pressure of the gas be if the volume is changed to 587.0 mL? Assume that the amount and the temperature of the gas remain constant.
9. A person draws a normal breath of about 1.00 L. If the initial temperature of the air is 18°C and the air warms to 37°C, what is the new volume of the air? Assume that the pressure and amount of the gas remain constant.
10. A person draws a normal breath of about 1.00 L. If the initial temperature of the air is −10°C and the air warms to 37°C, what is the new volume of the air? Assume that the pressure and the amount of the gas remain constant.
11. An air/gas vapor mix in an automobile cylinder has an initial temperature of 450 K and a volume of 12.7 cm^3. The gas mix is heated to 565°C. If pressure and amount are held constant, what is the final volume of the gas in cubic centimeters?
12. Given the following conditions for a gas: V_i = 0.665 L, T_i = 23.6°C, V_f = 1.034 L. What is T_f in degrees Celsius and kelvins?
13. Assuming the amount remains the same, what must be the final volume of a gas that has an initial volume of 387 mL, an initial pressure of 456 torr, an initial temperature of 65.0°C, a final pressure of 1.00 atm, and a final temperature of 300 K?
14. When the nozzle of a spray can is depressed, 0.15 mL of gas expands to 0.44 mL, and its pressure drops from 788 torr to 1.00 atm. If the initial temperature of the gas is 22.0°C, what is the final temperature of the gas?
15. Use the ideal gas law to show that 1 mol of a gas at STP has a volume of about 22.4 L.
16. Use a standard conversion factor to determine a value of the ideal gas law constant *R* that has units of L•torr/mol•K.
17. How many moles of gas are there in a 27.6 L sample at 298 K and a pressure of 1.44 atm?
18. How many moles of gas are there in a 0.066 L sample at 298 K and a pressure of 0.154 atm?

19. A 0.334 mol sample of carbon dioxide gas is confined to a volume of 20.0 L and has a pressure of 0.555 atm. What is the temperature of the carbon dioxide in kelvins and degrees Celsius?

20. What must *V* be for a gas sample if *n* = 4.55 mol, *P* = 7.32 atm, and *T* = 285 K?

21. What is the pressure of 0.0456 mol of Ne gas contained in a 7.50 L volume at 29°C?

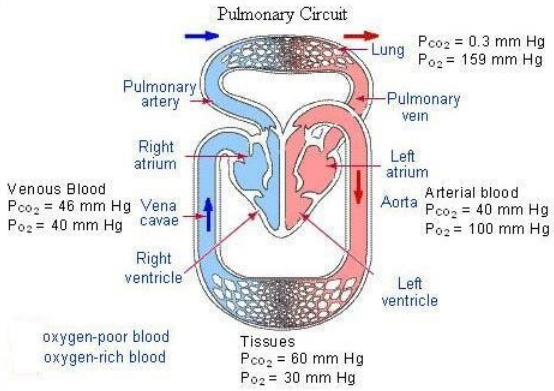
22. What is the pressure of 1.00 mol of Ar gas that has a volume of 843.0 mL and a temperature of −86.0°C?

23. A mixture of the gases N_2, O_2, and Ar has a total pressure of 760 mm Hg. If the partial pressure of N_2 is 220 mm Hg and of O_2 is 470 mm Hg, What is the partial pressure of Ar?

24. What percent of the gas above is Ar?

25. Apply Henry's Law to the diagram below to explain:

why oxygen diffuses from the alveoli of the lungs into the blood and from the blood into the tissues of the body. why carbon dioxide diffuses from the tissues into the blood and from the blood into the alveoli and then finally out into the atmosphere.



Answers

1. temperature and amount of the gas

2. pressure and amount of the gas
3. The identity does not matter because the variables of Boyle's law do not identify the gas.
4. The identity does not matter because the variables of Charles law do not identify the gas.
5. 3.79 L

6. 31.1 mL

7. 92.1 mL

8. 918.4 torr

9. 1.07 L

10. 1.18 L

11. 23.7 cm^3

12. 461 K; 188^0C

13. 206 mL

14. 835 K; 562^0C

15. The ideal gas law confirms that 22.4 L equals 1 mol.

16. $\frac{760\ torr}{1\ atm}$

17. 1.63 mol

18. 4.2×10^{-4} mol

19. 405 K; 132°C

20. 14.5 L

21. 0.151 atm

22. 18.2 atm

23. 70 mm Hg

24. 9.2%

25. Gases diffuse from high concentration to low concentration (Henry's Law). The partial pressure of **oxygen** is high in the **alveoli** and low in the **blood** of the pulmonary capillaries. As a result, **oxygen diffuses** across the respiratory membrane from the **alveoli** into the **blood**. It's also higher partial pressure in the blood than in the tissues, hence it transfers to the tissues. On the other hand, carbon dioxide **diffuses** from the tissues (highest CO_2 partial pressure) and across the respiratory membrane from the **blood** into the **alveoli** and out **to the atmosphere.**

Additional Exercises

1. How many grams of oxygen gas are needed to fill a 25.0 L container at 0.966 atm and 22°C?
2. A breath of air is about 1.00 L in volume. If the pressure is 1.00 atm and the temperature is 37°C, what mass of air is contained in each breath? Use an average molar mass of 28.8 g/mol for air.
3. The balanced chemical equation for the combustion of propane is as follows:

$$C_3H_{8(g)} + 5O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 3CO_{2(g)} + 4H_2O_{(\ell)} \tag{8.E.1}$$

   a. If 100.0 g of propane are combusted, how many moles of oxygen gas are necessary for the reaction to occur?
   b. At STP, how many liters of oxygen gas would that be?

4. The equation for the formation of ammonia gas (NH_3) is as follows:

$$N_{2(g)} + 3H_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2NH_{3(g)} \tag{8.E.2}$$

   At 500°C and 1.00 atm, 10.0 L of N_2 gas are reacted to make ammonia.

   a. If the pressures and temperatures of H_2 and NH_3 were the same as those of N_2, what volume of H_2 would be needed to react with N_2, and what volume of NH_3 gas would be produced?
   b. Compare your answers to the balanced chemical equation. Can you devise a “shortcut” method to answer Exercise 4a?

5. At 20°C, 1 g of liquid H_2O has a volume of 1.002 mL. What volume will 1 g of water vapor occupy at 20°C if its pressure is 17.54 mmHg? By what factor has the water expanded in going from the liquid phase to the gas phase?
6. At 100°C, 1 g of liquid H_2O has a volume of 1.043 mL. What volume will 1 g of steam occupy at 100°C if its pressure is 760.0 mmHg? By what factor has the water expanded in going from the liquid phase to the gas phase?
7. Predict whether NaCl or NaI will have the higher melting point. Explain. (Hint: consider the relative strengths of the intermolecular interactions of the two compounds.)
8. Predict whether CH_4 or CH_3OH will have the lower boiling point. Explain. (Hint: consider the relative strengths of the intermolecular interactions of the two compounds.)
9. A standard automobile tire has a volume of about 3.2 ft^3 (where 1 ft^3 equals 28.32 L). Tires are typically inflated to an absolute pressure of 45.0 pounds per square inch (psi), where 1 atm equals 14.7 psi. Using this information with the ideal gas law, determine the number of moles of air needed to fill a tire if the air temperature is 18.0°C.
10. Another gas law, Amontons’s law, relates pressure and temperature under conditions of constant amount and volume:

$$\frac{\mathbf{P_i}}{\mathbf{T_i}} = \frac{\mathbf{P_f}}{\mathbf{T_f}}$$

    If an automobile tire (see Exercise 9) is inflated to 45.0 psi at 18.0°C, what will be its pressure if the operating temperature (i.e., the temperature the tire reaches when the automobile is on the road) is 45.0°C? Assume that the volume and the amount of the

gas remain constant.

Answers

1. 31.9 g

2. 1.13 g

3.

   a. 11.4 mol
   b. 255 L

4.

   a. 30.0 L H_2 and 20.0 L NH_3

   b. the mole ratio in the balanced equation is the same as the volume ratio.

$$10.0\,\text{L}\,\text{N}_2 \times \frac{3\,\text{L}\,\text{H}_2}{1\,\text{L}\,\text{N}_2} = 30.0\,\text{L}\,\text{H}_2$$

$$10.0\,\text{L}\,\text{N}_2 \times \frac{2\,\text{L}\,\text{NH}_3}{1\,\text{L}\,\text{N}_2} = 20.0\,\text{L}\,\text{NH}_3$$

5. 57.75 L; an expansion of 57,600 times

6. 1.698 L; an expansion of 1,628 times

7. NaCl; with smaller anions, NaCl likely experiences stronger ionic bonding.

8. CH_4 will have the lower boiling point because its intermolecular force (London dispersion force only) is weaker than those in CH_3OH. Aside from London dispersion, CH_3OH has dipole-dipole and hydrogen bonding.

9. 11.6 mol

10. 49.2 psi

This page titled 8.E: Solids, Liquids, and Gases (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **8.1: Intermolecular Interactions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **8.2: Solids and Liquids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **8.3: Gases and Pressure** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **8.4: Gas Laws** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Solutions

9.1: Mixtures and Solutions
9.2: The Solution Process
9.3: Solubility
9.4: The Effect of Temperature on Solubility
9.5: The Effect of Pressure on Solubility - Henry's Law
9.6: Units of Concentration
9.7: Dilution
9.8: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes
9.9: Properties of Solutions
9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure
9.11: Dialysis
9.12: Net Ionic Equations
9.E: Solutions (Exercises)

9: Solutions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.1: Mixtures and Solutions

Learning Objectives

- Describe the difference between homogenous and heterogenous mixtures.
- Distinguish a homogenous mixture as a solution or colloid.

As introduced previously, *mixtures* are combinations of two or more substances that each retain their individual physical properties. A mixture can be classified as either *heterogenous* or *homogenous*. In a heterogeneous mixture, the composition is *not* uniform throughout the sample, and sometimes the individual substances that make up the mixture can be differentiated by eye. Trail mix, salad, and blood (which is also called a suspension) are examples of heterogenous mixtures. Homogenous mixtures are uniform and have the same composition throughout. Air, simple syrup, and seawater are examples of homogenous mixtures.

Homogenous mixtures can be further classified, based on the *size* of their particles, as solutions or colloids. **Solutions** are composed of particles the size of an ion or small molecule, ~0.1-2.0 nm. The examples provided above are all considered solutions; air is a solution of small gas molecules, simple syrup is a solution of sucrose in water, and seawater is a solution of ions and water. Homogenous mixtures with larger particles, ~2.0-500 nm, are classified as **colloids**. Milk, fog, and butter are all considered colloids. Mixtures with particles larger than 500 nm are called **suspensions** and are considered to be heterogenous mixtures in which the particles will settle upon standing. Many medications are classified as suspensions that need to be re-mixed before taking in order to redistribute the particles throughout the mixture. Some examples and distinguishing characteristics of solutions, colloids, and suspensions are listed in Table **9.1.1** below.

Table **9.1.1**: Properties of Liquid Solutions, Colloids, and Suspensions

Type of Mixture	Approximate Size of Particles (nm)	Characteristic Properties	Examples
solution	< 2	not filterable; does not separate on standing; does not scatter visible light	air, white wine, gasoline, salt water
colloid	2–500	scatters visible light; translucent or opaque; not filterable; does not separate on standing	smoke, fog, ink, milk, butter, cheese
suspension	500–1000	cloudy or opaque; filterable; separates on standing	muddy water, hot cocoa, blood, paint

The major component of a solution, called the **solvent**, is typically the same phase as the solution itself. Each minor component of a solution (and there may be more than one) is called the **solute**. In most of the solutions we will describe in this textbook, there will be no ambiguity about whether a component is the solvent or the solute. For example, in a solution of salt in water, the solute is salt, and solvent is water.

Solutions come in all phases, and the solvent and the solute do not have to be in the same phase to form a solution (such as salt and water). For example, air is a gaseous solution of about 80% nitrogen and about 20% oxygen, with some other gases present in much smaller amounts. An alloy is a solid solution consisting of a metal (like iron) with some other metals or nonmetals dissolved in it. Steel, an alloy of iron and carbon and small amounts of other metals, is an example of a solid solution. Table **9.1.2** lists some common types of solutions, with examples of each.

Table **9.1.2**: Types of Solutions

Solvent Phase	Solute Phase	Example
gas	gas	air
liquid	gas	carbonated beverages
liquid	liquid	ethanol (C_2H_5OH) in H_2O (alcoholic beverages)
liquid	solid	saltwater
solid	gas	H_2 gas absorbed by Pd metal
solid	liquid	Hg(ℓ) in dental fillings
solid	solid	steel alloys

9.1: Mixtures and Solutions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.1: Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

9.2: The Solution Process

Learning Objectives

- Predict solubility based on interactions between solute and solvent.

What occurs at the molecular level to cause a solute to dissolve in a solvent? The answer depends in part on the strength of attractions between solute and solvent particles. A good rule of thumb is to use is *like dissolves like*, which means that substances must have similar intermolecular attractions to form solutions.

A substance can *dissolve* in a solvent, and form a solution, if the solute and solvent are *attracted* to each other. For example, water molecules that are held together by hydrogen bonding will dissolve solutes that can also hydrogen bond, like ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH). The new hydrogen bonds between the water and the ethanol molecules (solvent-solute attractions) are nearly as strong as the hydrogen bonds in water (solvent-solvent) and ethanol (solute-solute) alone, making the process of solution formation (also called dissolution or dissolving) favorable.

In the case of a solid or liquid solute, the interactions between the solute particles and the solvent particles are so strong that the individual solute particles separate from each other and, are surrounded by solvent molecules. (Gaseous solutes already have their constituent particles separated, but the concept of being surrounded by solvent particles still applies.) This process is called **solvation** and is illustrated in Figure **9.2.1**. When the solvent is water, the word **hydration**, rather than solvation, is used.

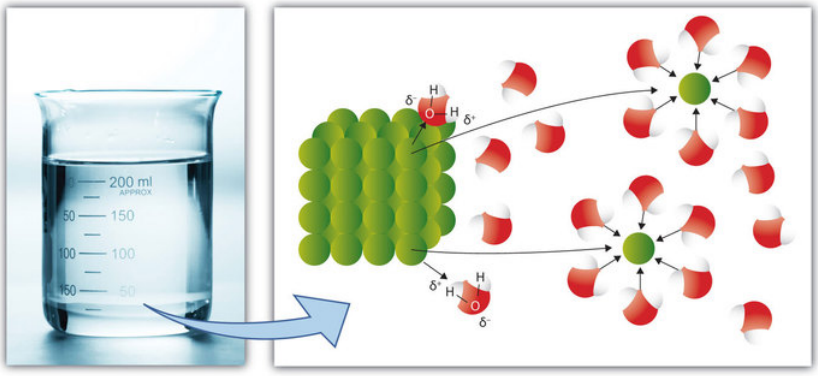


Figure **9.2.1**: Solvation. When a solute dissolves, the individual particles of solute become surrounded by solvent particles. Eventually the particle detaches from the remaining solute, surrounded by solvent molecules in solution. Source: Photo © Thinkstock

When a solute and solvent that do not have similar intermolecular interactions are mixed, a solution is not formed because the solute-solute or solvent-solvent attractions are stronger than any favorable interactions between solute and solvent. For example when water and oil are mixed, stay in separate layers, i.e., they will not mix to yield solutions and the water molecules remain hydrogen bonded to water molecules while the oil molecules stay together (Figure **9.2.2**). Hydrogen bonding is the dominant intermolecular attractive force present in liquid water; the nonpolar hydrocarbon molecules of cooking oils are not capable of hydrogen bonding, instead being held together by dispersion forces. Forming an oil-water solution would require overcoming the very strong hydrogen bonding in water, as well as the significantly strong dispersion forces between the relatively large oil molecules. And, since the polar water molecules and nonpolar oil molecules would not experience very strong intermolecular attraction, very little energy would be released by solvation.



Figure **9.2.2**: A mixture of nonpolar cooking oil and polar water does not yield a solution. (credit: Gautam Dogra).

Ionic Compounds and Covalent Compounds as Solutes

In the case of molecular solutes like glucose, the solute particles are individual molecules. However, if the solute is ionic, the individual ions separate from each other and become surrounded by solvent particles. The positively charged cations are attracted to the neg and anions of an ionic solute separate when the solute dissolves. This process is referred to as **dissociation** (Figure **9.2.1**).

The dissociation of soluble ionic compounds gives solutions of these compounds an interesting property: they conduct electricity. Because of this property, soluble ionic compounds are referred to as electrolytes. Many ionic compounds dissociate completely and are therefore called **strong electrolytes**. Sodium chloride is an example of a strong electrolyte. Some compounds dissolve but dissociate only partially, and solutions of such solutes may conduct electricity only weakly. These solutes are called **weak electrolytes**. Acetic acid (CH_3COOH), the compound in vinegar, is a weak electrolyte. Solutes that dissolve into individual neutral molecules without dissociation do not impart additional electrical conductivity to their solutions and are called nonelectrolytes. Table sugar ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) is an example of a nonelectrolyte.

> *The term **electrolyte** is used in medicine to mean any of the important ions that are dissolved in aqueous solution in the body. Important physiological electrolytes include Na^+, K^+, Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, and Cl^-.*

Example 9.2.1

The following substances all dissolve to some extent in water. Classify each as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte.

1. potassium chloride (KCl)
2. fructose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$)
3. isopropyl alcohol [$CH_3CH(OH)CH_3$]
4. magnesium hydroxide [$Mg(OH)_2$]

Solution

Each substance can be classified as an ionic solute or a nonionic solute. Ionic solutes are electrolytes, and nonionic solutes are nonelectrolytes.

1. Potassium chloride is an ionic compound; therefore, when it dissolves, its ions separate, making it an electrolyte.
2. Fructose is a sugar similar to glucose. (In fact, it has the same molecular formula as glucose.) Because it is a molecular compound, we expect it to be a nonelectrolyte.
3. Isopropyl alcohol is an organic molecule containing the alcohol functional group. The bonding in the compound is all covalent, so when isopropyl alcohol dissolves, it separates into individual molecules but not ions. Thus, it is a nonelectrolyte
4. Magnesium hydroxide is an ionic compound, so when it dissolves it dissociates. Thus, magnesium hydroxide is an electrolyte.

Exercise 9.2.1

The following substances all dissolve to some extent in water. Classify each as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte.

a. acetone (CH_3COCH_3)
b. iron(III) nitrate [$Fe(NO_3)_3$]
c. elemental bromine (Br_2)
d. sodium hydroxide (NaOH)

Answer

a. nonelectrolyte

b. electrolyte

c. nonelectrolyte

d. electrolyte

Electrolytes in Body Fluids

Our body fluids are solutions of electrolytes and many other things. The combination of blood and the circulatory system is the *river of life*, because it coordinates all the life functions. When the heart stops pumping in a heart attack, the life ends quickly. Getting the heart restarted as soon as one can is crucial in order to maintain life.

The primary electrolytes required in the body fluid are cations (of calcium, potassium, sodium, and magnesium) and anions (of chloride, carbonates, aminoacetates, phosphates, and iodide). These are nutritionally called **macrominerals**.

Electrolyte balance is crucial to many body functions. Here's some extreme examples of what can happen with an imbalance of electrolytes: elevated potassium levels may result in cardiac arrhythmias; decreased extracellular potassium produces paralysis; excessive extracellular sodium causes fluid retention; and decreased plasma calcium and magnesium can produce muscle spasms of the extremities.

When a patient is dehydrated, a carefully prepared (commercially available) electrolyte solution is required to maintain health and well being. In terms of child health, oral electrolyte is given when a child is dehydrated due to diarrhea. The use of oral electrolyte maintenance solutions, which is responsible for saving millions of lives worldwide over the last 25 years, is one of the most important medical advances in protecting the health of children in the century, explains Juilus G.K. Goepp, MD, assistant director of the Pediatric Emergency Department of the Children's Center at Johns Hopkins Hospital. If a parent provides an oral electrolyte maintenance solution at the very start of the illness, dehydration can be prevented. The functionality of electrolyte solutions is related to their properties, and interest in electrolyte solutions goes far beyond chemistry.

Sports drinks are designed to rehydrate the body after excessive fluid depletion. Electrolytes in particular promote normal rehydration to prevent fatigue during physical exertion. Are they a good choice for achieving the recommended fluid intake? Are they performance and endurance enhancers like they claim? Who should drink them?

Typically, eight ounces of a sports drink provides between fifty and eighty calories and 14 to 17 grams of carbohydrate, mostly in the form of simple sugars. Sodium and potassium are the most commonly included electrolytes in sports drinks, with the levels of these in sports drinks being highly variable. The American College of Sports Medicine says a sports drink should contain 125 milligrams of sodium per 8 ounces as it is helpful in replenishing some of the sodium lost in sweat and promotes fluid uptake in the small intestine, improving hydration.

Gatorade

In the summer of 1965, the assistant football coach of the University of Florida Gators requested scientists affiliated with the university study why the withering heat of Florida caused so many heat-related illnesses in football players and provide a solution to increase athletic performance and recovery post-training or game. The discovery was that inadequate replenishment of fluids, carbohydrates, and electrolytes was the reason for the “wilting” of their football players. Based on their research, the



scientists concocted a drink for the football players containing water, carbohydrates, and electrolytes and called it “Gatorade.” In the next football season the Gators were nine and two and won the Orange Bowl. The Gators’ success launched the sports-drink industry, which is now a multibillion-dollar industry that is still dominated by Gatorade.

University of Florida football player Chip Hinton testing Gatorade in 1965, pictured next to the leader of its team of inventors, Robert Cade.

Concept Review Exercise

1. Explain how the solvation process describes the dissolution of a solute in a solvent.

Answer

1. Each particle of the solute is surrounded by particles of the solvent, carrying the solute from its original phase.

Key Takeaway

- When a solute dissolves, its individual particles are surrounded by solvent molecules and are separated from each other.

Exercises

1. Describe what happens when an ionic solute like Na_2SO_4 dissolves in a polar solvent.
2. Describe what happens when a molecular solute like sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) dissolves in a polar solvent.
3. Classify each substance as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte. Each substance dissolves in H_2O to some extent.
    a. NH_4NO_3
    b. CO_2
    c. NH_2CONH_2
    d. HCl
4. Classify each substance as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte. Each substance dissolves in H_2O to some extent.
    a. $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$
    b. $Ca(CH_3CO_2)_2$
    c. I_2
    d. KOH
5. Will solutions of each solute conduct electricity when dissolved?
    a. $AgNO_3$
    b. $CHCl_3$
    c. $BaCl_2$
    d. Li_2O
6. Will solutions of each solute conduct electricity when dissolved?
    a. CH_3COCH_3
    b. $N(CH_3)_3$
    c. $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$
    d. $FeCl_2$

Answers

1. Each ion of the ionic solute is surrounded by particles of solvent, carrying the ion from its associated crystal.

2. Each sucrose molecule is surrounded by solvent molecules (attracted to each other via intermolecular forces of attraction).

3. a. electrolyte
   b. nonelectrolyte
   c. nonelectrolyte
   d. electrolyte

4.

   a. nonelectrolyte
   b. electrolyte
   c. nonelectrolyte
   d. electrolyte

5.

   a. yes
   b. no
   c. yes
   d. yes

6.

   a. no
   b. no
   c. no
   d. yes

9.2: The Solution Process is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.3: The Dissolution Process** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

9.3: Solubility

Learning Objectives

- Describe solutions as saturated or unsaturated by understanding solubility.

To define a solution precisely, we need to state its concentration: how much solute is dissolved in a certain amount of solvent. Words such as *dilute* or *concentrated* are used to describe solutions that have a little or a lot of dissolved solute, respectively, but these are relative terms whose meanings depend on various factors.

Solubility

There is usually a limit to how much solute will dissolve in a given amount of solvent. This limit is called the **solubility** of the solute. Some solutes have a very small solubility, while other solutes are soluble in all proportions. Table **9.3.1** lists the solubilities of various solutes in water. Solubilities vary with temperature, so Table **9.3.1** includes the temperature at which the solubility was determined.

Table **9.3.1**: Solubilities of Various Solutes in Water at 25°C (Except as Noted)

Substance	Solubility (g in 100 mL of H_2O)
AgCl(s)	0.019
$C_6H_6(\ell)$ (benzene)	0.178
$CH_4(g)$	0.0023
$CO_2(g)$	0.150
$CaCO_3(s)$	0.058
$CaF_2(s)$	0.0016
$Ca(NO_3)_2(s)$	143.9
$C_6H_{12}O_6$ (glucose)	120.3 (at 30°C)
KBr(s)	67.8
$MgCO_3(s)$	2.20
NaCl(s)	36.0
$NaHCO_3(s)$	8.41
$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ (sucrose)	204.0 (at 20°C)

If a solution contains so much solute that its solubility limit is reached, the solution is said to be **saturated**, and its concentration is known from information contained in Table **9.3.1**. If a solution contains less solute than the solubility limit, it is **unsaturated**. Under special circumstances, more solute can be dissolved even after the normal solubility limit is reached; such solutions are called ***supersaturated*** and are not stable. If the solute is solid, excess solute can easily recrystallize. If the solute is a gas, it can bubble out of solution uncontrollably, like what happens when you shake a soda can and then immediately open it.

Most solutions we encounter are unsaturated, so knowing the solubility of the solute does not accurately express the amount of solute in these solutions. There are several common ways of specifying the concentration of a solution that will be discussed in later sections.

Solution Equilibrium

When a solute dissolves, its individual atoms, molecules, or ions interact with the solvent, become solvated, and are able to diffuse independently throughout the solution (Figure **9.3.1***a*). This is not, however, a unidirectional process. If the molecule or ion happens to collide with the surface of a particle of the undissolved solute, it may adhere to the particle in a process called crystallization. The **equilibrium** between dissolution and crystallization continue as long as excess solid is present, resulting in a dynamic equilibrium analogous to the equilibrium that maintains the vapor pressure of a liquid. We can represent these opposing processes as follows:

$$\text{solute} + \text{solvent} \underset{\text{crystallization}}{\overset{\text{dissolution}}{\longrightleftharpoons}} \text{solution}$$

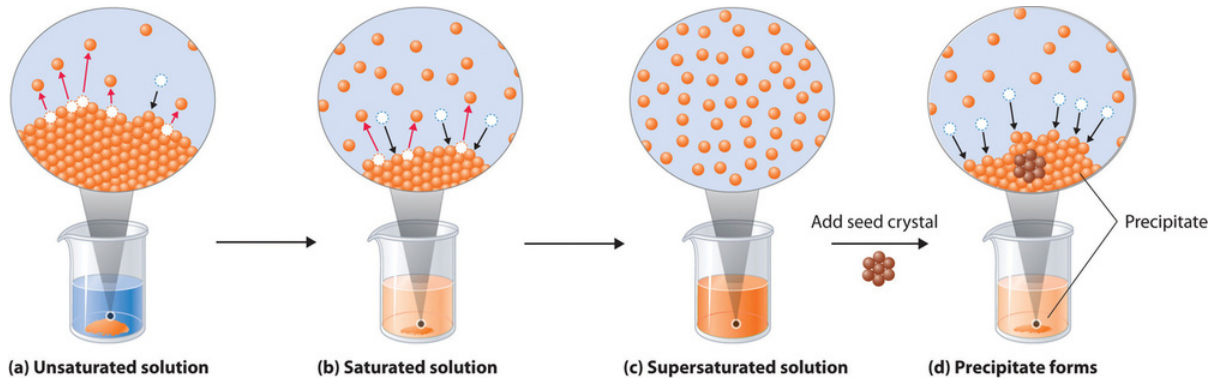


Figure **9.3.1**: Dissolution and Precipitation. (a) When a solid is added to a solvent in which it is soluble, solute particles leave the surface of the solid and become solvated by the solvent, initially forming an unsaturated solution. (b) When the maximum possible amount of solute has dissolved, the solution becomes saturated. If excess solute is present, the rate at which solute particles leave the surface of the solid equals the rate at which they return to the surface of the solid. (c) A supersaturated solution can usually be formed from a saturated solution by filtering off the excess solute and lowering the temperature. (d) When a seed crystal of the solute is added to a supersaturated solution, solute particles leave the solution and form a crystalline precipitate.

Starting on the left the solution starts are unsaturated, then saturated, then supersaturated, when seed crystal is added a precipitate forms.

9.3: Solubility is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **13.2: Saturated Solutions and Solubility** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

9.4: The Effect of Temperature on Solubility

Learning Objectives

- Describe how temperature affects solubility of different types of solute.

The solubility of the majority of solid substances increases as the temperature increases. However, the effect is difficult to predict and varies widely from one solute to another. The temperature dependence of solubility can be visualized with the help of a **solubility curve**, a graph of the solubility vs. temperature (Figure **9.4.1** below).

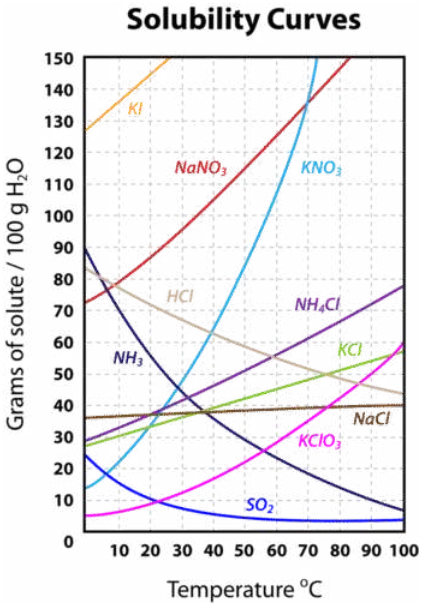


Figure **9.4.1**: A solubility curve is a graph of the solubility of a substance as a function of temperature.

Notice how the temperature dependence of $\mathbf{NaCl}$ is fairly flat, meaning that an increase in temperature has relatively little effect on the solubility of $\mathbf{NaCl}$. The curve for $\mathbf{KNO_3}$, on the other hand, is very steep, and so an increase in temperature dramatically increases the solubility of $\mathbf{KNO_3}$.

Several substances—$\mathbf{HCl}$, $\mathbf{NH_3}$, and $\mathbf{SO_2}$—have solubility that decreases as temperature increases. They are all gases at standard pressure. When a solvent with a gas dissolved in it is heated, the kinetic energy of both the solvent and solute increase. As the kinetic energy of the gaseous solute increases, its molecules have a greater tendency to escape the attraction of the solvent molecules and return to the gas phase. Therefore, the solubility of a gas decreases as the temperature increases.

Solubility curves can be used to determine if a given solution is *saturated* or *unsaturated*. Suppose that $\mathbf{80\ g}$ of $\mathbf{KNO_3}$ is added to $\mathbf{100\ g}$ of water at $\mathbf{30\,°C}$. According to the solubility curve in Figure **9.4.1**, approximately $\mathbf{48\ g}$ of $\mathbf{KNO_3}$ will dissolve at $\mathbf{30\,°C}$. This means that the solution will be saturated since $\mathbf{48\ g}$ is less than $\mathbf{80\ g}$. We can also determine that there will be $\mathbf{80 - 48 = 32\ g}$ of undissolved $\mathbf{KNO_3}$ remaining at the bottom of the container. In a second scenario, suppose that this saturated solution is heated to $\mathbf{60\,°C}$. According to the curve, the solubility of $\mathbf{KNO_3}$ at $\mathbf{60\,°C}$ is about $\mathbf{107\ g}$. The solution, in this case, is unsaturated since it contains only the original $\mathbf{80\ g}$ of dissolved solute. Suppose in a third case, that the solution is cooled all the way down to $\mathbf{0\,°C}$. The solubility at $\mathbf{0\,°C}$ is about $\mathbf{14\ g}$, meaning that $\mathbf{80 - 14 = 66\ g}$ of the $\mathbf{KNO_3}$ will recrystallize.

Supersaturated Solutions

Some solutes, such as sodium acetate, do not recrystallize easily. Suppose an exactly saturated solution of sodium acetate is prepared at $\mathbf{50\,°C}$. As it cools back to room temperature, no crystals appear in the solution, even though the solubility of sodium acetate is lower at room temperature. A **supersaturated solution** is a solution that contains more than the maximum amount of solute that is capable of being dissolved at a given temperature. The recrystallization of the excess dissolved solute in a supersaturated solution can be initiated by the addition of a tiny crystal of solute, called a seed crystal. The seed crystal provides a

nucleation site on which the excess dissolved crystals can begin to grow. Recrystallization from a supersaturated solution is typically very fast.



Chemistry in Everyday Life: Handwarmers

Recrystallization of excess solute from a supersaturated solution usually gives off energy as heat. Commercial heat packs, such as the one in Figure **9.4.2**, containing supersaturated sodium acetate ($NaC_2H_3O_2$) take advantage of this phenomenon. You can probably find them at your local drugstore.



Figure **9.4.2**: This hand warmer produces heat when the sodium acetate in a supersaturated solution precipitates. Precipitation of the solute is initiated by a mechanical shockwave generated when the flexible metal disk within the solution is "clicked." (credit: modification of work by "Velela"/Wikimedia Commons)

9.4: The Effect of Temperature on Solubility is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.4: How Temperature Influences Solubility** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.
- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

9.5: The Effect of Pressure on Solubility - Henry's Law

Learning Objectives

- Describe how pressure affects concentration of a solute in a solution.

Pressure has very little effect on the solubility of solids or liquids, but has a significant effect on the solubility of gases. Gas solubility increases as the partial pressure of a gas above the liquid increases. Suppose a certain volume of water is in a closed container with the space above it occupied by carbon dioxide gas at standard pressure. Some of the CO_2 molecules come into contact with the surface of the water and dissolve into the liquid. Now suppose that more CO_2 is added to the space above the container, causing a pressure increase. In this case, more CO_2 molecules are in contact with the water and so more of them dissolve. Thus, the solubility increases as the pressure increases. As with a solid, the CO_2 that is undissolved reaches an equilibrium with the dissolved CO_2, represented by the equation:

$$CO_2\,(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2\,(aq)$$

At equilibrium, the rate of gaseous CO_2 dissolution is equal to the rate of dissolved CO_2 coming out of the solution.

When carbonated beverages are packaged, they are done so under high CO_2 pressure so that a large amount of carbon dioxide dissolves in the liquid. When the bottle is open, the equilibrium is disrupted because the CO_2 pressure above the liquid decreases. Immediately, bubbles of CO_2 rapidly exit the solution and escape out of the top of the open bottle, see Figure 9.5.1. The amount of dissolved CO_2 decreases. If the bottle is left open for an extended period of time, the beverage becomes "flat" as more and more CO_2 comes out of the liquid.

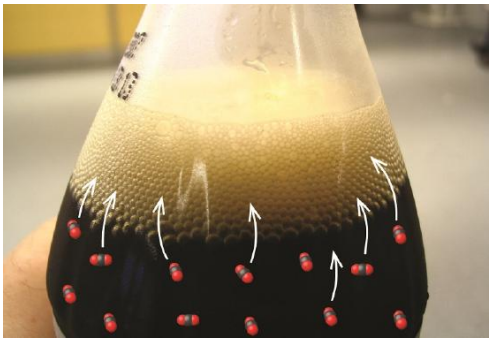


Figure 9.5.1: Opening the bottle of carbonated beverage reduces the pressure of the gaseous carbon dioxide above the beverage. The solubility of CO_2 is thus lowered, and some dissolved carbon dioxide may be seen leaving the solution as small gas bubbles. (credit: modification of work by Derrick Coetzee)

The relationship of gas solubility to pressure is described by Henry's law, named after English chemist William Henry (1774-1836). **Henry's Law** states that the solubility of a gas in a liquid is directly proportional to the partial pressure of the gas above the liquid. Henry's law can be written as follows:

$$\frac{C_1}{P_1} = \frac{C_2}{P_2} = k$$

C_1 and P_1 are the concentration and the pressure at an initial set of conditions; C_2 and P_2 are the concentration and pressure at another changed set of conditions; k is a constant at a constant temperature. The solubility of a gas is typically reported in $\mathrm{g/L}$.

Example 9.5.1

The solubility of a certain gas in water is $0.745\ \mathrm{g/L}$ at standard pressure. What is its solubility when the pressure above the solution is raised to $4.50\ \mathrm{atm}$? The temperature is constant at $20°C$.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- $C_1 = 0.745$ g/L
- $P_2 = 4.50$ atm

Unknown

Substitute into Henry's law and solve for C_2.

Step 2: Solve.

$$C_2 = \frac{C_1 \times P_2}{P_1} = \frac{0.745\ \text{g/L} \times 4.50\ \text{atm}}{1.00\ \text{atm}} = 3.35\ \text{g/L}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The solubility is increased to 4.5 times its original value, according to the direct relationship.

Exercise 9.5.1

Exposing a 100.0 mL sample of water at 0 °C to an atmosphere containing a gaseous solute at 20.26 kPa (152 torr) resulted in the dissolution of 1.45 × 10^{-3} g of the solute. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of this gaseous solute when its pressure is 101.3 kPa (760 torr).

Answer

7.25 × 10^{-3} g in 100.0 mL or 0.0725 g/L

Case Study: Decompression Sickness ("The Bends")

Decompression sickness (DCS), or "the bends," is an effect of the increased pressure of the air inhaled by scuba divers when swimming underwater at considerable depths. In addition to the pressure exerted by the atmosphere, divers are subjected to additional pressure due to the water above them, experiencing an increase of approximately 1 atm for each 10 m of depth. Therefore, the air inhaled by a diver while submerged contains gases at the corresponding higher ambient pressure, and the concentrations of the gases dissolved in the diver's blood are proportionally higher per Henry's law.



Figure 9.5.4: (a) US Navy divers undergo training in a recompression chamber. (b) Divers receive hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Two photos are shown. The first shows two people seated in a steel chamber on benches that run length of the chamber on each side. The chamber has a couple of small circular windows and an open hatch-type door. One of the two people is giving a thumbs up gesture. The second image provides a view through a small, circular window. Inside the two people can be seen with masks over their mouths and noses. The people appear to be reading.

As the diver ascends to the surface of the water, the ambient pressure decreases and the dissolved gases becomes less soluble. If the ascent is too rapid, the gases escaping from the diver's blood may form bubbles that can cause a variety of symptoms ranging from rashes and joint pain to paralysis and death. To avoid DCS, divers must ascend from depths at relatively slow speeds (10 or 20 m/min) or otherwise make several decompression stops, pausing for several minutes at given depths during the ascent. When these preventive measures are unsuccessful, divers with DCS are often provided hyperbaric oxygen therapy in pressurized vessels called decompression (or recompression) chambers (Figure 9.5.4).

9.5: The Effect of Pressure on Solubility - Henry's Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **16.6: Henry's Law** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.
- **11.4: Solubility** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.6: Units of Concentration

Learning Objectives

- Calculate concentration of a solution using different units.
- Use concentration units to calculate the amount of solute in a solution.
- Use molarity to determine quantities in chemical reactions.

Percent Concentrations

There are several ways of expressing the concentration of a solution by using a percentage. The **mass/mass percent** (% m/m) is defined as the mass of a solute divided by the mass of a solution times 100:

$$\%\,\mathrm{m/m} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 100\%$$

If you can measure the masses of the solute and the solution, determining the mass/mass percent is easy. Each mass must be expressed in the same units to determine the proper concentration.

Example 9.6.1

A saline solution with a mass of 355 g has 36.5 g of NaCl dissolved in it. What is the mass/mass percent concentration of the solution?

Solution

We can substitute the quantities given in the equation for mass/mass percent:

$$\%\,\mathrm{m/m} = \frac{36.5\ \mathrm{g}}{355\ \mathrm{g}} \times 100\% = 10.3\%$$

Exercise 9.6.1

A dextrose (also called D-glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$) solution with a mass of 2.00×10^2 g has 15.8 g of dextrose dissolved in it. What is the mass/mass percent concentration of the solution?

Answer

7.90%

For gases and liquids, volumes are relatively easy to measure, so the concentration of a liquid or a gas solution can be expressed as a **volume/volume percent** (% v/v): the volume of a solute divided by the volume of a solution times 100:

$$\%\,\mathrm{v/v} = \frac{\text{volume of solute}}{\text{volume of solution}} \times 100\%$$

Again, the units of the solute and the solution must be the same. A hybrid concentration unit, **mass/volume percent** (% m/v), is commonly used for intravenous (IV) fluids (Figure **9.6.1**). It is defined as the mass in grams of a solute, divided by volume in milliliters of solution times 100:

$$\%\,\mathrm{m/v} = \frac{\text{mass of solute (g)}}{\text{volume of solution (mL)}} \times 100\%$$



Figure **9.6.1**: Mass/Volume Percent.The 0.9% NaCl concentration on this IV bag is mass/volume percent (left). Such solution is used for other purposes and available in bottles (right). Figures used with permission from Wikipedia

Using Percent Concentration in Calculations

The percent concentration can be used to produce a conversion factor between the amount of solute and the amount of solution. As such, concentrations can be useful in a variety of stoichiometry problems as discussed in Chapter 6. In many cases, it is best to use the original definition of the concentration unit; it is that definition that provides the conversion factor.

As an example, if the given concentration is 5% *v/v* alcohol, this means that there are 5 mL of alcohol dissolved in every 100 mL solution.

$$\textbf{5 mL alcohol = 100 mL solution}$$

The two possible conversion factors are written as follows:

$$\frac{\textbf{5 mL alcohol}}{\textbf{100 mL solution}} \text{ or } \frac{\textbf{100 mL solution}}{\textbf{5 mL alcohol}}$$

Use the first conversion factor to convert from a given amount of solution to amount of solute. The second conversion factor is used to convert from a given amount of solute to amount of solution. Given any two quantities in any percent composition, the third quantity can be calculated, as the following example illustrates.

✔ Example **9.6.2**

A sample of 45.0% v/v solution of ethanol (C_2H_5OH) in water has a volume of 115 mL. What volume of ethanol solute does the sample contain?

Solution

A percentage concentration is simply the number of parts of solute per 100 parts of solution. Thus, the percent concentration of 45.0% v/v implies the following:

$$\textbf{45.0\% v/v} \rightarrow \frac{\textbf{45 mL } C_2H_5OH}{\textbf{100 mL solution}}$$

That is, there are 45 mL of C_2H_5OH for every 100 mL of solution. We can use this fraction as a conversion factor to determine the amount of C_2H_5OH in 115 mL of solution:

$$115\ \text{mL solution} \times \frac{45\ \text{mL } C_2H_5OH}{100\ \text{mL solution}} = 51.8\ \text{mL } C_2H_5OH$$

? Exercise 9.6.2

What volume of a 12.75% m/v solution of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) in water is needed to obtain 50.0 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$?

Answer

$$50.0\ \text{g } C_6H_12O_6 \times \frac{100\ \text{mL solution}}{12.75\ \text{g } C_6H_12O_6} = 392\ \text{mL solution}$$

✓ Example 9.6.3

A normal saline IV solution contains 9.0 g of NaCl in every liter of solution. What is the mass/volume percent of normal saline?

Solution

We can use the definition of mass/volume percent, but first we have to express the volume in milliliter units:

1 L = 1,000 mL

Because this is an exact relationship, it does not affect the significant figures of our result.

$$\%\ \text{m/v} = \frac{9.0\ \text{g NaCl}}{1,000\ \text{mL solution}} \times 100\% = 0.90\%\ \text{m/v}$$

? Exercise 9.6.3

The chlorine bleach that you might find in your laundry room is typically composed of 27.0 g of sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl), dissolved to make 500.0 mL of solution. What is the mass/volume percent of the bleach?

Answer

$$\%\ \text{m/v} = \frac{27.0\ \text{g NaOCl}}{500.0\ \text{mL solution}} \times 100\% = 5.40\%\ \text{m/v}$$

Parts per Million (ppm) and Parts per Billion (ppb)

In addition to percentage units, the units for expressing the concentration of extremely dilute solutions are parts per million (ppm) and parts per billion (ppb). Both of these units are mass based and are defined as follows:

$$\text{ppm} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 1,000,000$$

$$\text{ppb} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 1,000,000,000$$

> *Similar to parts per million and parts per billion, related units include parts per thousand (ppth) and parts per trillion (ppt).*

Concentrations of *trace elements* in the body—elements that are present in extremely low concentrations but are nonetheless necessary for life—are commonly expressed in parts per million or parts per billion. Concentrations of poisons and pollutants are also described in these units. For example, cobalt is present in the body at a concentration of 21 ppb, while the State of Oregon's Department of Agriculture limits the concentration of arsenic in fertilizers to 9 ppm.

> *In aqueous solutions, 1 ppm is essentially equal to 1 mg/L, and 1 ppb is equivalent to 1 µg/L.*

Example 9.6.4

If the concentration of cobalt in a human body is 21 ppb, what mass in grams of Co is present in a body having a mass of 70.0 kg?

Solution

A concentration of 21 ppb means "21 g of solute per 1,000,000,000 g of solution." Written as a **conversion factor,** this concentration of Co is as follows:

$$21 \text{ ppb Co} \rightarrow \frac{21 \text{ g Co}}{1,000,000,000 \text{ g solution}}$$

We can use this as a conversion factor, but first we must convert 70.0 kg to gram units:

$$70.0 \text{ kg} \times \frac{1,000 \text{ g}}{1 \text{ kg}} = 7.00 \times 10^4 \text{ g}$$

Now we determine the amount of Co:

$$7.00 \times 10^4 \text{ g solution} \times \frac{21 \text{ g Co}}{1,000,000,000 \text{ g solution}} = 0.0015 \text{ g Co}$$

This is only 1.5 mg.

Exercise 9.6.4

An 85 kg body contains 0.012 g of Ni. What is the concentration of Ni in parts per million?

Answer

0.14 ppm

Mole/Volume Concentration: Molarity

Another way of expressing concentration is to give the number of moles of solute per unit volume of solution. Such concentration units are useful for discussing chemical reactions in which a solute is a product or a reactant. Molar mass can then be used as a conversion factor to convert amounts in moles to amounts in grams.

Molarity*(M)* is defined as the number of moles of a solute dissolved per liter of solution:

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{number of moles of solute}}{\text{number of liters of solution}}$$

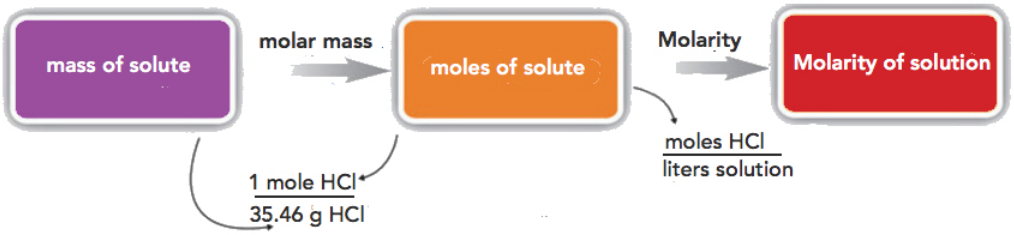
Molarity is abbreviated M (often referred to as "molar"), and the units are often abbreviated as mol/L. It is important to remember that "mol" in this expression refers to moles of solute and that "L" refers to liters of solution. For example, if you have 1.5 mol of NaCl dissolved in 0.500 L of solution, its molarity is therefore

$$\frac{1.5 \text{ mol NaCl}}{0.500 \text{ L solution}} = 3.0 \text{ M NaCl}$$

which is read as "three point oh molar sodium chloride." Sometimes (aq) is added when the solvent is water, as in "3.0 M NaCl(aq)."

Before a molarity concentration can be calculated, the amount of the solute must be expressed in moles, and the volume of the solution must be expressed in liters.

If the quantity of the solute is given in mass units, you must convert mass units to mole units before using the definition of molarity to calculate concentration. For example, what is the molar concentration of a solution of 22.4 g of HCl dissolved in 1.56 L?



Step 1: convert the mass of solute to moles using the molar mass of HCl (36.46 g/mol):

$$22.4\ \cancel{g HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ HCl}{36.46\ \cancel{g HCl}} = 0.614\ mol\ HCl$$

Step 2: use the definition of molarity to determine the concentration:

$$M = \frac{0.614\ mol\ HCl}{1.56 L\ solution} = 0.394\ M HCl$$

Example 9.6.5

What is the molarity of an aqueous solution of 25.0 g of NaOH in 750 mL?

Solution

Before we substitute these quantities into the definition of molarity, we must convert them to the proper units. The mass of NaOH must be converted to moles of NaOH. The molar mass of NaOH is 40.00 g/mol:

$$25.0\ \text{g NaOH} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol NaOH}}{40.00\ \text{g NaOH}} = 0.625\ \text{mol NaOH}$$

Next, we convert the volume units from milliliters to liters:

$$750\ \text{mL} \times \frac{1\ \text{L}}{1,000\ \text{mL}} = 0.750\ \text{L}$$

Now that the quantities are expressed in the proper units, we can substitute them into the definition of molarity:

$$\text{M} = \frac{0.625\ \text{mol NaOH}}{0.750\ \text{L}} = 0.833\ \text{M NaOH}$$

Exercise 9.6.5

If a 350 mL cup of coffee contains 0.150 g of caffeine ($C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$), what is the molarity of this caffeine solution?

Answer

0.00221 M

Using Molarity in Calculations

The definition of molarity can also be used to calculate a needed volume of solution, given its concentration and the number of moles desired, or the number of moles of solute (and subsequently, the mass of the solute), given its concentration and volume. As in the percent concentration, molarity can also be expressed as a conversion factor.

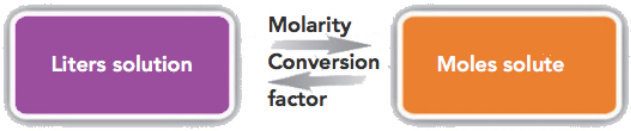
Molarity is defined as moles solute per liter solution. There is an understood 1 in the denominator of the conversion factor. For example, a 3.0 M solution of sucrose means that there are three moles of sucrose dissolved in every liter of solution. Mathematically, this is stated as follows:

3.0 moles sucrose = 1 L solution

Dividing both sides of this expression by either side, we generate two possible conversion factors:

$$\frac{3.0\ \text{mol sucrose}}{1\ \text{L solution}} \text{ or } \frac{1\ \text{L solution}}{3.0\ \text{mol sucrose}}$$

The first conversion factor can be used to convert from *volume (L) of solution to moles solute*, and the *second converts from moles of solute to volume (L) of solution*.



For example, suppose we are asked how many moles of sucrose are present in 0.108 L of a 3.0 M sucrose solution. The given volume (0.108 L) is multiplied by the first conversion factor to cancel the L units, and find that 0.32 moles of sucrose are present.

$$0.108\ \cancel{L\ solution} \times \frac{3.0\ mol\ sucrose}{1\ \cancel{L\ solution}} = 0.32\ mol\ sucrose$$

How many liters of 3.0 M sucrose solution are needed to obtain 4.88 mol of sucrose? In such a conversion, we multiply the given (4.88 moles sucrose) with the second conversion factor. This cancels the moles units and converts it to liters of solution.

$$4.88\ \cancel{mol\ sucrose} \times \frac{1\ L\ solution}{3.0\ \cancel{mol\ sucrose}} = 1.63\ L\ solution$$

Example 9.6.6

1. What volume of a 0.0753 M solution of dimethylamine [$(CH_3)_2NH$] is needed to obtain 0.450 mol of the compound?
2. Ethylene glycol ($C_2H_6O_2$) is mixed with water to make auto engine coolants. How many grams of $C_2H_6O_2$ are in 5.00 L of a 6.00 M aqueous solution?

Solution

1. To solve for the volume, multiply the "given" (0.450 mol of dimethylamine) with the molarity conversion factor (0.0753 M). Use the proper conversion factor to cancel the unit "mol" and get the unit volume (L) of solution:

$$0.450\ \text{mol dimethylamine} \times \frac{1\ \text{L solution}}{0.0753\ \text{mol dimethylamine}} = 5.98\ \text{L solution}$$

2. The strategy in solving this problem is to convert the given volume (5.00 L) using the 6.00 M (conversion factor) to solve for moles of ethylene glycol, which can then be converted to grams.

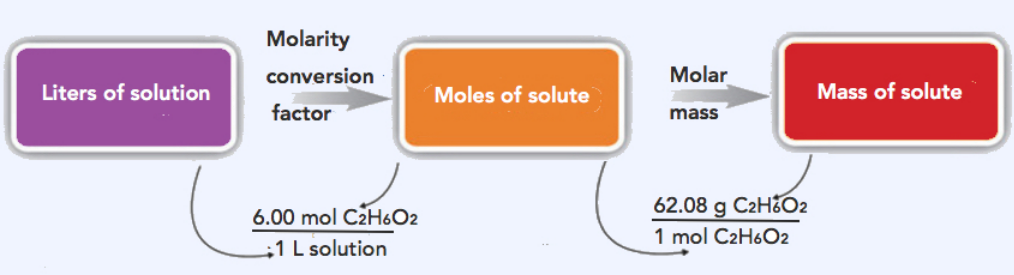
Step 1: Convert the given volume (5.00 L) to moles ethylene glycol.

$$5.00\ \text{L solution} \times \frac{6.00\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O_2}{1\ \text{L solution}} = 30.0\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O_2$$

Step 2: Convert 30.0 mols $C_2H_6O_2$ to grams $C_2H_6O_2$. Molar mass of $C_2H_6O_2$= 62.08 g/mol

$$30.0\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O_2 \times \frac{62.08\ \text{g}\ C_2H_6O_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O_2} = 1,860\ \text{g}\ C_2H_6O_2$$

The same two-step problem can also be worked out in a single line, rather than as two separate steps, as follows:



$$5.00\ \text{L solution} \times \frac{6.00\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O_2}{1\ \text{L solution}} \times \frac{62.08\ \text{g}\ C_2H_6O_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O_2} = 1,860\ \text{g}\ C_2H_6O_2$$

The final answer is rounded off to 3 significant figures. Thus, there are 1,860 g of $C_2H_6O_2$ in the specified amount of engine coolant.

Note: Dimethylamine has a “fishy” odor. In fact, organic compounds called amines cause the odor of decaying fish.

? Exercise 9.6.6

a. What volume of a 0.0902 M solution of formic acid (HCOOH) is needed to obtain 0.888 mol of HCOOH?
b. Acetic acid ($HC_2H_3O_2$) is the acid in vinegar. How many grams of $HC_2H_3O_2$ are in 0.565 L of a 0.955 M solution?

Answer

a. 9.84 L

b. 32.4 g

Solution Stoichiometry

Of all the ways of expressing concentration, molarity is the one most commonly used in stoichiometry problems because it is directly related to the mole unit. Consider the following chemical equation:

$$HCl(aq) + NaOH(s) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + NaCl(aq)$$

Suppose we want to know how many liters of aqueous HCl solution will react with a given mass of NaOH. A typical approach to answering this question is as follows:

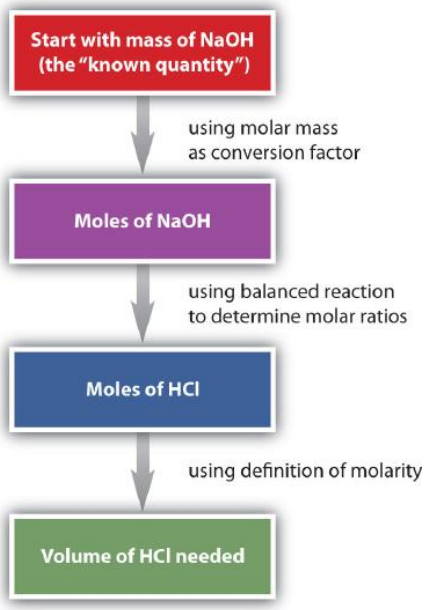


***Figure* 9.6.2**: *Typical approach to solving Molarity problems*

In itself, each step is a straightforward conversion. It is the combination of the steps that is a powerful quantitative tool for problem solving.

✓ Example 9.6.7

How many milliliters of a 2.75 M HCl solution are needed to react with 185 g of NaOH? The balanced chemical equation for this reaction is as follows:

$$HCl(aq) + NaOH(s) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + NaCl(aq)$$

Solution

We will follow the flowchart to answer this question. First, we convert the mass of NaOH to moles of NaOH using its molar mass, 40.00 g/mol:

$$185\ \text{g NaOH} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol NaOH}}{40.00\ \text{g NaOH}} = 4.63\ \text{mol NaOH}$$

Using the balanced chemical equation, we see that there is a one-to-one ratio of moles of HCl to moles of NaOH. We use this to determine the number of moles of HCl needed to react with the given amount of NaOH:

$$4.63\ \text{mol NaOH} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol NaOH}} = 4.63\ \text{mol HCl}$$

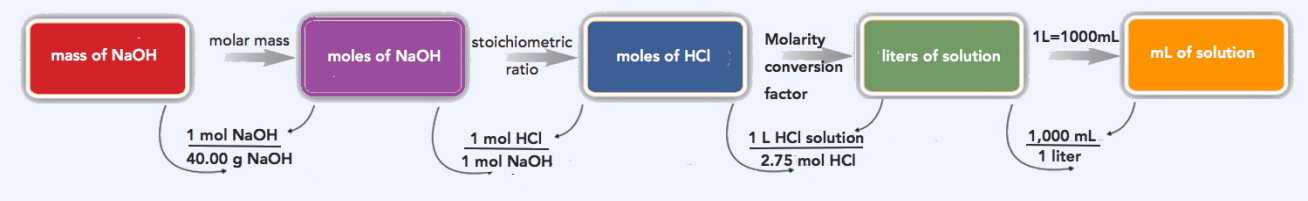
Finally, we use the definition of molarity to determine the volume of 2.75 M HCl needed:

$$2.75\ \text{M HCl} = \frac{4.63\ \text{mol HCl}}{\text{volume of HCl solution}}$$

$$\text{volume of HCl} = \frac{4.63\ \text{mol HCl}}{2.75\ \text{M HCl}} = 1.68\ \text{L} \times \frac{1,000\ \text{mL}}{1\ \text{L}} = 1,680\ \text{mL}$$

We need 1,680 mL of 2.75 M HCl to react with the NaOH.

The same multi-step problem can also be worked out in a single line, rather than as separate steps, as follows:



$$185\ \text{g NaOH} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol NaOH}}{40.00\ \text{g NaOH}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol NaOH}} \times \frac{1\ \text{L HCl solution}}{2.75\ \text{mol HCl}} \times \frac{1000\ \text{mL HCl solution}}{1\ \text{L HCl solution}} = 1,680\ \text{mL HCl solution}$$

Our final answer (rounded off to three significant figures) is 1,680 mL HCl solution.

? Exercise 9.6.7

How many milliliters of a 1.04 M H_2SO_4 solution are needed to react with 98.5 g of $Ca(OH)_2$? The balanced chemical equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$H_2SO_{4(aq)} + Ca(OH)_{2(s)} \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(\ell)} + CaSO_{4(aq)}$$

Answer

1,280 mL

The generic steps for performing stoichiometry problems such as this are shown in Figure **9.6.3**. You may want to consult this figure when working with solutions in chemical reactions. The double arrows in Figure **9.6.3** indicate that you can start at either end of the chart and, after a series of simple conversions, determine the quantity at the other end.

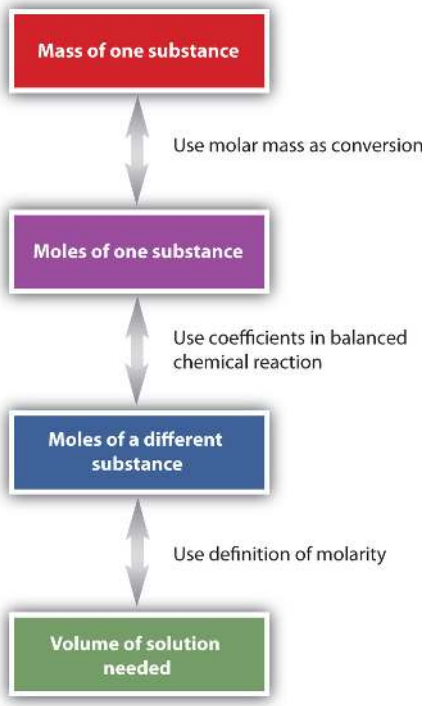


Figure **9.6.3**: Diagram of Steps for Using Molarity in Stoichiometry Calculations. When using molarity in stoichiometry calculations, a specific sequence of steps usually leads you to the correct answer.

Solutions in Our Body

Many of the fluids found in our bodies are solutions. The solutes range from simple ionic compounds to complex proteins. Table **9.6.1** lists the typical concentrations of some of these solutes.

Table **9.6.1**: Approximate Concentrations of Various Solutes in Some Solutions in the Body*

Solution	Solute	Concentration (M)
blood plasma	Na^+	0.138
	K^+	0.005
	Ca^{2+}	0.004
	Mg^{2+}	0.003
	Cl^-	0.110
	HCO_3^-	0.030
stomach acid	HCl	0.10
urine	NaCl	0.15
	PO_4^{3-}	0.05
	NH_2CONH_2 (urea)	0.30

*Note: Concentrations are approximate and can vary widely.

Looking Closer: The Dose Makes the Poison

Why is it that we can drink 1 qt of water when we are thirsty and not be harmed, but if we ingest 0.5 g of arsenic, we might die? There is an old saying: *the dose makes the poison*. This means that what may be dangerous in some amounts may not be dangerous in other amounts.

Take arsenic, for example. Some studies show that arsenic deprivation limits the growth of animals such as chickens, goats, and pigs, suggesting that arsenic is actually an essential trace element in the diet. Humans are constantly exposed to tiny amounts of arsenic from the environment, so studies of completely arsenic-free humans are not available; if arsenic is an essential trace mineral in human diets, it is probably required on the order of 50 ppb or less. A toxic dose of arsenic corresponds to about 7,000 ppb and higher, which is over 140 times the trace amount that may be required by the body. Thus, arsenic is not poisonous in and of itself. Rather, it is the amount that is dangerous: the dose makes the poison.

Similarly, as much as water is needed to keep us alive, too much of it is also risky to our health. Drinking too much water too fast can lead to a condition called water intoxication, which may be fatal. The danger in water intoxication is not that water itself becomes toxic. It is that the ingestion of too much water too fast dilutes sodium ions, potassium ions, and other salts in the bloodstream to concentrations that are not high enough to support brain, muscle, and heart functions. Military personnel, endurance athletes, and even desert hikers are susceptible to water intoxication if they drink water but do not replenish the salts lost in sweat. As this example shows, even the right substances in the wrong amounts can be dangerous!

9.6: Units of Concentration is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

9.7: Dilution

Learning Objective

- Calculate the concentration of solutions prepared by dilution.

Often, a worker will need to change the concentration of a solution by changing the amount of solvent. **Dilution** is the *addition of solvent*, which decreases the concentration of the solute in the solution. **Concentration** is the *removal of solvent*, which increases the concentration of the solute in the solution. (Do not confuse the two uses of the word *concentration* here!)

In both dilution and concentration, the amount of solute stays the same. This gives us a way to calculate what the new solution volume must be for the desired concentration of solute. From the definition of molarity,

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{moles of solute}}{\text{liters of solution}}$$

we can solve for the number of moles of solute:

$$\text{moles of solute} = \text{Molarity (mol/L)} \times \text{Volume of solution (L)}$$

A simpler way of writing this is to use M to represent molarity and V to represent volume. So the equation becomes

$$\text{moles of solute} = M \times V$$

Because this quantity does not change before and after the change in concentration, the product MV must be the same before and after the concentration change. Using numbers to represent the initial and final conditions, we have

$$M_1V_1 = M_2V_2$$

as the dilution equation. The volumes must be expressed in the same units. Note that this equation gives only the initial and final conditions, not the amount of the change. The amount of change in volume is determined by subtraction.

9.7.1 Example

If 25.0 mL of a 2.19 M solution are diluted to 72.8 mL, what is the final concentration?

Solution

It does not matter which set of conditions is labeled 1 or 2, as long as the conditions are paired together properly. Using the dilution equation, we have

$$(2.19\text{ M})(25.0\text{ mL}) = M_2(72.8\text{ mL})$$

Solving for the second concentration (noting that the milliliter units cancel),

$$M_2 = 0.752\text{ M}$$

The concentration of the solution has decreased. In going from 25.0 mL to 72.8 mL, 72.8 − 25.0 = 47.8 mL of solvent must be added.

9.7.1 Exercise

A 0.885 M solution of KBr whose initial volume is 76.5 mL has more water added until its concentration is 0.500 M. What is the new volume of the solution?

Answer

135.4 mL

Concentrating solutions involves removing solvent. Usually this is done by evaporating or boiling, assuming that the heat of boiling does not affect the solute. The dilution equation is used in these circumstances as well.

Chemistry is Everywhere: Preparing IV Solutions

In a hospital emergency room, a physician orders an intravenous (IV) delivery of 100 mL of 0.5% KCl for a patient suffering from hypokalemia (low potassium levels). Does an aide run to a supply cabinet and take out an IV bag containing this concentration of KCl?

Not likely. It is more probable that the aide must make the proper solution from an IV bag of sterile solution and a more concentrated, sterile solution, called a *stock solution*, of KCl. The aide is expected to use a syringe to draw up some stock solution and inject it into the waiting IV bag and dilute it to the proper concentration. Thus the aide must perform a dilution calculation.



Figure **9.7.1** Preparing IV Solution © Thinkstock. Medical personnel commonly must perform dilutions for IV solutions.

If the stock solution is 10.0% KCl and the final volume and concentration need to be 100 mL and 0.50%, respectively, then it is easy to calculate how much stock solution to use:

$$(10\%)V_1 = (0.50\%)(100\text{ mL})V_1 = 5\text{ mL}$$

Of course, the addition of the stock solution affects the total volume of the diluted solution, but the final concentration is likely close enough even for medical purposes.

Medical and pharmaceutical personnel are constantly dealing with dosages that require concentration measurements and dilutions. It is an important responsibility: calculating the *wrong* dose can be useless, harmful, or even fatal!

9.7: Dilution is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.4: Dilutions and Concentrations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

9.8: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes

Learning Objectives

- Define solutes as strong electrolytes, weak electrolytes, or nonelectrolytes.
- Calculate equivalents for an ionic solute.

When some substances are dissolved in water, they undergo either a physical or a chemical change that yields ions in solution. These substances constitute an important class of compounds called electrolytes. Substances that do not yield ions when dissolved are called **nonelectrolytes**. If the physical or chemical process that generates the ions is essentially 100% efficient (all of the dissolved compound yields ions), then the substance is known as a **strong electrolyte**. If only a relatively small fraction of the dissolved substance undergoes the ion-producing process, it is called a **weak electrolyte**.

Substances may be identified as strong, weak, or nonelectrolytes by measuring the electrical conductance of an aqueous solution containing the substance. To conduct electricity, a substance must contain freely mobile, charged species. Most familiar is the conduction of electricity through metallic wires, in which case the mobile, charged entities are electrons. Solutions may also conduct electricity if they contain dissolved ions, with conductivity increasing as ion concentration increases. Applying a voltage to electrodes immersed in a solution permits assessment of the relative concentration of dissolved ions, either quantitatively, by measuring the electrical current flow, or qualitatively, by observing the brightness of a light bulb included in the circuit (Figure 9.8.1).

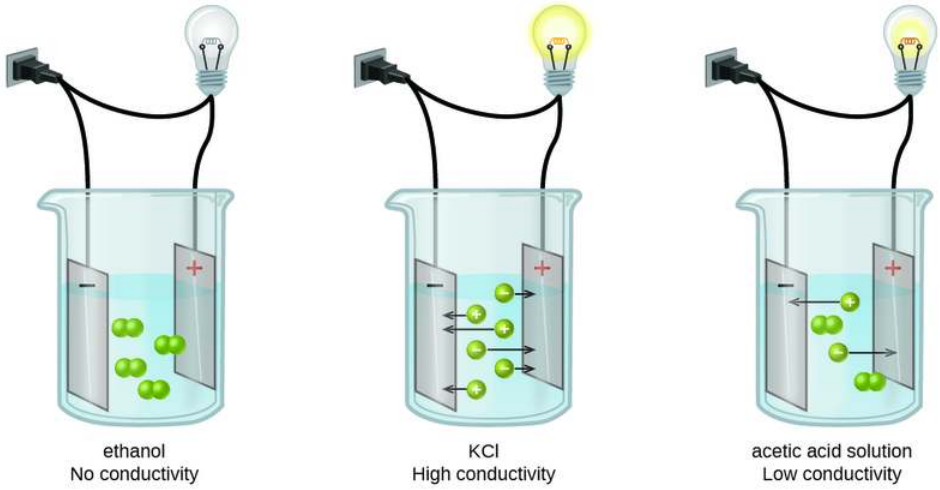


Figure 9.8.1: Solutions of nonelectrolytes such as ethanol do not contain dissolved ions and cannot conduct electricity. Solutions of electrolytes contain ions that permit the passage of electricity. The conductivity of an electrolyte solution is related to the strength of the electrolyte.

Ionic Electrolytes

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure 9.8.2. The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an ion-dipole attraction. These attractions play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

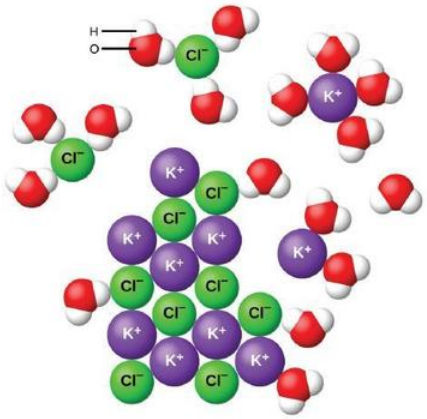


Figure 9.8.2: As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes.

Let us consider what happens at the microscopic level when we add solid KCl to water. Ion-dipole forces attract the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar water molecules to the negative chloride ions at the surface of the solid, and they attract the negative (oxygen) ends to the positive potassium ions. The water molecules penetrate between individual K^+ and Cl^- ions and surround them, reducing the strong interionic forces that bind the ions together and letting them move off into solution as solvated ions, as Figure shows. The reduction of the electrostatic attraction permits the independent motion of each hydrated ion in a dilute solution, resulting in an increase in the disorder of the system as the ions change from their fixed and ordered positions in the crystal to mobile and much more disordered states in solution. This increased disorder is responsible for the dissolution of many ionic compounds, including KCl, which dissolve with absorption of heat.

In other cases, the electrostatic attractions between the ions in a crystal are so large, or the ion-dipole attractive forces between the ions and water molecules are so weak, that the increase in disorder cannot compensate for the energy required to separate the ions, and the crystal is insoluble. Such is the case for compounds such as calcium carbonate (limestone), calcium phosphate (the inorganic component of bone), and iron oxide (rust).

Covalent Electrolytes

Pure water is an extremely poor conductor of electricity because it is only very slightly ionized—only about two out of every 1 billion molecules ionize at 25 °C. Water ionizes when one molecule of water gives up a proton to another molecule of water, yielding hydronium and hydroxide ions.

$$\mathrm{H_2O\,(l) + H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)} \tag{9.8.1}$$

In some cases, we find that solutions prepared from covalent compounds conduct electricity because the solute molecules react chemically with the solvent to produce ions. For example, pure hydrogen chloride is a gas consisting of covalent HCl molecules. This gas contains no ions. However, when we dissolve hydrogen chloride in water, we find that the solution is a very good conductor. The water molecules play an essential part in forming ions: Solutions of hydrogen chloride in many other solvents, such as benzene, do not conduct electricity and do not contain ions.

Hydrogen chloride is an *acid*, and so its molecules react with water, transferring H^+ ions to form hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and chloride ions (Cl^-):



This reaction is essentially 100% complete for HCl (i.e., it is a *strong acid* and, consequently, a strong electrolyte). Likewise, weak acids and bases that only react partially generate relatively low concentrations of ions when dissolved in water and are classified as weak electrolytes. Acids and bases will be explored further in a later chapter.

Equivalents

Concentrations of ionic solutes are occasionally expressed in units called equivalents (Eq). One equivalent equals 1 mol of positive or negative charge. Thus, 1 mol/L of $Na^+(aq)$ is also 1 Eq/L because sodium has a 1+ charge. A 1 mol/L solution of $Ca^{2+}(aq)$ ions has a concentration of 2 Eq/L because calcium has a 2+ charge. Dilute solutions may be expressed in milliequivalents (mEq)—for example, human blood plasma has a total concentration of about 150 mEq/L.

9.8: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.3: Electrolytes** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

9.9: Properties of Solutions

Learning Objectives

- To describe how the properties of solutions differ from those of pure solvents.

Solutions are likely to have properties similar to those of their major component—usually the solvent. However, some solution properties differ significantly from those of the solvent. Here, we will focus on liquid solutions that have a solid solute, but many of the effects we will discuss in this section are applicable to all solutions.

Colligative Properties

Solutes affect some properties of solutions that depend only on the concentration of the dissolved particles. These properties are called ***colligative properties***. Four important colligative properties that we will examine are **vapor pressure depression**, **boiling point elevation**, **freezing point depression**, and **osmotic pressure**.

Molecular compounds separate into individual molecules when they are dissolved, so for every 1 mol of molecules dissolved, we get 1 mol of particles. In contrast, ionic compounds separate into their constituent ions when they dissolve, so 1 mol of an ionic compound will produce more than 1 mol of dissolved particles. For example, every mole of NaCl that dissolves yields 1 mol of Na^+ ions and 1 mol of Cl^- ions, for a total of 2 mol of particles in solution. Thus, the effect on a solution's properties by dissolving NaCl may be twice as large as the effect of dissolving the same amount of moles of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$).

Vapor Pressure Depression

All liquids evaporate. In fact, given enough volume, a liquid will turn completely into a vapor. If enough volume is not present, a liquid will evaporate only to the point where the rate of evaporation equals the rate of vapor condensing back into a liquid. The pressure of the vapor at this point is called the **vapor pressure** of the liquid.

The presence of a dissolved solid lowers the characteristic vapor pressure of a liquid so that it evaporates more slowly. (The exceptions to this statement are if the solute itself is a liquid or a gas, in which case the solute will also contribute something to the evaporation process. We will not discuss such solutions here.) This property is called vapor pressure depression and is depicted in Figure **9.9.1**.

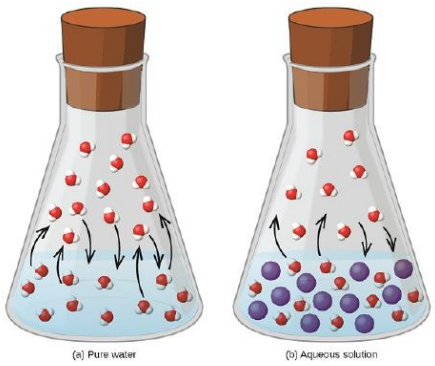


Figure **9.9.1**: Vapor Pressure Depression. The presence of solute particles blocks some of the ability for liquid particles to evaporate. Thus, solutions of solid solutes typically have a lower vapor pressure than the pure solvent.

Boiling Point Elevation

A related property of solutions is that their boiling points are *higher* than the boiling point of the pure solvent. Because the presence of solute particles decreases the vapor pressure of the liquid solvent, a higher temperature is needed to reach the boiling point. This phenomenon is called boiling point elevation. For every mole of particles dissolved in a liter of water, the boiling point of water increases by about 0.51°C.

$$\Delta T_{boiling} = mol\ particles \times 0.51°C$$

The addition of one mole of sucrose (molecular compound) in one liter of water will raise the boiling point from 100°C to 100.51°C, but the addition of one mole of NaCl in one liter of water will raise the boiling point by 2 x 0.51°C = 1.02°C. Furthermore, the addition of one mole of $CaCl_2$ in one liter of water will raise the boiling point by 3 x 0.51°C = 1.53°C.

Everyday Application: Adding Salt to Pasta Water

When cooking dried pasta, many recipes call for salting the water before cooking the pasta. Some argue—with colligative properties on their side—that adding salt to the water raises the boiling point, thus cooking the pasta faster. Is there any truth to this?



Figure **9.9.2**: Cooking dried pasta. Why do so many recipes call for adding salt to water when boiling pasta? Is it to raise the boiling temperature of the water? (Public Domain; Jan Vašek via pixabay)

In order to increase the boiling temperature of 4 L of water by 1.0°C, with the presumption that dried pasta cooks noticeably faster at 101°C than at 100°C (although a 1° difference may make only a negligible change in cooking times), over 1 lb of salt (~1 cup) would be needed. In your experience, do you add almost a cup of salt to a pot of water to make pasta? Certainly not! A few pinches, perhaps one-fourth of a teaspoon, but not almost a cup! It is obvious that the little amount of salt that most people add to their pasta water is not going to significantly raise the boiling point of the water.

So why do people add some salt to boiling water? There are several possible reasons, the most obvious of which is taste: adding salt adds a little bit of salt flavor to the pasta. It cannot be much because most of the salt remains in the water, not in the cooked pasta. However, it may be enough to detect with our taste buds. The other obvious reason is habit; recipes tell us to add salt, so we do, even if there is little scientific or culinary reason to do so.

Freezing Point Depression

The presence of solute particles has the opposite effect on the freezing point of a solution. When a solution freezes, only the solvent particles come together to form a solid phase, and the presence of solute particles interferes with that process. Therefore, for the liquid solvent to freeze, more energy must be removed from the solution, which lowers the temperature. Thus, solutions have lower freezing points than pure solvents do. This phenomenon is called freezing point depression. For every mole of particles in a liter of water, the freezing point decreases by about 1.86°C.

$$\Delta T_{freezing} = mol\ particles \times -1.86°C$$

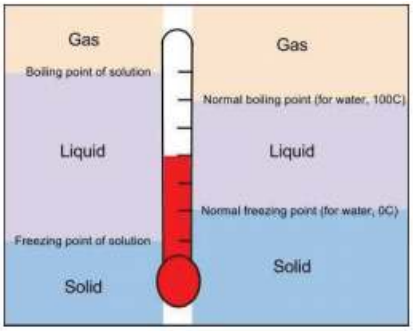


Figure **9.9.3**: Comparison of boiling and freezing points of a pure liquid (right side) with a solution (left side).

Both boiling point elevation and freezing point depression have practical uses. For example, solutions of water and ethylene glycol ($C_2H_6O_2$) are used as coolants in automobile engines because the boiling point of such a solution is greater than 100°C, the normal boiling point of water. In winter, salts like NaCl and $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ are sprinkled on the ground to melt ice or keep ice from forming on roads and sidewalks (Figure **9.9.4**). This is because the solution made by dissolving sodium chloride or calcium chloride in water has a lower freezing point than pure water, so the formation of ice is inhibited.



Figure **9.9.4**: Effect of Freezing Point Depression. The salt sprinkled on this sidewalk makes the water on the sidewalk have a lower freezing point than pure water, so it does not freeze as easily. This makes walking on the sidewalk less hazardous in winter. © Thinkstock

✔ Example 9.9.1

Which solution's freezing point deviates more from that of pure water—a 1 M solution of NaCl or a 1 M solution of $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$?

Solution

Colligative properties depend on the number of dissolved particles, so the solution with the greater number of particles in solution will show the greatest deviation. When NaCl dissolves, it separates into two ions, Na^+ and Cl^-. But when $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ dissolves, it separates into three ions—one Ca^{2+} ion and two Cl^- ions. Thus, mole for mole, $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ will have 50% more impact on freezing point depression than NaCl.

? Exercise 9.9.1

Which solution's boiling point deviates more from that of pure water—a 1 M solution of $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ or a 1 M solution of $MgSO_4$?

Answer

$\mathbf{CaCl_2}$

✔ Example 9.9.2

Estimate the boiling point of 0.2 M $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ solution.

Solution

The boiling point increases 0.51°C for every mole of solute per liter of water. For this estimation, let's assume that 1 liter of solution is roughly the same volume as 1 liter of water. A 0.2 M $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ solution contains 0.2 moles of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ solution formula units per liter of solution. Each $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ unit separates into three ions.

$$0.2\ \mathrm{mol\ CaCl_2} \times \frac{3\ \mathrm{mol\ ions}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ CaCl_2}} \times \frac{0.51°\mathrm{C}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ ion}} = 0.306°\mathrm{C}$$

The normal boiling point of water is 100°C, so the boiling point of the solution is raised to 100.31°C.

? Exercise 9.9.2

Estimate the freezing point of 0.3 M $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ solution.

Answer

–1.7°C

9.9: Properties of Solutions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.4: Properties of Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **11.7: Colligative Properties of Ionic Solutes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure

Learning Objectives

- Describe osmosis and how it relates to osmotic pressure.

Osmotic Pressure

The last colligative property of solutions we will consider is a very important one for biological systems. It involves **osmosis**, the process by which solvent molecules can pass through certain membranes but solute particles cannot. When two solutions of different concentration are present on either side of these membranes (called *semipermeable membranes*), there is a tendency for solvent molecules to move from the more dilute solution to the more concentrated solution until the concentrations of the two solutions are equal. This tendency is called **osmotic pressure**. External pressure can be exerted on a solution to counter the flow of solvent; the pressure required to halt the osmosis of a solvent is equal to the osmotic pressure of the solution.

Consider the apparatus illustrated in Figure **9.10.1**, in which samples of pure solvent and a solution are separated by a membrane that only solvent molecules may permeate. Solvent molecules will diffuse across the membrane in both directions. Since the concentration of *solvent* is greater in the pure solvent than the solution, these molecules will diffuse from the solvent side of the membrane to the solution side at a faster rate than they will in the reverse direction. The result is a net transfer of solvent molecules from the pure solvent to the solution. Diffusion-driven transfer of solvent molecules through a semipermeable membrane is a process known as osmosis.

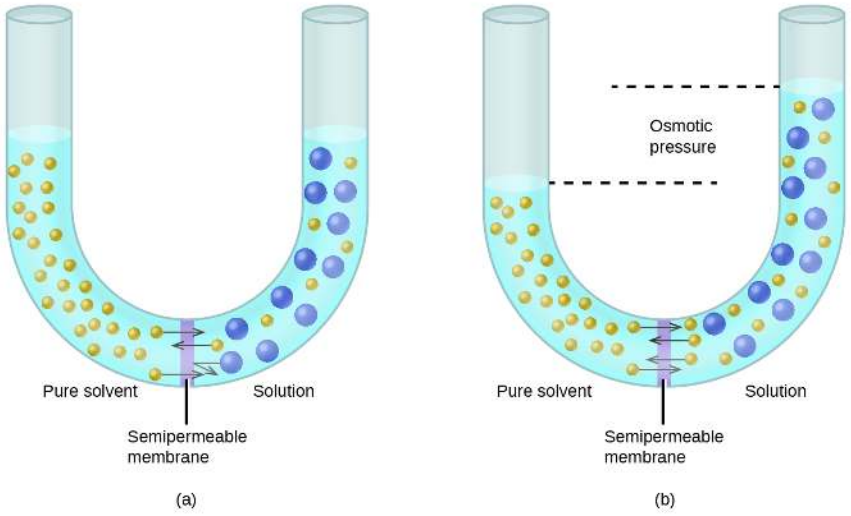


Figure **9.10.1**: Osmosis results in the transfer of solvent molecules from a sample of low (or zero) solute concentration to a sample of higher solute concentration.

When osmosis is carried out in an apparatus like that shown in Figure **9.10.1**, the volume of the solution increases as it becomes diluted by accumulation of solvent. This causes the level of the solution to rise, increasing its hydrostatic pressure (due to the weight of the column of solution in the tube) and resulting in a faster transfer of solvent molecules back to the pure solvent side. When the pressure reaches a value that yields a reverse solvent transfer rate equal to the osmosis rate, bulk transfer of solvent ceases. This pressure is called the osmotic pressure (π) of the solution. The osmotic pressure of a dilute solution can be determined in a similar way the pressure of an ideal gas is calculated using the ideal gas law:

$$\pi = \left(\frac{n}{V}\right) RT$$

where n is the number of moles of particles in solution, V is the volume, and R is the universal gas constant.

Osmolarity (osmol) is a way of reporting the total number of particles in a solution to determine osmotic pressure. It is defined as the molarity of a solute times the number of particles a formula unit of the solute makes when it dissolves (represented by i):

$$osmol = M \times i$$

If more than one solute is present in a solution, the individual osmolarities are additive to get the total osmolarity of the solution. Solutions that have the same osmolarity have the same osmotic pressure. If solutions of differing osmolarities are present on opposite sides of a semipermeable membrane, solvent will transfer from the lower-osmolarity solution to the higher-osmolarity solution. Counterpressure exerted on the high-osmolarity solution will reduce or halt the solvent transfer. An even higher pressure can be exerted to force solvent from the high-osmolarity solution to the low-osmolarity solution, a process called *reverse osmosis*. Reverse osmosis is used to make potable water from saltwater where sources of fresh water are scarce.

Example 9.10.1

A 0.50 M NaCl aqueous solution and a 0.30 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$ aqueous solution are placed on opposite sides of a semipermeable membrane. Determine the osmolarity of each solution and predict the direction of solvent flow.

Solution

The solvent will flow into the solution of higher osmolarity. The NaCl solute separates into two ions—Na^+ and Cl^-—when it dissolves, so its osmolarity is as follows:

$$\text{osmol (NaCl)} = 0.50\ \text{M} \times 2 = 1.0\ \text{osmol}$$

The $Ca(NO_3)_2$ solute separates into three ions—one Ca^{2+} and two NO_3^-—when it dissolves, so its osmolarity is as follows:

$$\text{osmol } [Ca(NO_3)_2] = 0.30\ \text{M} \times 3 = 0.90\ \text{osmol}$$

The osmolarity of the $Ca(NO_3)_2$ solution is lower than that of the NaCl solution, so water will transfer through the membrane from the $Ca(NO_3)_2$ solution to the NaCl solution.

Exercise 9.10.1

A 1.5 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$ aqueous solution and a 0.40 M $Al(NO_3)_3$ aqueous solution are placed on opposite sides of a semipermeable membrane. Determine the osmolarity of each solution and predict the direction of solvent flow.

Answer

osmol $C_6H_{12}O_6$ = 1.5; osmol $Al(NO_3)_3$ = 1.6

The solvent flows from $C_6H_{12}O_6$ solution (lower osmolarity) to $\mathbf{Al(NO_3)_3}$ solution (higher osmolarity).

Examples of osmosis are evident in many biological systems because cells are surrounded by semipermeable membranes. Carrots and celery that have become limp because they have lost water can be made crisp again by placing them in water. Water moves into the carrot or celery cells by osmosis. A cucumber placed in a concentrated salt solution loses water by osmosis and absorbs some salt to become a pickle. Osmosis can also affect animal cells. Solute concentrations are particularly important when solutions are injected into the body. Solutes in body cell fluids and blood serum give these solutions an osmotic pressure of approximately 7.7 atm. Solutions injected into the body must have the same osmotic pressure as blood serum; that is, they should be isotonic with blood serum. If a *less* concentrated solution, a **hypotonic** solution, is injected in sufficient quantity to dilute the blood serum, water from the diluted serum passes into the blood cells by osmosis, causing the cells to expand and rupture (Figure **9.10.2***a*). This process is called hemolysis. When a *more* concentrated solution, a **hypertonic** solution, is injected, the cells lose water to the more concentrated solution, shrivel, and possibly die in a process called *crenation* (Figure **9.10.2***c*). Only if red blood cells are placed in **isotonic** solutions that have the same osmolarity as exists inside the cells are they unaffected by negative effects of osmotic pressure (Figure **9.10.2***b*). Glucose solutions of about 0.31 M, or sodium chloride (NaCl) solutions of about 0.16 M, are isotonic with blood plasma.

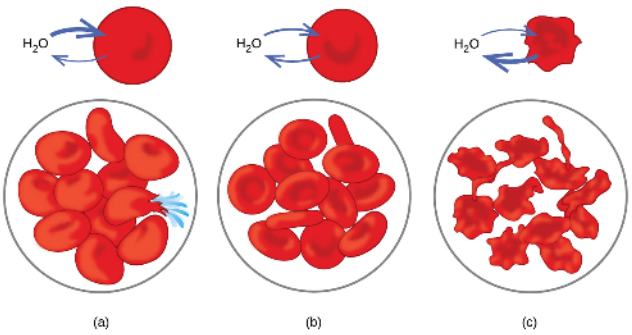


Figure **9.10.2**: Red blood cell membranes are water permeable and will (a) swell and possibly rupture in a **hypotonic** solution; (b) maintain normal volume and shape in an **isotonic** solution; and (c) shrivel and possibly die in a **hypertonic** solution. (credit a/b/c: modifications of work by "LadyofHats"/Wikimedia commons)

Note: Isotonic Solutions for Red Blood Cells

The concentration of an red blood cell isotonic solution made with sodium chloride (NaCl) is half that of an isotonic solution made with glucose (0.16 M and 0.31 M respectively). This is because NaCl produces *two ions* when a formula unit dissolves, while molecular glucose produces only *one particle* when a formula unit dissolves. The osmolarities are therefore the same even though the concentrations of the two solutions are different.

isotonic NaCl solution: $osmol = 0.16\ M \times 2 = 0.32\ osmol/L$

isotonic glucose solution: $osmol = 0.31\ M \times 1 = 0.31\ osmol/L$

Osmotic pressure explains why you should not drink seawater if you are abandoned in a life raft in the middle of the ocean. Its osmolarity is about three times higher than most bodily fluids. You would actually become thirstier as water from your cells was drawn out to dilute the salty ocean water you ingested. Our bodies do a better job coping with hypotonic solutions than with hypertonic ones. The excess water is collected by our kidneys and excreted.

Osmotic pressure effects are used in the food industry to make pickles from cucumbers and other vegetables and in brining meat to make corned beef. It is also a factor in the mechanism of getting water from the roots to the tops of trees!

9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.4: Properties of Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **11.5: Colligative Properties** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.11: Dialysis

Learning Objectives

- Understand the difference between dialysis and osmosis.

As introduced in a previous section, osmosis is the process by which *solvent* particles can pass through a semipermeable membrane. **Dialysis** is similar to osmosis with the difference being that the pores in the semipermeable membranes are larger, thus allowing *both* solvent and small solute molecules to pass through. Larger solute particles, such as colloids and proteins, that cannot pass through the pores in the membrane are left behind. The size of the pores in the semipermeable membranes can be varied to allow for separation (or purification) of specific solute molecules from a solution based on their size. Biochemists and molecular biologists use dialysis to purify proteins from mixtures or to change the concentration of solute particles for different types of experiments, as illustrated in Figure **9.11.1**.

Figure **9.11.1**: Dialysis separates colloidal particles like protein and starch from water, small molecules, and ions. Source: Potcherboy at English Wikipedia / CC BY (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)

Role of dialysis in the human body

Kidneys filter the blood by dialysis, which occurs in tubular structures called nephrons (Figure **9.11.2**. The nephrons filter the water, and small molecules, like glucose, amino acids, urea, and ions from the blood. Useful products and most of the water reabsorb later on, but urea and other waste products are excreted through urine. (You can read more about kidney structure and function here.)

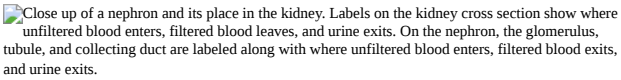


Figure **9.11.2**: Image of a close up nephron and its place in the kidney. Labels on the kidney cross section show where unfiltered blood enters, filtered blood leaves, and urine exits. On the nephron, the glomerulus, tubule, and collecting duct are labeled along with where unfiltered blood enters, filtered blood exits, and urine exits. (National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, National Institutes of Health. CC0 1.0)

The main function of the kidneys is to filter the blood to remove wastes and extra water, which are then expelled from the body as urine. Some diseases rob the kidneys of their ability to perform this function, causing a buildup of waste materials in the bloodstream. If a kidney transplant is not available or desirable, a procedure called dialysis can be used to remove waste materials and excess water from the blood.

In one form of dialysis, called **hemodialysis**, (see Figure **9.11.3**), a patient's blood is passed though a length of tubing that travels through an *artificial kidney machine* (also called a *dialysis machine*). In the dialyser, a section of tubing composed of cellophane (a semipermeable membrane) is immersed in dialysate, a solution of sterile water, glucose, amino acids, and certain electrolytes. The osmotic pressure of the blood forces waste molecules, such as urea, and excess water through the membrane into the dialysate. Red and white blood cells are too large to pass through the membrane, so they remain in the blood. After being cleansed in this way, the blood is returned to the body.

Dialysis is a continuous process, as the osmosis of waste materials and excess water takes time. Typically, 5–10 lb of waste-containing fluid is removed in each dialysis session, which can last 2–8 hours and must be performed several times a week. Although some patients have been on dialysis for 30 or more years, dialysis is always a temporary solution because waste materials are constantly building up in the bloodstream. A more permanent solution is a kidney transplant.



Figure **9.11.3**: Simplified hemodialysis circuit. (Yassine Mrabet, CC BY 3.0)

Career Connection: Dialysis Technician

Dialysis is a medical process of removing wastes and excess water from the blood by diffusion and ultrafiltration. When kidney function fails, dialysis must be done to artificially rid the body of wastes. This is a vital process to keep patients alive. In some cases, the patients undergo artificial dialysis until they are eligible for a kidney transplant. In others who are not candidates for kidney transplants, dialysis is a life-long necessity.

Dialysis technicians typically work in hospitals and clinics. While some roles in this field include equipment development and maintenance, most dialysis technicians work in direct patient care. Their on-the-job duties, which typically occur under the direct supervision of a registered nurse, focus on providing dialysis treatments. This can include reviewing patient history and current condition, assessing and responding to patient needs before and during treatment, and monitoring the dialysis process. Treatment may include taking and reporting a patient's vital signs and preparing solutions and equipment to ensure accurate and sterile procedures.

9.11: Dialysis is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.5: Osmosis** by Muhammad Arif Malik is licensed Public Domain.
- **9.4: Properties of Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **41.1: Osmoregulation and Osmotic Balance** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.12: Net Ionic Equations

Learning Objectives

- Write ionic and net ionic equations for chemical reactions involving ions.

At sports events around the world, a small number of athletes fiercely compete on fields and in stadiums. They get tired, dirty, and sometimes hurt as they try to win the game. Surrounding them are thousands of spectators watching and cheering. Would the game be different without the spectators? Definitely! Spectators provide encouragement to the team and generate enthusiasm. Although the spectators are not playing the game, they are certainly a part of the process.

Net Ionic Equations

We can write a molecular equation for the formation of silver chloride precipitate:

$$\mathrm{NaCl} + \mathrm{AgNO_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{NaNO_3} + \mathrm{AgCl}$$

The corresponding **ionic equation** is written to show the *ions* that are dissolved in solution:

$$\mathrm{Na^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ag^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{Na^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}\,(aq) + \mathrm{AgCl}\,(s)$$

If you look carefully at the ionic equation, you will notice that the sodium ion and the nitrate ion appear unchanged on both sides of the equation. When the two solutions are mixed, neither the $\mathrm{Na^+}$ nor the $\mathrm{NO_3^-}$ ions participate in the reaction. They can be eliminated from the reaction.

$$\cancel{\mathrm{Na^+}\,(aq)} + \mathrm{Cl^-}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ag^+}\,(aq) + \cancel{\mathrm{NO_3^-}\,(aq)} \rightarrow \cancel{\mathrm{Na^+}\,(aq)} + \cancel{\mathrm{NO_3^-}\,(aq)} + \mathrm{AgCl}\,(s)$$

A **spectator ion** is an ion that does not take part in the chemical reaction and is found in solution both before and after the reaction. In the above reaction, the sodium ion and the nitrate ion are both spectator ions. The equation can now be written without the spectator ions:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{AgCl}\,(s)$$

The **net ionic equation** is the chemical equation that shows only those elements, compounds, and ions that are directly involved in the chemical reaction. Notice that in writing the net ionic equation, the positively-charged silver cation was written first on the reactant side, followed by the negatively-charged chloride anion. This is somewhat customary because that is the order in which the ions must be written in the silver chloride product. However, it is not absolutely necessary to order the reactants in this way.

Net ionic equations must be balanced by both mass and charge. Balancing by mass means ensuring that there are equal masses of each element on the product and reactant sides. Balancing by charge means making sure that the overall charge is the same on both sides of the equation. In the above equation, the overall charge is zero, or neutral, on both sides of the equation. As a general rule, if you balance the molecular equation properly, the net ionic equation will end up being balanced by both mass and charge.

Example 9.12.1

When aqueous solutions of copper (II) chloride and potassium phosphate are mixed, a precipitate of copper (II) phosphate is formed. Write a balanced net ionic equation for this reaction.

Solution

Step 1: Plan the problem.

Write and balance the molecular equation first, making sure that all formulas are correct. Then write the ionic equation, showing all aqueous substances as ions. Carry through any coefficients. Finally, eliminate spectator ions and write the net ionic equation.

Step 2: Solve.

Molecular equation:

$$3\mathrm{CuCl_2}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{K_3PO_4}\,(aq) \rightarrow 6\mathrm{KCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Cu_3(PO_4)_2}\,(s)$$

Ionic equation:

$$3Cu^{2+}\,(aq) + 6Cl^{-}\,(aq) + 6K^{+}\,(aq) + 2PO_4{}^{3-}\,(aq) \rightarrow 6K^{+}\,(aq) + 6Cl^{-}\,(aq) + Cu_3(PO_4)_2\,(s)$$

Notice that the balance of the equation is carried through when writing the dissociated ions. For example, there are six chloride ions on the reactant side because the coefficient of 3 is multiplied by the subscript of 2 on the copper (II) chloride formula. The spectator ions, K^{+} and Cl^{-}, can be eliminated.

Net ionic equation:

$$3Cu^{2+}\,(aq) + 2PO_4{}^{3-}\,(aq) \rightarrow Cu_3(PO_4)_2\,(s)$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

For a precipitation reaction, the net ionic equation always shows the two ions that come together to form the precipitate. The equation is balanced by mass and charge.

Summary

- A spectator ion is an ion that does not take part in the chemical reaction and is found in solution both before and after the reaction.
- The net ionic equation is the chemical equation that shows only those elements, compounds, and ions that are directly involved in the chemical reaction.
- An example of writing a net ionic equation is outlined.

9.12: Net Ionic Equations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.18: Net Ionic Equations** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

9.E: Solutions (Exercises)

9.1: Solutions

Concept Review Exercises

1. What causes a solution to form?
2. How does the phrase *like dissolves like* relate to solutions?

Answers

1. Solutions form because a solute and a solvent have similar intermolecular interactions.
2. It means that substances with similar intermolecular interactions will dissolve in each other.

Exercises

1. Define *solution*.
2. Give several examples of solutions.
3. What is the difference between a solvent and a solute?
4. Can a solution have more than one solute in it? Can you give an example?
5. Does a solution have to be a liquid? Give several examples to support your answer.
6. Give at least two examples of solutions found in the human body.
7. Which substances will probably be soluble in water, a very polar solvent?
   a. sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$)
   b. hexane (C_6H_{14})
   c. isopropyl alcohol [$(CH_3)_2CHOH$]
   d. benzene (C_6H_6)
8. Which substances will probably be soluble in toluene ($C_6H_5CH_3$), a nonpolar solvent?
   a. sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$)
   b. hexane (C_6H_{14})
   c. isopropyl alcohol [$(CH_3)_2CHOH$]
   d. benzene (C_6H_6)
9. The solubility of alcohols in water varies with the length of carbon chain. For example, ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH) is soluble in water in any ratio, while only 0.0008 mL of heptanol ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$) will dissolve in 100 mL of water. Propose an explanation for this behavior.
10. Dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2SO$] is a polar liquid. Based on the information in Exercise 9, which do you think will be more soluble in it—ethanol or heptanol?

Answers

1. a homogeneous mixture
2. vinegar, dextrose IV, saline IV, coffee, tea, wine
3. A solvent is the majority component of a solution; a solute is the minority component of a solution.
4. yes. Coke or Pepsi has sugar, caffeine and carbon dioxide as solutes.
5. A solution does not have to be liquid; air is a gaseous solution, while some alloys are solid solutions (answers will vary).
6. Urine, plasma
7. a. probably soluble
   b. probably not soluble

c. probably soluble
d. probably not soluble

8.

a. probably not soluble
b. probably soluble
c. probably not soluble
d. probably soluble

9. Small alcohol molecules have strong polar intermolecular interactions, so they dissolve in water. In large alcohol molecules, the nonpolar end overwhelms the polar end, so they do not dissolve very well in water.

10. Ethanol is a smaller molecule. It will be more soluble in water than heptanol.

9.2: Concentration

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are some of the units used to express concentration?
2. Distinguish between the terms *solubility* and *concentration*.

Answers

1. % m/m, % m/v, ppm, ppb, molarity, and Eq/L (answers will vary)
2. Solubility is typically a limit to how much solute can dissolve in a given amount of solvent. Concentration is the quantitative amount of solute dissolved at any concentration in a solvent.

Exercises

1. Define *solubility*. Do all solutes have the same solubility?
2. Explain why the terms *dilute* or *concentrated* are of limited usefulness in describing the concentration of solutions.
3. If the solubility of sodium chloride (NaCl) is 30.6 g/100 mL of H_2O at a given temperature, how many grams of NaCl can be dissolved in 250.0 mL of H_2O?
4. If the solubility of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) is 120.3 g/100 mL of H_2O at a given temperature, how many grams of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ can be dissolved in 75.0 mL of H_2O?
5. How many grams of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) can a 25.0°C saturated solution have if 150.0 mL of H_2O is used as the solvent?
6. If 75.0 g of potassium bromide (KBr) are dissolved in 125 mL of H_2O, is the solution saturated, unsaturated, or supersaturated?
7. Calculate the mass/mass percent of a saturated solution of NaCl. Use the data from Table **9.*E*.1** "Solubilities of Various Solutes in Water at 25°C (Except as Noted)", assume that masses of the solute and the solvent are additive, and use the density of H_2O (1.00 g/mL) as a conversion factor.
8. Calculate the mass/mass percent of a saturated solution of $MgCO_3$ Use the data from Table **9.*E*.1** "Solubilities of Various Solutes in Water at 25°C (Except as Noted)", assume that masses of the solute and the solvent are additive, and use the density of H_2O (1.00 g/mL) as a conversion factor.
9. Only 0.203 mL of C_6H_6 will dissolve in 100.000 mL of H_2O. Assuming that the volumes are additive, find the volume/volume percent of a saturated solution of benzene in water.
10. Only 35 mL of aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) will dissolve in 1,000 mL of H_2O. Assuming that the volumes are additive, find the volume/volume percent of a saturated solution of aniline in water.

11. A solution of ethyl alcohol (C_2H_5OH) in water has a concentration of 20.56% v/v. What volume of C_2H_5OH is present in 255 mL of solution?
12. What mass of KCl is present in 475 mL of a 1.09% m/v aqueous solution?
13. The average human body contains 5,830 g of blood. What mass of arsenic is present in the body if the amount in blood is 0.55 ppm?
14. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration has set a limit of 200 ppm as the maximum safe exposure level for carbon monoxide (CO). If an average breath has a mass of 1.286 g, what is the maximum mass of CO that can be inhaled at that maximum safe exposure level?
15. Which concentration is greater—15 ppm or 1,500 ppb?
16. Express the concentration 7,580 ppm in parts per billion.
17. What is the molarity of 0.500 L of a potassium chromate solution containing 0.0650 mol of K_2CrO_4?
18. What is the molarity of 4.50 L of a solution containing 0.206 mol of urea [$(NH_2)_2CO$]?
19. What is the molarity of a 2.66 L aqueous solution containing 56.9 g of NaBr?
20. If 3.08 g of $Ca(OH)_2$ is dissolved in enough water to make 0.875 L of solution, what is the molarity of the $Ca(OH)_2$?
21. What mass of HCl is present in 825 mL of a 1.25 M solution?
22. What mass of isopropyl alcohol (C_3H_8O) is dissolved in 2.050 L of a 4.45 M aqueous C_3H_8O solution?
23. What volume of 0.345 M NaCl solution is needed to obtain 10.0 g of NaCl?
24. How many milliliters of a 0.0015 M cocaine hydrochloride ($C_{17}H_{22}ClNO_4$) solution is needed to obtain 0.010 g of the solute?
25. Aqueous calcium chloride reacts with aqueous silver nitrate according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$CaCl_2(aq) + 2AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2AgCl(s) + Ca(NO_3)_2(aq)$$

How many moles of AgCl(s) are made if 0.557 L of 0.235 M $CaCl_2$ react with excess $AgNO_3$? How many grams of AgCl are made?

26. Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) is used to react with acid spills. The reaction with sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) is as follows:

$$2NaHCO_3(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(\ell) + 2CO_2(g)$$

If 27.6 mL of a 6.25 M H_2SO_4 solution were spilled, how many moles of $NaHCO_3$ would be needed to react with the acid? How many grams of $NaHCO_3$ is this?

27. The fermentation of glucose to make ethanol and carbon dioxide has the following overall chemical equation:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6(aq) \rightarrow 2C_2H_5OH(aq) + 2CO_2(g)$$

If 1.00 L of a 0.567 M solution of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ were completely fermented, what would be the resulting concentration of the C_2H_5OH solution? How many moles of CO_2 would be formed? How many grams is this? If each mole of CO_2 had a volume of 24.5 L, what volume of CO_2 is produced?

28. Aqueous sodium bisulfite gives off sulfur dioxide gas when heated:

$$2NaHSO_3(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) + SO_2(g)$$

If 567 mL of a 1.005 M $NaHSO_3$ solution were heated until all the $NaHSO_3$ had reacted, what would be the resulting concentration of the Na_2SO_3 solution? How many moles of SO_2 would be formed? How many grams of SO_2 would be formed? If each mole of SO_2 had a volume of 25.78 L, what volume of SO_2 would be produced?

29. What is the concentration of a 1.0 M solution of $K^+(aq)$ ions in equivalents/liter?
30. What is the concentration of a 1.0 M solution of $SO_4^{2-}(aq)$ ions in equivalents/liter?
31. A solution having initial concentration of 0.445 M and initial volume of 45.0 mL is diluted to 100.0 mL. What is its final concentration?

32. A 50.0 mL sample of saltwater that is 3.0% m/v is diluted to 950 mL. What is its final mass/volume percent?

Answers

1. Solubility is the amount of a solute that can dissolve in a given amount of solute, typically 100 mL. The solubility of solutes varies widely.

2. The term *dilute* means relatively less solute and the term *concentrated* implies relatively more solute. Both are of limited usefulness because these are not accurate.
3. 76.5 g
4. 90.2 g
5. 12.6 g
6. unsaturated
7. 26.5%
8. 2.15%
9. 0.203%
10. 3.4%
11. 52.4 mL
12. 5.18 g
13. 0.00321 g
14. 2.57×10^{-4} g
15. 15 ppm
16. 7,580,000 ppb
17. 0.130 M
18. 0.0458 M
19. 0.208 M
20. 0.0475 M
21. 37.6 g
22. 548 g
23. 0.496 L
24. 20 mL
25. 0.262 mol; 37.5 g
26. 0.345 mol; 29.0 g
27. 1.13 M C_2H_5OH; 1.13 mol of CO_2; 49.7 g of CO_2; 27.7 L of CO_2
28. 0.503 M Na_2SO_3; 0.285 mol SO_2; 18.3 g SO_2; 471 L SO_2
29. 1.0 Eq/L
30. 2.0 Eq/L
31. 0.200 M
32. 0.16 % m/v

9.3: The Dissolution Process

Concept Review Exercise

1. Explain how the solvation process describes the dissolution of a solute in a solvent.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/402326

Answer

1. Each particle of the solute is surrounded by particles of the solvent, carrying the solute from its original phase.

Exercises

1. Describe what happens when an ionic solute like Na_2SO_4 dissolves in a polar solvent.
2. Describe what happens when a molecular solute like sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) dissolves in a polar solvent.
3. Classify each substance as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte. Each substance dissolves in H_2O to some extent.
    a. NH_4NO_3
    b. CO_2
    c. NH_2CONH_2
    d. HCl
4. Classify each substance as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte. Each substance dissolves in H_2O to some extent.
    a. $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$
    b. $Ca(CH_3CO_2)_2$
    c. I_2
    d. KOH
5. Will solutions of each solute conduct electricity when dissolved?
    a. $AgNO_3$
    b. $CHCl_3$
    c. $BaCl_2$
    d. Li_2O
6. Will solutions of each solute conduct electricity when dissolved?
    a. CH_3COCH_3
    b. $N(CH_3)_3$
    c. $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$
    d. $FeCl_2$

Answers

1. Each ion of the ionic solute is surrounded by particles of solvent, carrying the ion from its associated crystal.

2. Each sucrose molecule is surrounded by solvent molecules (attracted to each other via intermolecular forces of attraction).

3. a. electrolyte
    b. nonelectrolyte
    c. nonelectrolyte
    d. electrolyte

4. a. nonelectrolyte
    b. electrolyte
    c. nonelectrolyte
    d. electrolyte

5. a. yes
    b. no
    c. yes
    d. yes

6.

a. no
b. no
c. no
d. yes

9.4: Properties of Solutions

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are the colligative properties of solutions?
2. Explain how the following properties of solutions differ from those of the pure solvent: vapor pressure, boiling point, freezing point, and osmotic pressure.

Answers

1. Colligative properties are characteristics that a solution has that depend on the number, not the identity, of solute particles.
2. In solutions, the vapor pressure is lower, the boiling point is higher, the freezing point is lower, and the osmotic pressure is higher.

Exercises

1. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the lower vapor pressure?

   a. pure water or 1.0 M NaCl
   b. 1.0 M NaCl or 1.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$
   c. 1.0 M $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ or 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

2. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the lower vapor pressure?

   a. 0.50 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$ or 1.0 M KBr
   b. 1.5 M $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ or 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
   c. 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$ or pure water

3. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the higher boiling point?

   a. pure water or a 1.0 M NaCl
   b. 1.0 M NaCl or 1.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$
   c. 1.0 M $\mathbf{CaCl_2}$ or 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

4. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the higher boiling point?

   a. 0.50 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$ or 1.0 M KBr
   b. 1.5 M $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ or 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
   c. 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$ or pure water

5. Estimate the boiling point of each aqueous solution. The boiling point of pure water is 100.0°C.

   a. 0.50 M NaCl
   b. 1.5 M Na_2SO_4
   c. 2.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$

6. Estimate the freezing point of each aqueous solution. The freezing point of pure water is 0.0°C.

   a. 0.50 M NaCl
   b. 1.5 M Na_2SO_4
   c. 2.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$

7. Explain why salt (NaCl) is spread on roads and sidewalks to inhibit ice formation in cold weather.

8. Salt (NaCl) and calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$) are used widely in some areas to minimize the formation of ice on sidewalks and roads. One of these ionic compounds is better, mole for mole, at inhibiting ice formation. Which is that likely to be? Why?

9. What is the osmolarity of each aqueous solution?

    a. 0.500 M NH_2CONH_2
    b. 0.500 M NaBr
    c. 0.500 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$

10. What is the osmolarity of each aqueous solution?

    a. 0.150 M KCl
    b. 0.450 M $(CH_3)_2CHOH$
    c. 0.500 M $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$

11. A 1.0 M solution of an unknown soluble salt has an osmolarity of 3.0 osmol. What can you conclude about the salt?

12. A 1.5 M NaCl solution and a 0.75 M $Al(NO_3)_3$ solution exist on opposite sides of a semipermeable membrane. Determine the osmolarity of each solution and the direction of solvent flow, if any, across the membrane.

Answers

1. a. 1.0 M NaCl
   b. 1.0 M NaCl
   c. 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

2.
    a. 1.0 M KBr
    b. 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
    c. 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$

3.
    a. 1.0 M NaCl
    b. 1.0 M NaCl
    c. 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

4.
    a. 1.0 M KBr
    b. 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
    c. 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$

5.
    a. 100.5°C
    b. 102.3°C
    c. 101°C

6.
    a. -1.9°C
    b. -8.6°C
    c. -3.8°C

7. NaCl lowers the freezing point of water, so it needs to be colder for the water to freeze.

8. $CaCl_2$ splits up into 3 ions while NaCl splits up into 2 ions only. $CaCl_2$ will be more effective.

9.
    a. 0.500 osmol
    b. 1.000 osmol
    c. 1.500 osmol

10.

a. 0.300 osmol
b. 0.450 osmol
c. 2.50 osmol

11. It must separate into three ions when it dissolves.

12. Both NaCl and $Al(NO_3)_3$ have 3.0 osmol. There will be no net difference in the solvent flow.

9.5: Chemical Equilibrium

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is chemical equilibrium?

2. What does the equilibrium constant tell us?

Answers

1. The rate of the forward reaction equals the rate of the reverse reaction.

2. The ratio of products and reactants when the system is at equilibrium.

EXERCISES

1. If the reaction $H_2 + I_2 \rightleftharpoons 2HI$ is at equilibrium, do the concentrations of HI, H_2, and I_2 have to be equal?

2. Do the concentrations at equilibrium depend upon how the equilibrium was reached?

3. What does it mean if the K_{eq} is > 1?

4. What does it mean if the K_{eq} is < 1?

5. Does the equilibrium state depend on the starting concentrations?

6. Write an expression for the equilibrium constant K equation.

a. $PCl_5\ (g) \rightleftarrows PCl_3\ (g) + Cl_2\ (g)$

b. $2O_3\ (g) \rightleftharpoons 3O_2\ (g)$

7. Benzene is one of the compounds used as octane enhancers in unleaded gasoline. It is manufactured by the catalytic conversion of acetylene to benzene: $3C_2H_2(g) \longrightarrow C_6H_6(g)$. Which value of K would make this reaction most useful commercially? Explain your answer.

a. $K \approx 0.01$

b. $K \approx 1$

c. $K \approx 10$.

8. Tell whether the reactants or the products are favored at equilibrium:

a. $2NH_3(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2(g) + 3H_2(g)$ $K = 172$

b. $2SO_3(g) \rightleftharpoons 2SO_2(g) + O_2(g)$ $K = 0.230$

c. $2NO(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NOCl(g)$ $K = 4.6 \times 10^4$

d. $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NO(g)$ $K = 0.050$

AnswerS

1. No, the concentrations are constant but the concentrations do not have to be equal.

2. No.

3. More products than reactants are present at equilibrium.

4. More reactants than products present at equilibrium.

5. No. The equilibrium ratio does not depend on the initial concentrations.

6.

a. $K = \frac{[PCl_3][Cl_2]}{[PCl_5]}$

b. $K = \frac{[O_2]^3}{[O_3]^2}$

7. The answer is c. $K \approx 10$.

Since $K = \frac{[C_6H_6]^2}{[C_2H_2]^3}$ (K≈10), this means that C_6H_6 predominates over C_2H_2. In such a case, the reaction would be commercially feasible if the rate to equilibrium is suitable.

8.

a. products

b. reactants

c. products

d. reactants

9.6: Le Chatelier's Principle

Concept Review Exercises

1. Define Le Chatelier’s principle.

2. List the three factors types of changes that can disturb the equilibrium of a system.

Answers

1. Le Chatelier’s principle states that a system at equilibrium is disturbed, it will respond in a way to minimize the disturbance.

2. temperature, change in amount of substance, change in pressure through change in volume

EXERCISES

1. How will each change affect the reaction?

$PCl_5(g)$ + heat ⇌$PCl_3(g)$ + $Cl_2(g)$

a. Addition of PCl_5
b. Addition of Cl_2
c. Removal of PCl_3
d. Increasing temperature
e. Decreasing temperature
f. Decreasing volume

2. How will each change affect the reaction?

$HNO_2(aq)$ ⇌$H^+(aq)$ + $NO_2^-(aq)$

a. Removal of HNO_2
b. Addition of HCl (i.e. adding more H^+)
c. Increasing volume
d. Decreasing volume

e. Removal of NO_2^-
f. Addition of OH^- (which will react with and remove H^+)

3. How will each change affect the reaction?

$CO_2(g) + C(s) \rightleftharpoons 2CO(g)\ \Delta H=172.5kJ$

a. Addition of CO_2
b. Removal of CO_2
c. Increasing temperature
d. Decreasing temperature
e. Increasing volume
f. Addition of CO

4. How will each change affect the reaction?

$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2HI(g)\ \Delta H=-9.48kJ$

a. Addition of H_2
b. Removal of H_2
c. Increasing temperature
d. Decreasing temperature
e. Increasing volume
f. Decreasing volume

AnswerS

1.

a. shift right
b. shift left
c. shift right
d. shift right
e. shift left
f. shift left

2.

a. shift left
b. shift left
c. no effect
d. no effect
e. shift right
f. shift right

3.

a. shift right
b. shift left
c. shift right
d. shift left
e. shift right
f. shift left

4.

a. shift right
b. shift left
c. shift left

d. shift right
e. no effect
f. no effect

9.7: Osmosis and Diffusion

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are some of the features of a semipermeable membrane?

2. What do the prefixes hyper, hypo, and iso mean?

Answers

1. A semipermeable membrane allows some substances to pass through but not others.

2. hyper – higher; hypo – lower; iso - same

EXERCISES

1. Two solutions are separated by a semipermeable membrane. Solution A contains 25.0 g of NaCl in 100.0 mL of water and solution B contains 35.0 g of NaCl in 100.0 mL of water.

a. Which one has a higher concentration?
b. Which way will water molecules flow?
c. Which volume will increase?
d. Which volume will decrease?
e. What will happen to the concentration of solution A?
f. What will happen to the concentration of solution B?

2. Two solutions with different concentrations and compositions are separated by a semipermeable membrane. The left-hand solution is a .50 M solution of $MgSO_4$, while the right-hand solution contains $CaCl_2$ at a concentration of .40 M. Determine the direction of the flow of solvent, left or right.

3. Given the following situations, wherein two tanks of different solutions are separated by a semipermeable membrane, determine the direction of the flow of solvent (water).

a. Solution A contains a 0.40 M concentration of $CaCl_2$, while Solution B contains a 0.45 M concentration of KI

b. Solution A contains a 1.00 M concentration of NH_4Cl, while Solution B contains a 1.00 M concentration of CH_2O

4. Cells are placed in a solution and the cells then undergo hemolysis. What can be said about the relative concentrations of solute in the cell and the solution?

5. Describe the relative concentrations inside and outside a red blood cell when crenation occurs.

6. A saltwater fish is placed in a freshwater tank. What will happen to the fish? Describe the flow of water molecules to explain the outcome.

7. What makes up the "head" region of a phospholipid? Is it hydrophobic or hydrophilic?

8. What makes up the "tail" region of a phospholipid? Is it hydrophobic or hydrophilic?

Answers

1. Two solutions are separated by a semipermeable membrane. Solution A contains 25.0 g of NaCl in 100.0 mL of water and solution B contains 35.0 g of NaCl in 100.0 mL of water.

a. Solution B
b. A → → B
c. B

d. A
e. increase
f. decrease

2. Water (solvent) flows from left to right.

3.

a. Water flows from Solution B to Solution A.

b. Water flows from Solution B to Solution A.

4. Cells contain fluid with higher concentration than solution outside the cell.

5. Cells contain fluid with a lower concentration than the solution outside the cell.

6. Water molecules will flow from the tank water into the fish because the fish has a higher concentration of salt. If the fish absorbs too much water, it will die.

7. The "head" region is a phosphate group and it is hydrophilic.

8. The "tail" is a hydrocarbon tail and it is hydrophobic.

Contributors

-
- Allison Soult, Ph.D. (Department of Chemistry, University of Kentucky)

Additional Exercises

1. Calcium nitrate reacts with sodium carbonate to precipitate solid calcium carbonate:

$$Ca(NO_3)_{2(aq)} + Na_2CO_{3(aq)} \rightarrow CaCO_{3(s)} + NaNO_{3(aq)} \tag{9.E.1}$$

   a. Balance the chemical equation.
   b. How many grams of Na_2CO_3 are needed to react with 50.0 mL of 0.450 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$?
   c. Assuming that the Na_2CO_3 has a negligible effect on the volume of the solution, find the osmolarity of the $NaNO_3$ solution remaining after the $CaCO_3$ precipitates from solution.

2. The compound HCl reacts with sodium carbonate to generate carbon dioxide gas:

$$HCl_{(aq)} + Na_2CO_{3(aq)} \rightarrow H_2O_{(\ell)} + CO_{2(g)} + NaCl_{(aq)} \tag{9.E.2}$$

   a. Balance the chemical equation.
   b. How many grams of Na_2CO_3 are needed to react with 250.0 mL of 0.755 M HCl?
   c. Assuming that the Na_2CO_3 has a negligible effect on the volume of the solution, find the osmolarity of the NaCl solution remaining after the reaction is complete.

3. Estimate the freezing point of concentrated aqueous HCl, which is usually sold as a 12 M solution. Assume complete ionization into H^+ and Cl^- ions.

4. Estimate the boiling point of concentrated aqueous H_2SO_4, which is usually sold as an 18 M solution. Assume complete ionization into H^+ and HSO_4^- ions.

5. Seawater can be approximated by a 3.0% m/m solution of NaCl in water. Determine the molarity and osmolarity of seawater. Assume a density of 1.0 g/mL.

6. Human blood can be approximated by a 0.90% m/m solution of NaCl in water. Determine the molarity and osmolarity of blood. Assume a density of 1.0 g/mL.

7. How much water must be added to 25.0 mL of a 1.00 M NaCl solution to make a resulting solution that has a concentration of 0.250 M?

8. Sports drinks like Gatorade are advertised as capable of resupplying the body with electrolytes lost by vigorous exercise. Find a label from a sports drink container and identify the electrolytes it contains. You should be able to identify several simple ionic compounds in the ingredients list.
9. Occasionally we hear a sensational news story about people stranded in a lifeboat on the ocean who had to drink their own urine to survive. While distasteful, this act was probably necessary for survival. Why not simply drink the ocean water? (Hint: See Exercise 5 and Exercise 6 above. What would happen if the two solutions in these exercises were on opposite sides of a semipermeable membrane, as we would find in our cell walls?)

Answers

1.

a. $Ca(NO_3)_2(aq) + Na_2CO_3(aq) \rightarrow CaCO_3(s) + 2NaNO_3(aq)$
b. 2.39 g
c. 1.80 osmol

2.

a. $2HCl\ (aq) + Na_2CO_3(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + CO_2(g) + 2NaCl\ (aq)$

b. 10.0 g

c. 1.51 M

3. −45.6°C

4. 118°C

5. 0.513 M; 1.026 osmol

6. molarity = 0.15 M; osmolarity = 0.31 M

7. 75.0 mL

8. magnesium chloride, calcium chloride (answers may vary)

9. The osmotic pressure of seawater is too high. Drinking seawater would cause water to go from inside our cells into the more concentrated seawater, ultimately killing the cells.

This page titled 9.E: Solutions (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **9.1: Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **9.3: The Dissolution Process** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **9.4: Properties of Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **9.5: Chemical Equilibrium** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **9.6: Le Chatelier's Principle** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12.
- **8.4: Osmosis and Diffusion** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Reaction Rates and Equilibrium

10.1: Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions

10.2: How Do Chemical Reactions Occur? Reaction Rates

10.3: Effects of Temperature, Concentration, and Catalysts on Reaction Rates

10.4: Reversible Reactions and Chemical Equilibrium

10.5: Le Chatelier's Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria

---

10: Reaction Rates and Equilibrium is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.1: Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Use bond dissociation energies to calculate enthalpy change or heat of reaction.
- Determine if a chemical process is exothermic or endothermic.

Endothermic and Exothermic Reactions

Endothermic and exothermic reactions can be thought of as having energy as either a reactant of the reaction or a product. Endothermic reactions *require* energy, so energy is a reactant. Heat flows from the surroundings to the system (reaction mixture) and the enthalpy of the system increases (ΔH is positive). As discussed in the previous section, heat is released (considered a product) in an exothermic reaction, and the enthalpy of the system decreases (ΔH is negative).

In the course of an endothermic process, the system gains heat from the surroundings and so the temperature of the surroundings decreases (gets cold). A chemical reaction is exothermic if heat is released by the system into the surroundings. Because the surroundings is gaining heat from the system, the temperature of the surroundings increases. See Figure 10.1.1.

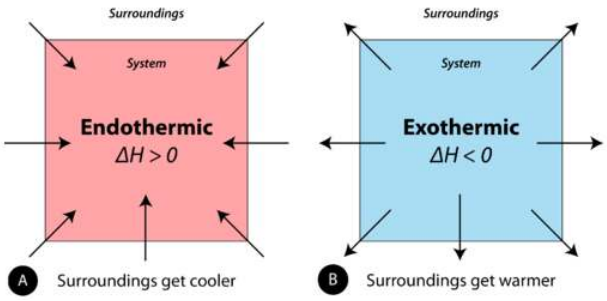


Figure 10.1.1: (A) Endothermic reaction. (B) Exothermic reaction.

Endothermic Reaction: When 1 mol of calcium carbonate decomposes into 1 mol of calcium oxide and 1 mol of carbon dioxide, 177.8 kJ of heat is absorbed. Because the heat is absorbed by the system, the 177.8 kJ is written as a *reactant*. The ΔH is *positive* for an endothermic reaction.

Heat is a reactant

$$CaCO_3\,(s) + 177.8\ kJ \rightarrow CaO\,(s) + CO_2\,(g)$$

$$CaCO_3\,(s) \rightarrow CaO\,(s) + CO_2\,(g) \quad \Delta H = +177.8\ kJ \tag{10.1.1}$$

Exothermic Reaction: When methane gas is combusted, heat is released, making the reaction exothermic. Specifically, the combustion of 1 mol of methane releases 890.4 kilojoules of heat energy. This information can be shown as part of the balanced equation in two ways. First, the amount of heat released can be written in the product side of the reaction. Another way is to write the ΔH information with a *negative* sign, $-890.4\ kJ$.

Heat is a product

$$CH_4\,(g) + 2O_2\,(g) \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) + 2H_2O\,(l) + 890.4\ kJ$$

$$CH_4\,(g) + 2O_2\,(g) \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) + 2H_2O\,(l) \quad \Delta H = -890.4\ kJ \tag{10.1.2}$$

Example 10.1.1

Is each chemical reaction exothermic or endothermic?

a. $CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(\ell) + 213$ kcal
b. $N_2(g) + O_2(g) + 45$ kcal $\rightarrow 2NO(g)$

Solution

a. Because energy (213 kcal) is a product, energy is given off by the reaction. Therefore, this reaction is exothermic.

b. Because energy (45 kcal) is a reactant, energy is absorbed by the reaction. Therefore, this reaction is endothermic.

? Exercise 10.1.1

Is each chemical reaction exothermic or endothermic?

a. $H_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2HF\ (g) + 130\ kcal$

b. $2C(s) + H_2(g) + 5.3\ kcal \rightarrow C_2H_2(g)$

Answer

a. The energy (130 kcal) is produced, hence the reaction is exothermic

b. The energy (5.3 kcal) is supplied or absorbed to react, hence, the reaction is endothermic

Energy Diagrams

Endothermic and exothermic reactions can be visually represented by *energy-level diagrams* like the ones in Figure **10.1.2**. In endothermic reactions, the reactants have higher bond energy (*stronger bonds*) than the products. Strong bonds have lower potential energy than weak bonds. Hence, the energy of the reactants is lower than that of the products. This type of reaction is represented by an "uphill" energy-level diagram shown in Figure **10.1.2*A***. For an endothermic chemical reaction to proceed, the reactants must absorb energy from their environment to be converted to products.

In an exothermic reaction, the bonds in the product have higher bond energy (stronger bonds) than the reactants. In other words, the energy of the products is lower than the energy of the reactants, hence is energetically downhill, shown in Figure **10.1.2*B***. Energy is given off as reactants are converted to products. The energy given off is usually in the form of heat (although a few reactions give off energy as light). In the course of an exothermic reaction, heat flows from the system to its surroundings, and thus, gets warm.

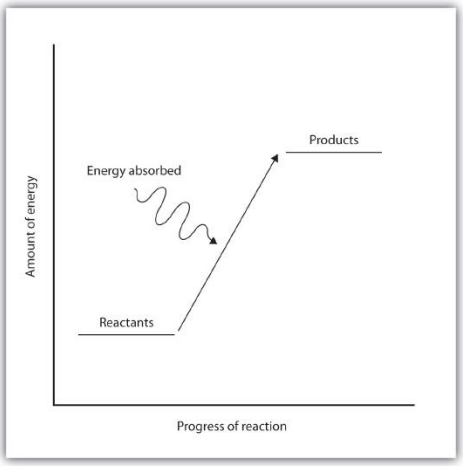


Figure **10.1.2*A***: Endothermic Reactions

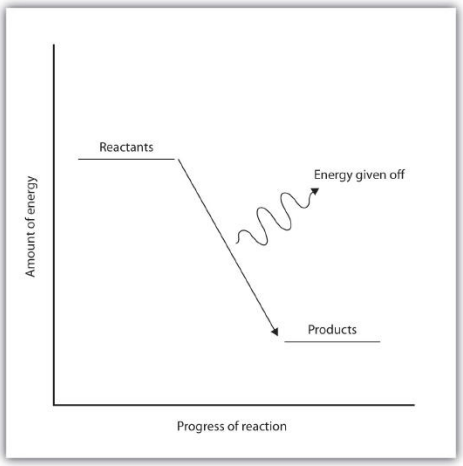


Figure **10.1.2*B***: Exothermic Reactions

Table **10.1.1**: Endothermic and Exothermic Reactions

Endothermic Reactions	Exothermic Reactions
Heat is absorbed by reactants to form products.	Heat is released.
Heat is absorbed from the surroundings; as a result, the surroundings get cold.	Heat is released by the reaction to surroundings; surroundings feel hot.
ΔH_{rxn} is positive	ΔH_{rxn} is negative
The bonds broken in the reactants are stronger than the bonds formed in the products.	The bonds formed in the products are stronger than the bonds broken in the reactants.
The reactants are lower in energy than the products.	The products are lower in energy than the reactants.
Represented by an "uphill" energy diagram.	Represented by an "downhill" energy diagram

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the connection between energy and chemical bonds?
2. Why does energy change during the course of a chemical reaction?
3. Two different reactions are performed in two identical test tubes. In reaction A, the test tube becomes very warm as the reaction occurs. In reaction B, the test tube becomes cold. Which reaction is endothermic and which is exothermic? Explain.
4. Classify "burning paper" as endothermic or exothermic processes.

Answers

1. Chemical bonds have a certain energy that is dependent on the elements in the bond and the number of bonds between the atoms.
2. Energy changes because bonds rearrange to make new bonds with different energies.
3. Reaction A is exothermic because heat is leaving the system making the test tube feel hot. Reaction B is endothermic because heat is being absorbed by the system making the test tube feel cold.
4. "Burning paper" is exothermic because burning (also known as combustion) releases heat

Key Takeaways

- Atoms are held together by a certain amount of energy called bond energy.
- Energy is required to break bonds. Energy is released when chemical bonds are formed because atoms become more stable.
- Chemical processes are labeled as exothermic or endothermic based on whether they give off or absorb energy, respectively.

10.1: Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.2: How Do Chemical Reactions Occur? Reaction Rates

Learning Outcomes

- Define reaction rate.
- Explain the concept of activation energy.
- Label a diagram with reactants, products, enthalpy of forward and reverse reactions, activation energy of forward and reverse reactions, and activated complex.

Chemical kinetics is the study of the rates of chemical reactions. In this lesson, you will learn how to express the rate of a chemical reaction and about various factors that influence reaction rates.

Expressing Reaction Rate

Chemical reactions vary widely in the speeds with which they occur. Some reactions occur very quickly. It a lighted match is brought into contact with lighter fluid or another flammable liquid, it erupts into flame instantly and burns fast. Other reactions occur very slowly. A container of milk in the refrigerator will be good to drink for weeks before it begins to turn sour. Millions of years were required for dead plants under Earth's surface to accumulate and eventually turn into fossil fuels such as coal and oil.

Chemists need to be concerned with the rates at which chemical reactions occur. Rate is another word for speed. If a sprinter takes 11.0 seconds (s) to run a 100 meter (\left(m \right)\) dash, his rate or speed is given by the distance traveled divided by the time (see figure below).

$$\text{speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}} = \frac{100\ \text{m}}{11.0\ \text{s}} = 9.09\ \text{m/s} \tag{10.2.1}$$

The sprinter's average running rate for the race is $9.09\ \text{m/s}$. We say that it is his average rate because he did not run at that speed for the entire race. At the very beginning of the race, while coming from a standstill, his rate must be slower until he is able to get up to his top speed. His top speed must the be greater than $9.09\ \text{m/s}$ so that taken over the entire race, the average ends up at $9.09\ \text{m/s}$.

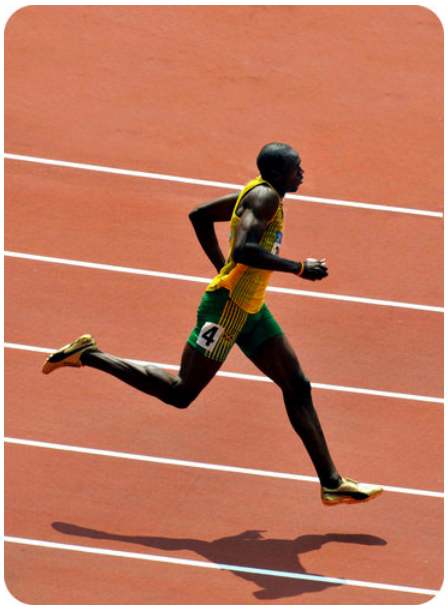


Figure $10.2.1$: Usain Bolt set the world record for the 100 meter dash in 2009 with a time of 9.58 seconds. His average running rate over the course of this race was $10.4\ \text{m/s}$, or $23.4\ \text{mph}$.

Chemical reactions can't be measured in units of meters per second, as that would not make any sense. A **reaction rate** *is the change in concentration of a reactant or product with time*. Suppose that a simple reaction were to take place in which a 1.00 molar (M) aqueous solution of substance A was converted to substance B.

$$\text{A}\,(aq) \rightarrow \text{B}\,(aq) \tag{10.2.2}$$

Suppose that after 20.0 seconds, the concentration of **A** had dropped from **1.00 M** to **0.72 M** as it was being converted to substance **B**. We can express the rate of this reaction as the change in concentration of **A** divided by the time.

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{[\text{A}]_{\text{final}} - [\text{A}]_{\text{initial}}}{\Delta t} \tag{10.2.3}$$

A bracket around a symbol or formula means the concentration in molarity of that substance. The change in concentration of **A** is its final concentration minus its initial concentration. Because the concentration of **A** is decreasing over time, the negative sign is used. Thus, the rate for the reaction is positive, and the units are molarity per second or **M/s**.

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{0.72\ \text{M} - 1.00\ \text{M}}{20.0\ \text{s}} = -\frac{-0.28\ \text{M}}{20.0\ \text{s}} = 0.041\ \text{M/s} \tag{10.2.4}$$

Over the first 20.0 seconds of this reaction, the molarity of **A** decreases by an average rate of **0.041 M** every second. In summary, the rate of a chemical reaction is measured by the change in concentration over time for a reactant or product. The unit of measurement for a reaction rate is molarity per second **(M/s)**.

Collision Theory

The behavior of the reactant atoms, molecules, or ions is responsible for the rates of a given chemical reaction. **Collision theory** *is a set of principles based around the idea that reactant particles form products when they collide with one another, but only when those collisions have enough kinetic energy and the correct orientation to cause a reaction.* Particles that lack the necessary kinetic energy may collide, but the particles will simply bounce off one another unchanged. The figure below illustrates the difference. In the first collision, the particles bounce off one another, and no rearrangement of atoms has occurred. The second collision occurs with greater kinetic energy, and so the bond between the two red atoms breaks. One red atom bonds with the other molecule as one product, while the single red atom is the other produce. The first collision is called an ineffective collision, while the second collision is called an effective collision.

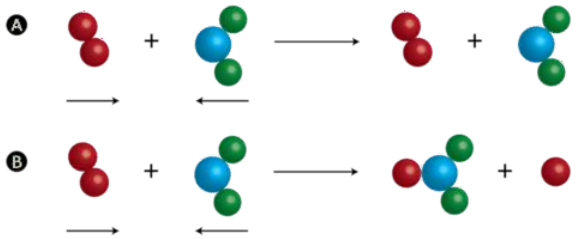


Figure **10.2.2**: (A) An ineffective collision is one that does not result in product formation. (B) An effective collision is one in which chemical bonds are broken, and a product is formed.

Supplying reactant particles with energy causes the bonds between the atoms to vibrate with a greater frequency. This increase in vibrational energy makes a chemical bond more likely to break and a chemical reaction more likely to occur when those particles collide with other particles. Additionally, more energetic particles have more forceful collisions, which also increases the likelihood that a rearrangement of atoms will take place. The **activation energy** *for a reaction is the minimum energy that colliding particles must have in order to undergo a reaction*. Some reactions occur readily at room temperature because most of the reacting particles already have the requisite activation energy at that temperature. Other reactions only occur when heated because the particles do not have enough energy to react unless more is provided by an external source of heat.

Potential Energy Diagrams

Then energy changes that occur during a chemical reaction can be shown in a diagram called a potential energy diagram, sometimes called a reaction progress curve. A **potential energy diagram** *shows the change in the potential energy of a system as reactants are converted into products*. The figure below shows basic potential energy diagrams for an endothermic (left) and an exothermic (right) reaction. Recall that the enthalpy change (ΔH) is positive for an endothermic reaction and negative for an exothermic reaction. This can be seen in the potential energy diagrams. The total potential energy of the system increases for the endothermic reaction as the system absorbs energy from the surroundings. The total potential energy of the system decreases for the exothermic reaction as the system releases energy to the surroundings.

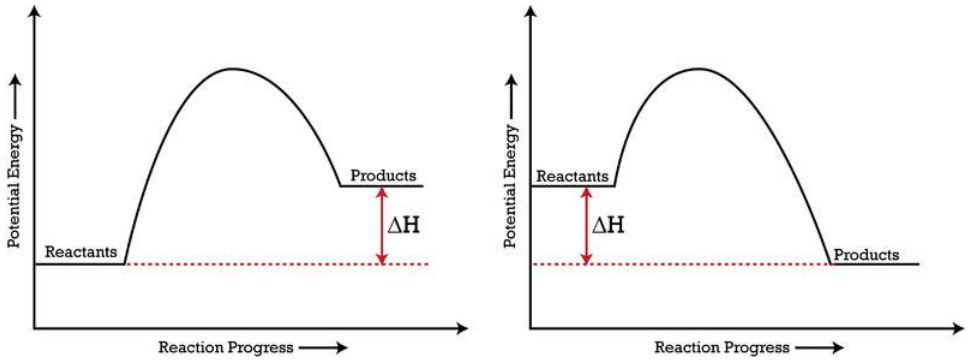


Figure **10.2.3**: A potential energy diagram shows the total potential energy of a reacting system as the reaction proceeds. (Left) In an endothermic reaction, the energy of the products is greater than the energy of the reactants, and ΔH is positive. (Right) In an exothermic reaction, the energy of the products is lower than the energy of the reactants, and ΔH is negative.

The activation energy for a reaction is illustrated in the potential energy diagram by the height of the hill between the reactants and the products. For this reason, the activation energy of a reaction is sometimes referred to as the activation energy barrier. Reacting particles must have enough energy so that when they collide, they can overcome this barrier (see figure below).

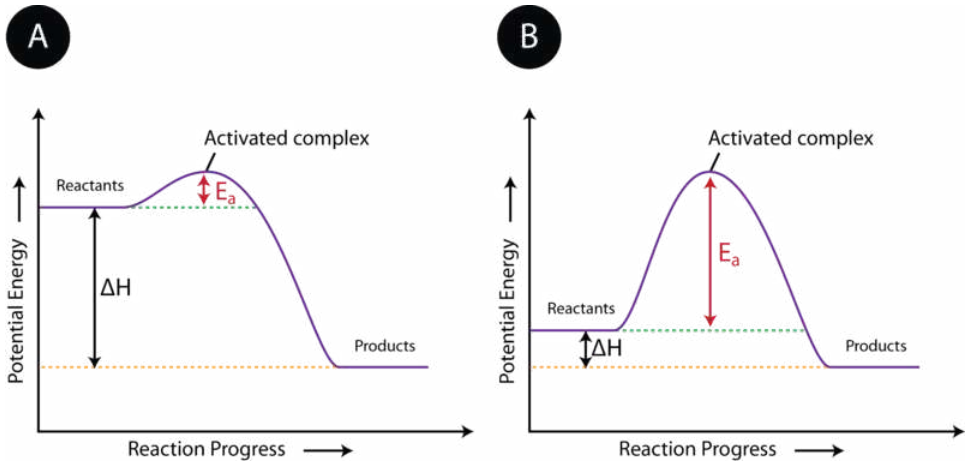


Figure **10.2.4**: The activation energy (E_a) of a reaction is the barrier that must be overcome in order for the reactants to become products. (A) The activation energy is low, meaning that the reaction is likely to be fast. (B) The activation energy is high, meaning that the reaction is likely to be slow.

As discussed earlier, reactant particles sometimes collide with one another and yet remain unchanged by the collision. Other times, the collision leads to the formation of products. The state of the particles that is in between the reactants and products is called the activated complex. An **activated complex** *is an unstable arrangement of atoms that exists momentarily at the peak of the activation energy barrier*. Because of its high energy, the activated complex exists only for an extremely short period of time (about 10^{-13} s). The activated complex is equally likely to either reform the original reactants or go on to form the products. The figure below shows the formation of a possible activated complex between colliding hydrogen and oxygen molecules. Because of their unstable nature and brief existence, very little is known about the exact structures of most activated complexes.

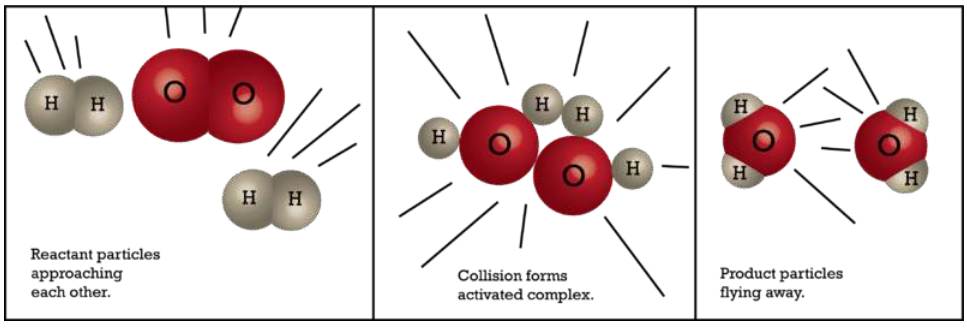


Figure **10.2.5**: An activated complex is a short-lived state in which the colliding particles are at the peak of the potential energy curve.

10.2: How Do Chemical Reactions Occur? Reaction Rates is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.3: Effects of Temperature, Concentration, and Catalysts on Reaction Rates

Learning Outcomes

- Describe how temperatures, concentration of reactant, and a catalyst affect the reaction rate.

By their nature, some reactions occur very quickly, while others are very slow. However, certain changes in the reaction conditions can have an effect on the rate of a given chemical reaction. Collision theory can be utilized to explain these rate effects.

Concentration

Increasing the concentration of one or more of the reacting substances generally increases the reaction rate. When more particles are present in a given amount of space, a greater number of collisions will naturally occur between those particles. Since the rate of a reaction is dependent on the frequency of collisions between the reactants, the rate increases as the concentration increases.

Temperature

Raising the temperature of a chemical reaction results in a higher reaction rate. When the reactant particles are heated, they move faster and faster, resulting in a greater frequency of collisions. An even more important effect of the temperature increase is that the collisions occur with a greater force, which means the reactants are more likely to surmount the activation energy barrier and go on to form products. Increasing the temperature of a reaction increases not only the frequency of collisions, but also the percentage of those collisions that are effective, resulting in an increased reaction rate.

Paper is certainly a highly combustible material, but paper does not burn at room temperature because the activation energy for the reaction is too high. The vast majority of collisions between oxygen molecules and the paper are ineffective. However, when the paper is heated by the flame from a match, it reaches a point where the molecules now have enough energy to react. The reaction is very exothermic, so the heat released by the initial reaction will provide enough energy to allow the reaction to continue, even if the match is removed. The paper continues to burn rapidly until it is gone.

Catalysts

The rates of some chemical reactions can be increased dramatically by introducing certain other substances into the reaction mixture. Hydrogen peroxide is used as a disinfectant for scrapes and cuts, and it can be found in many medicine cabinets as a **3%** aqueous solution. Hydrogen peroxide naturally decomposes to produce water and oxygen gas, but the reaction is very slow. A bottle of hydrogen peroxide will last for several years before it needs to be replaced. However, the addition of just a small amount of manganese (IV) oxide to hydrogen peroxide will cause it to decompose completely in just a matter of minutes. A **catalyst** *is a substance that increases the rate of a chemical reaction without being used up in the reaction*. It accomplishes this task by providing an alternate reaction pathway that has a lower activation energy barrier. After the reaction occurs, a catalyst returns to its original state, so catalysts can be used over and over again. Because it is neither a reactant nor a product, a catalyst is shown in a chemical equation by being written above the yield arrow.

$$2H_2O_2\,(aq) \overset{MnO_2}{\rightarrow} 2H_2O\,(l) + O_2\,(g) \tag{10.3.1}$$

A catalyst works by changing the mechanism of the reaction, which can be though of as the specific set of smaller steps by which the reactants become products. The important point is that the use of a catalyst lowers the overall activation energy of the reaction (see figure below). With a lower activation energy barrier, a greater percentage of reactant molecules are able to have effective collisions, and the reaction rate increases.

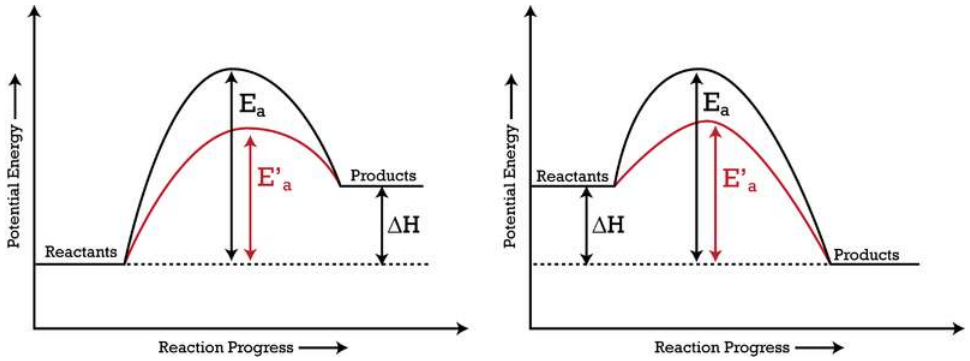


Figure **10.3.7**: The addition of a catalyst to a reaction lowers the activation energy, increasing the rate of the reaction. The activation energy of the uncatalyzed reaction is shown by E_a, while the catalyzed reaction is shown by E'_a. The heat of reaction (ΔH) is unchanged by the presence of the catalyst.

Catalysts are extremely important parts of many chemical reactions. Enzymes in your body act as nature's catalysts, allowing important biochemical reactions to occur at reasonable rates. Chemical companies constantly search for new and better catalysts to make reactions go faster and thus make the company more profitable.

10.3: Effects of Temperature, Concentration, and Catalysts on Reaction Rates is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.4: Reversible Reactions and Chemical Equilibrium

Learning Objectives

- Define chemical equilibrium.
- Recognize chemical equilibrium as a dynamic process.

Consider the following reaction occurring in a closed container (so that no material can go in or out):

$$H_2 + I_2 \rightarrow 2HI$$

This is simply the reaction between elemental hydrogen and elemental iodine to make hydrogen iodide. The way the equation is written, we are led to believe that the reaction goes to completion, that all the H_2 and the I_2 react to make HI.

However, this is not the case because it is a **reversible reaction**, meaning it can go in either direction. As soon as there is enough product formed, the HI can react and the reverse chemical reaction occurs essentially "undoing" the first reaction:

$$2HI \rightarrow H_2 + I_2$$

Eventually, the reverse reaction proceeds so quickly that it matches the speed of the forward reaction. When that happens, the concentration of the reactants and products remains constant, there is no further change; the reaction has reached **chemical equilibrium** (sometimes just spoken as *equilibrium*; plural *equilibria*), the point at which the forward and reverse processes balance each other's progress.

Because two opposing processes are occurring at once, it is conventional to represent an equilibrium using a double arrow, like this:

$$H_2 + I_2 \rightleftharpoons 2HI$$

The double arrow implies that the reaction is going in both directions. Note that the reaction must still be balanced.

Example 10.4.1

Write the equilibrium equation that exists between calcium carbonate as a reactant and calcium oxide and carbon dioxide as products.

Solution

As this is an equilibrium situation, a double arrow is used. The equilibrium equation is written as follows:

$$CaCO_3 + \rightleftharpoons CaO + CO_2$$

Exercise 10.4.1

Write the equilibrium equation between elemental hydrogen and elemental oxygen as reactants and water as the product.

Answer

$$2H_2 + O_2 + \rightleftharpoons 2H_2O$$

One thing to note about equilibrium is that the reactions do not stop; both the forward reaction and the reverse reaction continue to occur. They both occur at the same rate, so any overall change by one reaction is canceled by the reverse reaction. We say that chemical equilibrium is *dynamic*, rather than static. Also, because both reactions are occurring simultaneously, the equilibrium can be written backward. For example, representing an equilibrium as

$$H_2 + I_2 \rightleftharpoons 2HI$$

is the same thing as representing the same equilibrium as

$$2HI \rightleftharpoons H_2 + I_2$$

The reaction must be at equilibrium for this to be the case, however.

Key Takeaways

- Chemical reactions eventually reach equilibrium, a point at which forward and reverse reactions balance each other's progress.
- Chemical equilibria are dynamic: the chemical reactions are always occurring; they just cancel each other's progress.

10.4: Reversible Reactions and Chemical Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.2: Chemical Equilibrium** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

10.5: Le Chatelier's Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria

Learning Objectives

- Define *Le Chatelier's principle*.
- Predict the direction of shift for an equilibrium under stress.

Once equilibrium is established, the reaction is over, right? Not exactly. An experimenter has some ability to affect the equilibrium.

Chemical equilibria can be shifted by changing the conditions that the system experiences. We say that we "stress" the equilibrium. When we stress the equilibrium, the chemical reaction is no longer at equilibrium, and the reaction starts to move back toward equilibrium in such a way as to decrease the stress. The formal statement is called **Le Chatelier's principle**: If an equilibrium is stressed, then the reaction shifts to reduce the stress.

Effect of Changes in Concentration

There are several ways to stress an equilibrium. One way is to add or remove a product or a reactant in a chemical reaction at equilibrium. When additional reactant is added, the equilibrium shifts to reduce this stress: it makes more product. When additional product is added, the equilibrium shifts to reactants to reduce the stress. If reactant or product is removed, the equilibrium shifts to make more reactant or product, respectively, to make up for the loss.

Example 10.5.1

Given this reaction at equilibrium:

$$N_2 + 3H_2 \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3$$

In which direction—toward reactants or toward products-—does the reaction shift if the equilibrium is stressed by each change?

1. H_2 is added.
2. NH_3 is added.
3. NH_3 is removed.

Solution

1. If H_2 is added, there is now more reactant, so the reaction will shift toward products to reduce the added H_2.
2. If NH_3 is added, there is now more product, so the reaction will shift toward reactants to reduce the added NH_3.
3. If NH_3 is removed, there is now less product, so the reaction will shift toward products to replace the product removed.

Exercise 10.5.1

Given this reaction at equilibrium:

$$CO(g) + Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons COBr_2(g)$$

In which direction—toward reactants or toward products—does the reaction shift if the equilibrium is stressed by each change?

1. Br_2 is removed.
2. $COBr_2$ is added.

Answers

1. toward reactants
2. toward reactants

It is worth noting that when reactants or products are added or removed, *the value of the* K_{eq} *does not change*. The chemical reaction simply shifts, in a predictable fashion, to reestablish concentrations so that the K_{eq} expression reverts to the correct value.

Effect of Changes in Pressure and Temperature

How does an equilibrium react to a change in *pressure*? Pressure changes do not markedly affect the solid or liquid phases. However, pressure strongly impacts the gas phase. Le Chatelier's principle implies that a pressure increase shifts an equilibrium to the side of the reaction with the fewer number of moles of gas, while a pressure decrease shifts an equilibrium to the side of the reaction with the greater number of moles of gas. If the number of moles of gas is the same on both sides of the reaction, pressure has no effect.

Example 10.5.2

What is the effect on this equilibrium if pressure is increased?

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g)$$

Solution

According to Le Chatelier's principle, if pressure is increased, then the equilibrium shifts to the side with the fewer number of moles of gas. This particular reaction shows a total of 4 mol of gas as reactants and 2 mol of gas as products, so the reaction shifts toward the products side.

Exercise 10.5.2

What is the effect on this equilibrium if pressure is decreased?

$$3O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2O_3(g)$$

Answer

Reaction shifts toward reactants.

What is the effect of *temperature* changes on an equilibrium? It depends on whether the reaction is endothermic or exothermic. Recall that *endothermic* means that energy is absorbed by a chemical reaction, while *exothermic* means that energy is given off by the reaction. As such, energy can be thought of as a reactant or a product, respectively, of a reaction:

endothermic reaction: energy + reactants → products

exothermic reaction: reactants → products + energy

Because temperature is a measure of the energy of the system, increasing temperature can be thought of as adding energy. The reaction will react as if a reactant or a product is being added and will act accordingly by shifting to the other side. For example, if the temperature is increased for an endothermic reaction, essentially a reactant is being added, so the equilibrium shifts toward products. Decreasing the temperature is equivalent to decreasing a reactant (for endothermic reactions) or a product (for exothermic reactions), and the equilibrium shifts accordingly.

Example 10.5.3

Predict the effect of increasing the temperature on this equilibrium.

$$PCl_3 + Cl_2 \rightleftharpoons PCl_5 + 60kJ$$

Solution

Because energy is listed as a product, it is being produced, so the reaction is exothermic. If the temperature is increasing, a product is being added to the equilibrium, so the equilibrium shifts to minimize the addition of extra product: it shifts back toward reactants.

Exercise 10.5.3

Predict the effect of decreasing the temperature on this equilibrium.

$$N_2O_4 + 57kJ \rightleftharpoons 2NO_2$$

Answer

Equilibrium shifts toward reactants.

In the case of temperature, the value of the equilibrium has changed because the K_{eq} is dependent on temperature. That is why equilibria shift with changes in temperature.

A **catalyst** is a substance that increases the speed of a reaction. Overall, a catalyst is not a reactant and is not used up, but it still affects how fast a reaction proceeds. However, a catalyst does not affect the extent or position of a reaction at equilibrium. It helps a reaction achieve equilibrium faster.

Chemistry is Everywhere: Equilibria in the Garden

Hydrangeas are common flowering plants around the world. Although many hydrangeas are white, there is one common species (*Hydrangea macrophylla*) whose flowers can be either red or blue, as shown in the accompanying figure. How is it that a plant can have different colored flowers like this?



Figure **10.5.1** Garden Equilibria © Thinkstock. This species of hydrangea has flowers that can be either red or blue. Why the color difference?

Interestingly, the color of the flowers is due to the acidity of the soil that the hydrangea is planted in. An astute gardener can adjust the pH of the soil and actually change the color of the flowers. However, it is not the H^+ or OH^- ions that affect the color of the flowers. Rather, it is the presence of aluminum that causes the color change.

The solubility of aluminum in soil, and the ability of plants to absorb it, is dependent upon the acidity of the soil. If the soil is relatively acidic, the aluminum is more soluble, and plants can absorb it more easily. Under these conditions, hydrangea flowers are blue, as Al ions interact with anthocyanin pigments in the plant. In more basic soils, aluminum is less soluble, and under these conditions the hydrangea flowers are red. Gardeners who change the pH of their soils to change the color of their hydrangea flowers are therefore employing Le Chatelier's principle: the amount of acid in the soil changes the equilibrium of aluminum solubility, which in turn affects the color of the flowers.

Key Takeaways

- Le Chatelier's principle addresses how an equilibrium shifts when the conditions of an equilibrium are changed.
- The direction of shift can be predicted for changes in concentrations, temperature, or pressure.

- Catalysts do not affect the position of an equilibrium; they help reactions achieve equilibrium faster.

Exercise 10.5.1

1. Define *Le Chatelier's principle*.
2. What is meant by a stress? What are some of the ways an equilibrium can be stressed?
3. Given this equilibrium, predict the direction of shift for each stress.

$$H_2(g) + I_2(s) + 53kJ \rightleftharpoons 2HI(g)$$

   a. decreased temperature
   b. increased pressure
   c. removal of HI

4. Given this equilibrium, predict the direction of shift for each stress.

$$H_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2HF(g) + 546kJ$$

   a. increased temperature
   b. addition of H_2
   c. decreased pressure

5. Given this equilibrium, predict the direction of shift for each stress.

$$2SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2SO_3(g) + 196kJ$$

   a. removal of SO_3
   b. addition of O_2
   c. decreased temperature

6. Given this equilibrium, predict the direction of shift for each stress.

$$CO_2(g) + C(s) + 171kJ \rightleftharpoons 2CO(g)$$

   a. addition of CO
   b. increased pressure
   c. addition of a catalyst

7. The synthesis of NH_3 uses this chemical reaction.

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g) + 92kJ$$

   Identify three stresses that can be imposed on the equilibrium to maximize the amount of NH_3.

8. The synthesis of $CaCO_3$ uses this chemical reaction.

$$CaO(s) + CO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons CaCO_3(s) + 180kJ$$

   Identify three stresses that can be imposed on the equilibrium to maximize the amount of $CaCO_3$.

Answers

1. When an equilibrium is stressed, the equilibrium shifts to minimize that stress.
2.
3. a. toward reactants

- toward reactants
- toward products
-
- a. toward products
  b. toward products

c. toward products

-
- increased pressure, decreased temperature, removal of NH_3

10.5: Le Chatelier’s Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier's Principle** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Acids and Bases

11.1: Acids and Bases Definitions
11.2: Acid and Base Strength
11.3: Acid Dissociation Constants
11.4: Water as Both an Acid and a Base
11.5: Measuring Acidity in Aqueous Solutions- The pH Scale
11.6: Working with pH
11.7: Acid and Base Equivalents
11.8: Some Common Acid-Base Reactions
11.9: Acidity and Basicity of Salt Solutions
11.10: Buffer Solutions
11.11: Titration
11.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises)

11: Acids and Bases is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.1: Acids and Bases Definitions

Learning Objectives

- Identify an Arrhenius acid and an Arrhenius base.
- Identify a Brønsted-Lowry acid and a Brønsted-Lowry base.
- Identify conjugate acid-base pairs in an acid-base reaction.

There are three major classifications of substances known as acids or bases. The theory developed by Svante Arrhenius in 1883, the Arrhenius definition, states that an acid produces hydrogen ions, H^+, in solution and a base produces hydroxide ions, OH^-. Later, two more sophisticated and general theories were proposed. These theories are the Brønsted-Lowry and Lewis definitions of acids and bases. This section will cover the Arrhenius and Brønsted-Lowry theories; Lewis theory is discussed elsewhere.

The Arrhenius Theory of Acids and Bases

In 1884, the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed two specific classifications of compounds, termed acids and bases. When dissolved in an aqueous solution, certain ions were released into the solution. An **Arrhenius acid** is a compound that *increases the concentration* of H^+ ions that are present when added to water. These H^+ ions form the **hydronium ion** (H_3O^+) when they combine with water molecules. This process is represented in a chemical equation by adding H_2O to the reactants side.

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{H^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.1.1}$$

In this reaction, hydrochloric acid (HCl) dissociates completely into hydrogen (H^+) and chloride (\Cl^{-}\)) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing H^+ ions into solution. Formation of the hydronium ion equation:

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell)} \rightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.1.2}$$

An **Arrhenius base** is a compound that *increases the concentration* of OH^- ions that are present when added to water. The dissociation is represented by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{NaOH\,(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.1.3}$$

In this reaction, sodium hydroxide (NaOH) disassociates into sodium (Na^+) and hydroxide (OH^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing OH^- ions into solution.

> *Arrhenius acids are substances which produce hydrogen ions in solution and Arrhenius bases are substances which produce hydroxide ions in solution.*

Limitations to the Arrhenius Theory

The Arrhenius theory has many more limitations than the other two theories. The theory does not explain the weak base ammonia (NH_3), which in the presence of water, releases hydroxide ions into solution, but does not contain OH^- itself. The Arrhenius definition of acid and base is also limited to aqueous (i.e., water) solutions.

The Brønsted-Lowry Theory of Acids and Bases

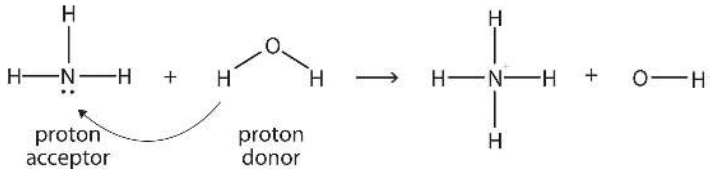
In 1923, Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and English chemist Thomas Lowry independently proposed new definitions for acids and bases, ones that focus on proton transfer. A **Brønsted-Lowry acid** is any species that can donate a proton (H^+) to another molecule. A **Brønsted-Lowry base** is any species that can accept a proton from another molecule. In short, a Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.

> *A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.*

Let us use the reaction of ammonia in water to demonstrate the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base. Ammonia and water molecules are reactants, while the ammonium ion and the hydroxide ion are products:

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{11.1.4}$$

What has happened in this reaction is that the original water molecule has donated a hydrogen ion to the original ammonia molecule, which in turn has accepted the hydrogen ion. We can illustrate this as follows:



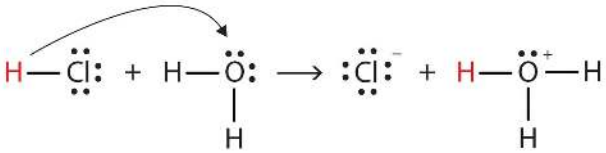
Because the water molecule *donates* a hydrogen ion to the ammonia, it is the Brønsted-Lowry acid, while the ammonia molecule—which *accepts* the hydrogen ion—is the Brønsted-Lowry base. Thus, ammonia acts as a base in both the Arrhenius sense and the Brønsted-Lowry sense.

Is an Arrhenius acid like hydrochloric acid still an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Yes, but it requires us to understand what really happens when HCl is dissolved in water. Recall that the hydrogen *atom* is a single proton surrounded by a single electron. To make the hydrogen ion, we remove the electron, leaving a bare proton. Do we really have bare protons floating around in aqueous solution? No, we do not. What really happens is that the H^+ ion attaches itself to H_2O to make H_3O^+, which is called the *hydronium ion*. For most purposes, H^+ and H_3O^+ represent the same species, but writing H_3O^+ instead of H^+ shows that we understand that there are no bare protons floating around in solution. Rather, these protons are actually attached to solvent molecules.

With this in mind, how do we define HCl as an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Consider what happens when HCl is dissolved in H_2O:

$$HCl(g) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq)\ Cl^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq) \tag{11.1.5}$$

We can depict this process using Lewis electron dot diagrams:



Now we see that a hydrogen ion is transferred from the HCl molecule to the H_2O molecule to make chloride ions and hydronium ions. As the hydrogen ion donor, HCl acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid; the hydrogen ion acceptor, H_2O is a Brønsted-Lowry base. So HCl is an acid not just in the Arrhenius sense, but also in the Brønsted-Lowry sense. Moreover, by the Brønsted-Lowry definitions, H_2O is a base in the formation of aqueous HCl. So the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base classify the dissolving of HCl in water as a reaction between an acid and a base—although the Arrhenius definition would not have labeled H_2O a base in this circumstance.

Note: Acid and Base Definitions

- A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton (hydrogen ion) donor.
- A Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton (hydrogen ion) acceptor.
- **All** Arrhenius acids and bases are Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases as well. However, not all Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases are Arrhenius acids and bases.

Example 11.1.1

Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) is slightly soluble in water. It has a nitrogen atom that can accept a hydrogen ion from a water molecule, just like the nitrogen atom in ammonia does. Write the chemical equation for this reaction and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.

Solution

$C_6H_5NH_2$ and H_2O are the reactants. When $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton from H_2O, it gains an extra H and a positive charge and leaves an OH^- ion behind. The reaction is as follows:

$$C_6H_5NH_2\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5NH_3^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)$$

Because $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton, it is the Brønsted-Lowry base. The H_2O molecule, because it donates a proton, is the Brønsted-Lowry acid.

? Exercise 11.1.1

Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and the Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

$$H_2PO_4^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-} + H_3O^+ \tag{11.1.6}$$

Answer

Brønsted-Lowry acid: $H_2PO_4^-$; Brønsted-Lowry base: H_2O

? Exercise 11.1.2

Which of the following compounds is a Bronsted-Lowry base?

a. HCl
b. HPO_4^{2-}
c. H_3PO_4
d. NH_4^+
e. $CH_3NH_3^+$

Answer

A Brønsted-Lowry Base is a proton acceptor, which means it will take in an H^+. This eliminates $\mathbf{HCl}$, $\mathbf{H_3PO_4}$, $\mathbf{NH_4^+}$ and $\mathbf{CH_3NH_3^+}$ because they are Bronsted-Lowry acids. They all give away protons. In the case of $\mathbf{HPO_4^{2-}}$, consider the following equation:

$$HPO_4^{2-}\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \rightarrow PO_4^{3-}\,(aq) + H_3O^+\,(aq)$$

Here, it is clear that HPO_4^{2-} is the acid since it donates a proton to water to make H_3O^+ and PO_4^{3-}. Now consider the following equation:

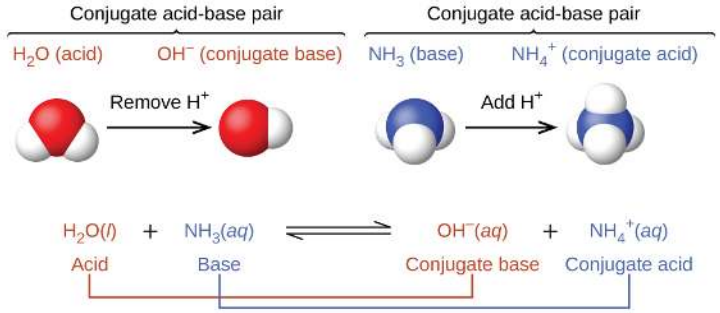
$$HPO_4^{2-}\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \rightarrow H_2PO_4^- + OH^-\,(aq)$$

In this case, HPO_4^{2-} is the base since it accepts a proton from water to form $H_2PO_4^-$ and OH^-. Thus, HPO_4^{2-} is an acid and base together, making it amphoteric.

Since HPO_4^{2-} is the only compound from the options that can act as a base, the answer is **(b) $\mathbf{HPO_4^{2-}}$.**

Conjugate Acid-Base Pair

In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, $\mathbf{OH^-}$, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, $\mathbf{NH_4^+}$:



In the reaction of ammonia with water to give ammonium ions and hydroxide ions, ammonia acts as a base by accepting a proton from a water molecule, which in this case means that water is acting as an acid. In the reverse reaction, an ammonium ion acts as an acid by donating a proton to a hydroxide ion, and the hydroxide ion acts as a base. The conjugate acid–base pairs for this reaction are $\boldsymbol{NH_4^+/NH_3}$ and $\boldsymbol{H_2O/OH^-}$.

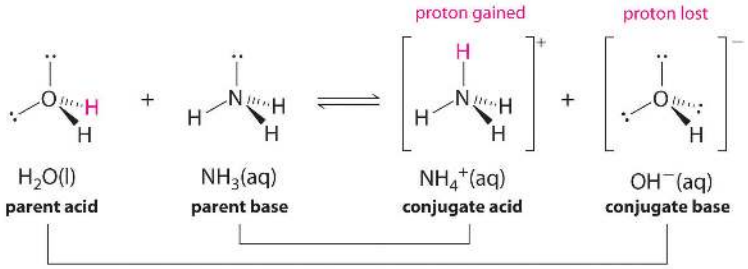


Figure **11.1.1**. The pairing of parent acids and bases with conjugate acids and bases.

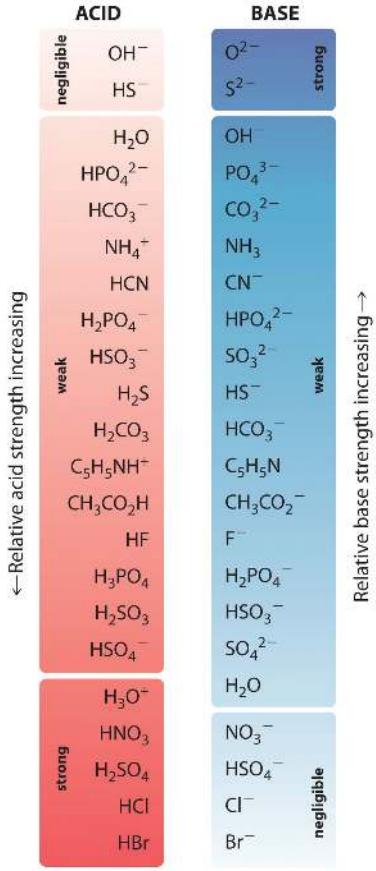


Figure **11.1.2**: The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/402334

Example 11.1.2

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

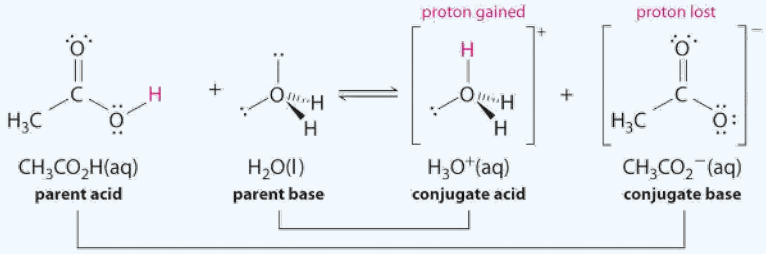
$$\mathbf{CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-}$$

Solution

Similarly, in the reaction of acetic acid with water, acetic acid **donates** a proton to water, which acts as the base. In the reverse reaction, H_3O^+ is the acid that donates a proton to the acetate ion, which acts as the base.

Once again, we have two conjugate acid-base pairs:

- the parent acid and its conjugate base ($CH_3CO_2H/CH_3CO_2^-$) and
- the parent base and its conjugate acid (H_3O^+/H_2O).



Example 11.1.3

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$$

Solution

One pair is H_2O and OH^-, where H_2O has one more H^+ and is the conjugate acid, while OH^- has one less H^+ and is the conjugate base.

The other pair consists of $(CH_3)_3N$ and $(CH_3)_3NH^+$, where $(CH_3)_3NH^+$ is the conjugate acid (it has an additional proton) and $(CH_3)_3N$ is the conjugate base.

Exercise 11.1.3

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$\mathbf{NH_2^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + OH^-}$$

Answer

H_2O (acid) and OH^- (base); NH_2^- (base) and NH_3 (acid)

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

11.1: Acids and Bases Definitions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.2: Acid and Base Strength

Learning Objectives

- Define a strong and a weak acid and base.
- Recognize an acid or a base as strong or weak.

Strong and Weak Acids

Except for their names and formulas, so far we have treated all acids as equals, especially in a chemical reaction. However, acids can be very different in a very important way. Consider $\mathbf{HCl(aq)}$. When $\mathbf{HCl}$ is dissolved in $\mathbf{H_2O}$, it completely **dissociates** (separates) into H^+(aq) and Cl^-(aq) ions; all the HCl molecules become ions:

$$\mathbf{HCl \xrightarrow{100\%} H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)} \tag{11.2.1}$$

Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a **strong acid**. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a **weak acid**. $HC_2H_3O_2$ is an example of a weak acid:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \xrightarrow{\sim 5\%} H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \tag{11.2.2}$$

Because this reaction does not go 100% to completion, it is more appropriate to write it as **a reversible reaction**:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \tag{11.2.3}$$

As it turns out, there are very few strong acids, which are given in Table **11.2.1**. If an acid is not listed here, it is a weak acid. It may be 1% ionized or 99% ionized, but it is still classified as a weak acid.

> *Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a strong acid. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a weak acid.*

Figure **11.2.1**: Some of the common strong acids and bases are listed here.

Strong Acids		Strong Bases	
$\mathbf{HClO_4}$	perchloric acid	$\mathbf{LiOH}$	lithium hydroxide
$\mathbf{HCl}$	hydrochloric acid	$\mathbf{NaOH}$	sodium hydroxide
$\mathbf{HBr}$	hydrobromic acid	$\mathbf{KOH}$	potassium hydroxide
$\mathbf{HI}$	hydroiodic acid	$\mathbf{Ca(OH)_2}$	calcium hydroxide
$\mathbf{HNO_3}$	nitric acid	$\mathbf{Sr(OH)_2}$	strontium hydroxide
$\mathbf{H_2SO_4}$	sulfuric acid	$\mathbf{Ba(OH)_2}$	barium hydroxide

Strong and Weak Bases

The issue is similar with bases: a **strong base** is a base that is 100% ionized in solution. If it is less than 100% ionized in solution, it is a **weak base**. There are very few strong bases (Table **11.2.1**); any base not listed is a weak base. All strong bases are OH^- compounds. So a base based on some other mechanism, such as NH_3 (which does not contain OH^- ions as part of its formula), will be a weak base.

Example 11.2.1: Identifying Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. HCl
b. $Mg(OH)_2$

c. C_5H_5N

Solution

a. Because HCl is listed in Table **11.2.1**, it is a strong acid.

b. Because $Mg(OH)_2$ is listed in Table **11.2.1**, it is a strong base.

c. The nitrogen in C_5H_5N would act as a proton acceptor and therefore can be considered a base, but because it does not contain an OH compound, it cannot be considered a strong base; it is a weak base.

Exercise 11.2.1

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. **RbOH**

b. $\mathbf{HNO_2}$

Answer

a. strong base

b. weak acid

Example 11.2.2: Characterizing Base Ionization

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of $Ca(OH)_2$ and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Solution

This is an ionic compound of Ca^{2+} ions and OH^- ions. When an ionic compound dissolves, it separates into its constituent ions:

$$\mathbf{Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)}$$

Because $Ca(OH)_2$ is listed in Table **11.2.1**, this reaction proceeds 100% to products.

Exercise 11.2.2

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of hydrazoic acid (HN_3) and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Answer a

The reaction is as follows:

$$\mathbf{HN_3 \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + N_3^-(aq)}$$

It does not proceed 100% to products because hydrazoic acid is not a strong acid.

Looking Closer: Household Acids and Bases

Many household products are acids or bases. For example, the owner of a swimming pool may use muriatic acid to clean the pool. Muriatic acid is another name for hydrochloric acid [$\mathbf{HCl(aq)}$]. Vinegar has already been mentioned as a dilute solution of acetic acid [$\mathbf{HC_2H_3O_2(aq)}$]. In a medicine chest, one may find a bottle of vitamin C tablets; the chemical name of vitamin C is ascorbic acid ($\mathbf{HC_6H_7O_6}$).

One of the more familiar household bases is ammonia ($\mathbf{NH_3}$), which is found in numerous cleaning products. As we mentioned previously, ammonia is a base because it increases the hydroxide ion concentration by reacting with water:

$$\mathbf{NH_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)} \tag{11.2.4}$$

Many soaps are also slightly basic because they contain compounds that act as Brønsted-Lowry bases, accepting protons from water and forming excess hydroxide ions. This is one reason that soap solutions are slippery.



Figure 11.2.1: (left) Bottles of alkaline drain cleaners containing sodium hydroxide can dissolve greases and hair. (right) Chemical burns caused by sodium hydroxide solution photographed 44 hours after exposure. Figures used with permission from Wikipedia.

Perhaps the most dangerous household chemical is the lye-based drain cleaner. Lye is a common name for sodium hydroxide, although it is also used as a synonym for potassium hydroxide. Lye is an extremely caustic chemical that can react with grease, hair, food particles, and other substances that may build up and form a clog in a pipe. Unfortunately, lye can also attack tissues and other substances in our bodies. Thus, when we use lye-based drain cleaners, we must be very careful not to touch any of the solid drain cleaner or spill the water it was poured into. Safer, nonlye drain cleaners use peroxide compounds to react on the materials in the clog and clear the drain.

Chemical Equilibrium in Weak Acids and Bases

Ionization of weak acids or bases are reversible reactions, which means the forward and reverse reactions occur and eventually reach equilbrium. For example, the ionization of the weak acid $\mathbf{HC_2H_3O_2\,(aq)}$ is as follows:

$$\mathbf{HC_2H_3O_2\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+\,(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.2.5}$$

The reverse process also begins to occur:

$$\mathbf{H_3O^+\,(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-\,(aq) \rightarrow HC_2H_3O_2\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell)} \tag{11.2.6}$$

Eventually, there is a balance between the two opposing processes, and no additional change occurs. The chemical reaction is better represented at this point with a double arrow:

$$\mathbf{HC_2H_3O_2\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+\,(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.2.7}$$

The $\rightleftharpoons$ implies that both the forward and reverse reactions are occurring, and their effects cancel each other out. A process at this point is considered to be at **chemical equilibrium** (or equilibrium). It is important to note that the processes do not stop. They balance out each other so that there is no further net change; that is, chemical equilibrium is a *dynamic equilibrium*.

Example 11.2.3: Partial Ionization

Write the equilibrium chemical equation for the partial ionization of each weak acid or base.

a. $HNO_2(aq)$
b. $C_5H_5N(aq)$

Solution

a. $HNO_2(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \leftrightarrows NO_2^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$
b. $C_5H_5N(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \leftrightarrows C_5H_5NH^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

? Exercise 11.2.3

Write the equilibrium chemical equation for the partial ionization of each weak acid or base.

a. $HF_{(aq)}$
b. $AgOH_{(aq)}$
c. $CH_3NH_2(aq)$

Answer

a. $HF(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \leftrightarrows F^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$

b. $AgOH(aq) \leftrightarrows Ag^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

c. $CH_3NH_2(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \leftrightarrows CH_3NH_3^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

Strengths of Conjugate Acid and Base Pairs

The extent to which an acid, **HA**, donates protons to water molecules depends on the strength of the conjugate base, $\mathbf{A^-}$, of the acid. If $\mathbf{A^-}$ is a strong base, any protons that are donated to water molecules are recaptured by $\mathbf{A^-}$. Thus there is relatively little $\mathbf{A^-}$ and $\mathbf{H_3O^+}$ in solution, and the acid, **HA**, is weak. If $\mathbf{A^-}$ is a weak base, water binds the protons more strongly, and the solution contains primarily $\mathbf{A^-}$ and $\mathbf{H_3O^+}$—the acid is strong. Strong acids form very weak conjugate bases, and weak acids form stronger conjugate bases (Figure **11.2.2**).

The first six acids in Figure **11.2.2** are the most common strong acids. These acids are completely dissociated in aqueous solution. The conjugate bases of these acids are weaker bases than water. When one of these acids dissolves in water, their protons are completely transferred to water, the stronger base.

Those acids that lie between the hydronium ion and water in Figure **11.2.2** form conjugate bases that can compete with water for possession of a proton. Both hydronium ions and non-ionized acid molecules are present in equilibrium in a solution of one of these acids. Compounds that are weaker acids than water (those found below water in the column of acids) in Figure **11.2.2** exhibit no observable acidic behavior when dissolved in water. Their conjugate bases are stronger than the hydroxide ion, and if any conjugate base were formed, it would react with water to re-form the acid.

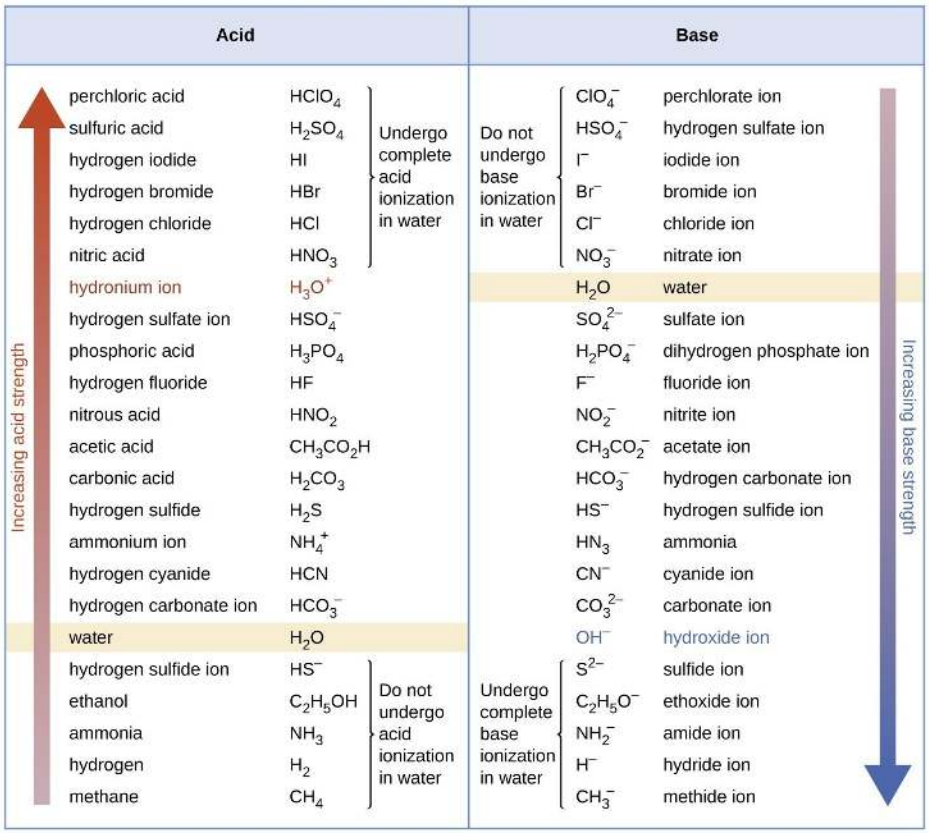


Figure **11.2.2**: The chart shows the relative strengths of conjugate acid-base pairs.

The extent to which a base forms hydroxide ion in aqueous solution depends on the strength of the base relative to that of the hydroxide ion, as shown in the last column in Figure **11.2.2**. A strong base, such as one of those lying below hydroxide ion, accepts protons from water to yield 100% of the conjugate acid and hydroxide ion. Those bases lying between water and hydroxide ion accept protons from water, but a mixture of the hydroxide ion and the base results. Bases that are weaker than water (those that lie above water in the column of bases) show no observable basic behavior in aqueous solution.

Key Takeaways

- Strong acids and bases are 100% ionized in aqueous solution.
- Weak acids and bases are less than 100% ionized in aqueous solution.

11.2: Acid and Base Strength is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **14.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **10.4: The Strengths of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

11.3: Acid Dissociation Constants

Learning Objectives

- Write the acid dissociation constant (K_a) expression.
- Determine the relative strength of an acid using the (K_a) value.

The ionization for a general weak acid, **HA**, can be written as follows:

$$\mathrm{HA}\,(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}\,(aq)$$

Because the acid is weak, an equilibrium expression can be written. An **acid ionization constant** (K_a) is the *equilibrium constant* for the ionization of an acid.

$$K_a = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}]\,[\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$$

The acid ionization represents the fraction of the original acid that has been *ionized* in solution. Therefore, the numerical value of K_a is a reflection of the strength of the acid. Weak acids with relatively higher K_a values are stronger than acids with relatively lower K_a values. Because strong acids are essentially **100%** ionized, the concentration of the acid in the denominator is nearly zero and the K_a value approaches infinity. For this reason, K_a values are generally reported for weak acids only.

The table below is a listing of acid ionization constants for several acids. Note that polyprotic acids have a distinct ionization constant for each ionization step, with each successive ionization constant being smaller than the previous one.

Table **11.3.1**: Acid Ionization Constants at **25°C**

Name of Acid	Ionization Equation	K_a
Sulfuric acid	$\mathrm{H_2SO_4 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HSO_4^-}$ $\mathrm{HSO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + SO_4^{2-}}$	very large 1.3×10^{-2}
Hydrofluoric acid	$\mathrm{HF \rightleftharpoons H^+ + F^-}$	7.1×10^{-4}
Nitrous acid	$\mathrm{HNO_2 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + NO_2^-}$	4.5×10^{-4}
Benzoic acid	$\mathrm{C_6H_5COOH \rightleftharpoons H^+ + C_6H_5COO^-}$	6.5×10^{-5}
Acetic acid	$\mathrm{CH_3COOH \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CH_3COO^-}$	1.8×10^{-5}
Carbonic acid	$\mathrm{H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^-}$ $\mathrm{HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CO_3^{2-}}$	4.2×10^{-7} 4.8×10^{-11}

Hydrofluoric acid $HF_{(aq)}$ reacts directly with glass (very few chemicals react with glass). Hydrofluoric acid is used in glass etching.

11.3: Acid Dissociation Constants is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.4: The Strengths of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

11.4: Water as Both an Acid and a Base

Learning Objectives

- To write chemical equations for water acting as an acid and as a base.
- Define and use the ion product constant for water, K_w, to calculate concentrations of H_3O^+ and OH^- in aqueous solutions.

Water (H_2O) is an interesting compound in many respects. Here, we will consider its ability to behave as an acid or a base.

In some circumstances, a water molecule will accept a proton and thus act as a **Brønsted-Lowry base**. We saw an example in the dissolving of HCl in H_2O:

$$HCl + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \tag{11.4.1}$$

In other circumstances, a water molecule can donate a proton and thus act as a **Brønsted-Lowry acid**. For example, in the presence of the amide ion, a water molecule donates a proton, making ammonia as a product:

$$H_2O(\ell) + NH_2^-(aq) \rightarrow OH^-(aq) + NH_3(aq) \tag{11.4.2}$$

In this case, NH_2^- is a Brønsted-Lowry base (the proton acceptor).

So, depending on the circumstances, H_2O can act as either a Brønsted-Lowry acid or a Brønsted-Lowry base. Water is not the only substance that can react as an acid in some cases or a base in others, but it is certainly the most common example—and the most important one. A substance that can either donate or accept a proton, depending on the circumstances, is called an **amphiprotic** compound.

A water molecule can act as an acid or a base even in a sample of pure water. About 6 in every 100 million (6 in 10^8) water molecules undergo the following reaction:

$$H_2O(\ell) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{11.4.3}$$

This process is called the **autoionization of water** (Figure 11.4.1) and occurs in every sample of water, whether it is pure or part of a solution. Autoionization occurs to some extent in any amphiprotic liquid. (For comparison, liquid ammonia undergoes autoionization as well, but only about 1 molecule in a million billion (1 in 10^{15}) reacts with another ammonia molecule.)

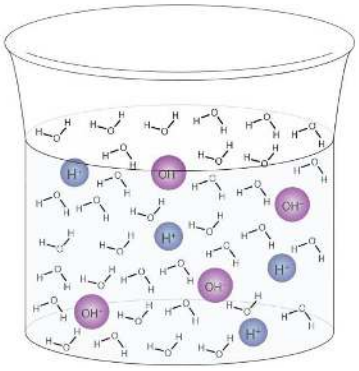


Figure 11.4.1 Autoionization. A small fraction of water molecules—approximately 6 in 100 million—ionize spontaneously into hydronium ions and hydroxide ions. This picture necessarily overrepresents the amount of autoionization that really occurs in pure water.

Example 11.4.1

Identify water as either a Brønsted-Lowry acid or a Brønsted-Lowry base.

1. $H_2O(\ell) + NO_2^-(aq) \rightarrow HNO_2(aq) + OH^-(aq)$
2. $HC_2H_3O_2(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$

Solution

1. In this reaction, the water molecule donates a proton to the NO_2^- ion, making $OH^-(aq)$. As the proton donor, H_2O acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid.
2. In this reaction, the water molecule accepts a proton from $HC_2H_3O_2$, becoming $H_3O^+(aq)$. As the proton acceptor, H_2O is a Brønsted-Lowry base.

? Exercise 11.4.2

Identify water as either a Brønsted-Lowry acid or a Brønsted-Lowry base.

1. $HCOOH(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + HCOO^-(aq)$
2. $H_2O(\ell) + PO_4^{3-}(aq) \rightarrow OH^-(aq) + HPO_4^{2-}(aq)$

Answer

1. H_2O acts as the proton acceptor (Brønsted-Lowry base)
2. H_2O acts as the proton donor (Brønsted-Lowry acid)

Dissociation of Water

As we have already seen, H_2O can act as an acid or a base. Within any given sample of water, some $\mathbf{H_2O}$ molecules are acting as acids, and other $\mathbf{H_2O}$ molecules are acting as bases. The chemical equation is as follows:

$$\underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{acid}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{base}} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + OH^- \tag{11.4.4}$$

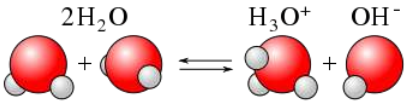


Figure **11.4.2**: Autoionization of water, giving hydroxide and hydronium ions.

Similar to a weak acid, the autoionization of water is an equilibrium process, and is more properly written as follows:

$$H_2O(\ell) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{11.4.5}$$

We often use the simplified form of the reaction:

$$H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The equilibrium constant for the autoionization of water is referred to as the ion-product for water and is given the symbol K_w.

$$K_w = [H^+][OH^-]$$

The **ion-product constant for water (K_w)** is the mathematical product of the concentration of hydrogen ions and hydroxide ions. Note that H_2O is not included in the ion-product expression because it is a pure liquid. The value of K_w is very small, in accordance with a reaction that favors the reactants. At 25°C, the experimentally determined value of K_w in pure water is 1.0×10^{-14}.

$$K_w = [H^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

In a sample of pure water, the concentrations of hydrogen and hydroxide ions are equal to one another. Pure water or any other aqueous solution in which this ratio holds is said to be *neutral*. To find the molarity of each ion, the square root of K_w is taken.

$$[H^+] = [OH^-] = 1.0\times10^{-7}$$

The product of these two concentrations is 1.0×10^{-14}

$$[H^+]\times[OH^-] = (1.0 \times 10^{-7})(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

- For acids, the concentration of H^+ or $[H^+]$ is greater than 1.0×10^{-7} M
- For bases, the concentration of OH^- or $[OH^-]$ is greater than 1.0×10^{-7} M.

Aqueous HCl is an example of acidic solution. Hydrogen chloride (HCl) ionizes to produce H^+ and Cl^- ions upon dissolving in water. This increases the concentration of H^+ ions in the solution. According to Le Chatelier's principle, the equilibrium represented by

$$\mathrm{H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons H^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(g) \longrightarrow H^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)}$$

is forced to the left, towards the reactant. As a result, the concentration of the hydroxide ion decreases.

Now, consider KOH (aq), a **basic solution**. Solid potassium hydroxide (KOH) dissociates in water to yield potassium ions and hydroxide ions.

$$\mathrm{KOH(s) \rightarrow K^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)}$$

The increase in concentration of the OH^- ions will cause a decrease in the concentration of the H^+ ions.

No matter whether the aqueous solution is an acid, a base, or neutral:and the ion-product of $[H^+][OH^-]$ remains constant.

- For acidic solutions, $[H^+]$ is greater than $[OH^-]$.
- For basic solutions, [OH−] is greater than $[H^+]$.
- For neutral solutions, $[H_3O^+]$ = [OH−] = 1.0×10^{-7}M

This means that if you know $[\mathbf{H^+}]$ for a solution, you can calculate what $[\mathbf{OH^-}]$) has to be for the product to equal $\mathbf{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}$, or if you know $[\mathbf{OH^-}]$), you can calculate $[\mathbf{H^+}]$. This also implies that as one concentration goes up, the other must go down to compensate so that their product always equals the value of K_w.

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \tag{11.4.6}$$

Example 11.4.2

Hydrochloric acid (HCl) is a strong acid, meaning it is 100% ionized in solution. What is the $[H^+]$ and the $[OH^-]$ in a solution of 2.0×10^{-3} M HCl?

Solution

Step 1: List the known values and plan the problem.

Known

- [HCl] = 2.0×10^{-3} M
- Kw = 1.0×10^{-14}

Unknown

- $[H^+]$=?M
- $[OH^-]$=?M

Because HCl is 100% ionized, the concentration of H+ ions in solution will be equal to the original concentration of HCl. Each HCl molecule that was originally present ionizes into one H+ ion and one Cl− ion. The concentration of OH− can then be determined from the [H+] and Kw.

Step 2: Solve.

$$[H^+]=2.0\times10^{-3}\,\mathrm{M}$$

$$\mathrm{Kw} = [H^+][OH^-] = 1.0\times10^{-14}$$

$$[OH^-] = \mathrm{Kw}/[H^+] = 1.0\times10^{-14}/2.0\times10^{-3} = 5.0\times10^{-12}\,\mathrm{M}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The $[H^+]$ is much higher than the $[OH^-]$ because the solution is acidic. As with other equilibrium constants, the unit for Kw is customarily omitted.

? Exercise 11.4.2

Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) is a strong base. What is the $[H^+]$ and the $[OH^-]$ in a 0.001 M NaOH solution at 25 °C?

Answer

$[OH^-] = 0.001M$ or $1 \times 10^{-3}M$; $[H^+]=1\times10^{-11}M$.

Concept Review Exercises

1. Explain how water can act as an acid.
2. Explain how water can act as a base.

Answers

1. Under the right conditions, H_2O can donate a proton, making it a Brønsted-Lowry acid.
2. Under the right conditions, H_2O can accept a proton, making it a Brønsted-Lowry base.

Key Takeaway

- Water molecules can act as both an acid and a base, depending on the conditions.

Exercises

1. Is $H_2O(\ell)$ acting as an acid or a base?

   $H_2O(\ell) + NH_4^+(aq) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + NH_3(aq)$

2. Is $H_2O(\ell)$ acting as an acid or a base?

   $CH_3^-(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow CH_4(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

3. In the aqueous solutions of some salts, one of the ions from the salt can react with water molecules. In some $C_2H_3O_2^-$ solutions, the following reaction can occur:

   $C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow HC_2H_3O_2(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

   Is H_2O acting as an acid or a base in this reaction?

4. In the aqueous solutions of some salts, one of the ions from the salt can react with water molecules. In some NH_4^+ solutions, the following reaction can occur:

   $NH_4^+(aq) + H_2O \rightarrow NH_3(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$

   Is H_2O acting as an acid or a base in this reaction?

5. Why is pure water considered neutral?

Answers

1. base
2. acid
3. acid
4. base

5. When water ionizes, equal amounts of H^+ (acid) and OH^- (base) are formed, so the solution is neither acidic nor basic: $H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

[SIDE NOTE: It is rare to truly have pure water. Water exposed to air will usually be slightly acidic because dissolved carbon dioxide gas, or carbonic acid, decreases the pH slightly below 7. Alternatively, dissolved minerals, like calcium carbonate (limestone), can make water slightly basic.]

11.4: Water as Both an Acid and a Base is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.3: Water - Both an Acid and a Base** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **10.4: The Strengths of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

11.5: Measuring Acidity in Aqueous Solutions- The pH Scale

Learning Objectives

- Define the pH scale and use it to describe acids and bases.
- Calculate the pH of a solution from $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$.

Knowing the amount of acid and base in solutions is extremely important for a wide variety of applications ranging from brewing beer or wine to studying the effects of ocean acidification to health and medicine. Scientists are good at calculating and measuring the concentration of hydronium in a solution, however, there is a more convenient way to make comparisons between solutions – *the pH scale*.

The pH Scale

One qualitative measure of the strength of an acid or a base solution is the pH scale, which is based on the concentration of the hydronium (or hydrogen) ion in aqueous solution.

$$pH = -\log[H^+]$$

or

$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+]$$

Figure 11.5.1 illustrates this relationship, along with some examples of various solutions. Because hydrogen ion concentrations are generally less than one (for example $1.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$), the log of the number will be a negative number. To make pH even easier to work with, pH is defined as the *negative* log of $[H_3O^+]$, which will give a positive value for pH.

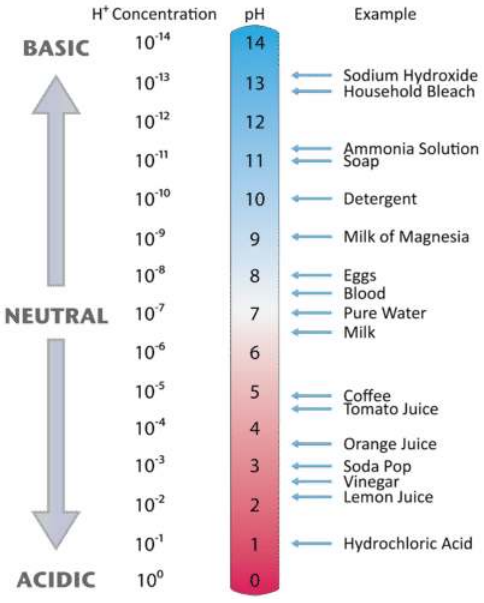


Figure 11.5.1: The relationship between $[H^+]$ and *pH values for several common materials.*

A neutral (neither acidic nor basic) solution has a pH of 7. A pH below 7 means that a solution is acidic, with lower values of pH corresponding to increasingly acidic solutions. A pH greater than 7 indicates a basic solution, with higher values of pH corresponding to increasingly basic solutions. Thus, given the pH of several solutions, you can state which ones are acidic, which ones are basic, and which are more acidic or basic than others. These are summarized in Table \(\PageIndex{1}.

Table 11.5.1: Acidic, Basic and Neutral pH Values

Classification	Relative Ion Concentrations	pH at 25 °C
acidic	$[H^+] > [OH^-]$	pH < 7
neutral	$[H^+] = [OH^-]$	pH = 7
basic	$[H^+] < [OH^-]$	pH > 7

Example 11.5.1

Find the pH, given the $[H^+]$ of the following:

a. 1×10^{-3} M
b. 2.5×10^{-11} M
c. 4.7×10^{-9} M

Solution

$pH = - \log [H_3O^+]$

Substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. Use a scientific calculator for b and c.

a. $pH = - \log [1 \times 10^{-3}] = 3.0$ (1 decimal place since 1 has 1 significant figure)
b. $pH = - \log [2.5 \times 10^{-11}] = 10.60$ (2 decimal places since 2.5 has 2 significant figures)
c. $pH = - \log [4.7 \times 10^{-9}] = 8.33$ (2 decimal places since 4.7 has 2 significant figures)

Note on significant figures:

Because the number(s) before the decimal point in the pH value relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point (underlined) is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer.

Exercise 11.5.1

Find the pH, given $[H^+]$ of the following:

a. 5.8×10^{-4} M
b. 1.0×10^{-7} M

Answer

a. 3.24

b. 7.00

Figure **11.5.2** lists the pH of several common solutions. The most *aci*dic among the listed solutions is 1 M HCl with the lowest pH value (0.0): battery acid is the next most acidic solution with a pH value of 0.3. The most *basic* is 1M NaOH solution with the highest pH value of 14.0. Notice that some biological fluids (stomach acid and urine) are nowhere near neutral. You may also notice that many food products are slightly acidic. They are acidic because they contain solutions of weak acids. If the acid components of these foods were strong acids, the food would likely be inedible.

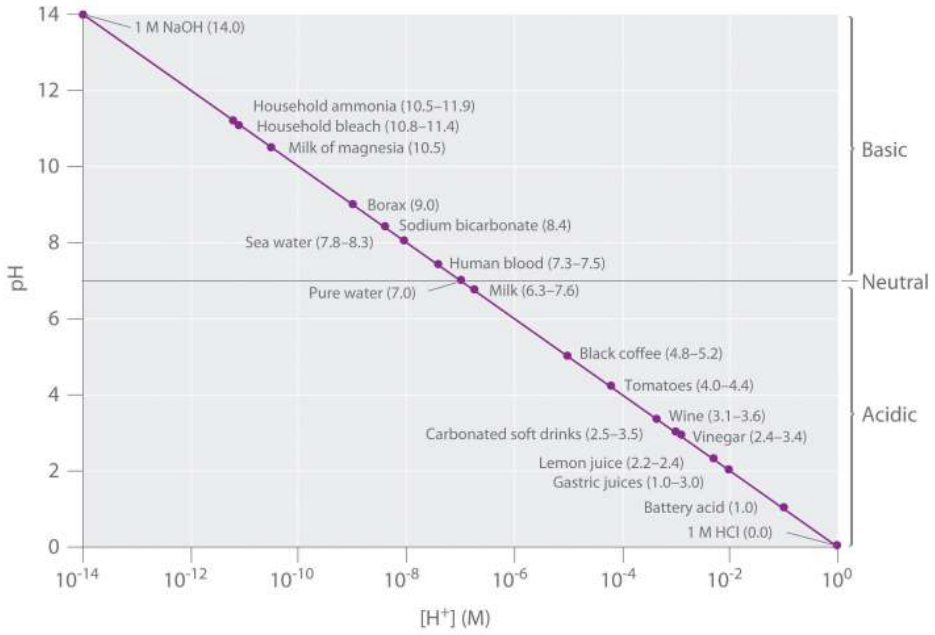


Figure **11.5.2**: A Plot of pH versus $[H^+]$ for Some Common Aqueous Solutions. Although many substances exist in a range of pH values (indicated in parentheses), they are plotted using typical values.

✔ Example 11.5.2

Label each solution as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated ***pH***.

a. milk of magnesia, pH = 10.5
b. pure water, pH = 7
c. wine, pH = 3.0

Solution

a. With a pH greater than 7, milk of magnesia is basic. (Milk of magnesia is largely $Mg(OH)_2$.)
b. Pure water, with a pH of 7, is neutral.
c. With a pH of less than 7, wine is acidic.

? Exercise 11.5.2

Identify each substance as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated ***pH***.

a. human blood with ***pH*** = 7.4
b. household ammonia with ***pH*** = 11.0
c. cherries with ***pH*** = 3.6

Answer

a. slightly basic

b. basic

c. acidic

Measuring pH

Tools have been developed that make the measurement of pH simple and convenient. For example, pH paper (Figure **11.5.3**)consists of strips of paper impregnated with one or more **acid-base indicators**, which are intensely colored organic molecules whose colors change dramatically depending on the pH of the solution. Placing a drop of a solution on a strip of pH

paper and comparing its color with standards give the solution's approximate pH. A more accurate tool, the pH meter, uses a glass electrode, a device whose voltage depends on the H^+ ion concentration (Figure **11.5.3**).



Figure **11.5.3**: Ways to measure pH. (left) These pH strips can measure pH in a series of ranges by putting sample on a strip and comparing its color change with colors on the box that correspond to a certain pH. The strip on the left measures pH 0-7 and shows results of a strong acid sample; the center strip is pH range 5-10 and shows results of a 6.97 buffer solution sample; the strip on the right measures a broad range (pH 1-14) and shows results of a 10% bleach water solution sample. This image can be enlarged by clicking on it. (right) These three meters and probes can measure pH (left) and electrical conductivity (center and right). Photos by Monica Bruckner (courtesy of the Science Education Resource Center (SERC) at Carleton College).

Acid Rain

Normal rainwater has a pH between 5 and 6 due to the presence of dissolved CO_2 which forms carbonic acid:

$$\mathrm{H_2O\,(l) + CO_2\,(g) \longrightarrow H_2CO_3\,(aq)} \tag{11.5.1}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3\,(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+\,(aq) + HCO_3^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.5.2}$$

Acid rain is rainwater that has a pH of less than 5, due to a variety of nonmetal oxides, including CO_2, SO_2, SO_3, NO, and NO_2 being dissolved in the water and reacting with it to form not only carbonic acid, but sulfuric acid and nitric acid. The formation and subsequent ionization of sulfuric acid are shown here:

$$\mathrm{H_2O\,(l) + SO_3\,(g) \longrightarrow H_2SO_4\,(aq)} \tag{11.5.3}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2SO_4\,(aq) \longrightarrow H^+\,(aq) + HSO_4^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.5.4}$$

Carbon dioxide is naturally present in the atmosphere because we and most other organisms produce it as a waste product of metabolism. Carbon dioxide is also formed when fires release carbon stored in vegetation or when we burn wood or fossil fuels. Sulfur trioxide in the atmosphere is naturally produced by volcanic activity, but it also stems from burning fossil fuels, which have traces of sulfur, and from the process of "roasting" ores of metal sulfides in metal-refining processes. Oxides of nitrogen are formed in internal combustion engines where the high temperatures make it possible for the nitrogen and oxygen in air to chemically combine.

Acid rain is a particular problem in industrial areas where the products of combustion and smelting are released into the air without being stripped of sulfur and nitrogen oxides. In North America and Europe until the 1980s, it was responsible for the

destruction of forests and freshwater lakes, when the acidity of the rain actually killed trees, damaged soil, and made lakes uninhabitable for all but the most acid-tolerant species. Acid rain also corrodes statuary and building facades that are made of marble and limestone (Figure **11.5.4**). Regulations limiting the amount of sulfur and nitrogen oxides that can be released into the atmosphere by industry and automobiles have reduced the severity of acid damage to both natural and manmade environments in North America and Europe. It is now a growing problem in industrial areas of China and India.

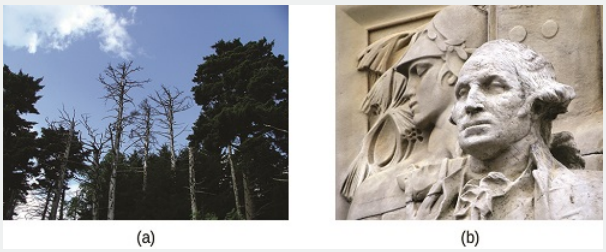


Figure **11.5.4**: (a) Acid rain makes trees more susceptible to drought and insect infestation, and depletes nutrients in the soil. (b) It also is corrodes statues that are carved from marble or limestone. (credit a: modification of work by Chris M Morris; credit b: modification of work by “Eden, Janine and Jim”/Flickr)

11.5: Measuring Acidity in Aqueous Solutions- The pH Scale is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.4: The Strengths of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

11.6: Working with pH

Learning Objectives

- Calculate pH from $[H_3O^+]$ and $[H_3O^+]$ from pH.

Calculating pH from Hydronium Concentration

The pH of solutions can be determined by using logarithms as illustrated in the next example for stomach acid. Stomach acid is a solution of HCl with a hydronium ion concentration of $1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, what is the pH of the solution?

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pH} &= -\log[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] \\ &= -\log(1.2 \times 10^{-3}) \\ &= -(-2.92) = 2.92 \end{aligned}$$

Logarithms

To get the **log value** on your calculator, enter the number (in this case, the hydronium ion concentration) first, then press the LOG key.

If the number is 1.0 x 10^{-5} (for $[H_3O^+]$ = 1.0 x 10^{-5} M) you should get an answer of "-5".

If you get a different answer, or an error, try pressing the LOG key before you enter the number.

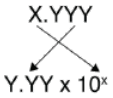
Example 11.6.2: Converting Ph to Hydronium Concentration

Find the pH, given the $[H_3O^+]$ of the following:

a. 1 ×10^{-3} M
b. 2.5 ×10^{-11} M
c. 4.7 ×10^{-9} M

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/402339

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: a. $[H_3O^+] = 1 \times 10^{-3}$ M b. $[H_3O^+] = 2.5 \times 10^{-11}$ M c. $[H_3O^+] = 4.7 \times 10^{-9}$ M Find: ? pH
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression for pH (Equation ???). $pH = - \log [H_3O^+]$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. a. $pH = - \log [1 \times 10^{-3}] = 3.0$ (1 decimal places since 1 has 1 significant figure) b. $pH = - \log [2.5 \times 10^{-11}] = 10.60$ (2 decimal places since 2.5 has 2 significant figures) c. $pH = - \log [4.7 \times 10^{-9}] = 8.30$ (2 decimal places since 4.7 has 2 significant figures) The other issue that concerns us here is significant figures. Because the number(s) before the decimal point in a logarithm relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer: 

? Exercise 11.6.2

Find the pH, given $[H_3O^+]$ of the following:

a. 5.8×10^{-4} M
b. 1.0×10^{-7}

Answer a

3.22

Answer b

7.00

Calculating Hydronium Concentration from pH

Sometimes you need to work "backwards"—you know the pH of a solution and need to find $[H_3O^+]$, or even the concentration of the acid solution. How do you do that? To convert pH into $[H_3O^+]$ we solve Equation ??? for $[H_3O^+]$. This involves taking the antilog (or inverse log) of the negative value of pH .

$$[H_3O^+] = \text{antilog}(-pH) \tag{11.6.1}$$

or

$$[H_3O^+] = 10^{-pH} \tag{11.6.2}$$

As mentioned above, different calculators work slightly differently—make sure you can do the following calculations using ***your*** calculator.

Calculator Skills

We have a solution with a pH = 8.3. What is $[H_3O^+]$?

With some calculators you will do things in the following order:

1. Enter 8.3 as a negative number (use the key with both the +/- signs, not the subtraction key).
2. Use your calculator's 2nd or Shift or INV (inverse) key to type in the symbol found above the LOG key. The shifted function should be 10^x.
3. You should get the answer $\mathbf{5.0 \times 10^{-9}}$.

Other calculators require you to enter keys in the order they appear in the equation.

1. Use the Shift or second function to key in the 10^x function.
2. Use the +/- key to type in a negative number, then type in 8.3.
3. You should get the answer $\mathbf{5.0 \times 10^{-9}}$.

If neither of these methods work, try rearranging the order in which you type in the keys. Don't give up—you must master your calculator!

Example 11.6.3: Calculating Hydronium Concentration from pH

Find the hydronium ion concentration in a solution with a pH of 12.6. Is this solution an acid or a base? How do you know?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: pH = 12.6 Find: $[H_3O^+]$ = ? M
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression for $[H_3O^+]$ (Equation 11.6.2). $[H_3O^+]$ = antilog (-pH) or $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-pH}$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. $[H_3O^+]$ = antilog (12.60) = 2.5 x 10^{-13} M (2 significant figures since 4.7 has 12.60 2 decimal places) or $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-12.60} = 2.5 \times 10^{-13}$ M (2 significant figures since 4.7 has 12.60 2 decimal places) The other issue that concerns us here is significant figures. Because the number(s) before the decimal point in a logarithm relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer: X.YYY Y.YY x 10^x

Exercise 11.6.3

If moist soil has a pH of 7.84, what is $[H_3O^+]$ of the soil solution?

Answer

1.5 x 10^{-8} M

11.6: Working with pH is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.7: Acid and Base Equivalents



Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

11.7: Acid and Base Equivalents is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.8: Some Common Acid-Base Reactions



Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

11.8: Some Common Acid-Base Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.9: Acidity and Basicity of Salt Solutions

Learning Objectives

- Identify a salt solution as acidic, basic, or neutral.

A salt is an ionic compound that is formed when an acid and a base neutralize each other. While it may seem that salt solutions are always neutral, they can frequently be either acidic or basic.

Consider the salt formed when the weak acid hydrofluoric acid is neutralized by the strong base sodium hydroxide. The molecular and net ionic equations are shown below.

$$\mathrm{HF}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaF}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$
$$\mathrm{HF}\,(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{F^-}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

Since sodium fluoride is soluble, the sodium ion is a spectator ion in the neutralization reaction. The fluoride ion is capable of reacting, to a small extent, with water, accepting a proton.

$$\mathrm{F^-}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HF}\,(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}\,(aq)$$

The fluoride ion is acting as a weak Brønsted-Lowry base. The hydroxide ion that is produced as a result of the above reaction makes the solution slightly basic. **Salt hydrolysis** is a reaction in which one of the ions from a salt reacts with water, forming either an acidic or basic solution.

Salts That Form Basic Solutions

When solid sodium fluoride is dissolved into water, it completely dissociates into sodium ions and fluoride ions. The sodium ions do not have any capability of hydrolyzing, but the fluoride ions hydrolyze to produce a small amount of hydrofluoric acid and hydroxide ion.

$$\mathrm{F^-}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HF}\,(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}\,(aq)$$

Salts that are derived from the neutralization of a weak acid (HF) by a strong base (NaOH) will always produce salt solutions that are basic.

Salts That Form Acidic Solutions

Ammonium chloride ($\mathrm{NH_4Cl}$) is a salt that is formed when the strong acid HCl is neutralized by the weak base $\mathrm{NH_3}$. Ammonium chloride is soluble in water. The chloride ion produced is incapable of hydrolyzing because it is the conjugate base of the strong acid HCl. In other words, the $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ion cannot accept a proton from water to form HCl and $\mathrm{OH^-}$, as the fluoride ion did in the previous section. However, the ammonium ion is capable of reacting slightly with water, donating a proton and so acting as an acid.

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NH_3}\,(aq)$$

Salts That Form Neutral Solutions

A salt that is derived from the reaction of a strong acid with a strong base forms a solution that has a pH of 7. An example is sodium chloride, formed from the neutralization of HCl by NaOH. A solution of NaCl in water has no acidic or basic properties, since neither ion is capable of hydrolyzing. Other salts that form neutral solutions include potassium nitrate ($\mathrm{KNO_3}$) and lithium bromide (LiBr). The table below summarizes how to determine the acidity or basicity of a salt solution.

Table **11.9.1**

Salt formed from:	Salt Solution
Strong acid + Strong base	Neutral
Strong acid + Weak base	Acidic
Weak acid + Strong base	Basic

Salts formed from the reaction of a weak acid and a weak base are more difficult to analyze due to competing hydrolysis reactions between the cation and the anion. These salts are not considered in this chapter's concept.

Summary

- Salt hydrolysis is a reaction in which one of the ions from a salt reacts with water, forming either an acidic or basic solution.
- Salts that are derived from the neutralization of a weak acid by a strong base will always produce salt solutions that are basic.
- Salts that are derived from the neutralization of a strong acid by a weak base will always produce salt solutions that are acidic.
- A salt that is derived from the reaction of a strong acid with a strong base forms a solution that has a pH of 7.

11.9: Acidity and Basicity of Salt Solutions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **21.21: Hydrolysis of Salts - Equations** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

11.10: Buffer Solutions

Learning Objectives

- Describe the composition and function of acid–base buffers
- Calculate the pH of a buffer before and after the addition of added acid or base

A mixture of a weak acid and its conjugate base (or a mixture of a weak base and its conjugate acid) is called a buffer solution, or a buffer. Buffer solutions resist a change in pH when small amounts of a strong acid or a strong base are added (Figure 11.10.1). A solution of acetic acid (CH_3COOH and sodium acetate CH_3COONa) is an example of a buffer that consists of a weak acid and its salt. An example of a buffer that consists of a weak base and its salt is a solution of ammonia ($NH_3\,(aq)$) and ammonium chloride ($NH_4Cl\,(aq)$).



Figure 11.10.1: (a) The unbuffered solution on the left and the buffered solution on the right have the same pH (pH 8); they are basic, showing the yellow color of the indicator methyl orange at this pH. (b) After the addition of 1 mL of a 0.01-M HCl solution, the buffered solution has not detectably changed its pH but the unbuffered solution has become acidic, as indicated by the change in color of the methyl orange, which turns red at a pH of about 4. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

How Buffers Work

A mixture of acetic acid and sodium acetate is acidic because the K_a of acetic acid is greater than the K_b of its conjugate base acetate. It is a buffer because it contains both the weak acid and its salt. Hence, it acts to keep the hydronium ion concentration (and the pH) almost constant by the addition of either a small amount of a strong acid or a strong base. If we add a base such as sodium hydroxide, the hydroxide ions react with the few hydronium ions present. Then more of the acetic acid reacts with water, restoring the hydronium ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2{}^-(aq)$$

The pH changes very little. If we add an acid such as hydrochloric acid, most of the hydronium ions from the hydrochloric acid combine with acetate ions, forming acetic acid molecules:

$$H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2{}^-(aq) \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

Thus, there is very little increase in the concentration of the hydronium ion, and the pH remains practically unchanged (Figure 11.10.2).

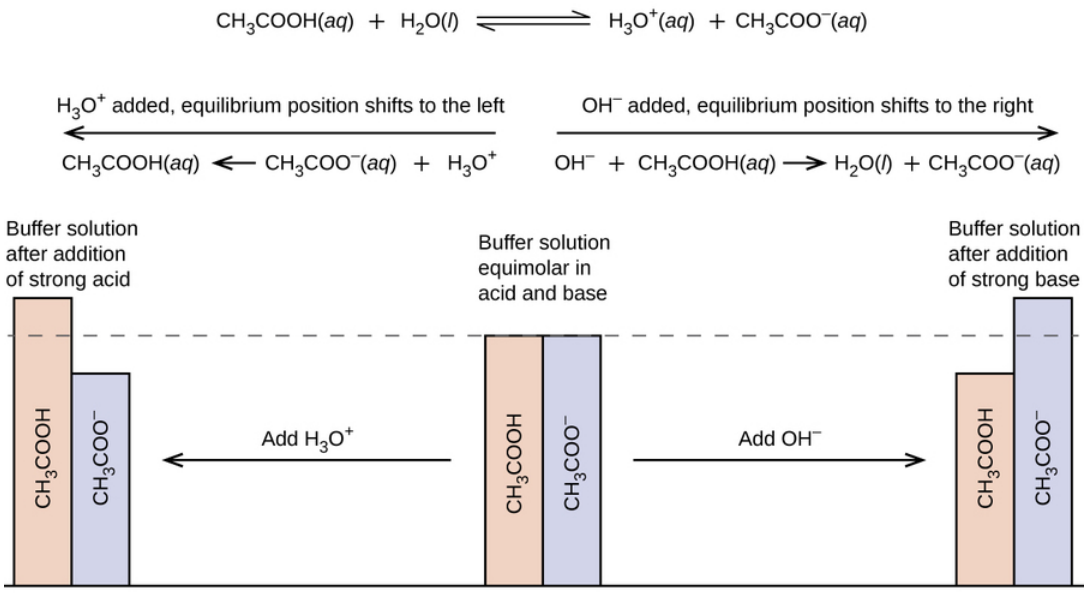


Figure **11.10.2**: This diagram shows the buffer action of these reactions.

A mixture of ammonia and ammonium chloride is basic because the K_b for ammonia is greater than the K_a for the ammonium ion. It is a buffer because it also contains the salt of the weak base. If we add a base (hydroxide ions), ammonium ions in the buffer react with the hydroxide ions to form ammonia and water and reduce the hydroxide ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$\mathbf{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathbf{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathbf{NH_3}(aq) + \mathbf{H_2O}(l)$$

If we add an acid (hydronium ions), ammonia molecules in the buffer mixture react with the hydronium ions to form ammonium ions and reduce the hydronium ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$\mathbf{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathbf{NH_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathbf{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathbf{H_2O}(l)$$

The three parts of the following example illustrate the change in pH that accompanies the addition of base to a buffered solution of a weak acid and to an unbuffered solution of a strong acid.

Example 11.10.1: pH Changes in Buffered and Unbuffered Solutions

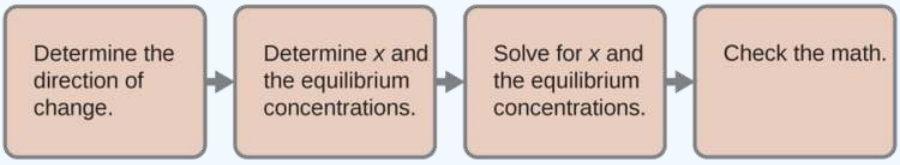
Acetate buffers are used in biochemical studies of enzymes and other chemical components of cells to prevent pH changes that might change the biochemical activity of these compounds.

a. Calculate the pH of an acetate buffer that is a mixture with 0.10 *M* acetic acid and 0.10 *M* sodium acetate.
b. Calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of this buffer, giving a solution with a volume of 101 mL.

Solution

a. Calculate the pH of an acetate buffer that is a mixture with 0.10 *M* acetic acid and 0.10 *M* sodium acetate.

To determine the pH of the buffer solution we use a typical equilibrium calculation (as illustrated in earlier Examples):



1. *Determine the direction of change.* The equilibrium in a mixture of H_3O^+, $\mathbf{CH_3CO_2^-}$, and CH_3CO_2H is:

$$\mathbf{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathbf{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathbf{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathbf{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq)$$

The equilibrium constant for CH_3CO_2H is not given, so we look it up in Table E1: $K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$. With $[CH_3CO_2H] = [CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.10\ M$ and $[H_3O^+] = \sim 0\ M$, the reaction shifts to the right to form H_3O^+.

2. *Determine* x *and equilibrium concentrations*. A table of changes and concentrations follows:

	$[CH_3CO_2H] + [H_2O] \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + [CH_3CO_2^-]$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.10	~0	0.10
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium constant (*M*)	$0.10 - x$	x	$0.10 + x$

- *Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.* We find:

$$x = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

- and

$$[H_3O^+] = 0 + x = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

Thus:

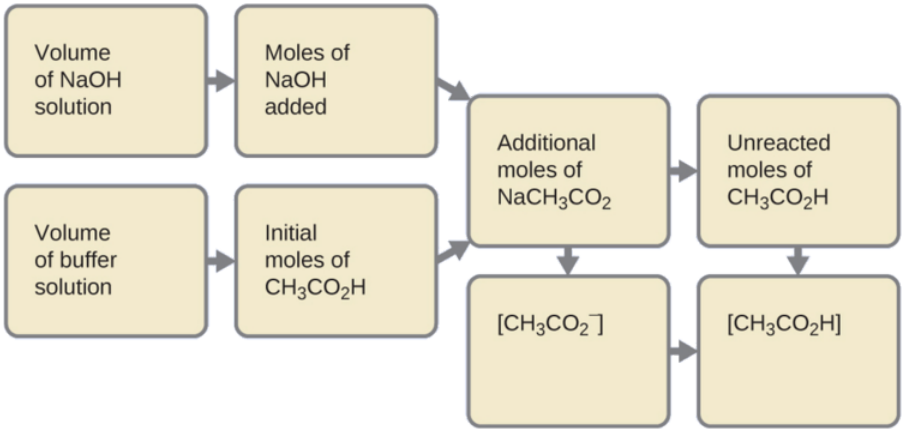
$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] = -\log(1.8 \times 10^{-5})$$

$$= 4.74$$

4. *Check the work*. If we calculate all calculated equilibrium concentrations, we find that the equilibrium value of the reaction coefficient, $Q = K_a$.

(b) Calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of this buffer, giving a solution with a volume of 101 mL.

First, we calculate the concentrations of an intermediate mixture resulting from the complete reaction between the acid in the buffer and the added base. Then we determine the concentrations of the mixture at the new equilibrium:



1. *Determine the moles of NaOH*. One milliliter (0.0010 L) of 0.10 *M* NaOH contains:

$$0.0010\,\cancel{L} \times \left(\frac{0.10\ \text{mol NaOH}}{1\,\cancel{L}}\right) = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol NaOH}$$

2. *Determine the moles of CH_2CO_2H*. Before reaction, 0.100 L of the buffer solution contains:

$$0.100\,\cancel{L} \times \left(\frac{0.100\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H}{1\,\cancel{L}}\right) = 1.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H$$

3. *Solve for the amount of $NaCH_3CO_2$ produced.* The 1.0×10^{-4} mol of NaOH neutralizes 1.0×10^{-4} mol of CH_3CO_2H, leaving:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-2}) - (0.01 \times 10^{-2}) = 0.99 \times 10^{-2} \text{ mol } CH_3CO_2H$$

and producing 1.0×10^{-4} mol of $NaCH_3CO_2$. This makes a total of:

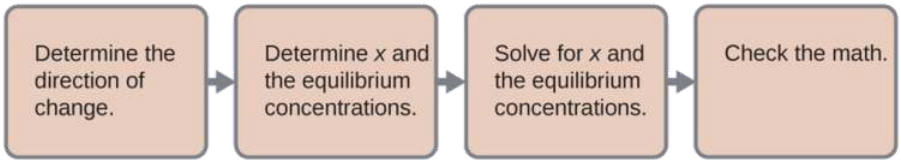
$$[\mathrm{(1.0×10^{−2})+(0.01×10^{−2})=1.01×10^{−2}\:mol\:NaCH_3CO_2} \nonumber \]$$

4. *Find the molarity of the products.* After reaction, CH_3CO_2H and $NaCH_3CO_2$ are contained in 101 mL of the intermediate solution, so:

$$[CH_3CO_2H] = \frac{9.9 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol}}{0.101 \text{ L}} = 0.098\ M$$

$$[NaCH_3CO_2] = \frac{1.01 \times 10^{-2} \text{ mol}}{0.101 \text{ L}} = 0.100\ M$$

Now we calculate the pH after the intermediate solution, which is 0.098 *M* in CH_3CO_2H and 0.100 *M* in $NaCH_3CO_2$, comes to equilibrium. The calculation is very similar to that in part (a) of this example:



This series of calculations gives a pH = 4.75. Thus the addition of the base barely changes the pH of the solution.

(c) For comparison, calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of a solution of an unbuffered solution with a pH of 4.74 (a 1.8×10^{-5}-*M* solution of HCl). The volume of the final solution is 101 mL.

Solution

This 1.8×10^{-5}-*M* solution of HCl has the same hydronium ion concentration as the 0.10-*M* solution of acetic acid-sodium acetate buffer described in part (a) of this example. The solution contains:

$$0.100 \text{ L} \times \left(\frac{1.8 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mol HCl}}{1 \text{ L}} \right) = 1.8 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol HCl}$$

As shown in part (b), 1 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH contains 1.0×10^{-4} mol of NaOH. When the NaOH and HCl solutions are mixed, the HCl is the limiting reagent in the reaction. All of the HCl reacts, and the amount of NaOH that remains is:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-4}) - (1.8 \times 10^{-6}) = 9.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

The concentration of NaOH is:

$$\frac{9.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M \text{ NaOH}}{0.101 \text{ L}} = 9.7 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

The pOH of this solution is:

$$\text{pOH} = -\log[OH^-] = -\log(9.7 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.01$$

The pH is:

$$\text{pH} = 14.00 - \text{pOH} = 10.99$$

The pH changes from 4.74 to 10.99 in this unbuffered solution. This compares to the change of 4.74 to 4.75 that occurred when the same amount of NaOH was added to the buffered solution described in part (b).

? Exercise 11.10.1

Show that adding 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl changes the pH of 100 mL of a 1.8×10^{-5} *M* HCl solution from 4.74 to 3.00.

Answer

Initial pH of 1.8×10^{-5} *M* HCl; pH = $-\log[H_3O^+] = -\log[1.8 \times 10^{-5}] = 4.74$

Moles of H_3O^+ added by addition of 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl: 0.10 moles/L × 0.0010 L = 1.0×10^{-4} moles; final pH after addition of 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl:

$$\text{pH} = -\log[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = -\log\left(\frac{\text{total moles H}_3\text{O}^+}{\text{total volume}}\right) = -\log\left(\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol} + 1.8 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol}}{101\ \text{mL}\left(\frac{1\ \text{L}}{1000\ \text{mL}}\right)}\right) = 3.00$$

Buffer Capacity

Buffer solutions do not have an unlimited capacity to keep the pH relatively constant (Figure **11.10.3**). If we add so much base to a buffer that the weak acid is exhausted, no more buffering action toward the base is possible. On the other hand, if we add an excess of acid, the weak base would be exhausted, and no more buffering action toward any additional acid would be possible. In fact, we do not even need to exhaust all of the acid or base in a buffer to overwhelm it; its buffering action will diminish rapidly as a given component nears depletion.



Figure **11.10.3**: The indicator color (methyl orange) shows that a small amount of acid added to a buffered solution of pH 8 (beaker on the left) has little affect on the buffered system (middle beaker). However, a large amount of acid exhausts the buffering capacity of the solution and the pH changes dramatically (beaker on the right). (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

The buffer capacity is the amount of acid or base that can be added to a given volume of a buffer solution before the pH changes significantly, usually by one unit. Buffer capacity depends on the amounts of the weak acid and its conjugate base that are in a buffer mixture. For example, 1 L of a solution that is 1.0 *M* in acetic acid and 1.0 *M* in sodium acetate has a greater buffer capacity than 1 L of a solution that is 0.10 *M* in acetic acid and 0.10 *M* in sodium acetate even though both solutions have the same pH. The first solution has more buffer capacity because it contains more acetic acid and acetate ion.

Selection of Suitable Buffer Mixtures

There are two useful rules of thumb for selecting buffer mixtures:

1. A good buffer mixture should have about equal concentrations of both of its components. A buffer solution has generally lost its usefulness when one component of the buffer pair is less than about 10% of the other. Figure **11.10.4** shows an acetic acid-acetate ion buffer as base is added. The initial pH is 4.74. A change of 1 pH unit occurs when the acetic acid concentration is reduced to 11% of the acetate ion concentration.

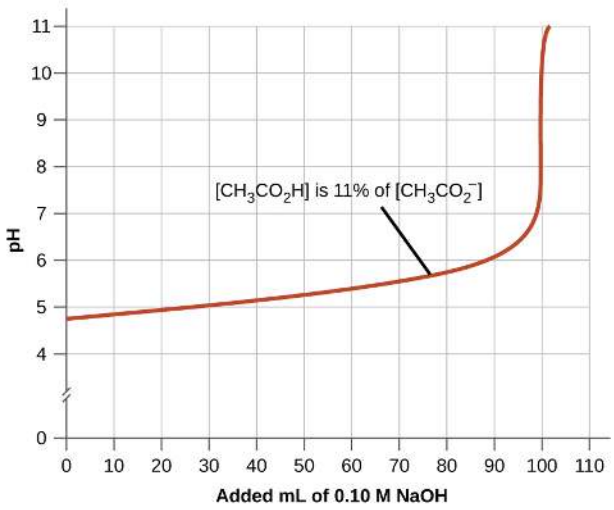


Figure **11.10.4**: The graph, an illustration of buffering action, shows change of pH as an increasing amount of a 0.10-M NaOH solution is added to 100 mL of a buffer solution in which, initially, $[CH_3CO_2H] = 0.10\ M$ and $[CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.10\ M$.

2. Weak acids and their salts are better as buffers for pHs less than 7; weak bases and their salts are better as buffers for pHs greater than 7.

Blood is an important example of a buffered solution, with the principal acid and ion responsible for the buffering action being carbonic acid, H_2CO_3, and the bicarbonate ion, HCO_3^-. When an excess of hydrogen ion enters the blood stream, it is removed primarily by the reaction:

$$H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \longrightarrow H_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

When an excess of the hydroxide ion is present, it is removed by the reaction:

$$OH^-(aq) + H_2CO_3(aq) \longrightarrow HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

The pH of human blood thus remains very near 7.35, that is, slightly basic. Variations are usually less than 0.1 of a pH unit. A change of 0.4 of a pH unit is likely to be fatal.

The Henderson-Hasselbalch Approximation

The ionization-constant expression for a solution of a weak acid can be written as:

$$K_a = \frac{[H3O+][A-]}{[HA]}$$

Rearranging to solve for $[H_3O^+]$, we get:

$$[H_3O^+] = K_a \times \frac{[HA]}{[A-]}$$

Taking the negative logarithm of both sides of this equation, we arrive at:

$$-\log[H_3O^+] = -\log K_a - \log\frac{[HA]}{[A^-]}$$

which can be written as

$$pH = pK_a + \log\frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}$$

where pK_a is the negative of the common logarithm of the ionization constant of the weak acid ($pK_a = -\log K_a$). This equation relates the pH, the ionization constant of a weak acid, and the concentrations of the weak acid and its salt in a buffered solution. Scientists often use this expression, called the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, to calculate the pH of buffer solutions. It is important to note that the "x is small" assumption must be valid to use this equation.

Lawrence Joseph Henderson and Karl Albert Hasselbalch

Lawrence Joseph Henderson (1878–1942) was an American physician, biochemist and physiologist, to name only a few of his many pursuits. He obtained a medical degree from Harvard and then spent 2 years studying in Strasbourg, then a part of Germany, before returning to take a lecturer position at Harvard. He eventually became a professor at Harvard and worked there his entire life. He discovered that the acid-base balance in human blood is regulated by a buffer system formed by the dissolved carbon dioxide in blood. He wrote an equation in 1908 to describe the carbonic acid-carbonate buffer system in blood. Henderson was broadly knowledgeable; in addition to his important research on the physiology of blood, he also wrote on the adaptations of organisms and their fit with their environments, on sociology and on university education. He also founded the Fatigue Laboratory, at the Harvard Business School, which examined human physiology with specific focus on work in industry, exercise, and nutrition.

In 1916, Karl Albert Hasselbalch (1874–1962), a Danish physician and chemist, shared authorship in a paper with Christian Bohr in 1904 that described the Bohr effect, which showed that the ability of hemoglobin in the blood to bind with oxygen was inversely related to the acidity of the blood and the concentration of carbon dioxide. The pH scale was introduced in 1909 by another Dane, Sørensen, and in 1912, Hasselbalch published measurements of the pH of blood. In 1916, Hasselbalch expressed Henderson's equation in logarithmic terms, consistent with the logarithmic scale of pH, and thus the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation was born.

Medicine: The Buffer System in Blood

The normal pH of human blood is about 7.4. The carbonate buffer system in the blood uses the following equilibrium reaction:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq)$$

The concentration of carbonic acid, H_2CO_3 is approximately 0.0012 *M*, and the concentration of the hydrogen carbonate ion, $\mathbf{HCO_3^-}$, is around 0.024 *M*. Using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation and the pK_a of carbonic acid at body temperature, we can calculate the pH of blood:

$$\mathrm{pH} = \mathrm{p}K_a + \log\frac{[\text{base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 6.1 + \log\frac{0.024}{0.0012} = 7.4$$

The fact that the H_2CO_3 concentration is significantly lower than that of the $\mathbf{HCO_3^-}$ ion may seem unusual, but this imbalance is due to the fact that most of the by-products of our metabolism that enter our bloodstream are acidic. Therefore, there must be a larger proportion of base than acid, so that the capacity of the buffer will not be exceeded.

Lactic acid is produced in our muscles when we exercise. As the lactic acid enters the bloodstream, it is neutralized by the $\mathbf{HCO_3^-}$ ion, producing H_2CO_3. An enzyme then accelerates the breakdown of the excess carbonic acid to carbon dioxide and water, which can be eliminated by breathing. In fact, in addition to the regulating effects of the carbonate buffering system on the pH of blood, the body uses breathing to regulate blood pH. If the pH of the blood decreases too far, an increase in breathing removes CO_2 from the blood through the lungs driving the equilibrium reaction such that $[H_3O^+]$ is lowered. If the blood is too alkaline, a lower breath rate increases CO_2 concentration in the blood, driving the equilibrium reaction the other way, increasing $[H^+]$ and restoring an appropriate pH.

Summary

A solution containing a mixture of an acid and its conjugate base, or of a base and its conjugate acid, is called a buffer solution. Unlike in the case of an acid, base, or salt solution, the hydronium ion concentration of a buffer solution does not change greatly when a small amount of acid or base is added to the buffer solution. The base (or acid) in the buffer reacts with the added acid (or base).

Key Equations

- $pK_a = -\log K_a$
- $pK_b = -\log K_b$
- $\mathrm{pH} = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}$

Glossary

buffer capacity

amount of an acid or base that can be added to a volume of a buffer solution before its pH changes significantly (usually by one pH unit)

buffer

mixture of a weak acid or a weak base and the salt of its conjugate; the pH of a buffer resists change when small amounts of acid or base are added

Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

equation used to calculate the pH of buffer solutions

11.10: Buffer Solutions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.6: Buffers** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

11.11: Titration

Learning Objectives

- Describe a titration experiment.
- Explain what an indicator does.
- Perform a titration calculation correctly.

The reaction of an acid with a base to make a salt and water is a common reaction in the laboratory, partly because many compounds can act as acids or bases. Another reason that acid-base reactions are so prevalent is because they are often used to determine quantitative amounts of one or the other. Performing chemical reactions quantitatively to determine the exact amount of a reagent is called a **titration**. A titration can be performed with almost any chemical reaction for which the balanced chemical equation is known. Here, we will consider titrations that involve acid-base reactions.

In a titration, one reagent has a known concentration or amount, while the other reagent has an unknown concentration or amount. Typically, the known reagent (the **titrant**) is added to the unknown quantity and is dissolved in solution. The unknown amount of substance (the **analyte**) may or may not be dissolved in solution (but usually is). The titrant is added to the analyte using a precisely calibrated volumetric delivery tube called a burette (also spelled buret; see Figure **11.11.1**). The burette has markings to determine how much volume of solution has been added to the analyte. When the reaction is complete, it is said to be at the **equivalence point**; the number of moles of titrant can be calculated from the concentration and the volume, and the balanced chemical equation can be used to determine the number of moles (and then concentration or mass) of the unknown reactant.



Figure **11.11.1** Equipment for Titrations. A burette is a type of liquid dispensing system that can accurately indicate the volume of liquid dispensed.

For example, suppose 25.66 mL (or 0.02566 L) of 0.1078 M HCl was used to titrate an unknown sample of NaOH. What mass of NaOH was in the sample? We can calculate the number of moles of HCl reacted:

$$\text{\# mol HCl} = (0.02566\ \text{L})(0.1078\ \text{M}) = 0.002766\ \text{mol HCl}$$

We also have the balanced chemical reaction between HCl and NaOH:

$$\text{HCl} + \text{NaOH} \rightarrow \text{NaCl} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

So we can construct a conversion factor to convert to number of moles of NaOH reacted:

$$0.002766\ \cancel{mol\ HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ NaOH}{1\ \cancel{mol\ HCl}} = 0.002766\ mol\ NaOH$$

Then we convert this amount to mass, using the molar mass of NaOH (40.00 g/mol):

$$0.002766\ \cancel{mol\ HCl} \times \frac{40.00\ g\ NaOH}{1\ \cancel{mol\ HCl}} = 0.1106\ g\ NaOH$$

This type of calculation is performed as part of a titration.

Example 11.11.1

What mass of $Ca(OH)_2$ is present in a sample if it is titrated to its equivalence point with 44.02 mL of 0.0885 M HNO_3? The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$2HNO_3 + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2 + 2H_2O$$

Solution

In liters, the volume is 0.04402 L. We calculate the number of moles of titrant:

$$\text{\# moles } HNO_3 = (0.04402\text{ L})(0.0885\text{ M}) = 0.00390\text{ mol } HNO_3$$

Using the balanced chemical equation, we can determine the number of moles of $Ca(OH)_2$ present in the analyte:

$$0.00390\ \cancel{mol\ HNO_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ Ca(OH)_2}{2\ \cancel{mol\ HNO_3}} = 0.00195\ mol\ Ca(OH)_2$$

Then we convert this to a mass using the molar mass of $Ca(OH)_2$:

$$0.00195\ \cancel{mol\ Ca(OH)_2} \times \frac{74.1\ g\ Ca(OH)_2}{\cancel{mol\ Ca(OH)_2}} = 0.144\ g\ Ca(OH)_2$$

? Exercise 11.11.1

What mass of $H_2C_2O_4$ is present in a sample if it is titrated to its equivalence point with 18.09 mL of 0.2235 M NaOH? The balanced chemical reaction is as follows:

$$\mathbf{H_2C_2O_4 + 2\,NaOH \longrightarrow Na_2C_2O_4 + 2\,H_2O}$$

Answer

0.182 g

How does one know if a reaction is at its equivalence point? Usually, the person performing the titration adds a small amount of an **indicator**, a substance that changes color depending on the acidity or basicity of the solution. Because different indicators change colors at different levels of acidity, choosing the correct one is important in performing an accurate titration.

11.11: Titration is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.4: Acid-Base Titrations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

11.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises)

10.1: Arrhenius Definition of Acids and Bases

Concept Review Exercises

1. Give the Arrhenius definitions of an acid and a base.
2. What is neutralization?

Answers

1. Arrhenius acid: a compound that increases the concentration of hydrogen ion (H^+) in aqueous solution; Arrhenius base: a compound that increases the concentration of hydroxide ion (OH^-) in aqueous solution.
2. the reaction of an acid and a base

Exercises

1. Give two examples of Arrhenius acids.
2. Give two examples of Arrhenius bases.
3. List the general properties of acids.
4. List the general properties of bases.
5. Name each compound. (For acids, look up the name in Table 10.1.1. For bases, use the rules for naming ionic compounds from Chapter 3.)

    a. HBr(aq)

    b. $Ca(OH)_2$(aq)

    c. HNO_3(aq)

    d. $Fe(OH)_3$(aq)

6. Name each compound.

    a. HI(aq)

    b. $Cu(OH)_2$(aq)

    c. H_3PO_4(aq)

    d. CsOH(aq)

7. Write a balanced chemical equation for the neutralization of $Ba(OH)_2$(aq) with HNO_3(aq).

8. Write a balanced chemical equation for the neutralization of H_2SO_4(aq) with $Cr(OH)_3$(aq).

9. Gastric juice, the digestive fluid produced in the stomach, contains hydrochloric acid, HCl. Milk of Magnesia, a suspension of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ in an aqueous medium, is sometimes used to neutralize excess stomach acid. Write a complete balanced equation for the neutralization reaction.

10. Identify the salt produced in each acid-base reaction below. Then, balance the equation.

    a. $2HCl + Sr(OH)_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$ + ??

    b. KNO_3; $HNO_3 + KOH \rightarrow$?? + H_2O

    c. $HF + Ca(OH)_2$ ---> ?? + H_2O

11. How many moles of sodium hydroxide (NaOH) are needed to neutralize 0.844 mol of acetic acid ($HC_2H_3O_2$)? (Hint: begin by writing a balanced chemical equation for the process.)

12. How many moles of perchloric acid ($HClO_4$) are needed to neutralize 0.052 mol of calcium hydroxide [$Ca(OH)_2$]? (Hint: begin by writing a balanced chemical equation for the process

13. Hydrazoic acid (HN_3) can be neutralized by a base.

a. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction between hydrazoic acid and calcium hydroxide.

b. How many milliliters of 0.0245 M $Ca(OH)_2$ are needed to neutralize 0.564 g of HN_3?

14. Citric acid ($H_3C_6H_5O_7$) has three hydrogen atoms that can form hydrogen ions in solution.

a. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction between citric acid and sodium hydroxide.

b. If an orange contains 0.0675 g of $H_3C_6H_5O_7$, how many milliliters of 0.00332 M NaOH solution are needed to neutralize the acid?

15. Magnesium hydroxide [$Mg(OH)_2$] is an ingredient in some antacids. How many grams of $Mg(OH)_2$ are needed to neutralize the acid in 158 mL of 0.106 M HCl(aq)? It might help to write the balanced chemical equation first.

16. Aluminum hydroxide [$Al(OH)_3$] is an ingredient in some antacids. How many grams of $Al(OH)_3$ are needed to neutralize the acid in 96.5 mL of 0.556 M H_2SO_4(aq)? It might help to write the balanced chemical equation first.

17. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction between HBr and $Ca(OH)_2$. What volume of 0.010 M HBr solution is be required to neutralize 25 mL of a 0.0100*M* $Ca(OH)_2$ solution?

18. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction between HNO_3 and KOH. What volume of 0.5M HNO_3 is required to neutralize 60 mL of 0.4M KOH solution?

Answers

1. HCl and HNO_3 (answers will vary)
2. NaOH and $Ca(OH)_2$ (answers will vary)
3. sour taste, react with metals, react with bases, and turn litmus red
4. bitter taste, feels slippery, react with acids and turn litmus blue
5. a. hydrobromic acid

b. calcium hydroxide

c. nitric acid

d. iron(III) hydroxide

6. a. hydroiodic acid

b. cupric hydroxide

c. phosphoric acid

d. cesium hydroxide

7. $2HNO_3(aq) + Ba(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow Ba(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2H_2O$

8. $3H_2SO_4(aq) + 2Cr(OH)_3(aq) \rightarrow Cr_2(SO_4)_3(aq) + 6H_2O$

9. $Mg(OH)_2 + 2HCl$ --> $MgCl_2 + 2H_2O$

10. a. $SrCl_2$; $2HCl + Sr(OH)_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O + SrCl_2$

b. KNO_3; $HNO_3 + KOH \rightarrow KNO_3 + H_2O$

c. CaF_2; $2HF + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow CaF_2 + 2H_2O$

11. 0.844 mol

12. 0.104 mol

13. Part 1: $2HN_3(aq) + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow Ca(N_3)_2 + 2H_2O$

Part 2: 268 mL

14. Part 1: $H_3C_6H_5O_7(aq) + 3NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Na_3C_6H_5O_7(aq) + 3H_2O$

Part 2: 317.5 mL

15. 0.488 g

16. 2.79 g

17. $2HBr + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow CaBr_2 + 2H_2O$; 50 mL HBr

18. $HNO_3 + KOH \rightarrow KNO_3 + H_2O$; 48 mL HNO_3

10.2: Brønsted-Lowry Definition of Acids and Bases

Concept Review Exercise

1. Give the definitions of a Brønsted-Lowry acid and a Brønsted-Lowry base.

Answer

1. A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.

Exercises

1. Label each reactant as a Brønsted-Lowry acid or a Brønsted-Lowry base.

   $HCl(aq) + NH_3(aq) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$

2. Label each reactant as a Brønsted-Lowry acid or a Brønsted-Lowry base.

   $H_2O(\ell) + N_2H_4(aq) \rightarrow N_2H_5^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

3. Explain why a Brønsted-Lowry acid can be called a proton donor.
4. Explain why a Brønsted-Lowry base can be called a proton acceptor.
5. Write the chemical equation of the reaction of ammonia in water and label the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.
6. Write the chemical equation of the reaction of methylamine (CH_3NH_2) in water and label the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.
7. Demonstrate that the dissolution of HNO_3 in water is actually a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction by describing it with a chemical equation and labeling the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.
8. Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base in the following chemical equation:

   $C_3H_7NH_2(aq) + H_3O^+(aq) \rightarrow C_3H_7NH_3^+(aq) + H_2O(\ell)$

9. Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and the Brønsted-Lowry base in each of the following equations

   1. $\mathbf{NO_2^- + H_2O \longrightarrow HNO_2 + OH^-}$
   2. $\mathbf{HBr + H_2O \longrightarrow H_3O^+ + Br^-}$
   3. $\mathbf{HS^- + H_2O \longrightarrow H_2S + OH^-}$
   4. $\mathbf{H_2PO_4^- + OH^- \longrightarrow HPO_4^{2-} + H_2O}$
   5. $\mathbf{H_2PO_4^- + HCl \longrightarrow H_3PO_4 + Cl^-}$

10. Write the chemical equation for the reaction that occurs when cocaine hydrochloride ($C_{17}H_{22}ClNO_4$) dissolves in water and donates a proton to a water molecule. (When hydrochlorides dissolve in water, they separate into chloride ions and the appropriate cation.)

11. If codeine hydrobromide has the formula $C_{18}H_{22}BrNO_3$, what is the formula of the parent compound codeine?

Answers

1. HCl: Brønsted-Lowry acid; NH_3: Brønsted-Lowry base
2. H_2O: Brønsted-Lowry acid; N_2H_4: Brønsted-Lowry base
3. A Brønsted-Lowry acid gives away an H^+ ion—nominally, a proton—in an acid-base reaction.
4. A Brønsted-Lowry base accepts an H^+ ion (a proton) in an acid-base reaction.
5. $NH_3 + H_2O \rightarrow NH_4^+ + OH^-$ (here NH_3 = Brønsted-Lowry base; H_2O = Brønsted-Lowry acid)
6. $CH_3NH_2 + H_2O \rightarrow CH_3NH_3^+ + OH^-$ (here CH_3NH_2 = Brønsted-Lowry base; H_2O = Brønsted-Lowry acid)
7. $HNO_3 + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+ + NO_3^-$ (here HNO_3 = Brønsted-Lowry acid; H_2O = Brønsted-Lowry base)

8. $C_3H_7NH_2(aq) + H_3O^+(aq) \rightarrow C_3H_7NH_3^+(aq) + H_2O(\ell)$ (here H_3O^+ = Brønsted-Lowry acid; $C_3H_7NH_2$ = Brønsted-Lowry base)

10.3: Water - Both an Acid and a Base

Concept Review Exercises

1. Explain how water can act as an acid.
2. Explain how water can act as a base.

Answers

1. Under the right conditions, H_2O can donate a proton, making it a Brønsted-Lowry acid.
2. Under the right conditions, H_2O can accept a proton, making it a Brønsted-Lowry base.

Exercises

1. Is $H_2O(\ell)$ acting as an acid or a base?

   $H_2O(\ell) + NH_4^+(aq) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + NH_3(aq)$

2. Is $H_2O(\ell)$ acting as an acid or a base?

   $CH_3^-(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow CH_4(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

3. In the aqueous solutions of some salts, one of the ions from the salt can react with water molecules. In some $C_2H_3O_2^-$ solutions, the following reaction can occur:

   $C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow HC_2H_3O_2(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

   Is H_2O acting as an acid or a base in this reaction?

4. In the aqueous solutions of some salts, one of the ions from the salt can react with water molecules. In some NH_4^+ solutions, the following reaction can occur:

   $NH_4^+(aq) + H_2O \rightarrow NH_3(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$

   Is H_2O acting as an acid or a base in this reaction?

5. Why is pure water considered neutral?

Answers

1. base
2. acid
3. acid
4. base

5. When water ionizes, equal amounts of H^+ (acid) and OH^- (base) are formed, so the solution is neither acidic nor basic: $H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

10.4: The Strengths of Acids and Bases

Concept Review Exercises

1. Explain the difference between a strong acid or base and a weak acid or base.
2. Explain what is occurring when a chemical reaction reaches equilibrium.
3. Define *pH*.

AnswerS

1. A strong acid or base is 100% ionized in aqueous solution; a weak acid or base is less than 100% ionized.
2. The overall reaction progress stops because the reverse process balances out the forward process.
3. pH is a measure of the hydrogen ion concentration.

Exercises

1. Name a strong acid and a weak acid. (Hint: use Table 10.4.1.)
2. Name a strong base and a weak base. (Hint: use Table 10.4.1.)
3. Is each compound a strong acid or a weak acid? Assume all are in aqueous solution. (Hint: use Table 10.4.1.)
    1. HF
    2. $HC_2H_3O_2$
    3. HCl
    4. $HClO_4$
4. Is each compound a strong acid or a weak acid? Assume all are in aqueous solution. (Hint: use Table 10.4.1.)
    1. H_2SO_4
    2. HSO_4^-
    3. HPO_4^{2-}
    4. HNO_3
5. Is each compound a strong base or a weak base? Assume all are in aqueous solution. (Hint: use Table 10.4.1.)
    1. NH_3
    2. NaOH
    3. $Mg(OH)_2$
    4. $Cu(OH)_2$
6. Is each compound a strong base or a weak base? Assume all are in aqueous solution. (Hint: use Table 10.4.1.)
    1. KOH
    2. H_2O
    3. $Fe(OH)_2$
    4. $Fe(OH)_3$
7. Write the chemical equation for the equilibrium process for each weak acid in Exercise 3.
8. Write the chemical equation for the equilibrium process for each weak acid in Exercise 4.
9. Write the chemical equation for the equilibrium process for each weak base in Exercise 5.
10. Write the chemical equation for the equilibrium process for each weak base in Exercise 6.
11. Which is the stronger acid—HCl(aq) or HF(aq)?
12. Which is the stronger base—KOH(aq) or $Ni(OH)_2$(aq)?
13. Consider the two acids in Exercise 11. For solutions that have the same concentration, which one would you expect to have a lower pH?
14. Consider the two bases in Exercise 12. For solutions that have the same concentration, which one would you expect to have a higher pH?
15. Consider the list of substances in Table \PageIndex3\PageIndex3.2"The pH Values of Some Common Solutions". What is the most acidic substance on the list that you have encountered recently?
16. Consider the list of substances in Table \PageIndex3\PageIndex3.2"The pH Values of Some Common Solutions". What is the most basic substance on the list that you have encountered recently?
17. Indicate whether solutions with the following pH values are acidic, basic, or neutral:
    1. pH = 9.4
    2. pH = 7.0
    3. pH = 1.2
    4. pH = 6.5

Answers

1. strong acid: HCl; weak acid: $HC_2H_3O_2$ (answers will vary)
2. strong base: NaOH; weak base: NH_3 (answers will vary)
3. 1. weak
    2. weak

3. strong
4. strong

4. 1. strong
2. weak
3. weak
4. strong

5. 1. weak
2. strong
3. strong
4. weak

6. 1. strong
2. weak
3. weak
4. weak

7. 3a: $HF(aq) \leftrightarrows H^+(aq) + F^-(aq)$; 3b: $HC_2H_3O_2(aq) \leftrightarrows H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$

8. 4b: $HSO_4^-(aq) \leftrightarrows H^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$; 4c: $HPO_4^{2-}(aq) \leftrightarrows H^+(aq) + PO_4^{3-}(aq)$

9. 5a: $NH_3(aq) + H_2O \leftrightarrows NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$; 5d: $Cu(OH)_2(aq) \leftrightarrows Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq)$

10. 6b: $H_2O + H_2O \leftrightarrows H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$; 6c: $Fe(OH)_2(aq) \leftrightarrows Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq)$; 6d: $Fe(OH)3(aq) \leftrightarrows Fe^{3+}(aq) + 3OH^-(aq)$

11. HCl(aq)

12. KOH(aq)

13. HCl(aq)

14. KOH(aq)

15. (answers will vary)

16. (answers will vary)

17. 1. basic

2. neutral

3. acidic (strongly)

4. acidic (mildly)

10.5: Buffers

Concept Review Exercise

1. Explain how a buffer prevents large changes in pH.

Answer

1. A buffer has components that react with both strong acids and strong bases to resist sudden changes in pH.

Exercises

1. Describe a buffer. What two related chemical components are required to make a buffer?
2. Can a buffer be made by combining a strong acid with a strong base? Why or why not?
3. Which solute combinations can make a buffer? Assume all are aqueous solutions.
    1. HCl and NaCl
    2. HNO_2 and $NaNO_2$
    3. NH_4NO_3 and HNO_3

4. NH_4NO_3 and NH_3

4. Which solute combinations can make a buffer? Assume all are aqueous solutions.
    1. H_3PO_4 and Na_3PO_4
    2. $NaHCO_3$ and Na_2CO_3
    3. $NaNO_3$ and $Ca(NO_3)_2$
    4. HN_3 and NH_3
5. For each combination in Exercise 3 that is a buffer, write the chemical equations for the reactions of the buffer components when a strong acid and a strong base is added.
6. For each combination in Exercise 4 that is a buffer, write the chemical equations for the reaction of the buffer components when a strong acid and a strong base is added.
7. The complete phosphate buffer system is based on four substances: H_3PO_4, $H_2PO_4^-$, HPO_4^{2-}, and PO_4^{3-}. What different buffer solutions can be made from these substances?
8. Explain why NaBr cannot be a component in either an acidic or a basic buffer.
9. Explain why $Mg(NO_3)_2$ cannot be a component in either an acidic or a basic buffer.

Answers

1. A buffer resists sudden changes in pH. It has a weak acid or base and a salt of that weak acid or base.
2. No. Combining a strong acid and a strong base will produce salt and water. Excess strong acid or strong base will not act as a buffer.
3. 1. not a buffer
    2. buffer
    3. not a buffer
    4. buffer

4. 1. not a buffer

2. buffer

3. not a buffer

4. not buffer

5. 3b: strong acid: $H^+ + NO_2^- \rightarrow HNO_2$; strong base: $OH^- + HNO_2 \rightarrow H_2O + NO_2^-$; 3d: strong acid: $H^+ + NH_3 \rightarrow NH_4^+$; strong base: $OH^- + NH_4^+ \rightarrow H_2O + NH_3$
6. 4b: strong acid: $H^+ + CO_3^{2-} \rightarrow HCO3^-$; strong base: $OH^- + HCO_3^- \rightarrow H_2O + CO_3^{2-}$;
7. Buffers can be made by combining H_3PO_4 and $H_2PO_4^-$, $H_2PO_4^-$ and HPO_4^{2-}, and HPO_4^{2-} and PO_4^{3-}.
8. NaBr splits up into two ions in solution, Na^+ and Br^-. Na^+ will not react with any added base knowing that NaOH is a strong base. Br- will not react with any added acid knowing that HBr is a strong acid. Because NaBr will not react with any added base or acid, it does not resist change in pH and is not a buffer.
9. $Mg(NO_3)_2$ includes two types of ions, Mg^{2+} and NO_3^-. $Mg(OH)_2$ is strong base and completely dissociates (100% falls apart), so Mg^{2+} will not react with any added base (0% combines with OH^-). HNO_3 is strong acid and completely dissociates (100% falls apart), so NO_3^- will not react with any added acid (0% combines with H^+). Because $Mg(NO_3)_2$ will not react with any added base or acid, it does not resist change in pH and is not a buffer.

Additional Exercises

1. The properties of a 1.0 M HCl solution and a 1.0 M $HC_2H_3O_2$ solution are compared. Measurements show that the hydrochloric acid solution has a higher osmotic pressure than the acetic acid solution. Explain why.
2. Of a 0.50 M HNO_3 solution and a 0.50 M $HC_2H_3O_2$ solution, which should have the higher boiling point? Explain why.
3. The reaction of sulfuric acid [$H_2SO_4(aq)$] with sodium hydroxide [NaOH(aq)] can be represented by two separate steps, with only one hydrogen ion reacting in each step. Write the chemical equation for each step.
4. The reaction of aluminum hydroxide [$Al(OH)_3(aq)$] with hydrochloric acid [HCl(aq)] can be represented by three separate steps, with only one hydroxide ion reacting in each step. Write the chemical equation for each step.

5. A friend brings you a small sample of an unknown chemical. Assuming that the chemical is soluble in water, how would you determine if the chemical is an acid or a base?
6. A neutral solution has a hydrogen ion concentration of about 1×10^{-7} M. What is the concentration of the hydroxide ion in a neutral solution?
7. The Lewis definitions of an acid and a base are based on electron pairs, not protons. A Lewis acid is an electron pair acceptor, while a Lewis base is an electron pair donor. Use Lewis diagrams to show that

   $H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell)$

   is an acid-base reaction in the Lewis sense as well as in the Arrhenius and Brønsted-Lowry senses.
8. Given the chemical reaction

   $NH_3(g) + BF_3(g) \rightarrow NH_3—BF_3(s)$

   show that the reaction illustrated by this equation is an acid-base reaction if we use the Lewis definitions of an acid and a base (see Exercise 7). The product contains a bond between the N and B atoms.

Answers

1. HCl is a strong acid and yields more ions in solution. $HC_2H_3O_2$ is a weak acid and undergoes partial ionization in solution.
2. HNO_3 is a strong acid while $HC_2H_3O_2$ is a weak acid. HNO_3 dissociates 100% and its solution contains more ions. The more ions the solution contains the lower is its vapor pressure; the higher temperature is required for it to boil.
3. $H_2SO_4 + NaOH \rightarrow NaHSO_4 + H_2O$; $NaHSO_4 + NaOH \rightarrow Na_2SO_4 + H_2O$
4. $Al(OH)_3 + HCl \rightarrow Al(OH)_2Cl + H_2O$; $Al(OH)_2Cl + HCl \rightarrow Al(OH)Cl_2 + H_2O$; $Al(OH)Cl_2 + HCl \rightarrow AlCl3 + H_2O$
5. One way is to add it to $NaHCO_3$; if it bubbles, it is an acid. Alternatively, add the sample to litmus and look for a characteristic color change (red for acid, blue for base).
6. In a neutral solution, $[OH^-] = [H^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$ M
7. The O atom is donating an electron pair to the H^+ ion, making the base an electron pair donor and the acid an electron pair acceptor.
8. The N atom is donating a lone pair to B in BF_3, Hence NH_3 is the Lewis base and BF_3 is the Lewis acid.

This page titled 11.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **10.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises)** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **10.1: Arrhenius Definition of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **10.2: Brønsted-Lowry Definition of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **10.3: Water - Both an Acid and a Base** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **10.4: The Strengths of Acids and Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **10.5: Buffers** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

Index

A

absolute temperature
8.6: Charles’s Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature
anion
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
atomic mass unit
4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
atomic theory
4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

B

band of stability
5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes
becquerel (unit)
5.7: Measuring Radiation

C

cation
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
Charles's Law
8.6: Charles’s Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature
chemical change
3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
chemical property
3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
colligative properties
9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure
compound
3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
conservation of energy
3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
curie (unit)
5.7: Measuring Radiation

D

Dalton
8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law
Dalton's Law of Partial Pressure
8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law
daughter isotope
5.1: Nuclear Reactions
democritus
4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
density
2.9: Density
dimensional analysis
2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions
dynamic equilibrium
10.5: Le Chatelier’s Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria

E

electron
4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
element
3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
endothermic process
3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
exercises
6.21: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises)
6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises I)
6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises II)
7.11: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises)
7.E: Quantities in Chemical Reactions (Exercises)
8.E: Solids, Liquids, and Gases (Exercises)
9.E: Solutions (Exercises)
11.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises)
exothermic process
3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

G

gray (unit)
5.7: Measuring Radiation

H

half life (nuclear)
5.5: Radioactive Half-Life
Heat Capacity Calculations
3.8: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

I

impulse
8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory
ions
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
isotopes
4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

K

Kelvin
8.6: Charles’s Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature
kinetic molecular theory
8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory
kinetic theory
8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory
KT
8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory

L

Le Chatelier's principle
10.5: Le Chatelier’s Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria

M

matter
3.1: What is Matter?
mixture
3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
molar mass
7.7: Gram-Mole Conversions

N

neutron
4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
nuclide
5.1: Nuclear Reactions
5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes

P

parent isotope
5.1: Nuclear Reactions
partial pressure
8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law
physical change
3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
physical property
3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
Postulates of the Kinetic Theory
8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory
potential energy
3.6: Energy
proton
4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

R

rad (unit)
5.7: Measuring Radiation
radioisotope
5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes
relative abundances
4.8: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element’s Atoms
rem (unit)
5.7: Measuring Radiation
roentgen (units)
5.7: Measuring Radiation
rounding
2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations

S

scienfitic notation
2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers
Separation of Mixtures
3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
sievert (unit)
5.7: Measuring Radiation
significant figures
2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations
Stability of Isotopes
4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

T

temperature
3.9: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

U
unit conversions
2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions
units of energy
3.6: Energy
V
vapor pressure
8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law
vapor pressure depression
9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure
W
work
3.6: Energy

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Introduction to General, Organic and Biochemistry

Webpages: 139

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 63.3% (88 pages)
- CK-12 License: 20.9% (29 pages)
- Undeclared: 15.1% (21 pages)
- Unknown License: 0.7% (1 page)

By Page

- Introduction to General, Organic and Biochemistry - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Chemistry in our Lives - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.2: Chemistry - The Central Science - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.3: The Scope of Chemistry - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.4: A Beginning Chemist - How to Succeed - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.5: Physical Quantities- Units and Scientific Notation - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.E: Exercises - *CK-12 License*
  - 2: Chemistry and Measurement - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Taking Measurements - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.8: Units Raised to a Power - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.9: Density - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.E: Measurement and Problem Solving (Exercises) - *CK-12 License*
  - 3: Matter and Energy - *Undeclared*
    - 3.1: What is Matter? - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.6: Energy - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.8: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.9: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises) - *CK-12 License*
  - 4: Atoms - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.2: The Nuclear Atom - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.5: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons - *CK-12 License*

- 4.7: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies - *CK-12 License*
- 4.8: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms - *CK-12 License*

5: Nuclear Chemistry - *Undeclared*

- 5.1: Nuclear Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.2: The Discovery and Nature of Radioactivity - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.3: Stable and Unstable Isotopes - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.4: Nuclear Decay - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.5: Radioactive Half-Life - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.6: Ionizing Radiation - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 5.7: Measuring Radiation - *Unknown License*

6: Ionic and Molecular Compounds - *Undeclared*

- 6.1: Ions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.2: Ions and the Octet Rule - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.3: Ions of Some Common Elements - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.4: Periodic Properties and Ion Formation - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.5: Naming Monoatomic Ions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.6: Polyatomic Ions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.7: Ionic Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.8: Formulas of Ionic Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.9: Naming Ionic Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.10: Some Properties of Ionic Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.11: Covalent Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.12: Covalent Bonds and the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.13: Multiple Covalent Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.14: Characteristics of Molecular Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.15: Molecular Formulas and Lewis Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.16: Drawing Lewis Structures - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.17: The Shapes of Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.18: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.19: Polar Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.20: Naming Binary Molecular Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.21: Covalent Bonding and Simple Molecular Compounds (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises I) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 6.E: Ionic Bonding and Simple Ionic Compounds (Exercises II) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

7: Chemical Reactions and Quantities - *Undeclared*

- 7.1: Chemical Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.2: Balancing Chemical Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.3: Precipitation Reactions and Solubility Guidelines - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.4: Acids, Bases, and Neutralization Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.5: Recognizing Redox Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.6: The Mole and Avogadro's Number - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.7: Gram-Mole Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.8: Mole Relationships and Chemical Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.9: Mass Relationships and Chemical Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.10: Limiting Reagent and Percent Yield - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.11: Introduction to Chemical Reactions (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.E: Quantities in Chemical Reactions (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

8: Gases - *Undeclared*

- 8.1: States of Matter and Their Changes - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.2: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.3: Gases and the Kinetic-Molecular Theory - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.4: Gas Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.5: Boyle's Law - The Relation between Volume and Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.6: Charles's Law- The Relation between Volume and Temperature - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.7: Gay-Lussac's Law- The Relationship Between Pressure and Temperature - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.8: The Combined Gas Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.9: Avogadro's Law - The Relation between Volume and Molar Amount - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.10: The Ideal Gas Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.11: Partial Pressures and Dalton's Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.E: Solids, Liquids, and Gases (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

9: Solutions - *Undeclared*

- 9.1: Mixtures and Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.2: The Solution Process - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.3: Solubility - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

- 9.4: The Effect of Temperature on Solubility - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.5: The Effect of Pressure on Solubility - Henry's Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.6: Units of Concentration - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.7: Dilution - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.8: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.9: Properties of Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.10: Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.11: Dialysis - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.12: Net Ionic Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.E: Solutions (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

10: Reaction Rates and Equilibrium - *Undeclared*

- 10.1: Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 10.2: How Do Chemical Reactions Occur? Reaction Rates - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 10.3: Effects of Temperature, Concentration, and Catalysts on Reaction Rates - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 10.4: Reversible Reactions and Chemical Equilibrium - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 10.5: Le Chatelier's Principle- The Effect of Changing Conditions on Equilibria - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

11: Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*

- 11.1: Acids and Bases Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.2: Acid and Base Strength - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.3: Acid Dissociation Constants - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.4: Water as Both an Acid and a Base - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.5: Measuring Acidity in Aqueous Solutions- The pH Scale - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.6: Working with pH - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.7: Acid and Base Equivalents - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.8: Some Common Acid-Base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.9: Acidity and Basicity of Salt Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.10: Buffer Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.11: Titration - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11.E: Acids and Bases (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

Back Matter - *Undeclared*

- Index - *Undeclared*
- Glossary - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*